TECHNICAL BINDER 2020

INSTITUTIONAL ■
COMMERCIAL ■
RESIDENTIAL ■

40 YEARS
Building solutions for the future

TALIUS®

STYLISH PROTECTION FOR YOUR PROPERTY

TALIUS®

Talius is a service oriented company with a can-do culture that specializes in the manufacturing of rollshutters and retractable Habitat Screens™. Our value proposition is to take a customer intimate approach in providing our clients with excellent service, innovative products, expertise in project planning, superior after sales support and the right solutions for security, shade, and storm protection.

For over 40 years, Talius has earned the trust of our clients and the reputation of being an industry leader that consistently delivers excellent value and peace of mind by protecting our clients' homes, businesses and institutional properties from nature's harshest elements and crimes of opportunity. Designed to perform well in any climate and resilient enough to withstand forced entry, Talius products are the trusted choice to provide shade, security and storm protection for residential, commercial and institutional clients.

Our state-of-the art manufacturing plants in Salmon Arm, BC and Windsor, ON features over 30,000 square feet of manufacturing and warehouse space fully equipped with highly qualified personnel and the latest technologies. Our extensive inventory and sophisticated manufacturing processes enable us to handle projects of any size and complexity. Our team of dedicated employees are committed to a job well done, and create lasting value for our clients through innovative design, project planning, efficient manufacturing techniques, reliable shipping, product testing and unsurpassed customer support.

One of our greatest strengths is working closely with our clients to devise effective approaches tailored to suit their needs. Our knowledgeable and friendly sales team will listen to you and communicate your unique requirements to our production team and certified engineer to ensure that you will receive the quality and service that you deserve.

A relationship with Talius transcends the normal supply and install mantra. Our goal is to nurture a lasting relationship that will simplify your experience with our company throughout the entire process from specification to installation, and we have taken the appropriate steps to make this process simple yet effective.

In reviewing our technical binder if you have any questions, please do not hesitate to contact our knowledgeable team at 1-800-665-5550.

40 YEARS

Building solutions for the future


TALIUS®

TALIUS®

Technical Binder Sections

SOLUTIONS

Security
Storm Protection
Sun Protection
Energy Efficiency
Insect Protection
Vandalism Protection

PRODUCTS

Rollshutters
Habitat ScreensTM
Habitat Cable Guided Screens

WRITTEN SPECIFICATIONS

Specifications by Solution
Library

ARCHITECTURAL DRAWINGS

Rollshutters
Habitat ScreensTM

WIRING DIAGRAMS

Standard Limit Motors
Somfy RTS Motors

WARRANTY DOCUMENTS

Talius Standard Residential Warranty
Talius Standard Commercial Warranty
Talius Standard Institutional Warranty




TALIUS®

- Security
- Storm Protection
- Sun Protection
- Energy Efficiency
- Insect Protection
- Vandalism Protection



CUSTOM-MADE SOLUTIONS


TALIUS®

TALIUS®

SOLUTIONS

Table of Contents

- Talius Solutions – An Introduction 1
- Security Solutions 3
- Storm Protection Solutions 9
- Sun Protection Solutions 15
- Energy Efficiency Solutions 25
- Insect Protection Solutions 33
- Vandalism Protection Solutions 39

40 YEARS
Building solutions for the future

All prices are subject to change. © 2020


TALIUS®

Talius Solutions – An Introduction

Talius products offer a variety of solutions for your home, business, modular building, or institution. Each Talius product is carefully crafted in our state-of-the-art manufacturing plant. Fully equipped with highly trained personnel and the latest technologies, our sophisticated manufacturing process enable us to handle projects of any size and complexity.

TALIUS PRODUCTS

SOLUTION	ROLLSHUTTERS	HABITAT SCREENS
Security	✓	
Storm Protection	✓	
Sun Protection	✓	✓
Sun Protection with Visibility		✓
Energy Efficiency	✓	✓
Insect Protection	✓	✓
Vandalism Protection	✓	
Privacy	✓	✓
Noise Reduction	✓	

TALIUS®

Technical Binder © 2020

Security Solutions

Peace of Mind for Your Customer

Rollshutters are the ultimate security solution when you need to protect what is behind your windows. Strong, durable, and secure, our rollshutters create a solid barrier to prevent break-ins, vandalism, and crimes of opportunity. Talius rollshutters are completely retractable, so you don't have to sacrifice your outside view. Choose between manual or motorized operation to ensure smooth, convenient use.

Residential Security

Talius rollshutters will not only secure a home from break-ins but also protect against mother nature's harshest elements. Our rollshutters create a barrier against theft, broken glass, and intruders. Talius rollshutters are custom manufactured to suit your needs. Talius rollshutters are mounted on the outside of windows and harmonize with existing style and décor. When closed, our rollshutters protect exposed glass, prevent forced entry, and provide a strong barrier against crime.

Each of Talius rollshutters are designed and engineered to meet your exact requirements. Moreover, rollshutters are built to last. Our security solutions for homes use the finest quality and most durable products to ensure your customer is well protected. All Talius products come with a comprehensive warranty.

Commercial Security

Protect your client's business from vandalism, break-ins, and theft. Unfortunately, property crime is on the rise – but, Talius rollshutters are here to protect your client's business and eliminate "down-time" caused by break-ins and vandalism. Intruders always seek the fastest entry method and often enter through windows and doors. Talius rollshutters have earned a reputation for protecting businesses from break-ins. We are the ultimate solution proven to withstand forced entry. Our rollshutters can be fully customized and branded to fit with your business aesthetic or promote products.

During store hours, rollshutters can be retracted to provide an unobstructed view for employees and customers. Rollshutters are easily retractable using either a manual or motorized mechanism with a variety of switch options, remote controls, and timers.

School Security

Save money and reduce maintenance costs with a one-time installation of our rollshutters. Designed to protect exposed glass from vandalism and to deter against break-ins and theft, Talius rollshutters will eliminate the need to costly emergency glass clean-up, window repairs, glass replacement, and stolen property. In addition, to physically protecting your school, Talius rollshutters will help to mitigate the safety concerns caused by vandalism and forced entry.

During school hours, rollshutters can be retracted to provide an unobstructed view, or regulated to control light and glare. Furthermore, Talius rollshutters are easily operated with manual or motorized convenience, so you can adjust them throughout the day to suit your needs. We also offer a variety of switch options for you to choose from.

Modular Building Security

Talius rollshutters offer security solutions to protect your clients' permanent and temporary modular structures from forced entry and vandalism. Designed, engineered and customized to meet your exact requirements, Talius rollshutters are ideal for schools, construction site offices, medical clinics, sales centres, and many other types of modular buildings.

Mounting Options *(continued)*

One-Time Application with a Variety of Benefits

Talius rollshutters are a one-time application that is easy to maintain and convenient to operate. Here are some of their many features:

- ✓ Stops break-ins and theft
- ✓ Eliminate costly business interruptions
- ✓ Reduce insurance costs
- ✓ Enhance energy efficiency
- ✓ Save you money on glass replacement
- ✓ Harmonize with your building exterior

All of our rollshutters are made from superior strength roll-formed aluminum. They have a high density, hard resin core. In addition, unique safe guide rails block access to the hardware. A unique u-sill prevents the insertion of tools which could pry up the rollshutters. Moreover, all rollshutters have been tested against excessive force and can be installed over wide spaces without deflecting against the glass.

Talius rollshutters have a variety of security features to ensure your project is protected. Talius SAFE series rail is a two-part rail system that hides fasteners once installed. Talius also offers a hard-resin core curtain profile that has been tested against the force of debris at high wind speeds. Talius has a unique u-sill that the rollshutter curtain closes into making it difficult for intruders to pry up the curtain. Talius has internal panel box hanger locks which engage when the curtain is down and are hidden from sight making tampering by potential intruders even more difficult. These are just some of the security options available from Talius, to learn more contact us at **1-800-665-5550.**

Talius rollshutters are the most effective security solution for a home, business, or institution. Each of our rollshutters is designed to provide security and peace of mind.

Technical Binder © 2020

Recommended Specification

SECURITY SOLUTIONS

Product and Installation Specifications

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Related Work

.1 Related work to be determined by project architect or owner's representative.

1.2 Scope of Work

.1 The work of this section covers the supply and installation of rollshutters called for on the drawings and herein specified.

.2 The Talius Authorized Dealer, or General Contractor, to provide all wood blocking and/or solid mounting surfaces required for a proper installation.

.3 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install all flashing for rollshutter panel boxes.

.4 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install exterior and/or interior finishing trim for the rollshutters

1.3 Quality Assurance

.1 Approved Manufacturer:
TALIUS
Head Office: PO Box 3279, Salmon Arm, BC V1E 4S1
Tel: 250-832-7777
Fax: 250-832-8577
Website: www.talius.com
E-mail: info@talius.com

1.4 Submittals

.1 Shop drawings: submit shop drawings showing details of rollshutters including curtains, guide rails, panel box housing, operators and other relevant hardware.

.2 Submit manufacturer's data sheets. Indicate specific rollshutter types, construction components, material finishes, and operators.

.3 Rollshutters are detailed on architectural drawings as scheduled. Sizes shown are nominal and confirmation by field measurement is required.

.4 Submit samples of standard colours.

1.5 Products Delivery, Handling and Storage

.1 Deliver materials to site in shipping crates and packing. Store off the ground on wood supports spaced to prevent damage. Store inside building under cover to prevent damage from weather or construction activities. Coordinate delivery with construction schedule to prevent loss or damage.

1.6 Operation and Maintenance

.1 Rollshutters are to be of maintenance free design.

1.7 Guarantee

.1 Manufacturer to provide a written warranty that all components are guaranteed against defects in material, design and workmanship for one year from date of installation for commercial and institutional installations and five years from the date of installation for residential installations. Installer to provide written guarantee that there will be no labour charge for warranty repairs for one year from date of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Rollshutters

.1 The Rollshutter curtain:

The rollshutter curtain is to be made from individual roll formed aluminum profiles with an injected super-hard resin foam core and shall have a cover width of 38 mm (1 1/2") and a thickness of 9 mm (11/32"). Minimum aluminum gauge to be 0.62 mm (0.0244"). Finish to be baked-on enamel with a dry film thickness of at least 0.05 mm (0.0020"). The minimum weight per square metre is to be 8.0 kg (0.0114 lbs/inch^2). Manufacturer's description: **SAFE MINI**.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

.2 Guide Rails:

The guide rails are to be minimum 0.065" or 1.60 mm gauge aluminum extrusions fitted with two noise and weather insulating strips. All guide rails must have undergone a multiple stage pre-treatment procedure and be painted with a baked-on paint. Guide rails to be acid, alkali and oil resistant. The guide rail is to be made of two snap-together parts that prevent unauthorized access to the mounting screws. Curtain penetration into the guide rail shall be at least 41 mm (1 5/8") for sections less than 1.83 m (72") in width and at least 66 mm (2 5/8") for sections over 1.83 m (72") in width. Manufacturer's description: **SAFE RAIL**, and **SAFE-40 RAIL** respectively.

On rollshutter sections where width dimensions exceed 3.05 m (120"), split the rollshutter into two or more sections by means of a centre guide rail(s). Manufacturer's description: **SAFE CENTRE RAIL.**

.3 Sill:

If applicable, provide a 30 mm x 47 mm (1 1/8" x 1 13/16") U-shaped aluminum sill to hold the curtain securely in placed when closed. Manufacturer's description: **SAFE U-SILL**. Where the U-sill is exposed to weather, drill a minimum of two "weep" holes in the inside channel of the U-sill to allow for moisture drainage.

.4 Build-Up:

If applicable, provide heavy-gauge aluminum build-up underneath the guide rails, along the panel box top, panel box bottom, and sill. Unless otherwise specified, the width of the build-up is to be 35 mm (1 3/8"), depth to be suitable to provide obstruction-free operation of the rollshutter curtain.

.5 Panel Box Housing:

Panel boxes are to be precision roll formed from 1.0 - 1.2 mm (0.040" - 0.0472") aluminum with an electro-statically bonded and baked finish. Lower half of the panel box must be detachable for future servicing access. Panel box service lid to be secured with tamper-proof security screws on all panel boxes below 2.13m (7') off the ground. All panels to be delivered to jobsite covered with protective, adhesive plastic film to prevent scratching. The protective film is to be removed by installer after job completion. All panel box endplates to be manufactured by pressure die-casting procedure from high grade aluminum alloy. Endplates must be chromed and laminated with a resistant PVC surface. The panel box style to be 5-corner. Panel box sizes to suit Rollshutters dimensions.

.6 Colour Selections:

Unless otherwise indicated, items to be selected from manufacturer's standard colour range: white, beige, brown, black and silver.

- rollshutter curtain
- rollshutter curtain bottom profile
- guide rails
- sill
- aluminum build-up
- panel box housing

.7 Operation:

Unless otherwise indicated, the Rollshutters shall be electrically operated. Provide a tubular 120 VAC motor installed inside the shaft. The motor unit shall be constructed with solenoid brakes, thermal overload protection switch with automatic reset and enclosed, permanently lubricated bearings and gears. All electrical components to

Technical Binder © 2020

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

be C.S.A. and U.L. certified. The motor unit shall be connected to a manual override control in order to operate the rollshutter in case of power failure. A metal pin extrusion shall be connected to a stainless steel universal joint at a downward angle of at least 45 degrees. A long handle crank of at least 1450mm made from anodized aluminum shall be connected to the universal joint on the operating person's side. The crank shall have two joints and a wall mounted clip for storing when not in use. Color of the crank rod to be silver.

Each motor unit shall be controlled by a momentary-contact, recessed, three position key switch. Switches to fit standard electrical boxes. Coverplates to be polished steel with one-way security screws. Locations as shown on drawings. The Wiring is per manufacturer's instructions and to local electrical code requirements. Supply and installation of electrical wiring (including drilling of wiring routing holes through mounting surfaces), mounting of supplied electrical switches, and the connection of all wiring to be performed by certified electricians.

.8 Locking Devices:

All rollshutters will be equipped with hanger locks constructed of corrosion resistant materials. Hanger locks are to be installed at sufficient intervals between shaft and curtain in order to prevent the curtains from being lifted by more than 40 mm (1 9/16") from the closed position, without the use of an operator. Talius hanger locks meet the requirements of European Standard EN 13659 and resist an upward force of 100 kg (220lbs).

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 Installation

.1 Rollshutters and hardware as described herein shall be installed by approved rollshutter installers. Installers must be factory authorized and installation must proceed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

.2 The rollshutter contractor shall provide written confirmation before commencing installation that its Workers' Compensation Board account is currently active and in good standing, and that all of its employees working on site are covered by the rollshutter contractor's WCB account

.3 The rollshutter contractor to supply and use suitable mounting hardware for the mounting surface application, including hollow-wall and concrete anchors, where necessary. Mounting hardware size to be a minimum of #8 x 2". Mounting hardware for the guide rails, build-up and U-sills to be installed between 20 cm – 30 cm (8" – 12") on centers. Mounting hardware for the panel box to be installed between 40 cm – 50 cm (16" – 20") on centers, horizontally along the top inside corner of the panel box, and each screw head to be supplemented with a large flat washer to avoid tearing through the sheet aluminum. Each cast aluminum end plate on a panel box to be secured with one fastener to the mounting surface, two if the rollshutter curtain weight exceeds 22 kg (50 lbs). When installation into brick or concrete surfaces is necessary, mounting hardware to be used shall be Tapcon style of suitable diameter and length.

.4 Install Rollshutters plumb, true, square and level, free from distortion or defects affecting appearance or performance. Adjust and test moving parts to ensure smooth operation.

.5 Suitable exterior caulking to be applied by the rollshutter contractor around the exterior perimeter of the completed rollshutter installation to prevent infiltration of moisture, wind and debris behind the rollshutter when the curtain is fully closed.

.6 All work to be completed in a professional, safe and timely manner.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

(continued)

3.2 Clean-Up

.1 As the work proceeds and upon completion, clean up and remove from the site all rubbish and packages. Leave all rollshutter and fixed panel parts clean.

3.3 Schedule

.1 As per the Jobsite Specification Addendum.

Storm Protection Solutions

Trusted Protection from Inclement Weather

Talius rollshutters are ideal for storm protection from Mother Nature's harshest elements. Designed to be strong, durable, and provide peace of mind, our rollshutters are the perfect solution for storm damage. Talius rollshutters are specifically designed to protect homes or businesses from wind and rain damage and from flying debris during storms. Each of our rollshutters are manufactured in a state-of-the-art facility and tested against excessive force. Talius rollshutters have many benefits and features:

- ✓ Stops break-ins and theft
- ✓ Eliminate costly business interruptions
- ✓ Reduce insurance costs
- ✓ Enhance energy efficiency
- ✓ Save you money on glass replacement
- ✓ Harmonize with your building exterior

Rollshutters Offer Trusted Protection Against Storms

Tropical storms, hurricanes, storm surges, and turbulent weather can be dangerous and costly. Left unprotected, your clients home or business is at risk of becoming severely damaged or even destroyed. Talius rollshutters offer convenient, practical, and attractive solutions to protect from the most violent weather. Likewise, Talius rollshutters are perfect for cottages and vacation homes. Your client will have the peace of mind that their home-away-from-home is safe from crimes of opportunity and protected from harsh weather. With Talius rollshutters you can be assured that your windows and doors are safe from bad weather and falling debris like tree branches.

Storm Shutters Ready at a Moment's Notice

Talius rollshutters are completely retractable, so the outside view is not sacrificed. Choose between manual or motorized operation to ensure smooth, convenient use. Rollhutters are easy to operate and require no special training. Any member of a family or business can easily retract each shutter at a moment's notice. All our rollshutters are made from superior strength roll-formed aluminum. They have a high density, hard resin core. In addition, unique safe guide rails block access to the hardware and our 40 series rails have a wider channel offering greater curtain stability during high winds. A unique u-sill prevents the insertion of tools which could pry up the hurricane shutters. Talius also offers storm bars increasing the rollshutters wind load protection.

Technical Binder © 2020

TALIUS

Recommended Specification

STORM PROTECTION

Product and Installation Specifications

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Related Work

.1 Related work to be determined by project architect or owner's representative.

1.2 Scope of Work

.1 The work of this section covers the supply and installation of rollshutters called for on the drawings and herein specified.

.2 The Talius Authorized Dealer, or General Contractor, to provide all wood blocking and/or solid mounting surfaces required for a proper installation.

.3 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install all flashing for rollshutter panel boxes.

.4 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install exterior and/or interior finishing trim for the rollshutters

1.3 Quality Assurance

.1 Approved Manufacturer:
TALIUS
Head Office: PO Box 3279, Salmon Arm, BC V1E 4S1
Tel: 250-832-7777
Fax: 250-832-8577
Website: www.talius.com
E-mail: info@talius.com

1.4 Submittals

.1 Shop drawings: submit shop drawings showing details of rollshutters including curtains, guide rails, panel box housing, operators and other relevant hardware.

.2 Submit manufacturer's data sheets. Indicate specific rollshutter types, construction components, material finishes, and operators.

.3 Rollshutters are detailed on architectural drawings as scheduled. Sizes shown are nominal and confirmation by field measurement is required.

.4 Submit samples of standard colours.

1.5 Products Delivery, Handling and Storage

.1 Deliver materials to site in shipping crates and packing. Store off the ground on wood supports spaced to prevent damage. Store inside building under cover to prevent damage from weather or construction activities. Coordinate delivery with construction schedule to prevent loss or damage.

1.6 Operation and Maintenance

.1 Rollshutters are to be of maintenance free design.

1.7 Guarantee

.1 Manufacturer to provide a written warranty that all components are guaranteed against defects in material, design and workmanship for one year from date of installation for commercial and institutional installations and five years from the date of installation for residential installations. Installer to provide written guarantee that there will be no labour charge for warranty repairs for one year from date of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Rollshutters

.1 The Rollshutter curtain:

The rollshutter curtain is to be made from individual roll formed aluminum profiles with an injected super-hard resin foam core and shall have a cover width of 38 mm (1 1/2") and a thickness of 9 mm (11/32"). Minimum aluminum gauge to be 0.62 mm (0.0244"). Finish to be baked-on enamel with a dry film thickness of at least 0.05 mm (0.0020"). The minimum weight per square metre is to be 8.0 kg (0.0114 lbs/inch^2). Manufacturer's description: **SAFE MINI**.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

.2 Guide Rails:

The guide rails are to be minimum 0.065" or 1.60 mm gauge aluminum extrusions fitted with two noise and weather insulating strips. All guide rails must have undergone a multiple stage pre-treatment procedure and be painted with a baked-on paint. Guide rails to be acid, alkali and oil resistant. The guide rail is to be made of two snap-together parts that prevent unauthorized access to the mounting screws. Curtain penetration into the guide rail shall be at least 41 mm (1 5/8") for sections less than 1.83 m (72") in width and at least 66 mm (2 5/8") for sections over 1.83 m (72") in width. Manufacturer's description: **SAFE RAIL**, and **SAFE-40 RAIL** respectively.

On rollshutter sections where width dimensions exceed 3.05 m (120"), split the rollshutter into two or more sections by means of a centre guide rail(s). Manufacturer's description: **SAFE CENTRE RAIL.**

.3 Sill:

If applicable, provide a 30 mm x 47 mm (1 1/8" x 1 13/16") U-shaped aluminum sill to hold the curtain securely in placed when closed. Manufacturer's description: **SAFE U-SILL**. Where the U-sill is exposed to weather, drill a minimum of two "weep" holes in the inside channel of the U-sill to allow for moisture drainage.

.4 Build-Up:

If applicable, provide heavy-gauge aluminum build-up underneath the guide rails, along the panel box top, panel box bottom, and sill. Unless otherwise specified, the width of the build-up is to be 35 mm (1 3/8"), depth to be suitable to provide obstruction-free operation of the rollshutter curtain.

.5 Panel Box Housing:

Panel boxes are to be precision roll formed from 1.0 - 1.2 mm (0.040" - 0.0472") aluminum with an electro-statically bonded and baked finish. Lower half of the panel box must be detachable for future servicing access. Panel box service lid to be secured with tamper-proof security screws on all panel boxes below 2.13m (7') off the ground. All panels to be delivered to jobsite covered with protective, adhesive plastic film to prevent scratching. The protective film is to be removed by installer after job completion. All panel box endplates to be manufactured by pressure die-casting procedure from high grade aluminum alloy. Endplates must be chromed and laminated with a resistant PVC surface. The panel box style to be 5-corner. Panel box sizes to suit Rollshutters dimensions.

.6 Colour Selections:

Unless otherwise indicated, items to be selected from manufacturer's standard colour range: white, beige, brown, black and silver.

- rollshutter curtain
- rollshutter curtain bottom profile
- guide rails
- sill
- aluminum build-up
- panel box housing

.7 Operation:

Unless otherwise indicated, the Rollshutters shall be electrically operated. Provide a tubular 120 VAC motor installed inside the shaft. The motor unit shall be constructed with solenoid brakes, thermal overload protection switch with automatic reset and enclosed, permanently lubricated bearings and gears. All electrical components to be C.S.A. and U.L. certified.

Technical Binder © 2020

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

Each motor unit shall be controlled by a momentary-contact, recessed, three position paddle switch. The switches are to fit standard electrical boxes. Switch locations as shown on drawings. The Wiring is per manufacturer's instructions and to local electrical code requirements.

Supply and installation of electrical wiring (including drilling of wiring routing holes through mounting surfaces), mounting of supplied electrical switches, and the connection of all wiring to be performed by certified electricians.

.8 Locking Devices:

All rollshutters will be equipped with hanger locks constructed of corrosion resistant materials. Hanger locks are to be installed at sufficient intervals between shaft and curtain in order to prevent the curtains from being lifted by more than 40 mm (1 9/16") from the closed position, without the use of an operator. Talius hanger locks meet the requirements of European Standard EN 13659 and resist an upward force of 100 kg (220 lbs). Manufacturer's description: **HANGER LOCKS**

.9 Storm Protection Device:

All rollshutters will be equipped with one cross bar and one storm bar. The cross bar and storm bar are to be a minimum 5/32" or 4 mm guage aluminum extrusions that have undergone multiple stage pre-treatment procedure and painted with baked on paint. Storm bar and cross bar to be acid, alkali and oil resistant. Manufacturer's description: **HEAVY DUTY STORM BAR**

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 Installation

.1 Rollshutters and hardware as described herein shall be installed by approved rollshutter installers. Installers must be factory authorized and installation must proceed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

.2 The rollshutter contractor shall provide written confirmation before commencing installation that its Workers' Compensation Board account is currently active and in good standing, and that all of its employees working on site are covered by the rollshutter contractor's WCB account

.3 The rollshutter contractor to supply and use suitable mounting hardware for the mounting surface application, including hollow-wall and concrete anchors, where necessary. Mounting hardware size to be a minimum of #8 x 2". Mounting hardware for the guide rails, build-up and U-sills to be installed between 20 cm – 30 cm (8" – 12") on centers. Mounting hardware for the panel box to be installed between 40 cm – 50 cm (16" – 20") on centers, horizontally along the top inside corner of the panel box, and each screw head to be supplemented with a large flat washer to avoid tearing through the sheet aluminum. Each cast aluminum end plate on a panel box to be secured with one fastener to the mounting surface, two if the rollshutter curtain weight exceeds 22 kg (50 lbs). When installation into brick or concrete surfaces is necessary, mounting hardware to be used shall be Tapcon style of suitable diameter and length.

.4 Install Rollshutters plumb, true, square and level, free from distortion or defects affecting appearance or performance. Adjust and test moving parts to ensure smooth operation.

PART 3 - EXECUTION *(continued)*

.5 Suitable exterior caulking to be applied by the rollshutter contractor around the exterior perimeter of the completed rollshutter installation to prevent infiltration of moisture, wind and debris behind the rollshutter when the curtain is fully closed.

.6 All work to be completed in a professional, safe and timely manner.

3.2 Clean-Up

.1 As the work proceeds and upon completion, clean up and remove from the site all rubbish and packages. Leave all rollshutter and Vandal Panels parts clean.

3.3 Schedule

.1 As per the Jobsite Specification Addendum.

Technical Binder © 2020

Sun Protection Solutions

Talius has multiple products that will protect from the suns harmful UV rays and annoying glare. Talius Habitat Screens™ provide UV and glare protection without sacrificing the view and Talius rollshutters provide complete protection, perfect for those that work nights or for buildings and conference rooms with projectors.

Habitat Screens™

Talius Habitat Screens™ are the perfect sun protection solution. They are retractable, energy efficient, and an attractive alternative to traditional interior blinds and window treatments.

Habitat Screens™ can be adjusted to provide shade when you need it most. And when not in use, the screen retracts neatly into a 5" panel box. Our screens are not only designed to enhance the function of your project, they will also harmonize perfectly with the existing décor. Add a RTS sun sensor to maximize the sun protection for your client. Habitat Screens™ let your client enjoy a cool, comfortable environment without sacrificing any of their view. Talius screens can be used in a variety of applications including patios, gazebos, boat launches, garages, and decks. Consequently, Habitat Screens™ also act as protection from the wind and bugs and give daytime privacy – allowing your client to enjoy their space anytime of the day.

Rollshutters

For those looking for "blackout" protection, Talius rollshutters are the ideal solution. Like screens, Talius rollshutters are installed on the exterior of windows and doors. Manually or mechanically operated rollshutters can be used to block the sun when it is convenient. Rollshutters are often used for sun protection by those that work shift work or in commercial or institutional buildings where projectors are often used as they provide "black out" protection. Add hanger locks, wider channel rails and SAFE U-sill to increase sun protection.

Technical Binder © 2020

Recommended Specification

SUN PROTECTION - HABITAT SCREENS™

Product and Installation Specifications

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Related Work

.1 Related work to be determined by project architect or owner's representative.

1.2 Scope of Work

.1 The work of this section covers the supply and installation of Habitat Screens called for on the drawings and herein specified.

.2 The Talius Authorized Dealer, or General Contractor, to provide all wood blocking and/or solid mounting surfaces required for a proper installation.

.3 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install all flashing for Habitat Screen panel boxes.

.4 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install exterior and/or interior finishing trim for the Habitat Screens™.

1.3 Quality Assurance

.1 Approved Manufacturer:
TALIUS
Head Office: PO Box 3279, Salmon Arm, BC V1E 4S1
Tel: 250-832-7777
Fax: 250-832-8577
Website: www.talius.com
E-mail: info@talius.com

1.4 Submittals

.1 Shop drawings: submit shop drawings showing details of Habitat Screens including Thermoscreen material, guide rails, panel box housing, operators and other relevant hardware.

.2 Submit manufacturer's data sheets. Indicate specific Habitat Screen types, construction components material finishes and operators.

.3 Habitat Screens™ are detailed on architectural drawings as scheduled. Sizes shown are nominal and confirmation by field measurement is required..

.4 Submit samples of standard colours.

1.5 Products Delivery, Handling and Storage

.1 Deliver materials to site in shipping crates and packing. Store off the ground on wood supports spaced to prevent damage. Store inside building under cover to prevent damage from weather or construction activities. Coordinate delivery with construction schedule to prevent loss or damage.

1.6 Operation and Maintenance

.1 Habitat Screens™ are to be of maintenance free design.

1.7 Guarantee

.1 Manufacturer to provide a written warranty that all components are guaranteed against defects in material, design and workmanship for one year from date of installation for commercial and institutional installations and five years from the date of installation for residential installations. Installer to provide written guarantee that there will be no labour charge for warranty repairs for one year from date of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Habitat Screens

.1 The Habitat Screen curtain:

The Habitat Screen curtain is to be made from exterior, vinyl-coated polyester roller shade fabric, with a 28% polyester, 72% vinyl on polyester composition. The openness factor (O-F) is approximately 5%. The weight of the curtain is to be 522 g/m^2, 0.000742 lbs/inch^2, or 15.4 oz/yd^2. The thickness of the Habitat Screen curtain is to be 0.74 mm, 0.029 inch. The breaking strength of the Habitat Screen curtain is warp: 350 lbs/inch and fill: 235 lbs/inch. Each side of the Habitat Screen curtain must feature a #4.5 Coil

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

zipper attached via heat weldable film and welding process. Standard fabric roll widths of 126", to minimize visible seams. Horizontal seaming of screen material is required when the height and width of the Habitat Screen exceeds the size of the fabric roll width.

Fire classification for Habitat Screen Fabric is:

- California Technical Bulletin 117 Sec. E. (CS-191-53)
- NFPA 101 (Class A Rating)
- IBC Section 903.1 (Class A Rating)

Manufacturer's description: **SUNTEX® 95**.

.2 Guide Rails:

The guide rails are to be heavy gauge aluminum extrusions fitted with a PVC guide rail insert. All guide rails must have undergone a multiple stage chromate procedure and be painted with a baked-on paint. Guide rails to be acid, alkali and oil resistant. The guide rail is to include ¼", 6.5 mm build-up to incorporate slide-on Talius aluminum build-up. Curtain penetration into the guide rail shall be at least 26 mm (1"). Manufacturer's description: **HABITAT SCREEN PRO GUIDE RAIL WITH EDGE RETENTION INSERT.**

.3 Bottom Profile:

The Habitat Screen™ Bottom Profile is to be made of two aluminum extrusions fitted together with a retaining channel for the screen fabric at the bottom. The extrusions are to be minimum 0.055" or 1.40 mm wall thickness and weighing 1.10 kg/lineal meter raw combined extrusion. The Bottom profile will be fitted with a weather insulating seal at the bottom. The Bottom Profile must allow for secure fitting of internal weight bars where required. The Bottom Profile must have undergone a multiple stage chromating procedure and be painted with baked-on paint. Bottom Profile to be acid, alkali, and oil resistant. The ends of the Bottom Profile must be capped off with a PVC caps.

.4 Sill:

If applicable, provide a 22 mm x 42 mm (7/8" x 1 11/16") L-shaped aluminum sill for the Habitat Screen bottom profile to rest upon when closed. Manufacturer's description: **L-SILL**.

.5 Build-Up:

If applicable, provide heavy-gauge aluminum build-up underneath the guide rails, along the panel box top, and panel box bottom. Unless otherwise specified, the width of the build-up is to be 35 mm (1 3/8"), depth to be suitable to provide obstruction-free operation of the habitat screen curtain.

.6 Panel Box Housing:

Panel boxes are to be precision roll formed from 1.0 - 1.2 mm (0.040" - 0.0472") aluminum with an electro-statically bonded and baked finish. Lower half of the panel box must be detachable for future servicing access. Panel box service lid to be secured with tamper-proof security screws on all panel boxes below 2.13 m (7') off the ground. All panels to be delivered to jobsite covered with protective, adhesive plastic film to prevent scratching. The protective film is to be removed by installer after job completion. All panel box endplates to be manufactured by pressure die-casting

Technical Binder © 2020

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

procedure from high grade aluminum alloy. Endplates must be chromed and laminated with a resistant PVC surface. The panel box style to be 5-corner. Panel box size is 125 mm, or 5".

.7 Colour Selections:

Unless otherwise indicated, items to be selected from manufacturer's standard colour range: white, beige, brown, black and silver.

- Habitat Screen™ curtain
- Habitat Screen™ bottom profile
- guide rails
- sill
- aluminum build-up
- panel box housing.

.8 Operation:

Unless otherwise indicated, the Habitat Screens shall be electrically operated. Provide a tubular 120 VAC motor installed inside the shaft. The motor shall be constructed with an internal Radio Frequency Receiver and electronically programmable limits. The motor unit shall be constructed with solenoid brakes, thermal overload protection switch with automatic reset and enclosed, permanently lubricated bearings and gears. The motor shall be controlled wirelessly by a solar powered RTS Sun Sensor. For service and building maintenance by district staff: Exterior Solaris RTS remotes required to allow for individual shade control and to allow for turning on/off sun sensors, to accommodate service and building maintenance needs.

All electrical components to be C.S.A. and U.L. certified.

The Wiring is per manufacturer's instructions and to local electrical code requirements.

Supply and installation of electrical wiring (including drilling of wiring routing holes through mounting surfaces), mounting of supplied electrical switches, and the connection of all wiring to be performed by the certified electricians.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 Installation

.1 Habitat Screen and hardware as described herein shall be installed by approved Habitat Screen installers. Installers must be factory authorized and installation must proceed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

.2 The Habitat Screen contractor shall provide written confirmation before commencing installation that its Workers' Compensation Board account is currently active and in good standing, and that all of its employees working on site are covered by the Habitat Screen contractor's WCB account.

.3 The Habitat Screen contractor will supply and use mounting hardware suitable for the mounting surface application, including hollow-wall and concrete anchors when necessary. The mounting hardware size is to be a minimum of #8 x 2" Mounting hardware for the guide rails, build-up L-sills to be installed between 20 cm – 30 cm (8" – 12") on centres. The mounting hardware for the panel box to be installed between 40 cm – 50 cm (16" – 20") on centres, horizontally along the top inside corner of the panel box, and each screw head to be supplemented with a large flat washer to avoid tearing through the sheet aluminum. Each cast aluminum end plate on a panel box to be secured with one fastener to the mounting surface.

PART 3 - EXECUTION *(continued)*

When installation into brick or concrete surfaces is necessary, mounting hardware to be used shall be Tapcon style of suitable diameter and length.

.4 Install Habitat Screens plumb, true, square and level, free from distortion or defects affecting appearance or performance. Adjust and test moving parts to ensure smooth operation.

.5 Suitable exterior caulking to be applied by the Habitat Screen contractor around the exterior perimeter of the completed Habitat Screen installation to prevent infiltration of moisture, wind and debris behind the Habitat Screen when the curtain is fully closed.

.6 All work to be completed in a professional, safe and timely manner.

3.2 Clean-Up

.1 As the work proceeds and upon completion, clean up and remove from the site all rubbish and packages. Leave all Habitat Screen and fixed panel parts clean.

3.3 Schedule

.1 As per the Jobsite Specification Addendum.

Technical Binder © 2020

TALIUS

Recommended Specification

SUN PROTECTION - ROLLSHUTTERS

Product and Installation Specifications

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Related Work

.1 Related work to be determined by project architect or owner's representative.

1.2 Scope of Work

.1 The work of this section covers the supply and installation of rollshutters called for on the drawings and herein specified.

.2 The Talius Authorized Dealer, or General Contractor, to provide all wood blocking and/or solid mounting surfaces required for a proper installation.

.3 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install all flashing for rollshutter panel boxes.

.4 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install exterior and/or interior finishing trim for the rollshutters

1.3 Quality Assurance

.1 Approved Manufacturer:
TALIUS
Head Office: PO Box 3279, Salmon Arm, BC V1E 4S1
Tel: 250-832-7777
Fax: 250-832-8577
Website: www.talius.com
E-mail: info@talius.com

1.4 Submittals

.1 Shop drawings: submit shop drawings showing details of rollshutters including curtains, guide rails, panel box housing, operators and other relevant hardware.

.2 Submit manufacturer's data sheets. Indicate specific rollshutter types, construction components, material finishes, and operators.

.3 Rollshutters are detailed on architectural drawings as scheduled. Sizes shown are nominal and confirmation by field measurement is required.

.4 Submit samples of standard colours.

1.5 Products Delivery, Handling and Storage

.1 Deliver materials to site in shipping crates and packing. Store off the ground on wood supports spaced to prevent damage. Store inside building under cover to prevent damage from weather or construction activities. Coordinate delivery with construction schedule to prevent loss or damage.

1.6 Operation and Maintenance

.1 Rollshutters are to be of maintenance free design.

1.7 Guarantee

.1 Manufacturer to provide a written warranty that all components are guaranteed against defects in material, design and workmanship for one year from date of installation for commercial and institutional installations and five years from the date of installation for residential installations. Installer to provide written guarantee that there will be no labour charge for warranty repairs for one year from date of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Rollshutters

.1 The Rollshutter curtain:

The rollshutter curtain is to be made from individual roll formed aluminum profiles with an injected insulated hard foam core and shall have a cover width of 40 mm (1 9/16") and a thickness of 9 mm (11/32"). Minimum aluminum gauge to be 0.33 mm (0.0244"). Finish being a polyurethane/polyamide topcoat with a dry film thickness of at least 0.03mm. The minimum weight per square metre is to be 4.55 kg. Manufacturer's description: **SHIELD MINI**.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

.2 Guide Rails:

The guide rails are to be heavy gauge aluminum extrusions fitted with two noise and weather insulating strips. All guide rails must have undergone a multiple stage chromate procedure and be painted with a baked-on paint. Guide rails to be acid, alkali and oil resistant. The guide rail is to be made of two snap-together parts that prevent unauthorized access to the mounting screws. Curtain penetration into the guide rail shall be at least 40 mm (1 9/16"). Manufacturer's description: **SAFE-40 RAIL**.

On rollshutter sections where width dimensions exceed 3.05 m (120"), split the rollshutter into two or more sections by means of a centre guide rail(s). Manufacturer's description: **SAFE CENTRE RAIL.**

.3 Sill:

If applicable, provide a 30 mm x 47 mm (1 1/8" x 1 13/16") U-shaped aluminum sill to hold the curtain securely in placed when closed. Manufacturer's description: **SAFE U-SILL**. Where the U-sill is exposed to weather, drill a minimum of two "weep" holes in the inside channel of the U-sill to allow for moisture drainage.

.4 Build-Up:

If applicable, provide heavy-gauge aluminum build-up underneath the guide rails, along the panel box top, panel box bottom, and sill. Unless otherwise specified, the width of the build-up is to be 35 mm (1 3/8"), depth to be suitable to provide obstruction-free operation of the rollshutter curtain.

.5 Panel Box Housing:

Panel boxes are to be precision roll formed from 1.0 - 1.2 mm (0.040" - 0.0472") aluminum with an electro-statically bonded and baked finish. Lower half of the panel box must be detachable for future servicing access. Panel box service lid to be secured with tamper-proof security screws on all panel boxes below 2.13m (7') off the ground. All panels to be delivered to jobsite covered with protective, adhesive plastic film to prevent scratching. The protective film is to be removed by installer after job completion. All panel box endplates to be manufactured by pressure die-casting procedure from high grade aluminum alloy. Endplates must be chromed and laminated with a resistant PVC surface. The panel box style to be 5-corner. Panel box sizes to suit Rollshutters dimensions.

.6 Colour Selections:

Unless otherwise indicated, items to be selected from manufacturer's standard colour range: white, beige, brown, black and silver.

- rollshutter curtain
- rollshutter curtain bottom profile
- guide rails
- sill
- aluminum build-up
- panel box housing

.7 Operation:

Unless otherwise indicated, the Rollshutters shall be electrically operated. Provide a tubular 120 VAC motor installed inside the shaft. The motor unit shall be constructed with solenoid brakes, thermal overload protection switch with automatic reset and enclosed, permanently lubricated bearings and gears. All electrical components to be C.S.A. and U.L. certified. Each motor unit shall be controlled by a momentary-contact,

Technical Binder © 2020

PART 2 - PRODUCTS *(continued)*

three position toggle switch. The switches are to fit standard electrical boxes. Switch locations as shown on drawings. The Wiring is per manufacturer's instructions and to local electrical code requirements.

Supply and installation of electrical wiring (including drilling of wiring routing holes through mounting surfaces) mounting of supplied electrical switches, and the connection of all wiring to be performed by certified electricians.

.8 Locking Devices:

All rollshutters will be equipped with hanger locks constructed of corrosion resistant materials. Hanger locks are to be installed at sufficient intervals between shaft and curtain in order to prevent the curtains from being lifted by more than 40 mm (1 9/16") from the closed position, without the use of an operator. Talius hanger locks meet the requirements of European Standard EN 13659 and resist an upward force of 100 kg (220 lbs).

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 Installation

.1 Rollshutters and hardware as described herein shall be installed by approved rollshutter installers. Installers must be factory authorized and installation must proceed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

.2 The rollshutter contractor shall provide written confirmation before commencing installation that its Workers' Compensation Board account is currently active and in good standing, and that all of its employees working on site are covered by the rollshutter contractor's WCB account

.3 The rollshutter contractor to supply and use suitable mounting hardware for the mounting surface application, including hollow-wall and concrete anchors, where necessary. Mounting hardware size to be a minimum of #8 x 2". Mounting hardware for the guide rails, build-up and U-sills to be installed between 20 cm – 30 cm (8" – 12") on centers. Mounting hardware for the panel box to be installed between 40 cm – 50 cm (16" – 20") on centers, horizontally along the top inside corner of the panel box, and each screw head to be supplemented with a large flat washer to avoid tearing through the sheet aluminum. Each cast aluminum end plate on a panel box to be secured with one fastener to the mounting surface, two if the rollshutter curtain weight exceeds 22 kg (50 lbs). When installation into brick or concrete surfaces is necessary, mounting hardware to be used shall be Tapcon style of suitable diameter and length.

.4 Install Rollshutters plumb, true, square and level, free from distortion or defects affecting appearance or performance. Adjust and test moving parts to ensure smooth operation.

.5 Suitable exterior caulking to be applied by the rollshutter contractor around the exterior perimeter of the completed rollshutter installation to prevent infiltration of moisture, wind and debris behind the rollshutter when the curtain is fully closed.

.6 All work to be completed in a professional, safe and timely manner.

3.2 Clean-Up

.1 As the work proceeds and upon completion, clean up and remove from the site all rubbish and packages. Leave all rollshutter and fixed panel parts clean.

3.3 Schedule

.1 As per the Jobsite Specification Addendum.

Technical Binder © 2020

Energy Efficiency Solutions

Installed on the outside of windows, Talius rollshutters, Habitat Screens™ will improve the energy efficiency and every building. They are innovative, energy efficient products proven to enhance the quality of indoor environments as they improve the thermal comfort conditions and reduce the risk of moisture condensation on window interior surfaces.

Talius products also protect the outdoor environment because they reduce the environmental carbon footprint of your home. This also reduces your dependency on non-renewable energy sources.

- ✓ Enhance the quality of your indoor environment
- ✓ Minimize your environmental carbon footprint
- ✓ Reduce the risk of moisture condensation on your windows
- ✓ Save money on expensive heating and cooling costs

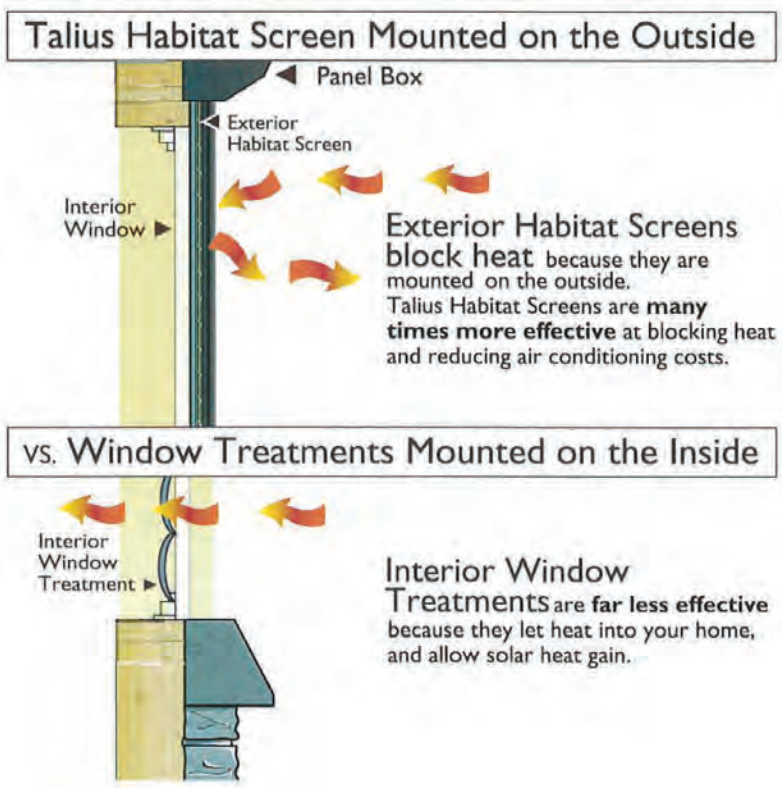
Habitat Screens™

Habitat Screens™ are installed on the outside of windows and are an effective means to create a cool and comfortable environment.

Talius screens reduce:

- ✓ Solar radiation
- ✓ Potential damage to furniture and flooring
- ✓ Solar overheating in summer
- ✓ Heat loss through windows in winter
- ✓ The risk of moisture condensation on the interior surfaces of both conventional and high-performance windows
- ✓ Environmental carbon footprint

Our Habitat Screens™ stop the sun's intense and harmful heat and glare before it reaches the windows and reduce the solar heat gain by 80% when compared to alternative window treatments (NRCAN, 2009). Habitat Screens ™ are completely retractable using either a motorized or manual operation and have sun sensors available to optimize energy efficiency.



Energy Efficiency *(Continued)*

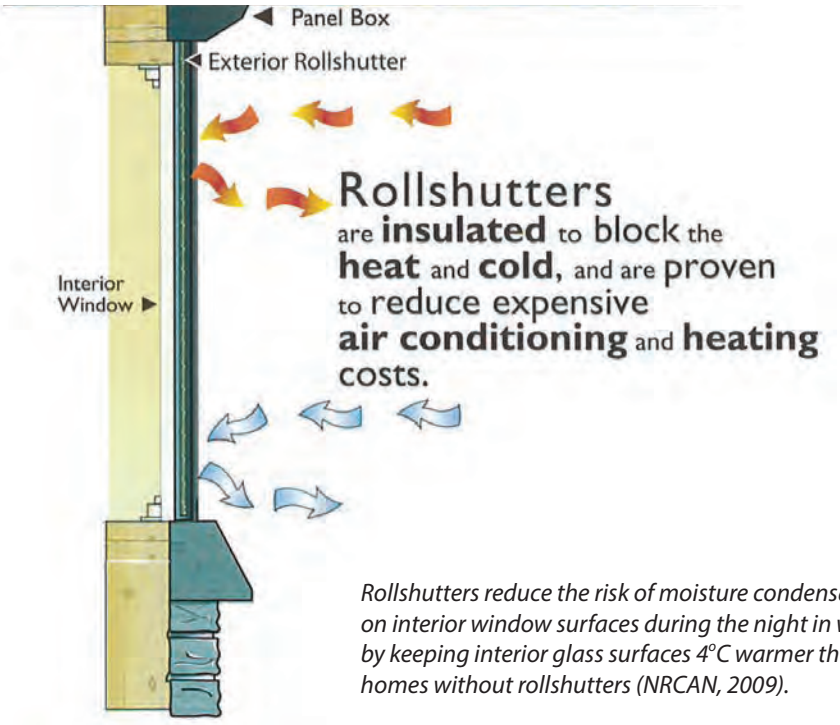
Rollshutters

Talius rollshutters are an effective solution to reduce solar overheating in summer and heat loss through windows in winter. Installed on the outside of windows, rollshutters are insulated to absorb heat and cold, and will reduce costly energy bills. Easily operated from the inside of the building and completely retractable, rollshutters are the informed choice for reducing environmental carbon footprints. According to a recent study by the National Research Council of Canada (NRCAN), when used with conventional windows in old houses, rollshutters help reduce the window's U-factor by up to 40%.

Talius rollshutters and Habitat Screens™ were selected by the National Research Council of Canada for a comprehensive study on the energy efficiency of exterior solar shading versus interior solar shading. The study concluded that Talius products are the most efficient at:

- ✓ reducing heating and cooling energy use,
- ✓ the on-peak cooling power demand,
- ✓ the moisture condensation on the interior surfaces of windows in your home.

Contact Talius at 1-800-665-5550 for LEED certification and information.



Rollshutters reduce the risk of moisture condensation on interior window surfaces during the night in winter by keeping interior glass surfaces 4°C warmer than homes without rollshutters (NRCAN, 2009).



When closed at night, rollshutters reduce reat loss through the windows by 20% and reduce heating energy use by 4% compared to homes without rollshutters (NRCAN, 2009).

Technical Binder © 2020

Recommended Specification

ENERGY EFFICIENCY

Product and Installation Specifications

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Related Work

.1 Related work to be determined by project architect or owner's representative.

1.2 Scope of Work

.1 The work of this section covers the supply and installation of rollshutters and/or habitat screens™ called for on the drawings and herein specified.

.2 The Talius Authorized Dealer, or General Contractor, to provide all wood blocking and/or solid mounting surfaces required for a proper installation.

.3 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install all flashing for rollshutters and/or habitat screens panel boxes.

.4 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install exterior and/or interior finishing trim for the rollshutters and/or habitat screens™.

1.3 Quality Assurance

.1 Approved Manufacturer:
TALIUS
Head Office: PO Box 3279, Salmon Arm, BC V1E 4S1
Tel: 250-832-7777
Fax: 250-832-8577
Website: www.talius.com
E-mail: info@talius.com

1.4 Submittals

.1 Shop drawings: submit shop drawings showing details of rollshutters and/or habitat screens including curtains, guide rails, panel box housing, operators and other relevant hardware.

.2 Submit manufacturer's data sheets. Indicate specific rollshutter and/or habitat screen™ types, construction components material finishes and operators.

.3 Rollshutters and/or habitat screens™ are detailed on architectural drawings as scheduled. Sizes shown are nominal and confirmation by field measurement is required.

.4 Submit samples of standard colours.

1.5 Products Delivery, Handling and Storage

.1 Deliver materials to site in shipping crates and packing. Store off the ground on wood supports spaced to prevent damage. Store inside building under cover to prevent damage from weather or construction activities. Coordinate delivery with construction schedule to prevent loss or damage.

1.6 Operation and Maintenance

.1 Rollshutters and/or habitat screens™ are to be of maintenance free design.

1.7 Guarantee

.1 Manufacturer to provide a written warranty that all components are guaranteed against defects in material, design and workmanship for one year from date of installation for commercial and institutional installations and five years from the date of installation for residential installations. Installer to provide written guarantee that there will be no labour charge for warranty repairs for one year from date of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Rollshutters

.1 The Rollshutter curtain:

The Rollshutter curtain is to be made from individual rollformed aluminum profiles with an injected insulated hard foam core and shall have a cover width of 40 mm and a thickness of 9.0 mm. The minimum aluminum gauge is to be 0.33 mm. Finish being a polyurethane/polyamide topcoat with a dry film thickness of at least 0.03 mm. The minimum weight per square metre is to be 4.55 kg. Manufacturer's description: **SHIELD MINI.**

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

.2 Guide Rails:

The guide rails are to be heavy gauge aluminum extrusions fitted with two noise and weather insulating strips. All guide rails must have undergone a multiple stage chromate procedure and be painted with a baked-on paint. Guide rails to be acid, alkali and oil resistant. The guide rail is to be made of two snap-together parts that prevent unauthorized access to the mounting screws. Curtain penetration into the guide rail shall be at least 40 mm (1-9/16"). Manufacturer's description: **SAFE-40 RAIL**.

On Rollshutter sections where width dimensions exceed 3.05 m (120"), split the Rollshutter into two or more sections by means of a centre guide rail(s). Manufacturer's description: **SAFE CENTRE RAIL**.

.3 Sill:

If applicable, provide a 30 mm x 47 mm (1 1/8" x 1 13/16") U-shaped aluminum sill to hold the curtain securely in placed when closed. Manufacturer's description: **SAFE U-SILL**. Where the U-sill is exposed to weather, drill a minimum of two "weep" holes in the inside channel of the U-sill to allow for moisture drainage.

.4 Build-Up:

If applicable, provide heavy-gauge aluminum build-up underneath the guide rails, along the panel box top, panel box bottom, and sill. Unless otherwise specified, the width of the build-up is to be 35mm (1-3/8"), depth to be suitable to provide obstruction free operation of the Rollshutter curtain.

.5 Panel Box Housing:

Panel boxes are to be precision rollformed from 1.0 – 1.2mm (0.040" – 0.0472") aluminum with an electro-statically bonded and baked finish. Lower half of the panel box must be detachable for future servicing access. Panel box service lid to be secured with tamper-proof security screws on all panel boxes below 2.13m (7') off the ground. All panels to be delivered to jobsite covered with protective, adhesive plastic film to prevent scratching. The protective film is to be removed by installer after job completion. All panel box endplates to be manufactured by pressure die-casting procedure from high grade aluminum alloy. Endplates must be chromed and laminated with a resistant PVC surface. The panel box style to be 5-corner. Panel box sizes to suit Rollshutters dimensions.

.6 Colour Selections:

Unless otherwise indicated, items to be selected from manufacturer's standard colour range: white, beige, brown, black and silver.

- rollshutter curtain
- rollshutter curtain bottom profile
- guide rails
- sill
- aluminum build-up
- panel box housing

.7 Operation:

Unless otherwise indicated, the Rollshutters shall be electrically operated. Provide a tubular 120 VAC motor installed inside the shaft. The motor unit shall be constructed with solenoid brakes, thermal overload protection switch with automatic reset and enclosed, permanently lubricated bearings and gears. All electrical components to be C.S.A. and U.L. certified. Each motor unit shall be controlled by a momentary-contact, three position toggle switch. The switches are to fit standard electrical boxes. Switch locations as shown on drawings. The Wiring is per manufacturer's instructions and to local electrical code requirements.

Technical Binder © 2020

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

Supply and installation of electrical wiring (including drilling of wiring routing holes through mounting surfaces) mounting of supplied electrical switches, and the connection of all wiring to be performed by certified electricians.

.8 Locking Devices:

All rollshutters will be equipped with hanger locks constructed of corrosion resistant materials. Hanger locks are to be installed at sufficient intervals between shaft and curtain in order to prevent the curtains from being lifted by more than 40 mm (1 9/16") from the closed position, without the use of an operator. Talius hanger locks meet the requirements of European Standard EN 13659 and resist an upward force of 100 kg (220 lbs).

2.2 Habitat Screens

.1 The Habitat Screen curtain:

The Habitat Screen curtain is to be made from exterior, vinyl-coated polyester roller shade fabric, with a 28% polyester, 72% vinyl on polyester composition. The openness factor (O-F) is approximately 5%. The weight of the curtain is to be 522 g/m^2, 0.000742 lbs/inch^2, or 15.4 oz/yd^2. The thickness of the Habitat Screen curtain is to be 0.74 mm, 0.029 inch. The breaking strength of the Habitat Screen curtain is warp: 350 lbs/inch and fill: 235 lbs/inch. Each side of the Habitat Screen curtain must feature a #4.5 Coil zipper attached via heat weldable film and welding process. Standard fabric roll widths of 126", to minimize visible seams. Horizontal seaming of screen material is required when the height and width of the Habitat Screen exceeds the size of the fabric roll width.

Fire classification for Habitat Screen Fabric is:

- California Technical Bulletin 117 Sec. E. (CS-191-53)
- NFPA 101 (Class A Rating)
- IBC Section 903.1 (Class A Rating)

Manufacturer's description: **SUNTEX® 95.**

.2 Guide Rails:

The guide rails are to be heavy gauge aluminum extrusions fitted with a PVC guide rail insert. All guide rails must have undergone a multiple stage chromate procedure and be painted with a baked-on paint. Guide rails to be acid, alkali and oil resistant. The guide rail is to include ¼", 6.5 mm build-up to incorporate slide-on Talius aluminum build-up. Curtain penetration into the guide rail shall be at least 26 mm (1"). Manufacturer's description: **HABITAT SCREEN PRO GUIDE RAIL WITH EDGE RETENTION INSERT.**

.3 Bottom Profile:

The Habitat Screen™ Bottom Profile is to be made of two aluminum extrusions fitted together with a retaining channel for the screen fabric at the bottom. The extrusions are to be minimum 0.055" or 1.40 mm wall thickness and weighing 1.10 kg/lineal meter raw combined extrusion. The Bottom profile will be fitted with a weather insulating seal at the bottom. The Bottom Profile must allow for secure fitting of internal weight bars where required. The Bottom Profile must have undergone a multiple stage chromating procedure and be painted with baked-on paint. Bottom Profile to be acid, alkali, and oil resistant. The ends of the Bottom Profile must be capped off with a PVC caps.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

.4 Sill:

If applicable, provide a 22 mm x 42 mm (7/8" x 1-11/16") L-shaped aluminum sill for the Habitat Screen bottom profile to rest upon when closed. Manufacturer's description: **L-SILL**.

.5 Build-Up:

If applicable, provide heavy-gauge aluminum build-up underneath the guide rails, along the panel box top, and panel box bottom. Unless otherwise specified, the width of the build-up is to be 35 mm (1 3/8"), depth to be suitable to provide obstruction-free operation of the Habitat Screen curtain.

.6 Panel Box Housing:

Panel boxes are to be precision roll formed from 1.0 - 1.2 mm (0.040" - 0.0472") aluminum with an electro-statically bonded and baked finish. Lower half of the panel box must be detachable for future servicing access. Panel box service lid to be secured with tamper-proof security screws on all panel boxes below 2.13m (7') off the ground. All panels to be delivered to jobsite covered with protective, adhesive plastic film to prevent scratching. The protective film is to be removed by installer after job completion. All panel box endplates to be manufactured by pressure die-casting procedure from high grade aluminum alloy. Endplates must be chromed and laminated with a resistant PVC surface. The panel box style to be 5-corner. Panel box size is 125 mm, or 5".

.7 Colour Selections:

Unless otherwise indicated, items to be selected from manufacturer's standard colour range: white, beige, brown, black and silver.

- Habitat Screen™ curtain
- Habitat Screen™ bottom profile
- guide rails
- sill
- aluminum build-up
- panel box housing

.8 Operation:

Unless otherwise indicated, the Habitat Screens shall be electrically operated. Provide a tubular 120 VAC motor installed inside the shaft. The motor shall be constructed with an internal Radio Frequency

Receiver and electronically programmable limits. The motor unit shall be constructed with solenoid brakes, thermal overload protection switch with automatic reset and enclosed, permanently lubricated bearings and gears. The motor shall be controlled wirelessly by a solar powered RTS Sun Sensor. For service and building maintenance by district staff: Exterior Solaris RTS remotes required to allow for individual shade control and to allow for turning on/off sun sensors, to accommodate service and building maintenance needs.

All electrical components to be C.S.A. and U.L. certified.

The Wiring is per manufacturer's instructions and to local electrical code requirements.

Supply and installation of electrical wiring (including drilling of wiring routing holes through mounting surfaces), mounting of supplied electrical switches, and the connection of all wiring to be performed by the certified electricians.

Technical Binder © 2020

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 Installation

.1 Rollshutters, Habitat Screen and hardware as described herein shall be installed by approved Habitat Screen installers. Installers must be factory authorized and installation must proceed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

.2 The Rollshutter and Habitat Screen contractor shall provide written confirmation before commencing installation that its Workers' Compensation Board account is currently active and in good standing, and that all of its employees working on site are covered by the Habitat Screen contractor's WCB account.

.3 The Rollshutter and Habitat Screen contractor will supply and use mounting hardware suitable for the mounting surface application, including hollow-wall and concrete anchors when necessary. The mounting hardware size is to be a minimum of #8 x 2" Mounting hardware for the guide rails, build-up L-sills to be installed between 20 cm – 30 cm (8" – 12") on centres. The mounting hardware for the panel box to be installed between 40 cm – 50 cm (16" – 20") on centres, horizontally along the top inside corner of the panel box, and each screw head to be supplemented with a large flat washer to avoid tearing through the sheet aluminum. Each cast aluminum end plate on a panel box to be secured with one fastener to the mounting surface.

When installation into brick or concrete surfaces is necessary, mounting hardware to be used shall be Tapcon style of suitable diameter and length.

.4 Install Rollshutters and/or Habitat Screens plumb, true, square and level, free from distortion or defects affecting appearance or performance. Adjust and test moving parts to ensure smooth operation.

.5 Suitable exterior caulking to be applied by the Rollshutter and Habitat Screen contractor around the exterior perimeter of the completed Rollshutter and/or Habitat Screen installation to prevent infiltration of moisture, wind and debris behind the Habitat Screen when the curtain is fully closed.

.6 All work to be completed in a professional, safe and timely manner.

3.2 Clean-Up

.1 As the work proceeds and upon completion, clean up and remove from the site all rubbish and packages. Leave all Rollshutter, Habitat Screen and fixed panel parts clean.

3.3 Schedule

.1 As per the Jobsite Specification Addendum.

Technical Binder © 2020

Insect Protection Solutions

Talius Habitat Screens™ are an ideal solution for insect protection. In addition to providing superior sun protection and energy efficiency, Habitat Screens™ also greatly reduce the number of insects entering a home or outdoor living space.

Habitat Screens are the perfect solution for decks, patios or even garages. Enhance your client's outdoor lifestyle with a completely retractable screen room that provides insect protection. Anywhere you want privacy, insect reduction, comfort, and cooling shade: Habitat Screens™ are the answer.

Talius' unique edge retention system uses a zipper that keeps the screen in a track. This creates a barrier deterring insects entering a home or patio while the screen is in the down position. Installing Habitat Screens™ means that your clients are not forced inside during the evening hours because of annoying insects like mosquitos and wasps.

Habitat Screens™ are an ideal solution for cabins, homes and resorts located in rural locations where there are lots of mosquitos and other bugs. Habitat Screens™ allow your client to enjoy their outdoor living area without needing bug protection creams, chemicals, or candles.

When your Habitat Screens™ are not in use they easily retract into a 5" panel box using either manual or motorized operation. Habitat Screens™ are custom made for widths up to 19'2" and can be split to into multiple sections that are operated together.

TALIUS®

Technical Binder © 2020

Recommended Specification

INSECT PROTECTION

Product and Installation Specifications

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Related Work

.1 Related work to be determined by project architect or owner's representative.

1.2 Scope of Work

.1 The work of this section covers the supply and installation of Habitat Screens™ called for on the drawings and herein specified.

.2 The Talius Authorized Dealer, or General Contractor, to provide all wood blocking and/or solid mounting surfaces required for a proper installation.

.3 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install all flashing for Habitat Screen™ panel boxes.

.4 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install exterior and/or interior finishing trim for the Habitat Screens™.

1.3 Quality Assurance

.1 Approved Manufacturer:
TALIUS
Head Office: PO Box 3279, Salmon Arm, BC V1E 4S1
Tel: 250-832-7777
Fax: 250-832-8577
Website: www.talius.com
E-mail: info@talius.com

1.4 Submittals

.1 Shop drawings: submit shop drawings showing details of Habitat Screens including Thermoscreen material, guide rails, panel box housing, operators and other relevant hardware.

.2 Submit manufacturer's data sheets. Indicate specific Habitat Screen types, construction components material finishes and operators.

.3 Habitat Screens™ are detailed on architectural drawings as scheduled. Sizes shown are nominal and confirmation by field measurement is required.

.4 Submit samples of standard colours.

1.5 Products Delivery, Handling and Storage

.1 Deliver materials to site in shipping crates and packing. Store off the ground on wood supports spaced to prevent damage. Store inside building under cover to prevent damage from weather or construction activities. Coordinate delivery with construction schedule to prevent loss or damage.

1.6 Operation and Maintenance

.1 Habitat Screens™ are to be of maintenance free design.

1.7 Guarantee

.1 Manufacturer to provide a written warranty that all components are guaranteed against defects in material, design and workmanship for one year from date of installation for commercial and institutional installations and five years from the date of installation for residential installations. Installer to provide written guarantee that there will be no labour charge for warranty repairs for one year from date of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Habitat Screens

.1 The Habitat Screen™ curtain:

The Habitat Screen curtain is to be made from exterior, vinyl-coated polyester insect screening. The openness factor (O-F) is approximately 45%. The fabric is tear and

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

puncture resistant. The weight of the curtain is to be 283.5 g/m^2, 0.000403 lbs/inch^2, or 7.3 oz/yd^2. The thickness of the Habitat Screen™ curtain is to be 0.686 mm, 0.027 inch. The breaking strength of the Habitat Screen™ curtain is warp: 140 lbs/inch and fill: 112 lbs/inch. Each side of the Habitat Screen curtain must feature a #4.5 coil zipper attached via heat weldable film and welding process. Standard fabric roll widths of 120", to minimize visible seams. Horizontal seaming of screen material is required when the height and width of the Habitat Screen™ exceeds the size of the fabric roll width. Manufacturer's description: **TuffScreen®**

.2 Guide Rails:

The guide rails are to be heavy gauge aluminum extrusions fitted with a PVC guide rail insert. All guide rails must have undergone a multiple stage chromate procedure and be painted with a baked-on paint. Guide rails to be acid, alkali and oil resistant. The guide rail is to include ¼", 6.5 mm build-up to incorporate slide-on Talius aluminum build-up. Curtain penetration into the guide rail shall be at least 26 mm (1"). Manufacturer's description: **HABITAT SCREEN PRO GUIDE RAIL WITH EDGE RETENTION INSERT.**

.3 Bottom Profile:

The Habitat Screen™ Bottom Profile is to be made of two aluminum extrusions fitted together with a retaining channel for the screen fabric at the bottom. The extrusions are to be minimum 0.055" or 1.40 mm wall thickness and weighing 1.10 kg/lineal meter raw combined extrusion. The Bottom profile will be fitted with a weather insulating seal at the bottom. The Bottom Profile must allow for secure fitting of internal weight bars where required. The Bottom Profile must have undergone a multiple stage chromating procedure and be painted with baked-on paint. Bottom Profile to be acid, alkali, and oil resistant. The ends of the Bottom Profile must be capped off with a PVC caps.

.4 Sill:

If applicable, provide a 22 mm x 42 mm (7/8" x 1 11/16") L-shaped aluminum sill for the Habitat Screen bottom profile to rest upon when closed. Manufacturer's description: **L-SILL**.

.5 Build-Up:

If applicable, provide heavy-gauge aluminum build-up underneath the guide rails, along the panel box top, and panel box bottom. Unless otherwise specified, the width of the build-up is to be 35 mm (1 3/8"), depth to be suitable to provide obstruction-free operation of the habitat screen curtain.

.6 Panel Box Housing:

Panel boxes are to be precision roll formed from 1.0 - 1.2 mm (0.040" - 0.0472") aluminum with an electro-statically bonded and baked finish. Lower half of the panel box must be detachable for future servicing access. Panel box service lid to be secured with tamper-proof security screws on all panel boxes below 2.13 m (7') off the ground. All panels to be delivered to jobsite covered with protective, adhesive plastic film to prevent scratching. The protective film is to be removed by installer after job completion. All panel box endplates to be manufactured by pressure die-casting procedure from high grade aluminum alloy. Endplates must be chromed and laminated with a resistant PVC surface. The panel box style to be 5-corner. Panel box size is 125 mm, or 5".

Technical Binder © 2020

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

.7 Colour Selections:

Unless otherwise indicated, items to be selected from manufacturer's standard colour range: white, beige, brown, black and silver.

- Habitat Screen™ curtain
- Habitat Screen™ bottom profile
- guide rails
- sill
- aluminum build-up
- panel box housing

.8 Operation:

Unless otherwise indicated, the Habitat Screen™ shall be electrically operated. Provide a tubular 120 VAC motor installed inside the shaft. The motor shall be constructed with an internal Radio Frequency Receiver and electronically programmable limits. The motor unit shall be constructed with solenoid brakes, thermal overload protection switch with automatic reset and enclosed, permanently lubricated bearings and gears. The motor shall be controlled wirelessly.

All electrical components to be C.S.A. and U.L. certified. The Wiring is per manufacturer's instructions and to local electrical code requirements.

Supply and installation of electrical wiring (including drilling of wiring routing holes through mounting surfaces), mounting of supplied electrical switches, and the connection of all wiring to be performed by the certified electricians.

.8 Bug Brush:

The Habitat Screen bottom profile includes either 3/4" (19.05 mm) or 2" (50.8 mm) nylon slide in style bug brush along its length. The panel box includes a 1 1/2" (38.1 mm) nylon bug brush with aluminum extrusion installed along its length. Manufacturers description: **BUG BRUSH**

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 Installation

.1 Habitat Screen and hardware as described herein shall be installed by approved Habitat Screen installers. Installers must be factory authorized and installation must proceed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

.2 The Habitat Screen contractor shall provide written confirmation before commencing installation that its Workers' Compensation Board account is currently active and in good standing, and that all of its employees working on site are covered by the Habitat Screen contractor's WCB account.

.3 The Habitat Screen contractor will supply and use mounting hardware suitable for the mounting surface application, including hollow-wall and concrete anchors when necessary. The mounting hardware size is to be a minimum of #8 x 2" Mounting hardware for the guide rails, build-up L-sills to be installed between 20 cm – 30 cm (8" – 12") on centres. The mounting hardware for the panel box to be installed between 40 cm – 50 cm (16" – 20") on centres, horizontally along the top inside corner of the panel box, and each screw head to be supplemented with a large flat washer to avoid tearing through the sheet aluminum. Each cast aluminum end plate on a panel box to be secured with one fastener to the mounting surface.

When installation into brick or concrete surfaces is necessary, mounting hardware to be used shall be Tapcon style of suitable diameter and length.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

(continued)

.4 Install Habitat Screens plumb, true, square and level, free from distortion or defects affecting appearance or performance. Adjust and test moving parts to ensure smooth operation.

.5 Suitable exterior caulking to be applied by the Habitat Screen contractor around the exterior perimeter of the completed Habitat Screen installation to prevent infiltration of moisture, wind and debris behind the Habitat Screen when the curtain is fully closed.

.6 All work to be completed in a professional, safe and timely manner.

3.2 Clean-Up

.1 As the work proceeds and upon completion, clean up and remove from the site all rubbish and packages. Leave all Habitat Screen and fixed panel parts clean.

3.3 Schedule

.1 As per the Jobsite Specification Addendum.

Technical Binder © 2020

Vandalism Protection Solutions

Talius products offer the ultimate solution for vandalism protection and security concerns. Our products are reliable when you need to protect what is behind windows and deter crime. Talius rollshutters are the ultimate security solution. Strong, durable, and secure, our rollshutters create a solid barrier to prevent break-ins, vandalism, and crimes of opportunity.

Rollshutters

Talius rollshutters are the most effective security solution for homes, businesses, or institutions. Each of our rollshutters is designed to provide security and peace of mind and can be custom made to suit your exact requirements. Our rollshutters are completely retractable, so your client doesn't have to sacrifice their outside view. Choose between manual or motorized operation to ensure smooth, convenient use. Rollshutters are perfect for:

- ✓ Commercial buildings
- ✓ Residential buildings
- ✓ School buildings
- ✓ Modular buildings
- ✓ Cottages & vacation homes

Talius rollshutters are easy to operate, designed to prevent forced entry and have been tested to resist impact and extreme force. Consequently, our rollshutters also help to eliminate the lock down look of security bars which can really help boost moral for the occupants.

Protect the rollshutter with Talius **Anti-Graffiti coating.** Graffiti is an ugly property crime, and Talius can prevent it from costing money and ruining the look of your clients rollshutters. Talius has the ultimate solution to protect rollshutters from crimes of opportunity that will save your client time and money. Talius Anti-Graffiti coating is a highly cross-linked polyurethane coating designed for maximum surface protection. With outstanding resistance to chemicals and excellent colour retention, Talius anti-graffiti coating's highly abrasion resistant surface makes it an ideal choice for rollshutters installed in public areas. Benefits of Anti-Graffiti coating:

- ✓ Repel dirt and graffiti spray
- ✓ Save money and reduce cleanup costs
- ✓ Preserve your image
- ✓ Protect a wide range of substrates

Talius anti-graffiti topcoat reduces wash water usage and eliminates the need for harsh cleansers making it the ideal environmentally responsible choice.

Recommended Specification

VANDALISM PROTECTION

Product and Installation Specifications

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Related Work

.1 Related work to be determined by project architect or owner's representative.

1.2 Scope of Work

.1 The work of this section covers the supply and installation of rollshutters called for on the drawings and herein specified.

.2 The Talius Authorized Dealer, or General Contractor, to provide all wood blocking and/or solid mounting surfaces required for a proper installation.

.3 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install all flashing for rollshutter panel boxes.

.4 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install exterior and/or interior finishing trim for the rollshutters

1.3 Quality Assurance

.1 Approved Manufacturer:
TALIUS
Head Office: PO Box 3279, Salmon Arm, BC V1E 4S1
Tel: 250-832-7777
Fax: 250-832-8577
Website: www.talius.com
E-mail: info@talius.com

1.4 Submittals

.1 Shop drawings: submit shop drawings showing details of rollshutters including curtains, guide rails, panel box housing, operators and other relevant hardware.

.2 Submit manufacturer's data sheets. Indicate specific rollshutter types, construction components, material finishes, and operators.

.3 Rollshutters are detailed on architectural drawings as scheduled. Sizes shown are nominal and confirmation by field measurement is required.

.4 Submit samples of standard colours.

1.5 Products Delivery, Handling and Storage

.1 Deliver materials to site in shipping crates and packing. Store off the ground on wood supports spaced to prevent damage. Store inside building under cover to prevent damage from weather or construction activities. Coordinate delivery with construction schedule to prevent loss or damage.

1.6 Operation and Maintenance

.1 Rollshutters are to be of maintenance free design.

1.7 Guarantee

.1 Manufacturer to provide a written warranty that all components are guaranteed against defects in material, design and workmanship for one year from date of installation for commercial and institutional installations and five years from the date of installation for residential installations. Installer to provide written guarantee that there will be no labour charge for warranty repairs for one year from date of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Rollshutters

.1 The Rollshutter curtain:

The Rollshutter curtain is to be made from individual rollformed aluminum profiles with an injected super-hard resin foam core and shall have a cover width of 38 mm and a thickness of 9 mm. Minimum aluminum gauge to be 0.62 mm. Finish to be baked-on enamel with a dry film thickness of at least 0.05 mm. The minimum weight per square metre to be 8.0 kg. Manufacturer's description: **SAFE MINI**.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

.2 Guide Rails:

The guide rails are to be minimum 0.065" or 1.60 mm gauge aluminum extrusions fitted with two noise and weather insulating strips. All guide rails must have undergone a multiple stage pretreatment procedure and be painted with a baked-on paint. Guide rails to be acid, alkali and oil resistant. The guide rail is to be made of two snap-together parts that prevent unauthorized access to the mounting screws. Curtain penetration into the guide rail shall be at least 41 mm (1 5/8") for sections less than 1.83 m (72") in width and at least 66 mm (2 5/8") for sections over 1.83 m (72") in width. Manufacturer's description: **SAFE RAIL**, and **SAFE-40 RAIL** respectively.

On rollshutter sections where width dimensions exceed 3.05m (120"), split the rollshutter into two or more sections by means of a centre guide rail(s). Manufacturer's description: **SAFE CENTRE RAIL.**

.3 Sill:

If applicable, provide a 30 mm x 47 mm (1 1/8" x 1 13/16") U-shaped aluminum sill to hold the curtain securely in placed when closed. Manufacturer's description: **SAFE U-SILL**. Where the U-sill is exposed to weather, drill a minimum of two "weep" holes in the inside channel of the U-sill to allow for moisture drainage.

.4 Build-Up:

If applicable, provide heavy-gauge aluminum build-up underneath the guide rails, along the panel box top, panel box bottom, and sill. Unless otherwise specified, the width of the build-up is to be 35 mm (1 3/8"), depth to be suitable to provide obstruction-free operation of the rollshutter curtain.

.5 Panel Box Housing:

Panel boxes are to be precision roll formed from 1.0 - 1.2 mm (0.040" - 0.0472") aluminum with an electro-statically bonded and baked finish. Lower half of the panel box must be detachable for future servicing access. Panel box service lid to be secured with tamper-proof security screws on all panel boxes below 2.13m (7') off the ground. All panels to be delivered to jobsite covered with protective, adhesive plastic film to prevent scratching. The protective film is to be removed by installer after job completion. All panel box endplates to be manufactured by pressure die-casting procedure from high grade aluminum alloy. Endplates must be chromed and laminated with a resistant PVC surface. The panel box style to be 5-corner. Panel box sizes to suit Rollshutters dimensions.

.6 Colour Selections:

Unless otherwise indicated, items to be selected from manufacturer's standard colour range: white, beige, brown, black and silver.

- rollshutter curtain
- rollshutter curtain bottom profile
- guide rails
- sill
- aluminum build-up
- panel box housing.

.7 Operation:

Unless otherwise indicated, the Rollshutters shall be electrically operated. Provide a tubular 120 VAC motor installed inside the shaft. The motor unit shall be constructed with solenoid brakes, thermal overload protection switch with automatic reset and

Technical Binder © 2020

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

enclosed, permanently lubricated bearings and gears. All electrical components to be C.S.A. and U.L. certified. The motor unit shall be connected to a manual over-ride control in order to operate the rollshutter in case of power failure. A metal pin extrusion shall be connected to a stainless steel universal joint at a downward angle of at least 45 degrees. A long handle crank of at least 1450mm made from anodized aluminum shall be connected to the universal joint on the operating person's side. The crank shall have two joints and a wall mounted clip for storing when not in use. Color of the crank rod to be silver.

Each motor unit shall be controlled by a momentary-contact, recessed, three position key switch. Switches to fit standard electrical boxes. Coverplates to be polished steel with one-way security screws. Locations as shown on drawings.

The Wiring is per manufacturer's instructions and to local electrical code requirements. Supply and installation of electrical wiring (including drilling of wiring routing holes through mounting surfaces), mounting of supplied electrical switches, and the connection of all wiring to be performed by certified electricians.

.8 Locking Devices:

All rollshutters will be equipped with hanger locks constructed of corrosion resistant materials. Hanger locks are to be installed at sufficient intervals between shaft and curtain in order to prevent the curtains from being lifted by more than 40 mm (1 9/16") from the closed position, without the use of an operator. Talius hanger locks meet the requirements of European Standard EN 13659 and resist an upward force of 100 kg (220 lbs).

9. Anti-Graffiti Coating

All Talius rollshutter curtains, guide rails, sills and panel boxes shall be coated with Talius non-sacrificial anti-graffiti coating designed to allow for easy clean-up of graffiti from the exposed rollshutter surfaces. Talius Anti-Graffiti coating is a modified aliphatic-polyurethane coating with enhanced abrasion resistance to provide resistance to chemicals, abrasions and impact. It is a clear coat that provides a gloss finish over stock and custom colors, and offers color retention and a non-stick surface. Anti-Graffiti coating is applied with a dry film thickness of 1.0 – 2.0 mils (25-50 microns). Hardness: ASTM D3363, 2H. Solvent Resistance: ASTM D4752, 100 MEK rubs; NO failure. Abrasion Resistance: 1000 cycles CS-17, ASTM D4060, 32 mg loss. Impact Resistance: ASTM D2794, 40 in lbs; NO failure. Flexibility: ASTM D522, 1/8" mandrel blend; NO failure.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 Installation

.1 Rollshutters and hardware as described herein shall be installed by approved rollshutter installers. Installers must be factory authorized and installation must proceed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

.2 The rollshutter contractor shall provide written confirmation before commencing installation that its Workers' Compensation Board account is currently active and in good standing, and that all of its employees working on site are covered by the rollshutter contractor's WCB account

.3 The rollshutter contractor to supply and use suitable mounting hardware for the mounting surface application, including hollow-wall and concrete anchors, where necessary. Mounting hardware size to be a minimum of #8 x 2". Mounting hardware for the guide rails, build-up and U-sills to be installed between 20 cm – 30 cm (8" – 12") on centers. Mounting hardware for the panel box to be installed between 40 cm

PART 3 - EXECUTION

(continued)

– 50 cm (16" – 20") on centers, horizontally along the top inside corner of the panel box, and each screw head to be supplemented with a large flat washer to avoid tearing through the sheet aluminum. Each cast aluminum end plate on a panel box to be secured with one fastener to the mounting surface, two if the rollshutter curtain weight exceeds 22 kg (50 lbs). When installation into brick or concrete surfaces is necessary, mounting hardware to be used shall be Tapcon style of suitable diameter and length.

.4 Install Rollshutters plumb, true, square and level, free from distortion or defects affecting appearance or performance. Adjust and test moving parts to ensure smooth operation.

.5 Suitable exterior caulking to be applied by the rollshutter contractor around the exterior perimeter of the completed rollshutter installation to prevent infiltration of moisture, wind and debris behind the rollshutter when the curtain is fully closed.

.6 All work to be completed in a professional, safe and timely manner.

3.2 Clean-Up

.1 As the work proceeds and upon completion, clean up and remove from the site all rubbish and packages. Leave all rollshutter and fixed panel parts clean.

3.3 Schedule

.1 As per the Jobsite Specification Addendum.

Technical Binder © 2020



BUILT TO LAST

- Rollshutters
- Habitat Screens™
- Habitat Cable Guided Screens

PRODUCTS


TALIUS®

TALIUS®

Products
Overview

Talius Rollshutters

Talius rollshutters are the ultimate solution when you want to protect your windows and, more importantly, what is behind them. They are strong, secure, and durable. They glide easily into place when you need them and retract into a convenient overhead box when you don't. Our rollshutters come with either manual or motorized controls which ensure a smooth operation. And they can be tailored to harmonize with any exterior creating a truly cohesive look to the exterior of your home or business.

Rollshutters are installed on the exterior of buildings on windows and doors. They can be utilized in both domestic and commercial applications. They harmonize perfectly with your existing style and decor. When closed, they protect exposed glass, prevent forced entry and provide a strong barrier against crime. When retracted, you will enjoy a fully unobstructed view to the outside. For businesses and organizations, your rollshutters can also work to promote your corporate identity. Each is custom made and professionally installed. Choose from 5 standard colours (white, beige, brown, black and silver) or from over 1800 custom colour options. In addition, you can convert your product into a creative advertising medium by printing photo quality graphics directly on the rollshutter curtain.

Talius Habitat Screens™

Talius Habitat Screens™ are easy to see through and completely retractable. Perfect for homes, patios, gazebos, and more. Habitat Screens™ create a cool, comfortable, insect reduced environment that won't sacrifice your view. We like to think that Habitat Screens™ are like sunglasses for your home! Talius Habitat Screens™ are designed to provide superior solar protection, mitigate UV damage, optimize comfort, and provide daytime privacy.

Combine practicality with style. Habitat Screens™ are a practical alternative to traditional window treatments and blinds. Habitat Screens™ neatly retract into a 5" panel box and feature an innovative screen edge retention system that allows the screen to travel smoothly during operation and stops it from blowing out of the guide rails in windy conditions. Moreover, Habitat Screens™ are maintenance free and can be easily cleaned with a garden hose.

Habitat Screens™ are a stylish addition to any building and can easily compliment commercial, residential, and institutional properties. The sleek panel box and guide rail design is available in 5 standard colours (white, beige, brown, black and silver), or from over 1800 custom colours. Complimented by the high quality, unique, and innovative vinyl-coated polyester fabric specifically engineered for exterior applications, Habitat Screens™ become an extension of your home. Fabrics are available in three different wave densities (5%, 10%, and 45%) to provide you with the right look and the exact amount of shade to suit your needs. Talius also has the capability to split your Habitat Screens™ into multiple sections that can be operated together. Habitat Screens™ offer convenient operation with manual or motorized controls from inside your home. We also offer remote controls, sun sensors, and timers to optimize energy efficiency.

Products Overview *(continued)*

Talius Habitat Cable Guided Screens

Habitat Cable Guided Screens are an external roller shade system guided by stainless steel cables. Habitat Cable Guided Screens provides excellent control of heat and glare with fabrics that are specially formulated for use on exterior applications. The Habitat Cable Guided Screen system can be installed virtually anywhere, on residential and commercial projects. Habitat Cable Guided Screens are an ideal way to reduce heat gain, lower energy costs, provide glare control and optimize daylight.

The Habitat Cable Guided Screen System is encased in a weather protected aluminum housing with a heavy-duty bracket system, telescopic bottom bar with 5mm stainless steel cables with stainless steel anchors and attachment. All components are exterior rated and designed to withstand adverse weather conditions. The Habitat Cable Guided Screen System is available with motorized or manual operation and has an optional sun sensor to optimize energy efficiency.

TALIUS®

Products
Rollshutters

Table of Contents

- **Introduction to Talius Rollshutters** 1
- **Solutions and Applications** 2
- **Maximum Dimensions** 3
- **Mounting Options**
  - Width Dimensions (“A”) 4
  - Height Dimensions (“B”) 5
- **Panel Boxes** 6
- **Guide Rails** 7
- **Curtain Options** 9
  - HQ Macro 10
  - SHIELD Mini 13
  - SAFE Mini 16
  - SafeGuard End Retention Rail System with SAFE Mini Rollshutter Profile 19
  - SHIELD Standard 22
  - SAFE View 25
- **Multiple Section Rollshutters** 27
- **Paint Options** 28
- **Locking Options** 29
- **Storm Bars & Cross Bars** 31
- **Build-up and Sills**
  - Talius Sills 33
  - Build-Up 33
  - L-Shaped Build-Up 34
  - Build-Up Tubing 34
- **Operator Options**
  - Reverse Side Operators 36
  - Gear with Crank Rod 36
  - Motorized Operators 38
  - Standard Limit Motor Component Options 40
  - Important information about Talius Motor Operators for Standard Limit Motors 41
  - Switches for Somfy® RTS Motors 42
  - Somfy® RTS Operator Component Options 43
- **Tips for Integrating Rollshutters with Home Automation** 45

40 YEARS
Building solutions for the future

All prices are subject to change. © 2020

Enhance your experience

with Talius by visiting

mytalius.com

your comprehensive web portal populated with valuable information about Talius products and services.

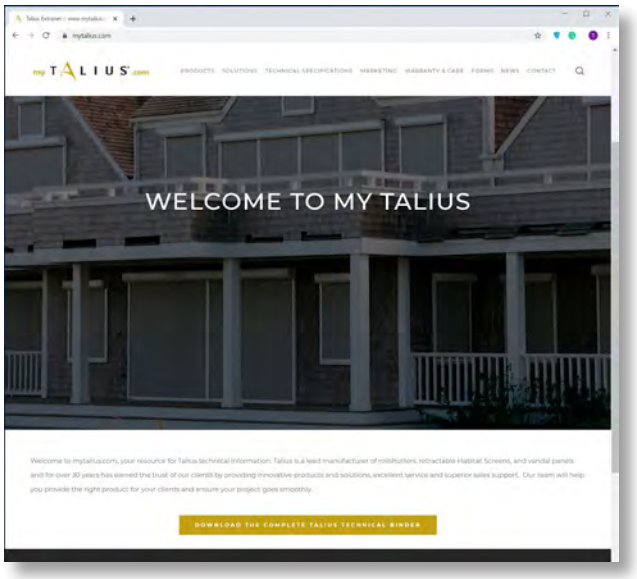
Developed with our dealers in mind, mytalius.com is your portal for technical information to help your project run smoothly, from planning to installation. Discover the many dynamic features and reap the profitable benefits that this easy-to-navigate, practical and informative resource centre has to offer. On mytalius.com, you will find all the information you will need to specify, sell and install Talius products with confidence.

Send architects or contractors you are working with here to find written specification, wiring diagrams or architectural drawings.

mytalius.com allows you to preview and download installation and technical information all at your fingertips.

Following is some of the information that you will discover on mytalius.com:

- General technical requirements
- Applications
- Component options
- Electrical component options
- Architectural drawings in both PDF and CAD formats
- Written specifications
- Wiring Diagrams
- Installation guides and tips
- Warranty Documents
- Talius Brochures
- Talius Logo
- Talius photo library
- Talius News



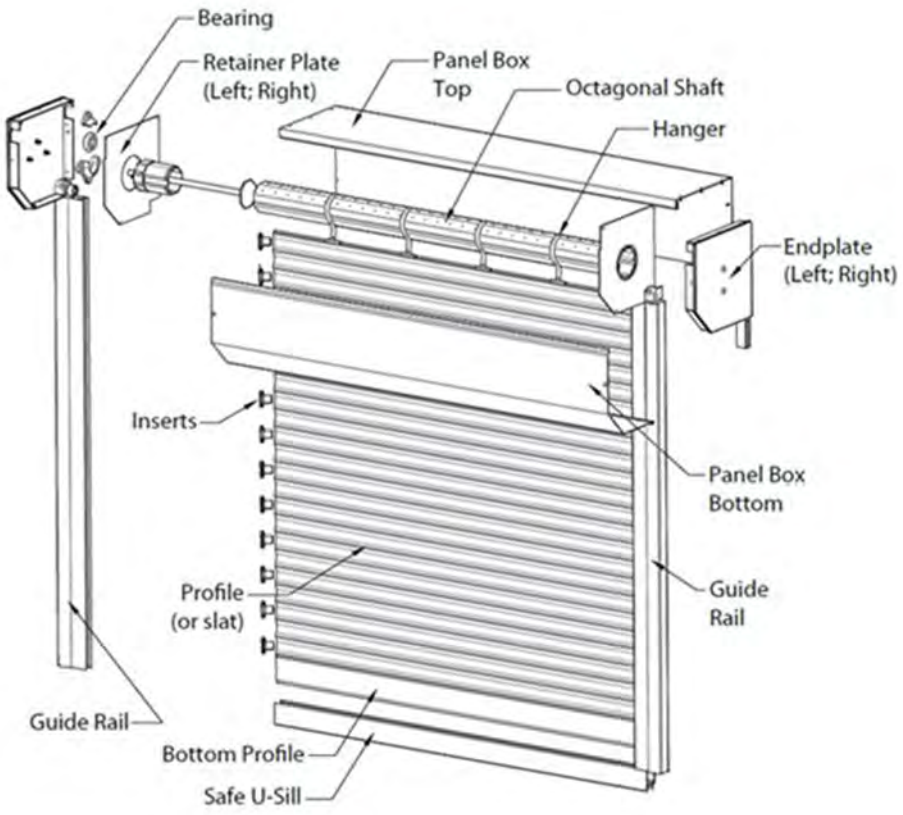
If you are looking for a specific shop drawing, photo, or other resource that you cannot find on mytalius.com, contact our knowledgeable Inside Sales Team at insidesales@talius.com. They can provide technical information, quotes, project advice and even help you pursue product alternate approval on project specifications.

To learn more about how we work together to grow your business with Talius, please contact us at 800-665-5550.

Technical Binder © 2020

Introduction to Talius Rollshutters

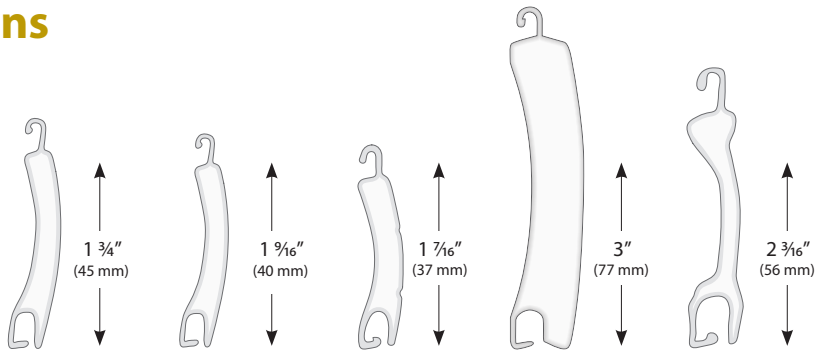
A rollshutter is a rolling door, window or opening cover that consists of many horizontal slats connected and guided by a rail system. Rollshutters are useful for security and vandalism protection, storm protection, sun protection and increasing energy efficiency. They can be used in residential, commercial, and institution applications. Rollshutters can be used in interior or exterior applications and are custom made to harmonize with each building.



Talius rollshutters are made from high quality aluminum making them lightweight but durable. Talius offers 6 different profile options in 5 standard colours or choose from over 1800 custom paint options to ensure the rollshutters match your project. Rollshutters can be operated by manual or motorized operation with a variety of control options. We offer a variety of security features ensuring you can find the right product to suit your needs.

Unique to Talius rollshutters is our Multi-interface battery back-up solution which has been designed to ensure operation of your rollshutters during a power failure or fire event.

Solutions and Applications



Rollshutter Profile	POLYURETHANE FOAM CORE HQ MACRO	POLYURETHANE FOAM CORE SHIELD MINI	SUPER HARD RESIN CORE SAFE MINI™	POLYURETHANE FOAM CORE AG-77	SAFE VIEW
SOLUTIONS					
Privacy	●	●	●	●	
Solar heat gain protection	●	●	●	●	
Insulation from the cold	●	●	●	●	
Noise reduction	●	●	●	●	
Rain protection	●	●	●	●	
Break-in protection			●	●	●
Vandalism protection		●	●	●	●
Hurricane, tornado, cyclone protection			●	●	
Visibility					●
APPLICATIONS					
Windows and doors	●	●	●	●	●
Cabanas		●	●	●	
Counter and cabinet enclosures	●	●	●	●	●
Rolling / garage doors				●	
Storefront			●	●	●
COLOURS					
White	●	●	●	●	
Silver	●	●	●	●	●
Beige	●	●	●		
Brown	●	●	●	●	
Black	●	●	●	●	
SIZES					
Maximum width (A2 dimension)	11 ft (3.35 m)	14 ft (4.27 m)	16 ft (4.88 m)	With Panel Box 21.3 ft (6.5 m) / Without Panel Box 22.97 ft (7 m)	Please refer to SAFE View section.
Maximum height (B1 dimension)	9 ft (2.74 m)	10 ft (3.05 m)	13 ft (3.96 m)	16.4 ft (5 m)	
Maximum area (A2 x B1)	80 ft² (7.43 m²)	100 ft² (9.30 m²)	140 ft² (13 m²)	215.28 ft² (20 m²)	

Technical Binder © 2020

Maximum Dimensions

The rollshutter unit must satisfy width, height and area maximum limitations. If the rollshutter unit consists of more than one curtain section, the limitations apply to each curtain section individually. Depending on the operator device selected, the maximum dimensions of the curtain section may be further reduced due to operator lifting capacity limitations.

Please note that the maximum area is not the product of maximum width and maximum height.

Profile	Maximum Curtain Width (A2)			Maximum Curtain Height (B1)			Maximum Area (A2 x B1)		
	Inches	Feet	Metre	Inches	Feet	Metre	Inches^2	Feet^2	Metre^2
HQ Macro	132	11	3.35	108	9	2.74	11,520^2	80^2	7.43^2
SHIELD Mini	168	14	4.27	120	10	3.05	14,400^2	100^2	9.30^2
SAFE Mini™	192	16	4.88	156	13	3.96	20,160^2	140^2	13.01^2
AG-77 (with Panel Box) (without Panel Box)	256 275	21.3 22.97	6.5 7	196	16.4	5	31,000^2	215.28^2	20.0^2
SAFE View	Please refer to SAFE View section for maximum sizes based on profile selection.								

Exceptions

The preceding limits are only valid in the most favourable conditions. The limitations are automatically reduced if the rollshutter is:

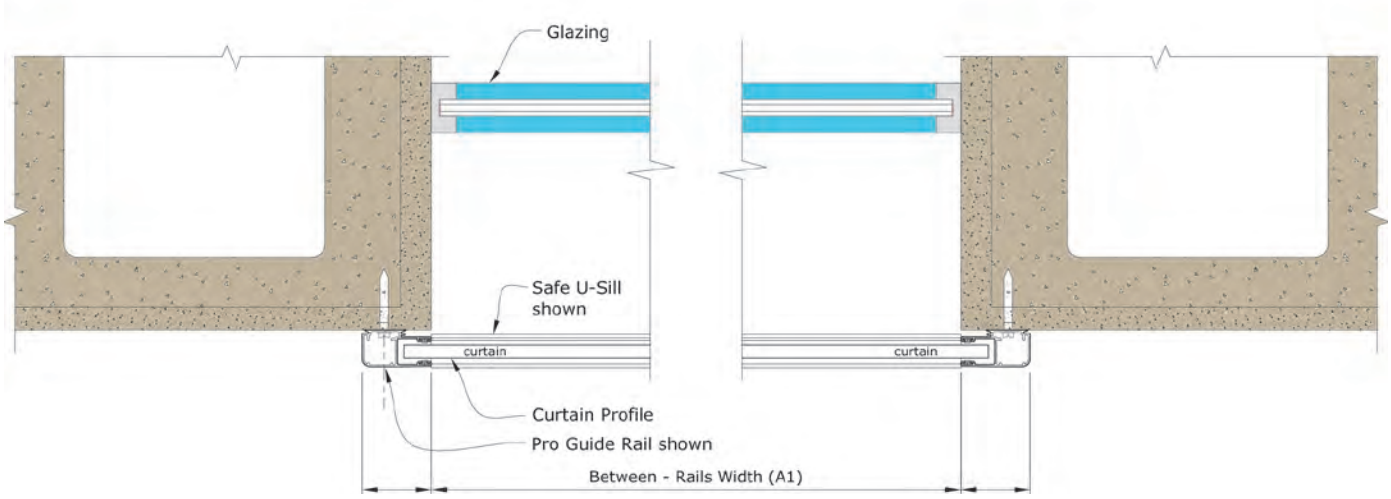
- Exposed to high winds
- Free standing, such as rolling doors or patio/under deck enclosures
- Used for security applications

Mounting Options

Width Dimensions (“A”)

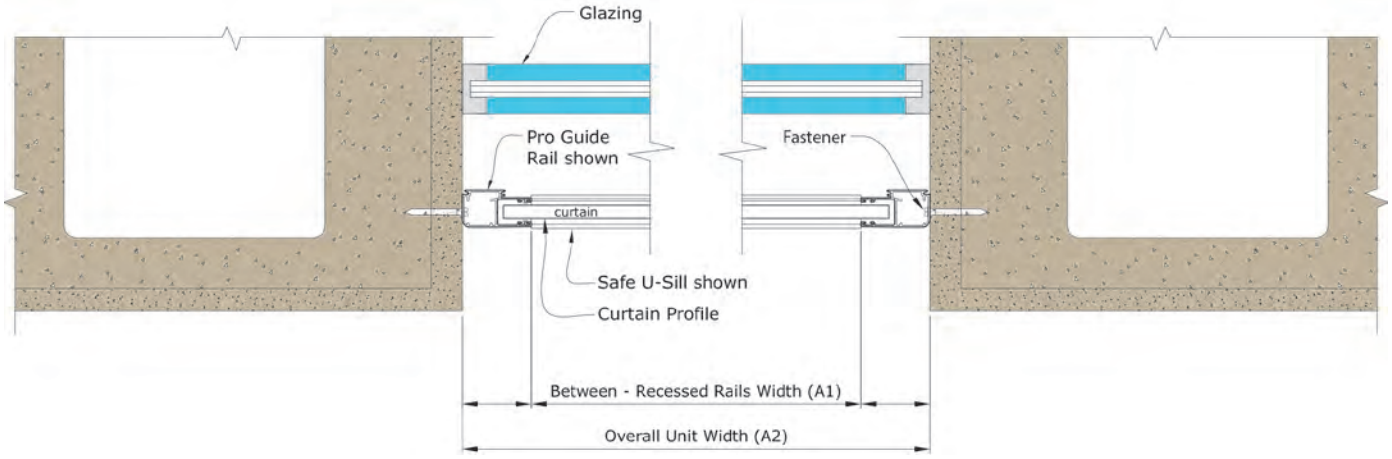
Face-of-Wall Installation

Use the generic face-of-wall mount diagram below to assist in determining your width dimensions. Regardless of which type of guide rails you select, provide the critical width dimension for each application; either the (A1) dimension if the guide rail must not encroach on the opening, or the (A2) dimension if the overall width of the rollshutter unit must fit between an obstruction.



Between Jamb Installation

Use the generic jamb mount diagram below to assist in determining your width dimensions. When mounting a rollshutter unit between window jambs or between posts (jamb mount), the critical dimension required is the overall rollshutter unit width (A2), which is typically equal to, or slightly less than, the opening width of the structure. You can mount most guide rails through the curtain channel and into the mounting structure as shown below, however for greater stability and generally easier installation, you could order the optional “L” Build-up for mounting the guide rails to the installation.

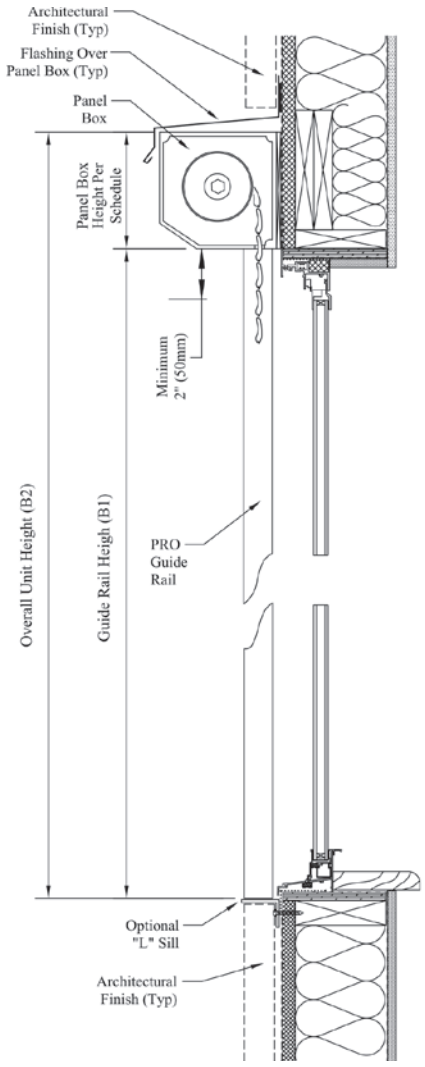


Mounting Options (continued)

Height Dimensions ("B")

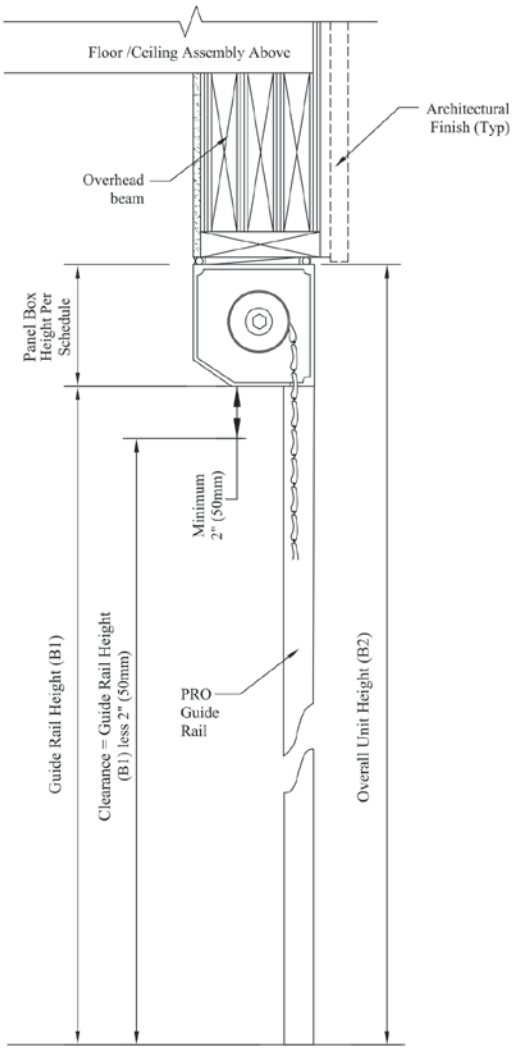
Face-of-Wall Installation

For rollshutters mounted face-of-wall over a window or similar opening, ensure that the guide rail height (B1) extends slightly below the opening, and a minimum of 2" (50 mm) above the opening, or the opening window sash. An optional "L" sill may be added below the guide rails, or an optional "U" sill may be added between the guide rails. If you are adding the "U" sill below the guide rails, add 1 ⅞" to the B dimension to allow the rollshutter to rest below the clear opening. Refer to the chart on the next page to determine the required minimum clearance above the top of the guide rails for the appropriate panel box.



Below-Header Installation

When mounting tight below a header, or other obstruction, the critical height dimension is the overall unit height (B2). With this mounting method, the clear opening height clearance which remains is equal to the overall unit height (B2) less the height of the appropriate panel box plus 2" (50 mm) for the curtain's bottom profile. Refer to the chart on the next page to determine the appropriate panel box size. In the generic diagram shown below, the vertical mounting structure posts have been omitted for clarity.



Panel Boxes



Clearance for Panel Boxes

Talius rollshutters roll up into a two part, 5 corner housing called a "panel box". Depending on the size of the rollshutter, these boxes range from 5" (125 mm) to 14 3⁄16" (360 mm).

Ensure sufficient room above the guide rails for the rollshutter panel box using the sizes provided on the table provided in the applicable curtain profile section.

- Panel box sizes may vary depending on the required shaft size.
- Hanger locks will affect the size of panel box required for a rollshutter unit.
- These heights are B1's (guide rail height). Please ensure you have taken into account the 2" upset for bottom profile clearance and/or the 1 7/8" down-set for u-sill if required

Panel box sizes:

125	150	165	180	205	230	250	300	360
5"	5 7⁄8"	6 ½"	7"	8"	9"	10"	12"	14 3⁄16"

If you have panel box room limitations at site, please contact us at 1-800-665-5550 with your project details for an accurate size.

Technical Binder © 2020

Guide Rails

Talius has various rail options for rollshutters chosen based on the application and what curtain profile is being used on the project.

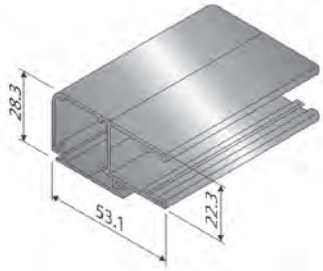
For general applications where security is not a concern, Talius recommends the **PRO** series rail. These rails are a one-part rail system that are generally used for interior applications or residential projects where the rollshutter is being used for solar protection.

For increased security, Talius recommends the **SAFE** series rail. The safe rail is a two-part rail that actively hides the fasteners from the outside once the installation process is complete. The cap prevents tampering with the fasteners once installed, increasing the security of the shutter.

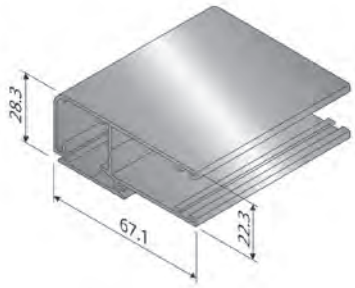
For rollshutters that are wider than 6' or need increased security or wind load protection, Talius recommends the **PRO-40**, and **SAFE-40**. These rails come with a wider channel which increases the amount of penetration into the rail channel by the curtain profiles. This decreases the chance that the curtain may be forced out of the rail system by a persistent burglar or high winds. The PRO and SAFE series rails are available for the HQ Macro, SHIELD Mini and SAFE Mini profiles.

The Talius **SafeGuard End Retention System** is designed for maximum strength and resistance against both positive and negative forces associated with high wind load and burglar attempts for use with our SAFE Mini profile only. It features the Talius SafeGuard Rail with a unique wind-lock channel, a special end retention insert with wind-lock, and an optional reinforced bottom profile.

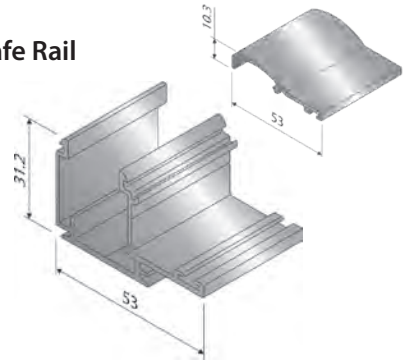
Pro Rail



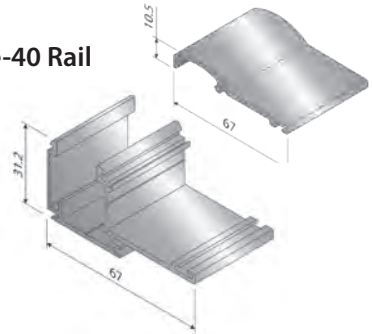
Pro-40 Rail



Safe Rail



Safe-40 Rail



SafeGuard



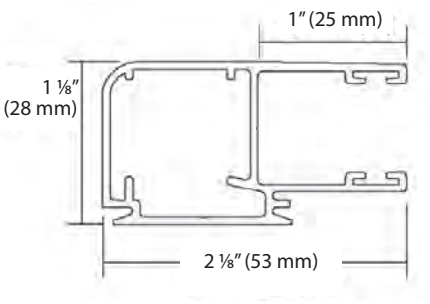
For all rollshutters with an AG-77 curtain, the **GR-100** rail is used. For SAFE View rollshutters, the **GRM-66** or the **GR-75** rail is used (see next page).

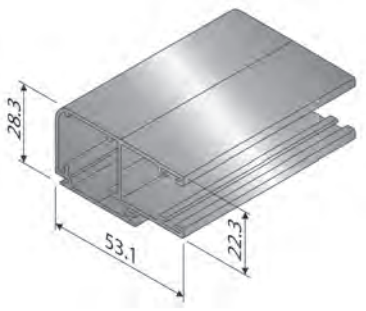
Guide Rails *(continued)*

Pro

Includes ¼" (6.5mm) build-up.

For curtain widths under 6' (1.83m) on general exterior applications, and for widths under 10' (3.05) on general interior applications. For applications requiring increased security or wind protection select the PRO-40 or SAFE-40 guide rails.

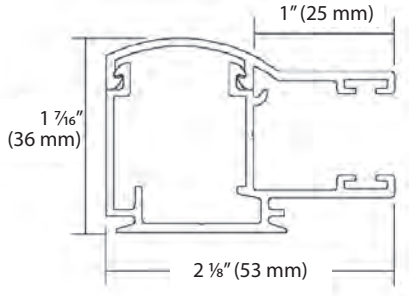


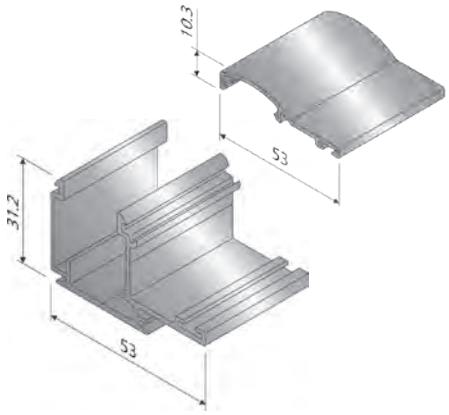


Safe

Includes ¼" (6.5mm) build-up.

For curtain widths under 6' (1.83m) on general exterior applications, and for widths under 10' (3.05) on general interior applications. For applications requiring increased security or wind protection select the PRO-40 or SAFE-40 guide rails.

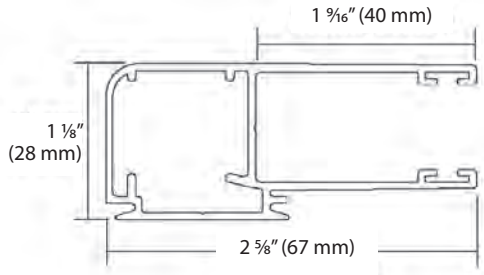


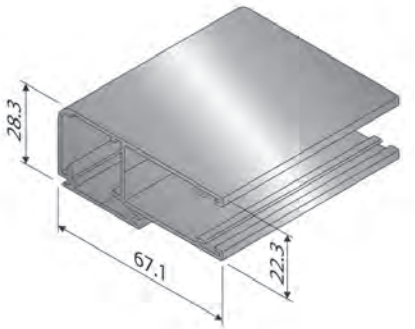


Pro-40

Includes ¼" (6.5mm) build-up.

For increased wind load protection. Should generally be chosen when curtain widths exceed 6' (1.83m) on exterior applications, and for widths over 10' (3.05m) on interior applications.

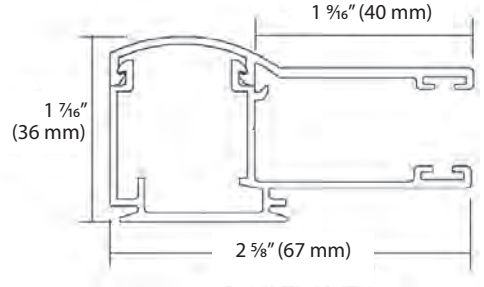


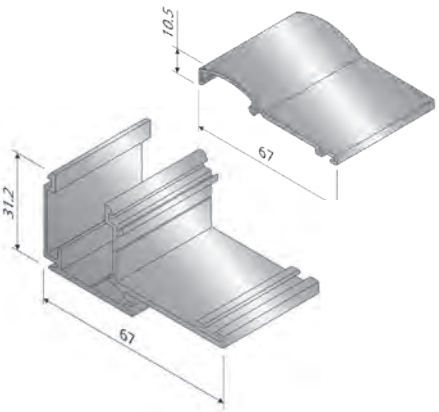


Safe-40

Includes ¼" (6.5mm) build-up.

For increased security and wind load protection. Should generally be chosen when curtain widths that exceed 6' (1.83m) on exterior applications, and for widths over 10' (3.05m) on interior applications.





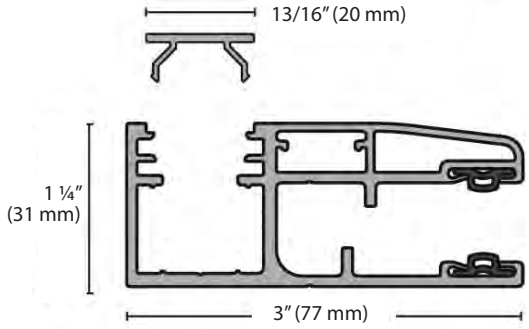
Technical Binder © 2020

Guide Rails *(continued)*

SafeGuard

For maximum security and maximum wind load protection.

Should be chosen when the application requires the strongest security solution possible or if the application is in a windy location.



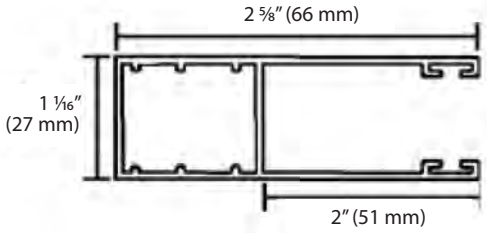


GRM-66

For use with SAFE View rollshutters.

The unit size and rollup diameter will determin the panel box size which will also determin which rail size is required.

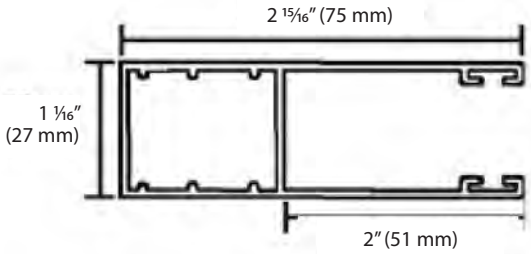
Talius will determin this for you.





GR-75

For use with SAFE View rollshutters.

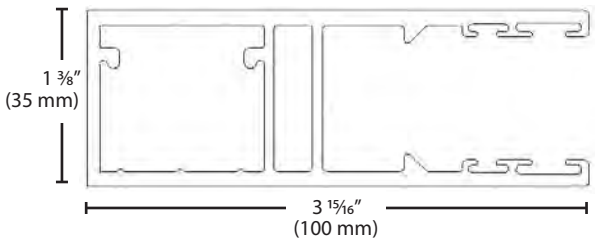


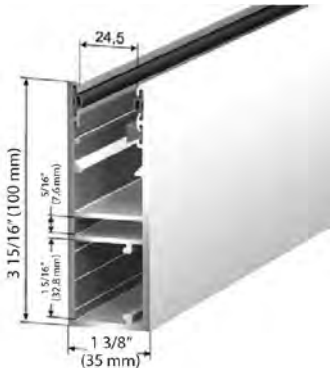


GR-100

For use with AG-77 rollshutters.

Designed to provide superior strength for wide openings.





Curtain Options

HQ Macro, SHIELD Mini, SAFE Mini & AG-77



Overview

HQ Macro

A light-duty, roll-formed aluminum profile with an insulated core and tough enamel finish. Typically used in residential applications for shading, privacy, cold and heat protection, and noise reduction. Typically used in commercial applications for privacy on relatively narrow spaces where security is not needed.

SHIELD Mini

A medium-duty, roll-formed aluminum profile with a hard foam core, improved dent resistance, and very durable polyurethane/polymide top coat. Typically used in residential applications for shading, privacy, cold and heat protection, noise reduction, and vandalism protection. Typically used in commercial applications for counter enclosures, cabinets and storage areas for privacy, visual appearance, vandalism protection.

SAFE Mini

A heavy-duty, roll-formed aluminum profile with super-hard resin core and tough enamel finish. Typically used in residential and commercial applications for high wind and storm protection and interior and exterior high-security applications.

AG-77

A larger, more robust roll-formed aluminum profile with a polyurethane foam core and tough enamel finish. This profile meets EN12424 wind load resistance Class 4 for units up 14.26 m^2, Class 3 for units between 14.25 m^2 and 18.3m^2, and Class 2 for units between 18.3 m^2 and 20 m^2 . The AG-77 profile also provides increased energy-efficiency with a higher R value than our other rollshutter profiles.

Typically used in residential and commercial projects for medium to high security and for storm protection. Commonly used for large window and door protection, garage doors, counter enclosures, storage areas, and for rolling door applications.

SAFE View

An extruded aluminum profile with two profile types available – grille and perforated. Typically used in commercial applications when both high security and visibility or light-transmittance are needed.



Grille 56



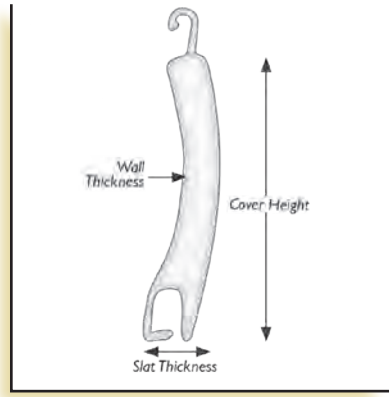
Perforated 56

Technical Binder © 2020

Curtain Options (continued)

HQ Macro

A light duty, roll-formed aluminum profile with an insulated core and tough enamel finish.



Typical Applications and Solutions:

- Residential applications for shading, privacy, cold and heat protection, and noise reduction
- Commercial applications for closing off counter pass-through areas with relatively narrow openings for privacy and/or visual appearance, and where security is not a major objective

Specifications:

Cover Height	Slat Thickness	Wall Thickness	Number of Slats per Height	Weight per Area	Finish	Core Material
1 ¾″	3/8″	0.0142″	0.605/inch	0.00567 lbs/inch^2	Enamel 0.0020″	Polyurethane Foam
45 mm	9 mm	0.36 mm	23.8/m	4.0 kg/m^2	Enamel 0.05 mm	

Size Limitations:

Maximum Width (A2)			Maximum Height (B1)			Maximum Area (A2 x B1)		
Metre	Feet	Inches	Metre	Feet	Inches	Metre^2	Feet^2	Inch^2
3.35	11	132	2.74	9	108	7.44^2	80^2	11,520^2

You must comply with all three maximums. Do not exceed any one of them. Maximums are automatically reduced if the rollshutter is exposed to high winds, must satisfy stringent security requirements or is freestanding, such as in the case of a patio enclosure.

Curtain Options *(continued)*

HQ Macro *(continued)*

Panel Box Limitations

Heights shown are guide rail heights (B1). Ensure sufficient room above the guide rails for the rollshutter panel box. In addition, the curtain's bottom profile protrudes approximately 2" (50mm) below the bottom of the panel box when the curtain is fully rolled up. Therefore, measure the rollshutter purposely high enough to clear any opening window or door parts, or tops of counter enclosures.

HQ MACRO	40 Shaft		60 Shaft		70 Shaft		40 Shaft		60 Shaft	
Panel Box	BI UNIT MEASUREMENT						BI UNIT MEASUREMENT WHEN USING HANGER LOCKS			
	Inch	Metre	Inch	Metre	Inch	Metre	Inch	Metre	Inch	Metre
125	27	.70	30	.77	24	.61	27	.70	18	.46
150	52	1.33	47	1.19	47	1.19	52	1.33	44	1.13
165	67	1.70	62	1.59	62	1.59	66	1.70	61	1.55
180	85	2.16	80	2.03	80	2.03	85	2.16	79	2.01
205	114	2.90	117	2.98	117	2.98	109	2.77	101	2.57
230	167	4.25	164	4.17	162	4.13	151	3.86	144	3.68
250	194	4.95	190	4.83	190	4.83	194	4.95	172	4.37
300	307	7.80	305	7.75	282	7.16	266	6.76	257	6.53

This chart is intended to be a reference guide only. If you have headroom limitations on site, please contact our Inside Sales team with your site details for an accurate sizing.

Technical Binder © 2020

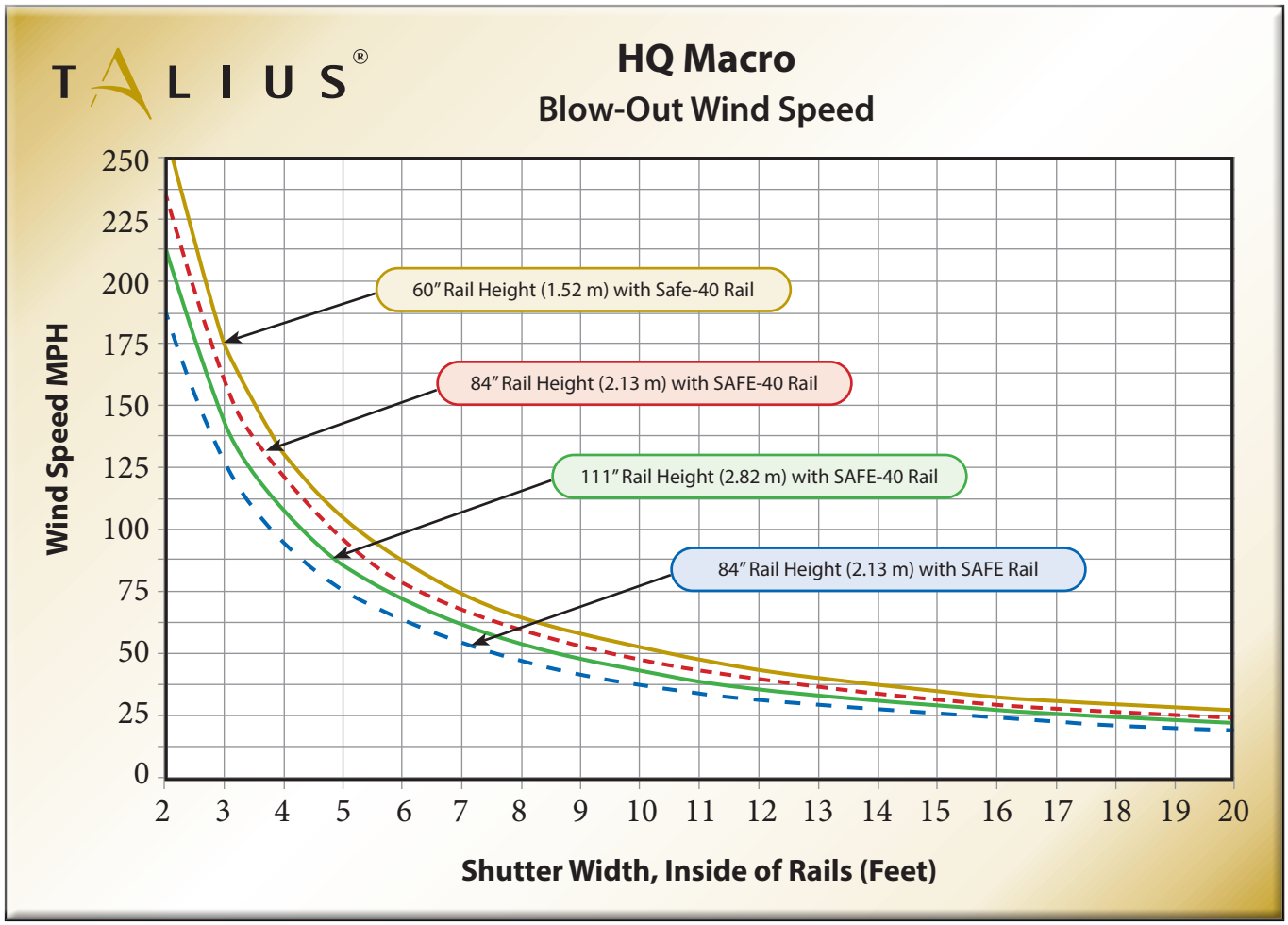
Curtain Options *(continued)*

HQ Macro (continued)

Wind Load Information

The graph below shows blow-out wind speed for unprotected, free-standing rollshutter curtains. Where rollshutters cover windows and doors you may expect considerably better performance due to the protection offered by the overall wall surface.

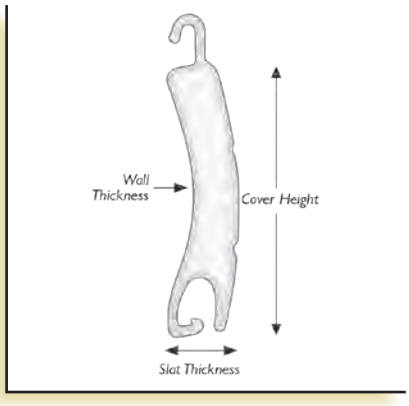
Testing was done at the curtain heights stated in the graph. Performance of the actual rollshutter will improve slightly if the application is lower in height than the tested unit. Conversely, performance will decrease slightly if your actual rollshutter is taller than the tested unit.



Curtain Options (continued)

SHIELD Mini

A medium duty, roll-formed aluminum profile with a hard foam core, improved dent resistance, and very durable polyurethane/polymide top coat.



Typical Applications and Solutions

- Wide variety of residential applications for shading, privacy, cold and heat protection, noise reduction, and vandalism protection.
- Wide variety of commercial applications including over windows and doors, and for closing off counter pass-through areas, cabinets and storage areas for privacy and/or visual appearance, and for vandalism protection.
- Choose SHIELD Mini when the curtain covers a rather wide, yet relatively low opening and when moderate security is desired.

Specifications:

Cover Height	Slat Thickness	Wall Thickness	Number of Slats per Height	Weight per Area	Finish	Core Material
1 9⁄16″	3/8″	0.0130″	0.64/inch	0.0071 lbs/inch^2	Enamel 0.0012″	Polyurethane Foam
40 mm	9 mm	0.33 mm	25/m	5.0 kg/m^2	Enamel 0.03 mm	

Size Limitations:

Maximum Width (A2)			Maximum Height (B1)			Maximum Area (A2 x B1)		
Metre	Feet	Inches	Metre	Feet	Inches	Metre^2	Feet^2	Inch^2
4.27	14	168	3.05	10	120	9.30^2	100^2	14,400^2

You must comply with all three maximums. Do not exceed any one of them. Maximums are automatically reduced if the rollshutter is exposed to high winds, must satisfy stringent security requirements or is freestanding, such as in the case of a patio enclosure.

Technical Binder © 2020

Curtain Options *(continued)*

SHIELD Mini *(continued)*

Panel Box Limitations

Heights shown are guide rail heights (B1). Ensure sufficient room above the guide rails for the rollshutter panel box. In addition, the curtain's bottom profile protrudes approximately 2" (50mm) below the bottom of the panel box when the curtain is fully rolled up. Therefore, measure the rollshutter purposely high enough to clear any opening window or door parts, or tops of counter enclosures.

SHIELD MINI	40 Shaft		60 Shaft		70 Shaft		40 Shaft		60 Shaft		70 Shaft	
Panel Box	BI UNIT MEASUREMENT						BI UNIT MEASUREMENT WHEN USING HANGER LOCKS					
	Inch	Metre	Inch	Metre	Inch	Metre	Inch	Metre	Inch	Metre	Inch	Metre
125	25	.64	25	.64			25	.64	18	.46		
150	53	1.35	42	1.07	38	.97	53	1.35	40	1.02		
165	64	1.65	57	1.47	48	1.22	64	1.65	48	1.22	40	1.04
180	85	2.16	75	1.93	66	1.68	83	2.11	66	1.68	59	1.52
205	105	2.67	96	2.46	94	2.39	105	2.67	94	2.39	87	2.23
230	133	3.38	120	3.05	120	3.05	133	3.38	120	3.05	122	3.12
250	179	4.57	164	4.19	164	4.19	179	4.57	164	4.19	151	3.86
300	244	6.22	244	6.22	240	6.10	244	6.22	240	6.10	235	5.97

This chart is intended to be a reference guide only. If you have headroom limitations on site, please contact our Inside Sales team with your site details for an accurate sizing.

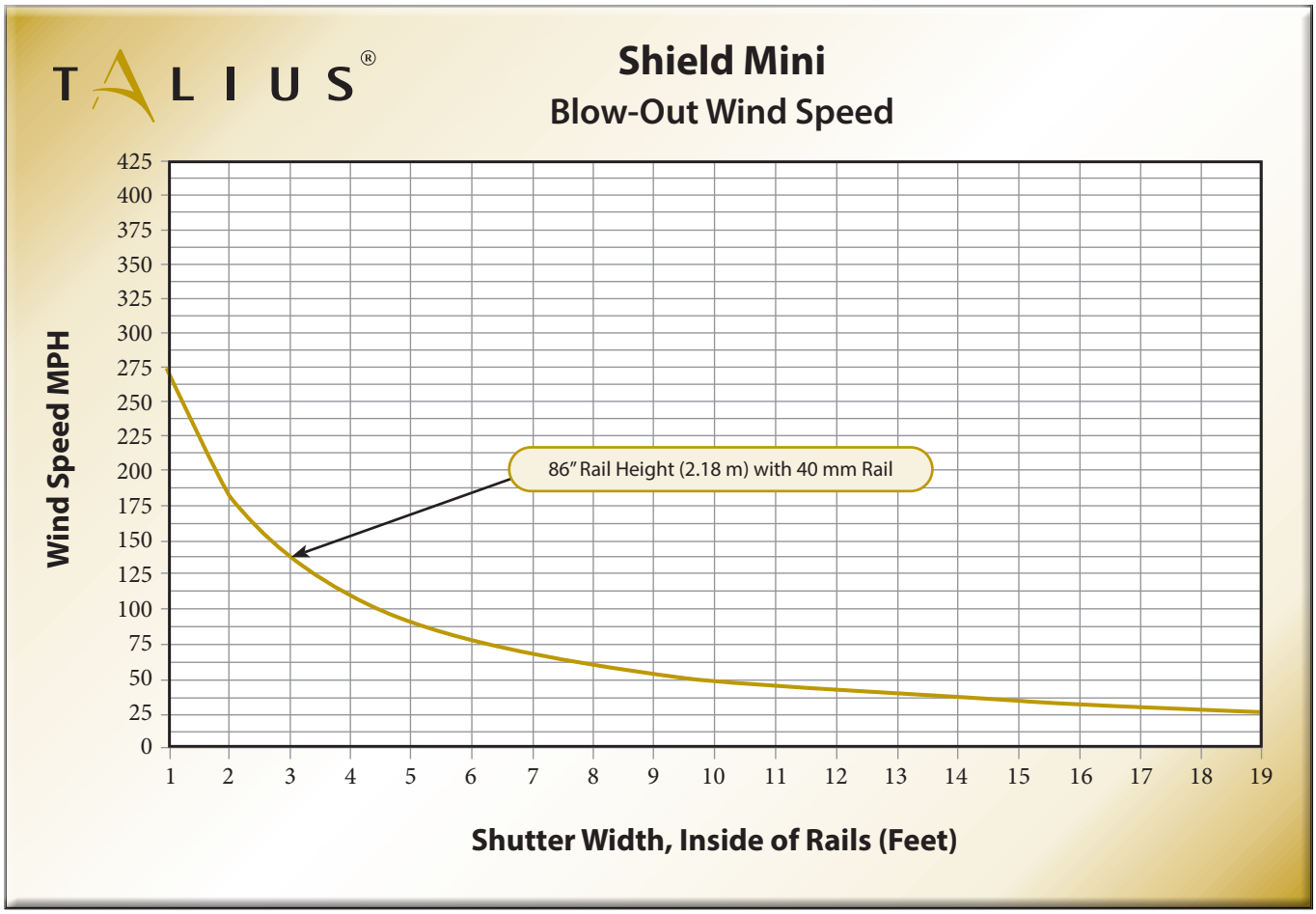
Curtain Options *(continued)*

SHIELD Mini *(continued)*

Wind Load Information

The graph below shows blow-out wind speed for unprotected, free-standing rollshutter curtains. Where rollshutters cover windows and doors you may expect considerably better performance due to the protection offered by the overall wall surface.

Testing was done at the curtain heights stated in the graph. Performance of the actual rollshutter will improve slightly if the application is lower in height than the tested unit. Conversely, performance will decrease slightly if your actual rollshutter is taller than the tested unit.

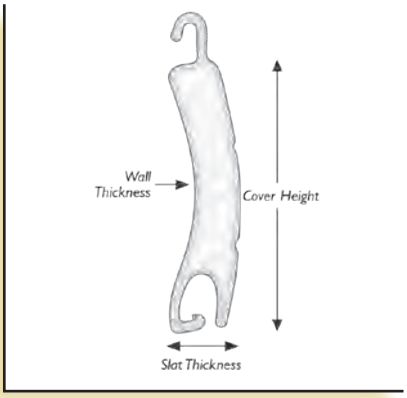


Technical Binder © 2020

Curtain Options (continued)

SAFE Mini™

A heavy-duty, roll-formed aluminum profile with a super-hard resin core and tough enamel finish.



Typical Applications and Solutions

- Residential and Commercial window and door applications for high wind, storm and hurricane protection. Also provides excellent protection against cold and heat.
- Commercial and residential high-security applications including window and door protection, security for counter enclosures, storage areas and tobacco, liquor, computer, electronics or medical filing cabinets.

Specifications:

Cover Height	Slat Thickness	Wall Thickness	Number of Slats per Height	Weight per Area	Finish	Core Material
1 7⁄16″	3/8″	0.0244″	0.668/inch	0.0114 lbs/inch^2	Enamel 0.0020″	Polyurethane Hard Resin
37 mm	9 mm	0.62 mm	26.3/m	8.0 kg/m^2	Enamel 0.05 mm	

Size Limitations:

Maximum Width (A2)			Maximum Height (B1)			Maximum Area (A2 x B1)		
Metre	Feet	Inches	Metre	Feet	Inches	Metre^2	Feet^2	Inch^2
4.88	16	192	3.96	13	156	13.0^2	140^2	20,160^2

You must comply with all three maximums. Do not exceed any one of them. Maximums are automatically reduced if the rollshutter is exposed to high winds, must satisfy stringent security requirements or is freestanding, such as in the case of a patio enclosure.

Curtain Options *(continued)*

SAFE Mini™ *(continued)*

Panel Box Limitations

Heights shown are guide rail heights (B1). Ensure sufficient room above the guide rails for the rollshutter panel box. In addition, the curtain's bottom profile protrudes approximately 2" (50mm) below the bottom of the panel box when the curtain is fully rolled up. Therefore, measure the rollshutter purposely high enough to clear any opening window or door parts, or tops of counter enclosures.

SAFE MINI	40 Shaft		60 Shaft		70 Shaft		102 Shaft		40 Shaft		60 Shaft		70 Shaft	
Panel Box	BI UNIT MEASUREMENT								BI UNIT MEASUREMENT WHEN USING HANGER LOCKS					
	Inch	Metre	Inch	Metre	Inch	Metre	Inch	Metre	Inch	Metre	Inch	Metre	Inch	Metre
125	20	.53	20	.53	20	.53			20	.53	18	.46		
150	45	1.16	45	1.16	35	.89			45	1.16	42	1.07		
165	59	1.52	59	1.52	53	1.37			59	1.52	50	1.27	42	1.07
180	75	1.91	72	1.83	68	1.75	40	1.04	75	1.91	64	1.63	61	1.56
205	105	2.68	101	2.57	88	2.25	70	1.80	105	2.68	100	2.54	87	2.23
230	138	3.52	125	3.18	125	3.18	103	2.62	138	3.52	125	3.18	124	3.15
250	172	4.37	161	4.10	161	4.10	128	3.26	172	4.37	161	4.10	159	4.06
300	270	6.86	261	6.65	246	6.25	203	5.16	270	6.86	261	6.65	235	5.97

This chart is intended to be a reference guide only. If you have headroom limitations on site, please contact our Inside Sales team with your site details for an accurate sizing.

Technical Binder © 2020

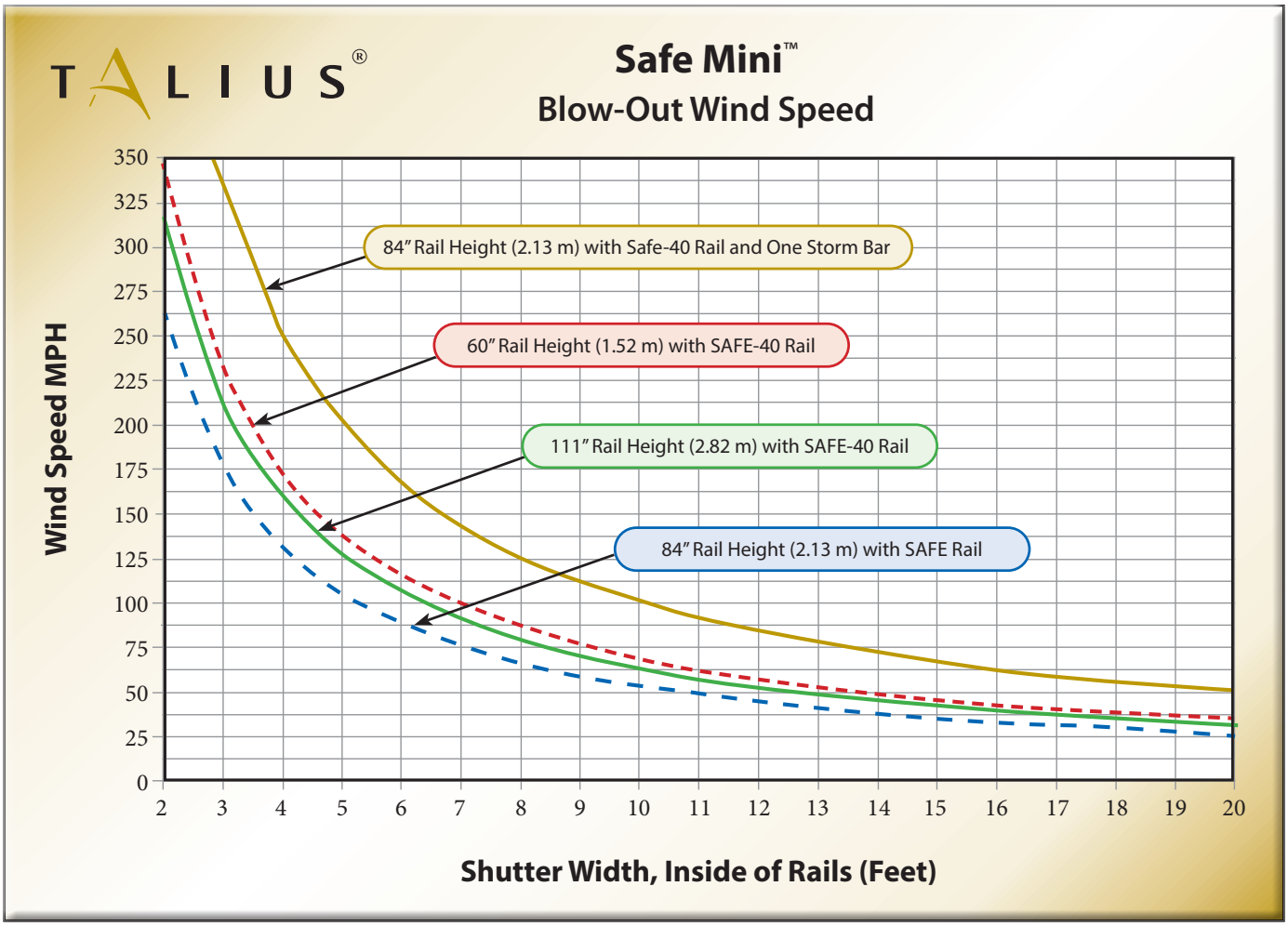
Curtain Options *(continued)*

SAFE Mini™ (continued)

Wind Load Information

The graph below shows blow-out wind speed for unprotected, free-standing rollshutter curtains. Where rollshutters cover windows and doors you may expect considerably better performance due to the protection offered by the overall wall surface.

Testing was done at the curtain heights stated in the graph. Performance of the actual rollshutter will improve slightly if the application is lower in height than the tested unit. Conversely, performance will decrease slightly if your actual rollshutter is taller than the tested unit.



Curtain Options (continued)

SAFE Mini™ with

SafeGuard End Retention Rail System



The Talius SafeGuard End Retention System is designed for use with our SAFE Mini profile only. It features the Talius SafeGuard Rail with a unique wind-lock channel, a special end retention insert with wind-lock, and an optional reinforced bottom profile.

The SafeGuard system provides increased strength and resistance against both positive and negative forces associated with high wind load and burglar attempts. For applications where break-in attempts are frequent, this system is virtually impenetrable and for applications where high winds and tropical storms are common, the SafeGuard End Retention system will ensure the greatest protection.

Burglar Certification

The SafeGuard End Retention System has been tested in Europe for high-security applications and has achieved an RC2 certification for Burglar Resistance under European Standard EN1627.

The European Standard EN1627 encompasses several resistance classes which are based on the type of tools used to simulate a break-in and the length of time measured to succeed in gaining entry. Qualifying for the RC2 certification is very significant since there is no similar rating system in North America for rollshutters, making the European Standard the only industry benchmark.

The SafeGuard End Retention System was able to achieve this certification due to the combination of the additional wind-lock incorporated into the end retention insert, the unique wind-lock channel within the SafeGuard rail, and the reinforced bottom profile.

Optional Bottom Profile

The SafeGuard reinforced bottom profile is designed to reduce deflection by providing greater strength to the rollshutter curtain. It should be noted that testing for the RC2 certification was performed using all SafeGuard components. Therefore, if you choose to opt out of the reinforced bottom profile, the unit can not be deemed an RC2 certified product. Talius recommends selecting the SafeGuard bottom profile for applications intended to combat strong winds or where high security is required.

When the reinforced bottom profile is not the preferred choice, the rollshutter unit will be supplied with the Talius regular bottom profile.

Typical Applications and Solutions

- Residential, commercial and institutional window and door applications for high-security, wind, storm and hurricane protection.
- Ideal for garage doors, patio enclosures or any location where no structural support exists behind the rollshutter curtain.
- May also be used to secure counter enclosures, storage areas and tobacco, liquor, computer, electronics or medical filing cabinets.
- Provides an energy-efficient solution to lower on demand energy use in both hot and cold climates.

Technical Binder © 2020

Curtain Options *(continued)*

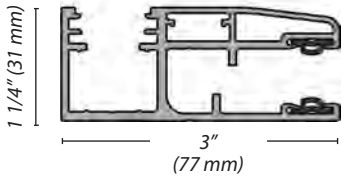
Safe Mini™ with SafeGuard End Retention Rail System (continued)

System Components:

Guide Rail Cap



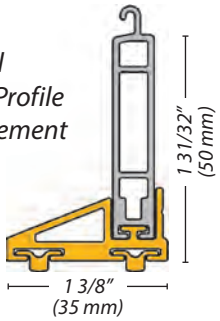
Guide Rail



End retention insert with wind-lock



Optional Bottom Profile Reinforcement



Specifications:

Cover Height	Slat Thickness	Wall Thickness	Number of Slats per Height	Weight per Area	Finish	Core Material
1 7/16"	3/8"	0.0244"	0.668/inch	0.0114 lbs/inch^2	Enamel 0.0020"	Polyurethane Hard Resin
37 mm	9 mm	0.62 mm	26.3/m	8.0 kg/m^2	Enamel 0.05 mm	

Size Limitations:

Maximum Width (A2)			Maximum Height (B1)			Maximum Area (A2 x B1)		
Metre	Feet	Inches	Metre	Feet	Inches	Metre^2	Feet^2	Inch^2
4.88	16	192	3.96	13	156	13.0^2	140^2	20,160^2

You must comply with all three maximums. Do not exceed any one of them. Maximums are automatically reduced if the rollshutter is exposed to high winds, must satisfy stringent security requirements or is freestanding, such as in the case of a patio enclosure.

Panel Box Limitations:

Please refer to the SAFE Mini panel box limitation charts.

If you have headroom limitations on site, please contact our Inside Sales team with your site details for accurate sizing.

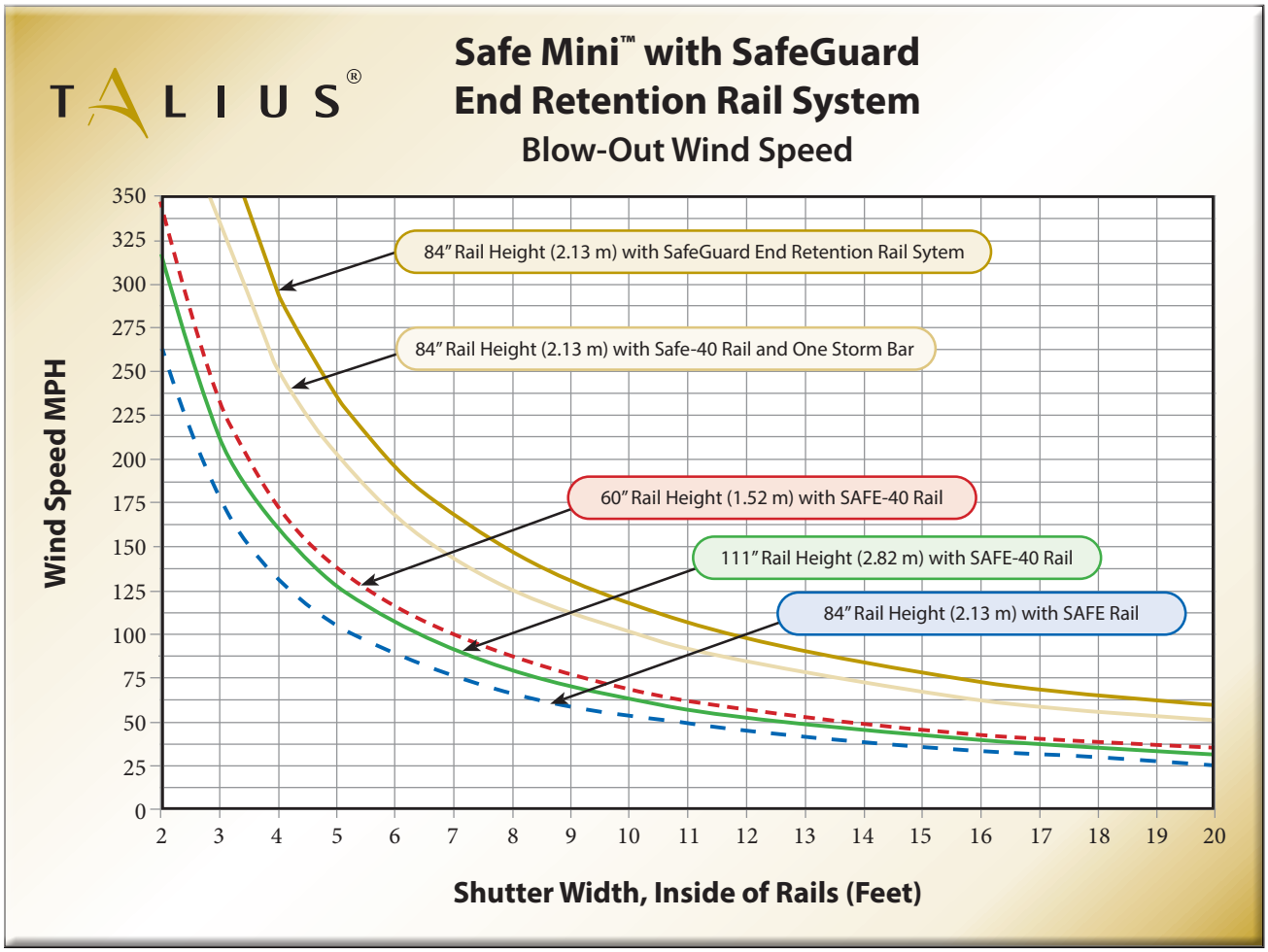
Curtain Options *(continued)*

SAFE Mini™ with SafeGuard End Retention Rail System (continued)

Wind Load Information

The graph below shows blow-out wind speed for unprotected, free-standing rollshutter curtains. Where rollshutters cover windows and doors you may expect considerably better performance due to the protection offered by the overall wall surface.

Testing was done at the curtain heights stated in the graph. Performance of the actual rollshutter will improve slightly if the application is lower in height than the tested unit. Conversely, performance will decrease slightly if your actual rollshutter is taller than the tested unit.

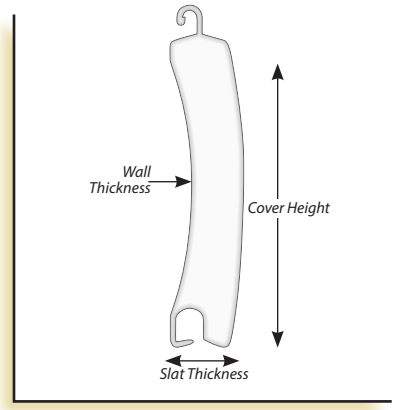


Build-up

Regular Talius build-up can be used however, there is no flange on the SafeGuard Rail for it to slide onto. Where build up is required, Talius recommends using aluminum tubing.

Curtain Options (continued)

AG-77



The new AG-77 profile replaces the Talius Shield Standard profile. Made of heavy-duty, roll-formed aluminum with a polyurethane foam core and tough enamel finish,this profile is intended for large openings and superior storm protection.

Combined with our GR-100 rail and fitted with side locks that hook inside the guide rails to hold the curtain in alignment, this system has increased strength required for large openings and to provide superior storm protection. A built-in locking mechanism ensures the rollshutter curtain remains secure.

This system also features a rolling carriage that shifts forward or backward when the curtain is lowered or raised. This feature adjusts as needed to accommodate the roll-up diameter of the rollshutter curtain to ensure smooth operation.

GR-100 Guide Rail



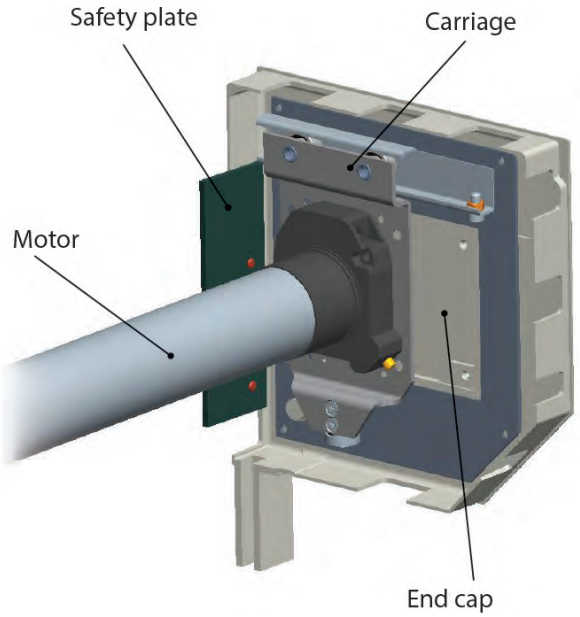
Side Lock



AG-77 Profile, Rail and Side Lock assembly



Rolling Carriage Assembly



AG-77 is not offered in Beige as a standard colour. **Custom paint charges apply.**

Typical Applications and Solutions

- Residential and commercial medium to high-security applications including window and door protection, storm protection, garage doors, counter enclosures and storage areas, and for rolling door applications.

Specifications:

Cover Height	Slat Thickness	Wall Thickness	Number of Slats per Height	Weight per Area	Finish	Core Material
3"	3/4"	0.0244"	0.33/inch	0.0066 lbs/inch^2	Enamel 0.0020"	Polyurethane Hard Foam
77 mm	19 mm	0.62 mm	13/m	4.64 kg/m^2	Enamel 0.05 mm	

Curtain Options *(continued)*

AG-77 *(continued)*

Size Limitations:

Maximum Width (A2)			Maximum Height (B1)			Maximum Area (A2 x B1)		
Metre	Feet	Inches	Metre	Feet	Inches	Metre^2	Feet^2	Inch^2
With Panel Box 6.5 Without Panel Box 7.0	21.3 22.97	256 275	4.54	14.89	178 ¾	20.0^2	215.28^2	31,000^2

You must comply with all three maximums. Do not exceed any one of them. Maximums are automatically reduced if the rollshutter is exposed to high winds, must satisfy stringent security requirements or is freestanding, such as in the case of a patio enclosure.

Panel Box Limitations

Heights shown are guide rail heights (B1). Ensure sufficient room above the guide rails for the rollshutter panel box. In addition, the curtain's bottom profile protrudes approximately 2" (50 mm) below the bottom of the panel box when the curtain is fully rolled up. Therefore, measure the rollshutter purposely high enough to clear any opening window or door parts, or tops of counter enclosures.

This chart is intended to be a reference guide only. If you have headroom limitations on site, please contact our Inside Sales team with your site details for an accurate sizing.

AG-77	70 Shaft		114 Shaft	
Panel Box	BI MEASUREMENT (Can not be installed with Hanger Locks)			
	Inch	Metre	Inch	Metre
250	66	1.69	42	1.08
300	111	2.84	93	2.38
360	178	4.54	160	4.08

Technical Binder © 2020

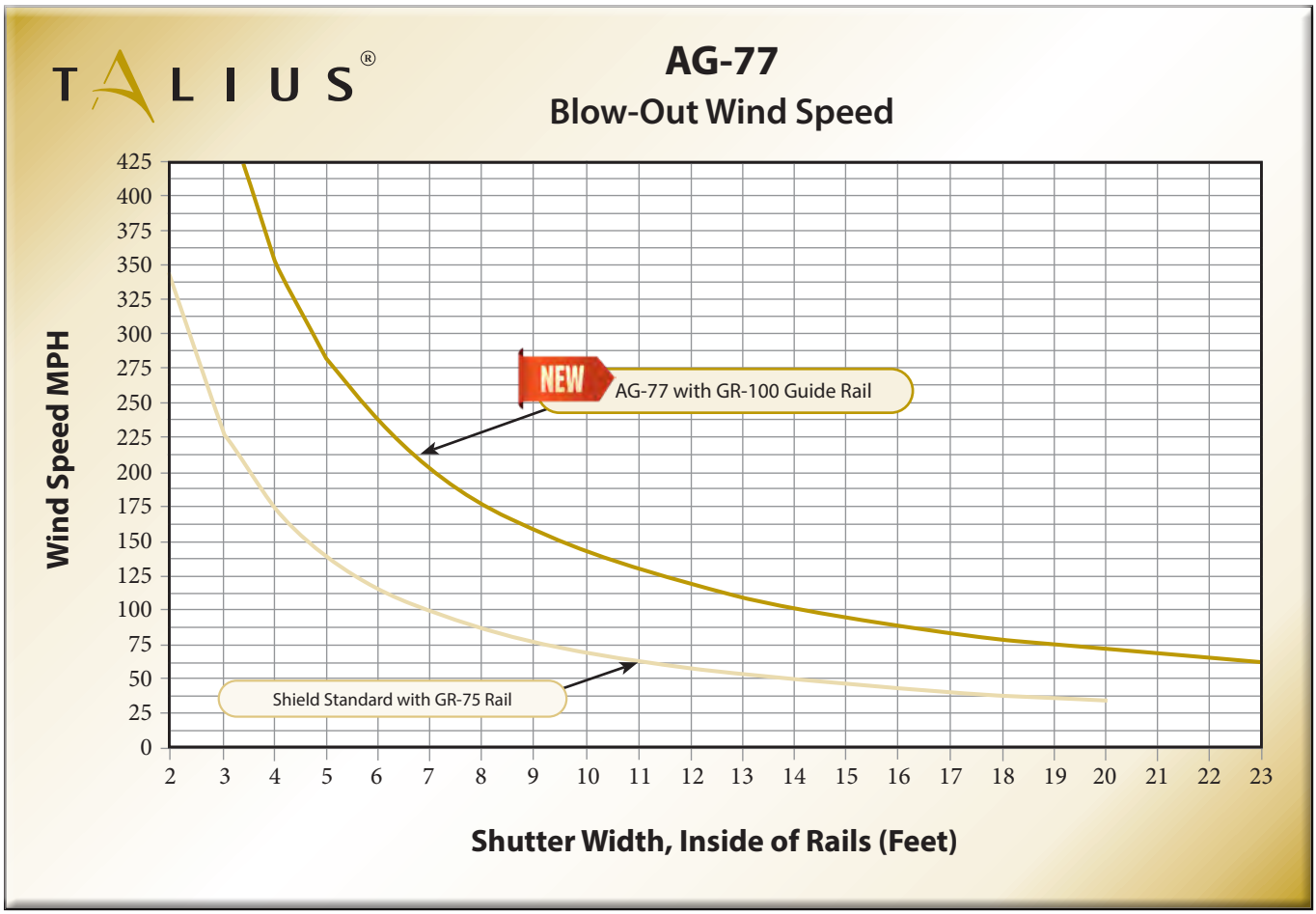
Curtain Options *(continued)*

AG-77 *(continued)*

Wind Load Information

The graph below shows blow-out wind speed for unprotected, free standing rollshutter curtains. Where rollshutters cover windows and doors you may expect considerably better performance due to the protection offered by the overall wall surface.

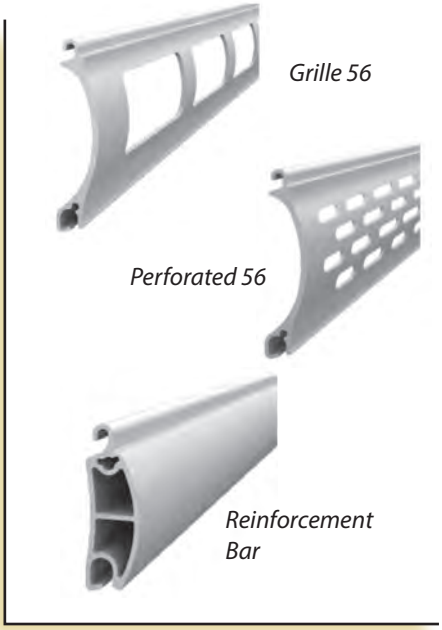
Testing was done at the curtain heights stated in the graph. Performance of the actual rollshutter will improve slightly if the application is lower in height than the tested unit. Conversely, performance will decrease slightly if your actual rollshutter is taller than the tested unit. See tables below.



Curtain Options *(continued)*

SAFE View

SAFE View Rollshutters are available with your choice of extruded aluminum grille or perforated profiles, allowing for security as well as light transmission, ventilation and visibility. SAFE View Grille 56 rollshutters offer 42% light transmission and SAFE View Perforated 56 rollshutters offer 29% light transmission. Features roll carriage assembly to ensure smooth operation for the life of the unit. Solid and secure, environmentally friendly and lightweight aluminum grilles and perforated slats are more resistant to corrosion, rain and fluctuations in temperature compared to steel product solutions.

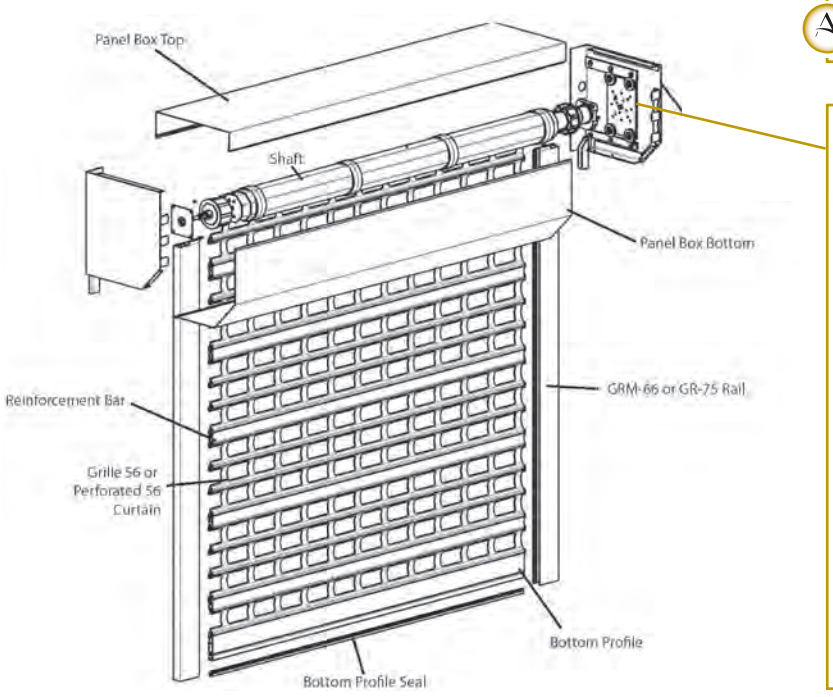


Typical Applications and Solutions

- Stylish appearance harmoniously suits any building architecture, store fronts, small shops, counter enclosures and the interior of modern shopping centres.
- Perfect for shop front windows to allow for 24 hour visibility.

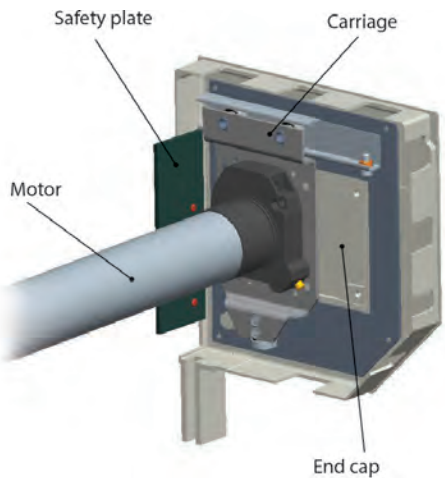
Specifications

Profile Type	Cover Width	Slat Thickness	Hole Shape	Hole Width	Hole Height	Hole Spacing	Finish
Grille 56	2 3⁄16″	1/2″	Rectangle	3 1⁄8″	1 3⁄16″	3/4″	Powdered Polymer Polyester
	56 mm	13.5 mm		80 mm	30 mm	20 mm	
Perforated 56	2 3⁄16″	1/2″	Oval	9/16″	1/4″	3/16″	
	56 mm	13.5 mm		15 mm	6 mm	5 mm	
Reinforcement Bar	1 3⁄16″	1/2″	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	
	30 mm	13.5 mm					



SAFE View is only available in Silver

Rolling Carriage Assembly

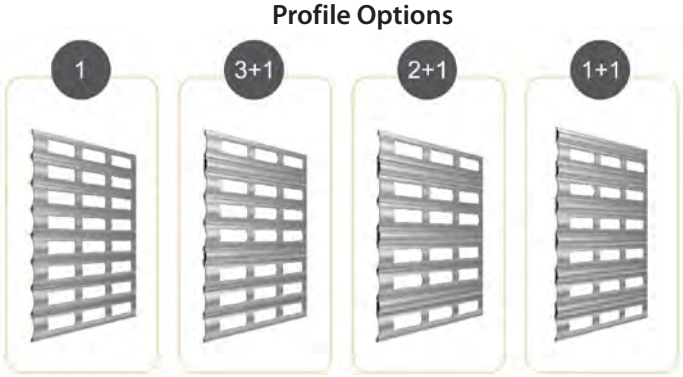


Technical Binder © 2020

Curtain Options *(continued)*

SAFE View (continued)

Profile Options



Size Limitations

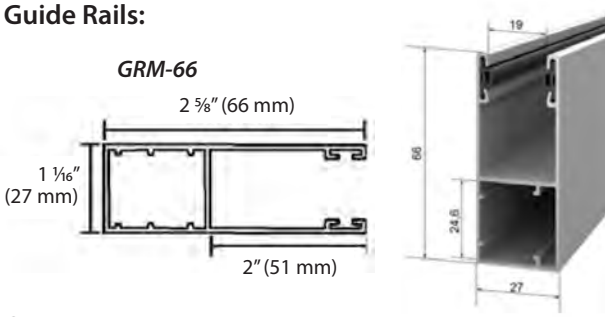
The SAFE View Grille 56 and SAFE View Perforated 56 have an additional profile called a "Reinforcement Bar". The reinforcement bar can be added in different combinations to both Grille and Perforated curtains to allow for larger curtain areas. Please see combination options below.

Profile Combination	Maximum Opening Width (A1)	Maximum Opening Height (B1)	Maximum Opening Area (A1 x B1)	Profile Combination Weight per Area (Both Grille and Perf)
Grille/Perf only	118 1⁄16"	98 7⁄16"	11,625 in²	0.0089 lbs/in²
	3 m	2.5 m	7.5 m²	6.26 kg/m²
3 Grille/Perf + 1 Reinforcement Bar	137 3⁄4"	118 1⁄16"	16,275 in²	0.0100 lbs/in²
	3.5 m	3 m	10.5 m²	7.06 kg/m²
2 Grille/Perf + 1 Reinforcement Bar	157 1⁄2"	118 1⁄16"	18,600 in²	0.0106 lbs/in²
	4 m	3 m	12 m²	7.44 kg/m²
1 Grille/Perf + 1 Reinforcement Bar	177 1⁄8"	118 1⁄16"	20,925 in²	0.0117 lbs/in²
	4.5 m	3 m	13.5 m²	8.21 kg/m²

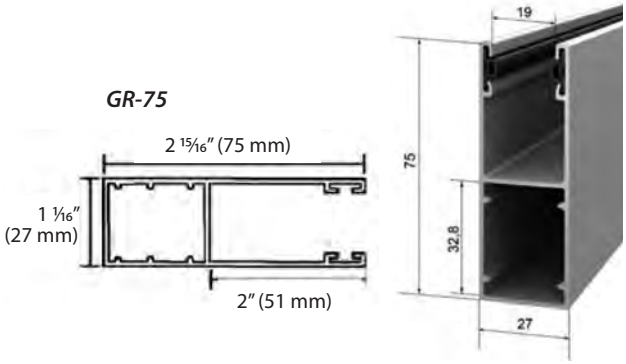
Component Options

Guide Rails:

GRM-66



GR-75



Operators:

- Manual Operation: Torsion Spring, Crank Rod
- Motorized Operation: Standard Limit Motors, Somfy RTS Motors

Torsion Spring and Crank Rod operators available only if weights comply with spring and gear options available. To determine if manual operation is available for your project, please contact our Inside Sales team, at 1-800-665-5550 or insidesales@talius.com

Locks:

- Manual Sliding Lock Bars
- Centre Key Lock (Access Both Sides)
- Automatic Locks

Multiple Section Rollshutters

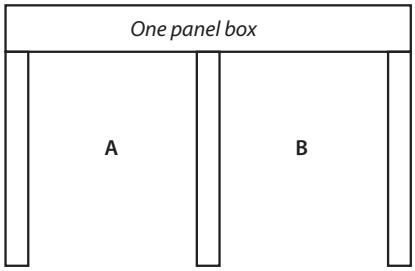
Available for HQ Macro, SHIELD Mini and SAFE Mini

A multiple section rollshutter has a single panel box and multiple curtain sections for the purpose of aesthetics or cost effectiveness. A split has multiple curtain sections with either a centre rail, two back to back rails or two back to back rails with a space in between. Multiple sections on the rollshutter can be operated with one or more operators.

About Splitting Rollshutters

In almost all cases where a rollshutter has one or more splits, and is controlled by a single operator, the horizontal level of the bottom profile may be out by approximately 1/4" (6 mm) to 3/8" (9 mm) between the first bottom profile and the last when the curtains are fully rolled up. This is a natural occurrence which does not affect the performance of the product and is purely an aesthetic issue.

Example: One panel box with two rollshutter curtains

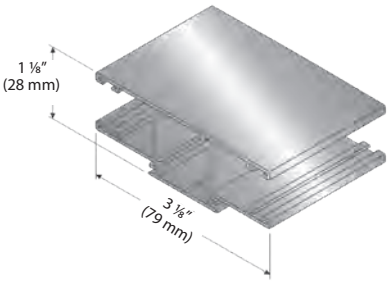


Maximum Dimensions

HQ Macro, SHIELD Mini and SAFE Mini have a maximum overall panel box width of 230" (5.8m). For approximate maximum section widths and heights, please refer to the individual profile pages. AG-77 and SAFE View rollshutters are available as single span units only.

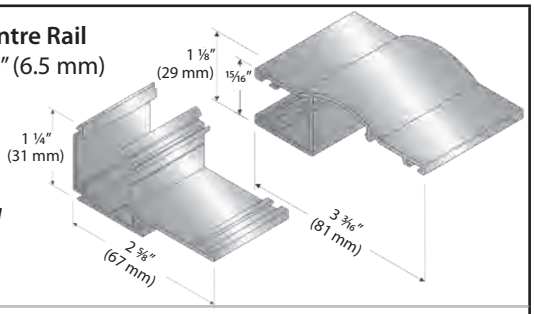
Centre Rail Options

1 x PRO Centre Rail
Includes 1/4" (6.5 mm) build-up.
Same application restraints as the PRO Rail

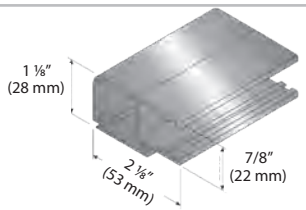


VS

1 x SAFE Centre Rail
Includes 1/4" (6.5 mm) build-up.
Same application restraints as the SAFE Rail

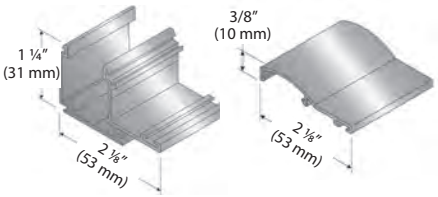


2 x PRO Rails:
Includes 1/4" (6.5 mm) build-up
Same application restraints as the PRO rail

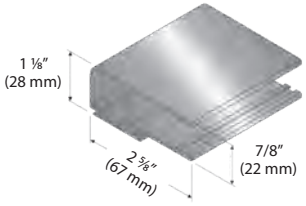


VS

2 x SAFE Rails:
Includes 1/4" (6.5 mm) build-up
Same application restraints as the SAFE rail

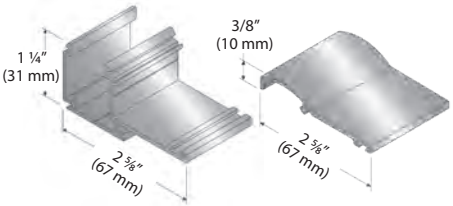


2 x PRO-40 Rails:
Includes 1/4" (6.5 mm) build-up
Same application restraints as the PRO-40 rail

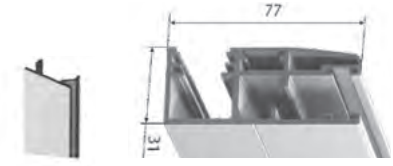


VS

2 x SAFE-40 Rails:
Includes 1/4" (6.5 mm) build-up
Same application restraints as the SAFE-40 rail



2 x SafeGuard Rails:
Includes 1/4" *(6.5 mm) build-up. Same application restraints as the SafeGuard rail*



Technical Binder © 2020

Paint Options

Talius offers 5 standard rollshutter colors and over 1800 custom color options.

WHITE BEIGE BROWN BLACK SILVER

(Colours shown above may not display accurately on electronic devices or when reproduced - please refer to samples provided in your Talius dealer kit)

AG-77 is not available in beige and Safe View is only available in silver.

Custom Paint Options



Talius has over 1800 options for custom colours available to customers. These options are available through a Benjamin Moore paint fan or by custom colour matching. Talius custom paints each product in our state of the art manufacturing facility using a two component pure polyurethane paint system which utilizes aliphatic isocyanate reacted with resin polyols. This paint is the same as those commonly applied in demanding conditions such as commercial air crafts, chemical plants, oil and gas platforms and commercial ships like ferries or navy ships. There will be a minuscule change in the gloss and colour level over the first 5 years. Over the first 15 years a colour change between 1-4 McAdam units can be expected, where 1 is not perceptible to the human eye. The top coat will continue to preform chemical, corrosion and abrasion services under normal conditions solidly throughout the products lifetime.

Talius Anti-Graffiti Coating



Talius offers the option of an anti-graffiti coating on all rollshutters. This is a cross-linked polyurethane coating designed for maximum surface protection designed to allow for easy clean up of graffiti from exposed rollshutter surfaces. Talius Anti-Graffiti Coating is a clear coat that provides a gloss finish over stock and custom colors and offers a non-stick surface, allowing you to wipe away graffiti. A few advantages of Anti-Graffiti Coating include:

- Repels dirt and graffiti spray
- Saves money and reduces clean up costs
- Preserves your image
- Protects from a wide range of substrates

With outstanding resistance to chemicals and excellent color-retention, Talius Anti-Graffiti Coatings highly abrasion-resistant surface make it an ideal choice for rollshutters used in public areas and schools.

Talius Anti-Graffiti coating is a modified aliphatic-polyurethane coating with enhanced abrasion resistance to provide resistance to chemicals, abrasions and impact. Talius Release is a clear coat that provides a gloss finish over stock and custom colors, and offers color retention and a non-stick surface. Talius Release coating is applied with a dry film thickness of 1.0 –2.0 mils (25-50 microns). Hardness: ASTM D3363, 2H. Solvent Resistance: ASTM D4752, 100 MEK rubs; NO failure. Abrasion Resistance: 1000 cycles CS-17, ASTM D4060, 32 mg loss. Impact Resistance: ASTM D2794, 40 in lbs; NO failure. Flexibility: ASTM D522, 1/8" mandrel blend; NO failure.

Logo Printing

Talius rollshutter curtains provide an excellent opportunity to attract attention during closure periods while maintaining protection against vandalism and break-ins. Print any logo or image directly on the rollshutter.

Call our office for more details, specifications and limitations.

Locking Options

Project planning tip

Do not specify sliding bar locks for motorized operators because failure to disengage the locks prior to operation will severely damage the rollshutter curtain. Specify hanger locks only for motorized operators.

Manual Sliding Lock Bars

- Typical Applications: counter enclosures where security is not a priority
- Compatible with HQ Macro, SHIELD Mini, SAFE Mini™ and SAFE View rollshutter curtains. Not compatible with SAFE U-Sill
- Not recommended for motorized rollshutters

Security Level
Low



Centre Key Lock (Access Both Sides)

- Typical Applications: counter enclosures, doors with torsion spring operators
- This lock can be accessed from both sides of the rollshutter unit
- This lock can be located up to 32" up from the bottom of the bottom profile
- Only compatible with SAFE U-sill if lock is located higher then the bottom profile
- Compatible with HQ Macro, SHIELD Mini, SAFE Mini™ and SAFE View rollshutter curtains
- Not recommended for motorized rollshutters

Public Access Side
• Finished side with keyed access



Security Level
Medium

Back Side of Bottom Profile
• Side Facing away from public with keyed access



Octopod Centre-Mounted Sliding Bar Key Lock

- Typical Applications: counter enclosures where high security is needed, torsion spring operated units where high security is needed.
- Operable from one side only
- Features a mortise cylinder that allows for key matching to common commercial 1 1/8" mortise cylinder locks
- Features a heavier return and more solid internal mechanism, making it stronger and more secure
- Compatible with HQ Macro, SHIELD Mini, and SAFE Mini™ rollshutter curtains
- Not compatible with SAFE U-Sill
- Not recommended for motorized rollshutters

Security Level
High





Technical Binder © 2020

Locking Options *(continued)*

Talius Hanger Locks



- Typical Applications: windows, doors, counter enclosures, units with manual or motorized operators
- Lock engages and disengages automatically
- Lock is concealed inside the panel box of a rollshutter making tampering by intruders less likely
- Can resist up to 100kg of vertical upward force
- Compatible with SAFE U-sill
- Compatible with HQ Macro, SHIELD Mini and SAFE Mini™ rollshutter curtains
- Not compatible with tape operators or torsion spring operators



Security Level
High

Talius Magnetic Alarm Sensors

- Typical Applications: windows and doors
- Installed within the rail and the adjacent rollshutter curtain profile and/or installed within the panel box
- Magnetic sensors align with one another which closes the circuit to the alarm. If an intruder attempts a break-in and manages to separate the sensors by more than 1", the circuit becomes open and the alarm is triggered
- Compatible with SAFE Mini™ rollshutter curtains only
- Motors must be located on left end-plate as viewed from the shaft access side when this option is selected

Security Level
High

Sensors for rail and curtain assembly

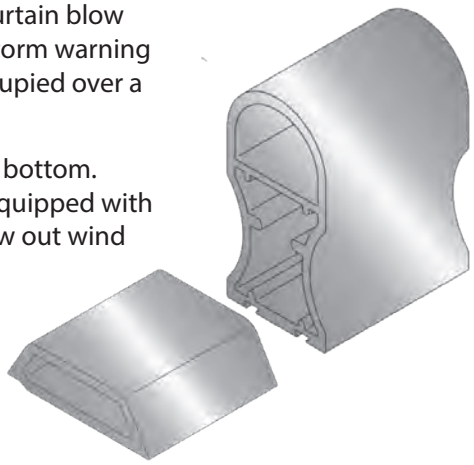




Sensors for panel box assembly

Storm Bars & Cross Bars

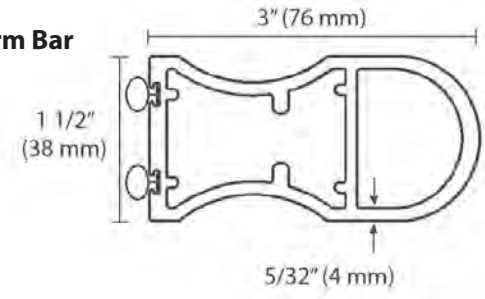
Storm bars are strong aluminum extrusions mounted temporarily by the customer in front and/or behind the rollshutter curtain. Their purpose is to provide additional strength against curtain blow outs by strong winds. Customers typically clip a storm bar in place when a storm warning is issued or when a rollshutter in an area with high wind speeds is left unoccupied over a period of time.



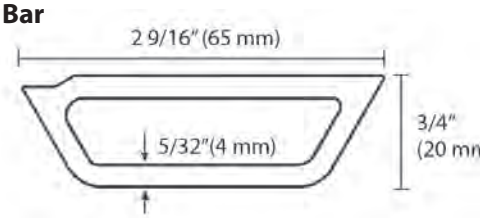
The design of storm bars allow for easy and fast clip-in action at the top and bottom. Rollshutters are able to operate while storm bars are in place. A rollshutter equipped with a storm bar in the curtain centre typically experiences an increase in the blow out wind speed limit in excess of 50%.

Rollshutters that have no barrier behind them, such as a window or door, required a storm bar on both sides of the curtain. This is to protect against blow outs in both directions due to positive and negative wind forces. In these cases, one such pair of storm bars account only for the increase in wind load protection of a single storm bar. See next page for mounting examples.

Storm Bar



Cross Bar



Both the Storm Bar and the Cross Bar are needed. For pricing purposes, price the Storm Bar at guide rail height (B1) and the cross bar at A1 lengths. See next page for mounting options and suggestions.

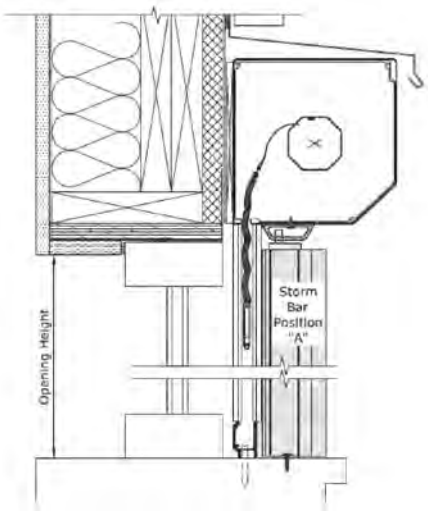
Technical Binder © 2020

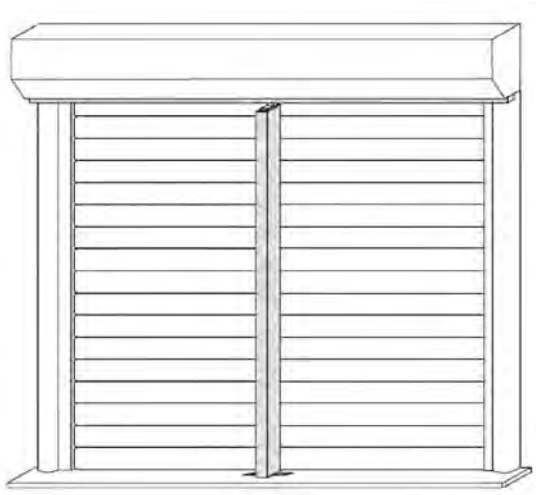
Storm Bars & Cross Bars *(continued)*

Storm Bar Mounting Location Examples:

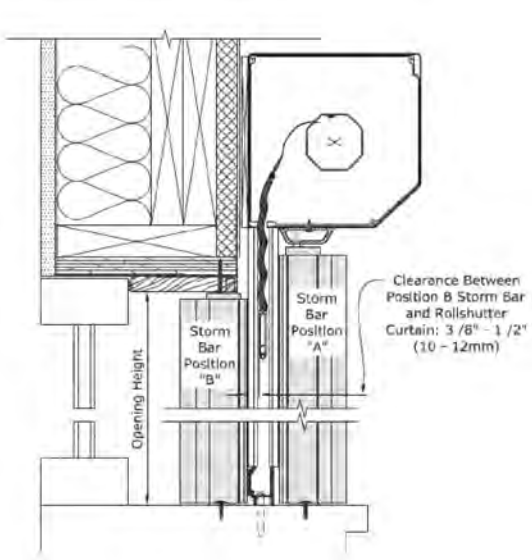
The following is an example of a typical mounting location for most applications. You may order one or more storm bars for Position A. For Position A locations, the factory will base the default storm bar height on the height of the guide rails, unless you specify otherwise.

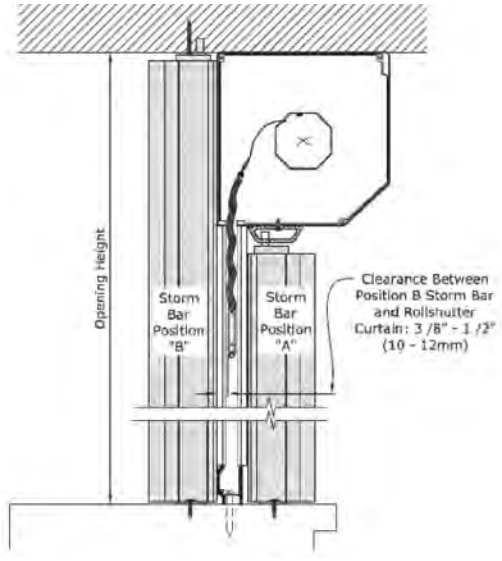
The cross bar will be mounted tight against the folded lip of the panel box removable access lid, providing the proper clearance between the storm bar and the face of the curtain.





Below are two examples of alternate mounting locations. You may order one or more storm bars for Position "B" only, or for Positions "A" and "B". For Position "B" locations, you must specify the opening height where the storm bar is to be located. Mounting plates will be provided for Position "B" storm bars, and must be positioned on site so that the clearance between the storm bar and the face of the curtain is between 3/8" – 1/2" (10 – 12mm).



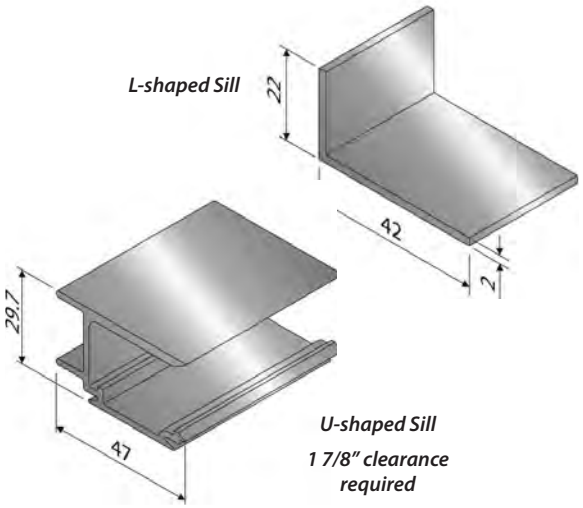


Build-up and Sills

Talius build-up is designed to make installation easier and is available in our 5 standard colors and can also be custom painted. Talius build-up and PRO and SAFE guide rail series slide together ensuring a snug and secure fit.

Talius Sills

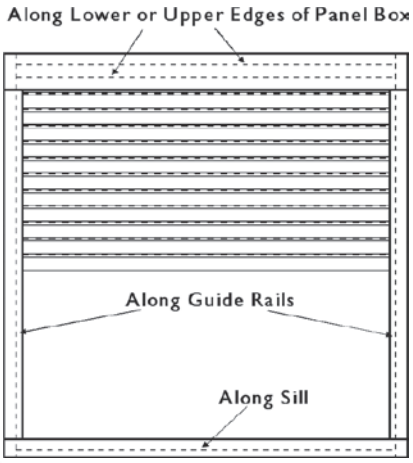
Talius rollshutters must close down onto a sill. When a natural sill is not present at the site the L-shaped sill OR the SAFE U-sill can be utilized. If increased security is required Talius recommends the SAFE U-sill. This is a channel sill that the rollshutter rolls down into. This unique sill prevents the insertion of tools that could pry-up the rollshutter.



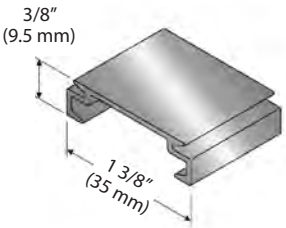
Sill Type	Size	
	inch	mm
L-Shaped Sill	⅞ x 1 1⁄16	22 x 42
SAFE U-Sill	1 3⁄16 x 1 ⅞	30 x 47

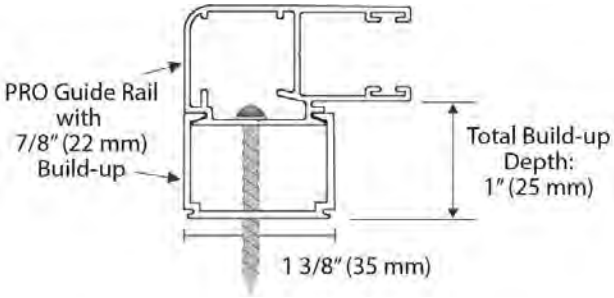
Build-Up

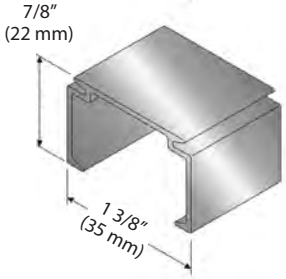
Talius build up comes in three different options, 3/8" (9.5 mm), 7/8" (22 mm) and L Build-up. Talius recommends utilizing these build-up options on existing sites where rollshutters are being added and the opening is not level or sites where door handles or other obstructions need to be cleared. Talius build-up easily fits onto the PRO and SAFE series rails, GRM-66 and GR-75 guide rails, and other build up, allowing you to use them in combination. See below for common locations and diagrams of build-up for your project.



3/8" & 7/8" Build-up







Build-up Stacking Options



	Total Build-Up Depth with Rail Type				
GR-75/GRM-66 Rails	3/8" (9.5 mm)	5/8" (16 mm)	7/8" (22 mm)	1 ⅛" (28 mm)	1 ⅝" (41 mm)
PRO-SAFE Rails:	1/2" (13 mm)	3/4" (19 mm)	1" (25 mm)	1 ¼" (32 mm)	1 ¾" (45 mm)

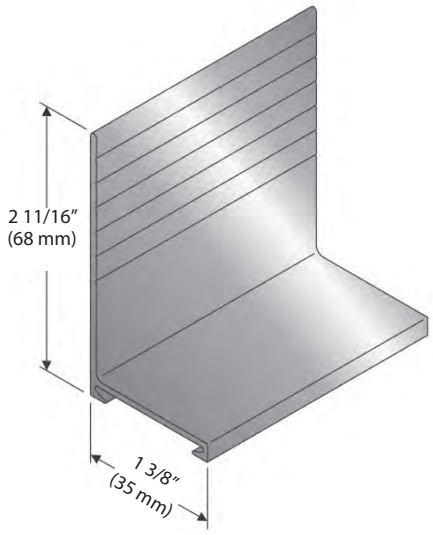
Technical Binder © 2020

Build-up and Sills (continued)

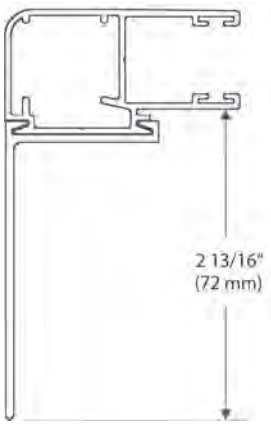
L-Shaped Build-Up

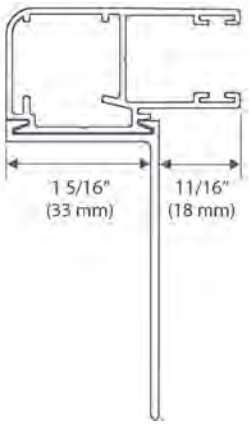
The L Build-Up may be slid onto the PRO or SAFE guide rail or regular Build-Up. Its flange is marked with tiny grooves for easy, straight cutting down to required size on job site. It may be slid onto a rail with the flange flush to the edge of the rail or 1 5/16" (33 mm) offset from the edge of the rail.

Total L Build-up depth with PRO Rail
2 13/16" (72 mm)



Mounting Choices

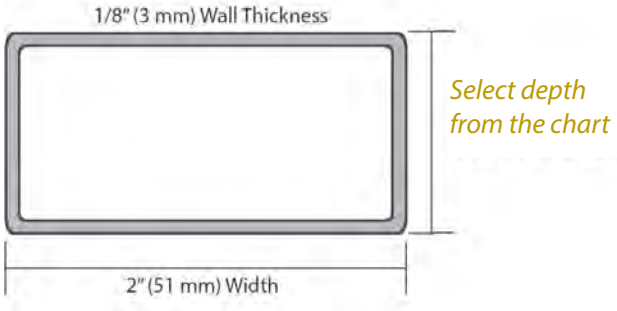




Build-Up Tubing

The Slide-on and L-Shaped build-up will be suitable for most applications where additional clearance is required. However, when build-up depth exceeds 1 3/4" (45 mm), it is recommended that build-up tubing is used for greater surface mounting stability.

2" x 1" (51 mm x 25 mm)	2" x 2" (51 mm x 51 mm)	2" x 3" (51 mm x 76 mm)	2" x 4" (51 mm x 104 mm)





Operator Options

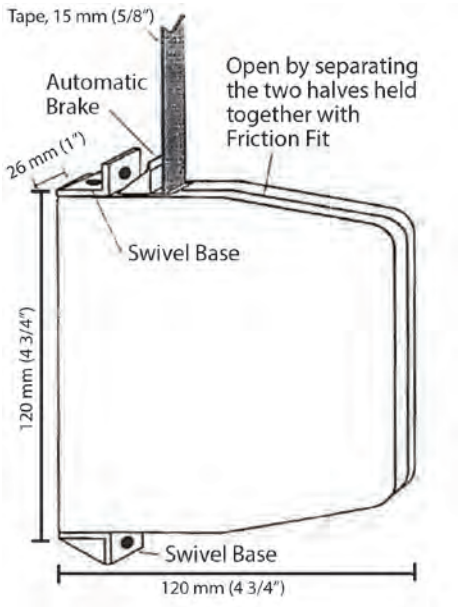
Manual Operators

Talius offers manually operated rollshutters with tape operators, torsion springs and manual gear with crank. The most common manually operated option is gear with crank. All manually operated rollshutters have limitations that depend on the size and weight of the rollshutter curtain. Please contact Talius at 1-800-665-5550 with your project details if you require a manual operator.

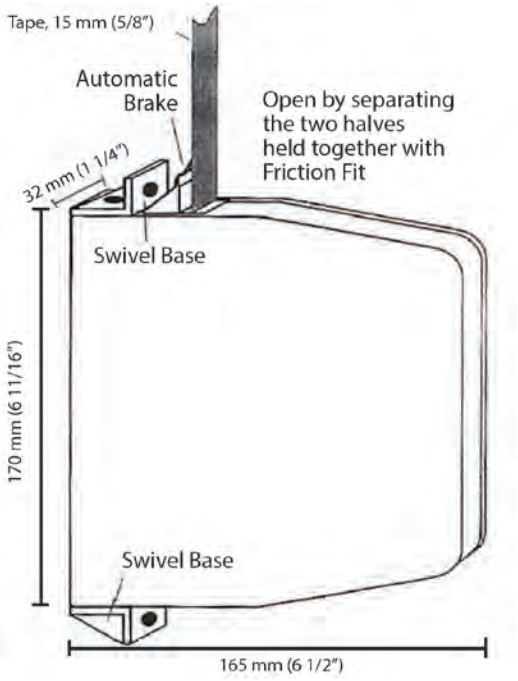
Tape Operator

Tape operators are chosen most often for small and medium residential rollshutters or counter enclosures up to 24kg (53lbs) where the public has no access to the operator. Tape operators are amongst the most cost-efficient operators however they are quite limited as they can only operate rollshutters with a light curtain weight. Tape operators offer low security as the box or tape may easily be tampered with. Talius offers both small and large tape operators, chosen based on the size of the unit.

Small Tape Operator



Large Tape Operator

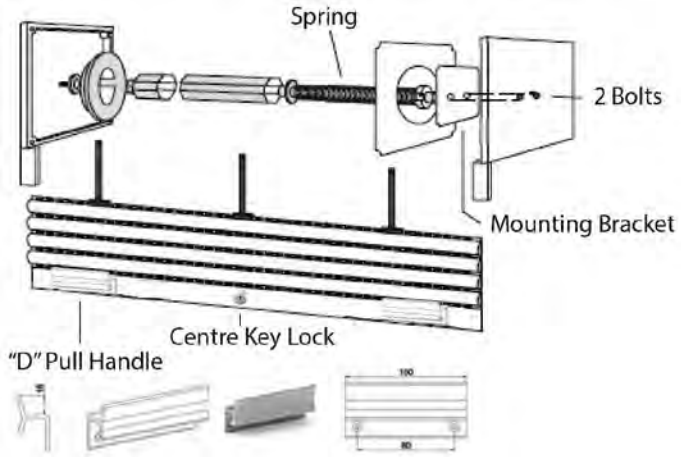


Technical Binder © 2020

Operator Options (continued)

Torsion Spring

Torsion spring operators are installed inside the shaft, pre-loaded to provide tension in the upward direction. To keep the rollshutter in a closed position there is a manual slide lock or key lock on the bottom profile. Torsion spring operators are most often used commercially in counter enclosures, cabinets with cigarette or liquor storage, or entrance doors that are the last place of entry for the building.

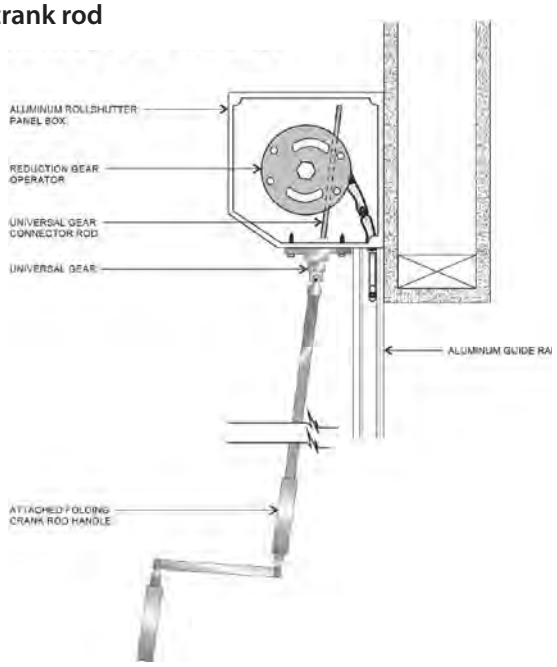


Gear with Crank Rod

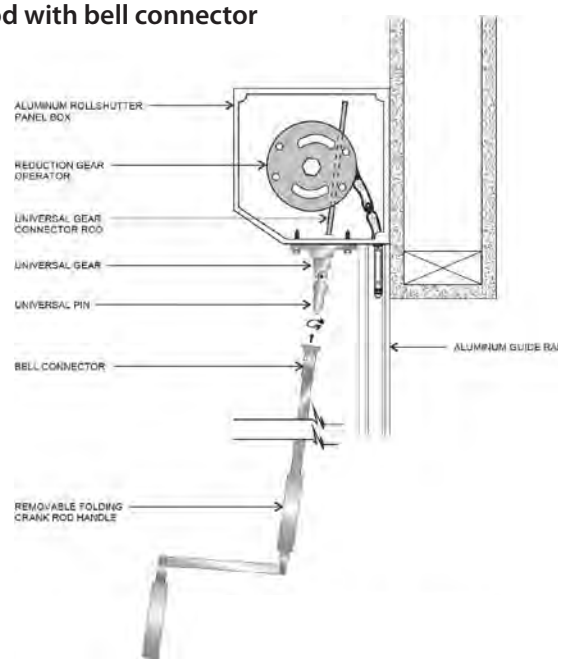
Manual gear with crank operated rollshutters have multiple mounting options as seen below. Cranks can come as a removable unit with a bell connector or attached to the wall or panel box. Standard crank rod lengths are 68" in the extended position however custom lengths are available.

Reverse Side Operators

Gear with attached crank rod



Gear with removable crank rod with bell connector

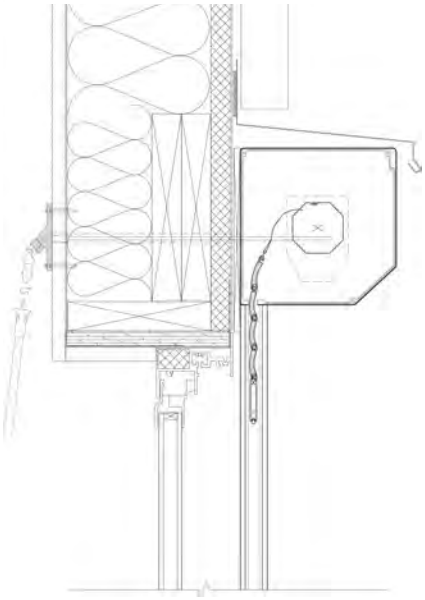


Operator Options *(continued)*

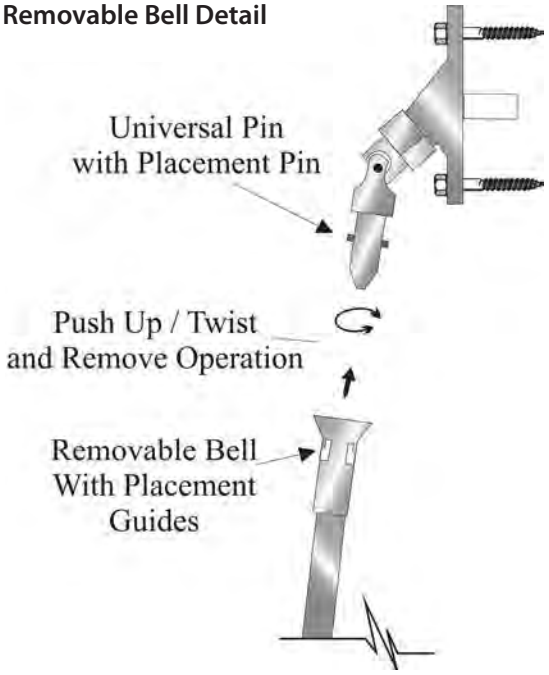
Gear with Crank Rod (continued)

Manual with gear rollshutters can be operated from the panel box side of the rollshutter or out the back of the panel box. The universal that controls the gear can then go through the wall with the bell connector mounted on the inside of the wall. This application is often used when the rollshutter is mounted on top of a window and the customer would like operation inside of the building or on counter enclosures when the rollshutter is mounted face of wall of the exterior wall.

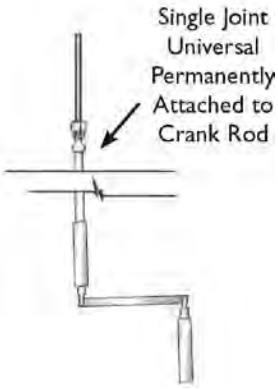
Regular Side Operator



Removable Bell Detail



Manual Override Crank Rod



Manual Override Option

Talius offers manual override motors for rollshutters. These motors have a gear system that allows operation of the rollshutter if the power access has been cut or the motor is broken. These crank rods come with an attached universal that is fed into the gear system allowing the user to crank the rollshutter open or closed. These motors are often used on rollshutters that cover main entrance doors ensure access to the building in the event of a power outage.

> Manual operation of a manual override motor should only be used if there is no power to the motor. Utilizing this function when the motor has power can damage the motor.

Technical Binder © 2020

Operator Options (continued)

Motorized Operators

Talius offers two main motor options for Rollshutters; Standard Limit Motors and Somfy RTS Motors. Both motor types are available in a variety of torque capacities to operate any size of Rollshutter.

Standard Limit Motors

High-quality Standard Limit tubular motors are designed for reliable, long-lasting, maintenance-free operation. These motors are hard-wired, with hard-wired switches, and feature mechanical limits. The standard limit motor can be operated with the flip of a switch or the push of a button. Choose from a variety of controls including: single switches for individual operation such as Decora Paddle Switches or Key-switches, or add relays to allow for group control of multiple Talius products from one master location.

Standard Features:

- 110v/60 Hz
- Thermal overload switch
- UL/ULC certified
- 6-10' Motor cable

Somfy RTS Motors

Somfy Radio Technology (RTS) products provide flexible, convenient options. Somfy RTS motors feature built-in radio frequency receivers and electronic limit switches for simple programming. The motors can be operated via hand-held transmitter(s), wireless wall switches, timers, or even from the convenience of a smart device. When combined with the appropriate interface, this motor will integrate with a fire alarm, or building automation system.

Standard Features:

- 110 v/60 Hz
- Thermal overload switch
- UL/ULC certified
- Interim stop position
- Standard 6-10' cable, optional 24' cables are available

Both Standard Limit Motors and Somfy RTS Motors have manual override motor options

Motor Preparation Package

Purchase this package with a manual operator if there is concern that the customer may find it difficult to operate the manual Rollshutter in future years, or if the customer simply does not wish to spend the additional cost for a motorized operator at this time but may want to motorize in the future. This package installs during manufacturing all the necessary components, except the motor and switch, for motorized operation. This makes it less time consuming and expensive for the customer to convert to a motorized operator at a later time. The customer simply purchases a motor and switch in the future, and the installer can easily remove the existing manual operator and field-install the new motor and switch, without any further components required.

Operator Options *(continued)*

Standard Limit Motors

If you have selected your rollshutter with standard limit motorized operation, you'll need to select an appropriate switching device for your motor. Numerous options exist from simple switches and key switches, to Group Control, Timers, and Remote Control. The following pages contain typical switching components that you may select from. **For more special switching requirements, such as sun and wind sensors or home automated controls, please contact Inside Sales for additional switching solutions that may be available for your application.**



A certified electrician should perform all wiring connections for motors and switching devices. Follow the approved wiring information provided for each motor and switching device, and do not deviate without approval from the manufacturer. DO NOT wire more than one Standard Limit Tubular Motor to a single switch without the use of special switching devices available through the manufacturer. Only switching controls for tubular motors approved by the manufacturer can be used on our rollshutters to prevent voiding the warranty, possible damage to your product and home, or personal injury. Contact the manufacturer for additional information or clarification on any electrical component.

Standard limit motors are easily operated with the flip of a switch or the push of a button. Choose from a variety of controls including:

- Single switches for individual operation.
- Group controls for operating multiple Talius products from one location.
- Timer switches for convenient, automated opening and closing.

What is the difference between Maintained and Momentary Switches?

Maintained switches are three-position switches featuring an up, down and stop position. Maintained switches are designed to allow the user to operate the switch in the direction of their choice (up or down) and the switch will operate the rollshutter continuously until it has hit its upper or lower limit unless otherwise interrupted in the stop position.



Maintained switches allow the operator to let go of the switch and allow the motor to keep running until it reaches its upper or lower limit.

Momentary switches are three-position switches featuring an up, down, and stop position. Momentary switches are designed to allow the user full control of the operation of the rollshutter by having to keep contact with the switch in the direction of their choice (up or down) and the ability to stop the operation by releasing their hold on the switch.

Momentary switches are ideal for areas in which safety of small children or animals is a concern, or where the operator needs to monitor the operation of the rollshutter to ensure that it does not project downward on any objects that may damage the objects or the rollshutter.

Technical Binder © 2020

Operator Options *(continued)*

Standard Limit Motor Component Options

If you have selected your single-section Rollshutter with motorized operation, it will come with the switch included in the list price. There are several optional switching components that you may select shown below. For more complex switching requirements, please contact us for assistance.

Standard Limit Motor Wall Switch Operators

Paddle Switch

Decora maintained or momentary contact, SPDT



Decora maintained contact only, DPDT



Medium Security Key Switch

Maintained or momentary contact, SPDT,

- 2 keys, non re-keyable.

For interior use only unless used with an optional watertight faceplate



High Security Key Switch

Maintained or momentary contact, SPDT

- 3 keys, re-keyable on site.
- Contained in a 4" x 4" watertight steel box for interior or exterior surface-mount



Specialty Motor Controllers for Garage Door Applications

Talius recommends the following motor controllers for garage door applications. Please check with your local building code requirements to ensure that all building and safety requirements are met prior to placing your order with Talius.

RC200 RF Remote Control Receiver/Motor Controller

For Standard Limit Motors only. Controller/Receiver must be wired to motor and power source.

- surface mount, for one motor.
- Use with any TRAN-series switches



Options: Add one or more optional momentary-contact standard switches. Use with Safety Sensing Beam for automatic safety motor reversing.

Safety Sensing Beam System

For use with the RC200 Receiver only,

Upon interruption of the beam during curtain closure, the motor automatically reverses from the "down" direction to the "up"

- for one motor.
- Includes 12-volt transformer with plug.



TRAN202 RF Remote Control Transmitter

Handheld transmitter for use with the RC200 Receiver only.

- Up to 2 channels.



TRAN204 RF Remote Control Transmitter

Handheld transmitter for use with the RC200 Receiver only.

- Up to 4 channels plus group operation



Operator Options *(continued)*

Motor Controllers for Group Control Applications

Talius recommend the following motor controller options for group control applications. Please contact Talius if you have any questions regarding the configuration of the group control or for further information on the following options.

RI2M Two-Motor Controller



For control of two motors simultaneously, or add additional RI2M and/or RI3M controllers for group control.

- Requires at least one momentary-contact standard switch.
- For Standard Limit Motors only. Controller must be wired to motor and power source

Grey

Options: Add any optional momentary-contact standard switch for individual motor control.

RI3M Three-Motor Controller



For control of two motors simultaneously, or add additional RI2M and/or RI3M controllers for group control.

- Requires at least one momentary-contact standard switch.
- For control of three motors simultaneously, or add additional RI2M and/or RI3M controllers for group control.
- For Standard Limit Motors only. Controller must be wired to motor and power source

Grey

Options: Add any optional momentary-contact standard switch for individual motor control.

Somfy GCS II Four-Motor Controller



For control of 4 motors simultaneously, or add additional GCSII Four-motor controller for group control.

- Requires one momentary-contact standard switch
- For Standard Limit Motors only. Controller must be wired to motor and power source

Grey

Options: Add any optional momentary-contact standard switch for individual motor control.

Individual Group Control (IGC) 4N1 Motor Controller with DecoFlex Dry Contact Switch



Provides individual and group control for up to 4 standard limit motors. The DecoFlex dry contact switch operates as a maintained switch.

Grey

DecoFlex® Dry Contact Keypad



For use only with IGC 4N1 Motor Controller only, this is a stationary wall control which installs in minutes without an electrician. Fits standard Decora style opening.

White

Somfy® Isolation Control

This control may be used on job sites where motors have been wired in parallel in error.

- Can be used where one SPDT switch is controlling 2 or more motors.
- Using 1 control per motor will protect motors from damage.
- The control should only be used with momentary switches.
- The isolation control can also be used whenever a single motor is operated via two or more switches. The control protects the motor from having both the up and down directions activated simultaneously



Grey

Somfy® Universal RTS Receiver



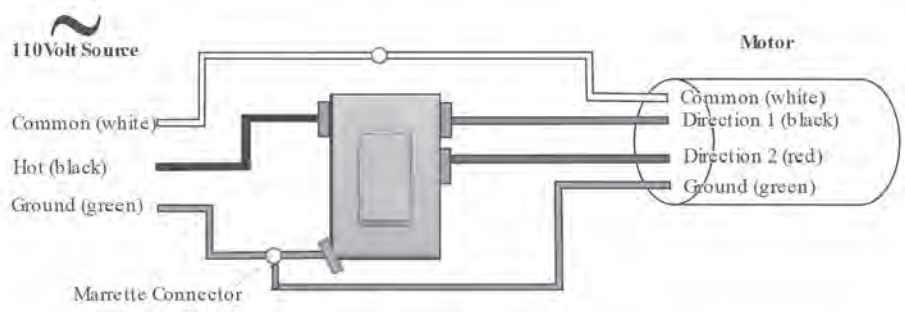
Connects to a standard 120V motor, allowing you to control that motor via Somfy's line of RTS compatible controls

White

Technical Binder © 2020

Operator Options *(continued)*

Important information about Talius Motor Operators for Standard Limit Motors



Proper Wiring of a Single Pole Double Throw (SPDT) Paddle Switch for Talius Motorized Rollshutter

Do not wire more than 1 motor to a switch. This practice is commonly referred to as wiring in parallel and incorrect wiring of Talius products will void the Talius manufacturer's warranty.

Problem:
Wiring multiple motors to a switch in parallel will result in constant capacitor feedback between the motors. This can cause damage to the motors and unstable operation of the rollshutters because as power is applied to the motors through direction wire A, power is also transferred between the motors through their direction wire B.

Symptoms:
- Motors will not hold their limits. This may not be noticed during the initial install
- Motors may generate abnormal noise
- Motor failure

Solutions:
- Supply one switch per motor
- Supply a Double Pole Double Throw (DPDT) paddle switch which has two separate poles and allows for a maximum control of two motors per switch
- Supply appropriate relay solution based upon customer control configuration requirements
- Contact TALIUS for more information on how to resolve this issue

Exceptions to this rule:
- Somfy RTS radio frequency motors
- Contact sensing motors

Do not wire more than one switch to a motor. Incorrect wiring of Talius products will void the Talius manufacturer's warranty.

Problem:
Wiring multiple switches to one motor may overload the motor capacitor and micro switches, resulting in irreversible damage to the motor.

Symptoms:
- Motor failure

Solutions:
- Supply one switch per motor
- Supply appropriate relay solution based upon customer control configuration requirements
- Contact TALIUS for more information on how to resolve this issue
- Use of momentary contact switches is not an acceptable solution

Exceptions to this rule:
- Somfy RTS radio frequency motors
- Motors when used with RC200, or Universal RTS radio frequency receivers and controlled via radio frequency controllers

Questions? Please contact Talius at 1-800-665-5550 or email insidesales@talius.com

Operator Options *(continued)*

Transmitters for Somfy® RTS Motors

If you have selected a rollshutter with Somfy® RTS motorized operation, an appropriate switching device will need to be selected. One of the benefits of the Somfy® RTS option is the ability to easily operate multiple units from a single transmitter. Talius offers transmitters that allow for the operation of up to 16 units on a single transmitter.

Somfy® transmitters have a range of approximately 65' through double-reinforced concrete. However, this range can vary slightly based on factors such as interference, building construction, wiring, and location of components. If you find that you are having this issue or that you need a longer range, an RTS Repeater can be used to extend the range of the signal.

Control your rollshutter with your Smart Device

The Somfy® myLink™ allows you to use your smart device to control your Rollshutters even when away from home. The myLink allows for full control of your Rollshutter and includes individual control, group control, remote access and a 7-day schedule.



Do more with the services you love!

The Somfy myLink™ allows you to enjoy your Radio Technology Somfy® (RTS) motorized solutions even more with **IFTTT (If This, Then That)** technology.

IFTTT is a free, web-based service that allows myLink to communicate with other smart home solutions easily.

Now, your connected devices and apps work together to create the ultimate ambiance, automatically.

Get started immediately with Applets by Somfy, or create your own, to maximize your experience based on conditions.

IF your connected thermostat reaches 90 degrees, THEN your RTS shades will automatically lower to reduce energy.



Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

IF your connected lights dim after 9pm, THEN your bedroom shades lower for privacy!



Compatible with:

amazon alexa · Google Home with Google Assistant · PHILIPS · nest · wemo · SmartThings · ring · wink · Honeywell

Voice commands
Use natural voice commands to operate your RTS connected products.

App control
Harness the power of your favorite mobile device for Somfy-powered solutions.

Remote access
Activate Somfy-powered solutions even when you're away from home to maximize the many lifestyle benefits they provide such as energy savings, UV protection and privacy.

Timed events
Schedule motorized applications based on time of day or sunrise/sunset times.

On-screen setup wizard
Intuitive installation and setup allows you to enjoy your myLink experience in a few short minutes.

Flexible
Choose the best way to control up to 16 channels of motorized solutions with options such as individual control, group control, and more.

Compatible
Controls all Radio Technology Somfy® (RTS) products including motorized blinds, shades, curtains, screens, awnings, and rolling shutters as well as RTS enabled lighting devices. The myLink also works with third-party automation systems, Amazon Alexa and Google Assistant via IFTTT.

Technical Binder © 2020

Operator Options *(continued)*

Somfy® RTS Transmitters

If you have selected your single-section Rollshutter with motorized operation, it will come with the switch included in the list price. There are several optional switching components that you may select shown below. For more complex switching requirements, please contact us for assistance.

Somfy® RTS Wall Transmitters

DecoFlex-1 RTS Transmitter

Single-channel radio frequency wall mounted transmitter.

White



DecoFlex-5 RTS Switch

Five-channel radio frequency wall mounted transmitter.

White



Somfy® RTS Handheld Transmitters

Lets you operate a motorized Rollshutter from anywhere in or around the building. These compact hand-held transmitters are personally coded for maximum security with up, stop and down push buttons make using them just as easy as a wall transmitter.

Telis 1 RTS Pure Transmitter

Single-channel radio frequency hand-held transmitter.

White



Telis 4 RTS Pure Transmitter

Four-channel and group control radio frequency hand-held transmitter.

White



Telis 16 RTS Pure Transmitter

16-channel and group control radio frequency transmitter with intuitive programming and easy-to-use interface.

White



The Telis 1 & 4 RTS Transmitters will be discontinued and the Situo remotes below will be offered as their substitute. The effective date is undetermined at this time.

COMING SOON **Situo 1 RTS Pure II Transmitter**

Single-channel radio frequency hand-held transmitter.

White



COMING SOON **Situo 5 RTS Pure II Transmitter**

Four-channel and group control radio frequency hand-held transmitter.

White



Motor Cable

Optional 24' Motor Cable.
Cable installed on motor with pig-tail end.
Plug in head to be supplied and installed by dealer on-site.



Operator Options *(continued)*

Somfy® RTS Specialty Transmitters

Telis 1 Chronis RTS 24 Hour/7 Day Timer

The Chronis Comfort Timer is a 7 day programmable timer that will automatically raise and lower Rollshutters based on the user's programmed time of day. The Chronis can be programmed to operate at the same time each day or at different times every day. It has a security function typically used while on vacation that will raise or lower Rollshutters randomly to give the impression of an occupied home.

White



Somfy® myLink™

Control the unit by using a smart device.

Control options include individual and group control, remote access and a 7 day schedule.

White



Smoove® 1 RTS Pure Transmitter

Single-channel surface-mounted and battery powered wall switch. Additional frames are available in multiple colors and finishes (sold separately).

- Tactile buttons for up/down/my/stop control
- LED illuminates to confirm RTS signal transmission
- Supplied with white faceplate



Smoove® Decorative Face Plates



Standard Upgrade Colours
Black or Double Pure
Double Pure (2 gang)

Premium Upgrade Colours
Cherry, Silver Matte, Light Bamboo, Amber Bamboo, or Walnut



Smoove® 4 RTS Pure Transmitter

Multi-channel surface-mounted and battery powered wall switch for up to 4 motors or 4 groups. Additional frames are available in multiple colors and finishes (sold separately).

- Tactile buttons for up/down/my/stop control
- LED illuminates to confirm RTS signal transmission
- Supplied with white faceplace

RTS Repeater

Designed to receive and then transmit a signal in cases where the motor is beyond the range of the transmitter switch.

White



Somfy® Key Chain Remote

Control RTS motors with this key chain transmitter.

- Only compatible with Somfy RTS Motors.

Black



RTS Digital Keypad

Controls RTS motors via entry of a numeric code for security applications. (Should be protected from weather if installed on the exterior)

Grey



Technical Binder © 2020

Operator Options (continued)

Somfy® RTS Motor Wiring Diagrams and Limit Setting Instructions

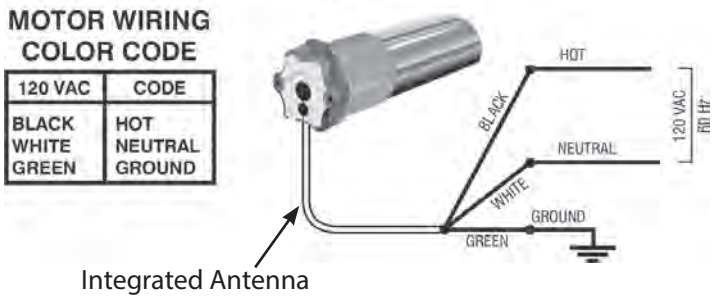
Power Supply (120 VAC / 60 Hz)

a. All wiring must conform to NEC (National Electrical Code) and local codes.

b. The ALTUS® RTS motors can be wired in Parallel. A means of disconnecting the power at each motor independently should be provided

c. Power only needs to be supplied to the motor. The receiver is completely enclosed inside the motor tube.

d. Somfy® reserves the right to void the motor warranty if wiring recommendations are not followed.



Integrated Antenna

DO NOT cut power cable shorter than 18”

Somfy® RTS motors can be wired in parallel. For future servicing ease, Talius recommends setting up your site so you have the ability to disconnect power to each individual unit.

Somfy Limit Adjustment Tips

Somfy® RF product installation instructions

When you receive your Talius Rollshutter with a Somfy® radio frequency operated product, it will be in user mode.

The installation process to adjust the limits is simple. Follow the steps below to ensure that the proper limits are set. Adjust each rollshutter individually before connecting and operating as a group.

❶ ADJUST THE UPPER LIMIT

1. Move the motor to its preset UPPER limit position and let it stop
2. Press the **UP** and **DOWN** buttons simultaneously on the transmitter until the motor jogs, then release
3. Adjust to a **NEW UPPER** limit position
4. Press the **MY/STOP** button until the motor jogs, then release.
5. Check it

❷ ADJUST THE LOWER LIMIT

1. Move the motor to its preset **LOWER** limit position and let it stop
2. Press the **UP** and **DOWN** buttons simultaneously on the transmitter until the motor jogs, then release
3. Adjust to a new **LOWER** limit position
4. Press the **MY/STOP** button until the motor jogs, then release.
5. Check it

For Limit Setting example watch: https://youtu.be/fmyRXkBj8MA

These limit setting instructions apply to non-manual override motors only. For instructions on limit setting for manual override motors, please refer to the instructions enclosed with your small parts, view on MyTalius.com, or contact our inside sales team at 1-800-665-5550.

Tips for Integrating Rollshutters with Home Automation

The popularity of home automation has been increasing greatly in recent years due to technology becoming affordable for most and simple to use through smartphone and tablet connectivity. A home automation system integrates electrical devices in a house with each other. The techniques employed in home automation include those in building automation as well as the control of domestic activities. Devices may be connected through a home network to allow control by a personal computer, and may allow remote access from the internet. Through the integration of information technologies with the home environment, systems and appliances are able to communicate in an integrated manner which results in convenience, energy efficiency, and safety benefits.

Talius Rollshutters can be integrated with a variety of home automation systems. To assist in specifying the right solution for your clients, please use the following questions as a guide. After you have obtained answers to these questions, please contact Talius with this information and let us consult you on determining the appropriate motor and interface solution for your client.

1. **What is the name of the home automation system manufacturer?**
2. **Is there an automation contractor involved?**
3. **What is the application?**
    a. Commercial or Residential?
    b. Windows and/or Doors?
    c. Are there concerns that the units might operate when a door, out opening casement or awning window is open?
    d. Provide a general description of what our products are being used for and the desired function
4. **How many rollshutter units are involved?**
5. **What is the largest Rollshutter required for this project?**
6. **What is the control configuration?**
    a. Is individual control required?
    b. Is master control required?
    c. Is sub-group control required?
7. **How will the units be operated?**
    a. Strictly by the building automation system, or does the customer desire additional switches or controls?
8. **Are there special control considerations?**
    a. Does the client want remote control?
    b. Are weather sensors requested?
    c. Are times requested?
9. **Is there any resistance from the building owner or automation contractor to using a Radio Frequency system?**
    a. Are there considerations with respect to radio reception, interference or range that might lead us to stick with a hard wired solution?

This is basic guideline for considerations when integrating rollshutters with a home automation system. If you have any further questions, please contact our Inside Sales team at insidesales@talius.com, or toll free at 1-800-665-5550.

Technical Binder © 2020

TALIUS®

Products
Habitat Screens™

Table of Contents

- **mytalius.com** ii
- **Introduction to Talius Habitat Screens™** 1
- **Solutions & Applications** 2
- **Habitat Screen™ Components** 3
- **Maximum Dimensions** 6
- **Fabric Seams** 6
- **Wind Loading** 7
- **Mounting Options**
  - Width Dimensions (“A”) 8
  - Height Dimensions (“B”) 10
- **Multiple Section Habitat Screens™** 11
- **Paint Options and Logo Printing** 12
- **Build-Up and Sills**
  - Sills 13
  - Build-Up 13
  - L Shaped Build-up 14
  - Build-up Tubing 14
- **Bug Brush™ for Habitat Screens™** 15
- **Operator Options**
  - Manual Operators • Gear with Crank Rod 16
  - Motorized Operators – An Overview 18
  - Switches for Standard Limit Motors 19
  - Standard Limit Motor Component Options 20
  - Important information about Talius Motor Operators for Standard Limit Motors 21
  - Switches for Somfy® RTS Motors 22
  - Somfy® RTS Operator Component Options 23
  - Somfy® RTS Motor Wiring Diagrams and Limit Setting Instructions 26
- **Tips for Integrating Talius Products with Home Automation** 27

40 YEARS
Building solutions for the future

Technical Binder © 2020

Enhance your experience

with Talius by visiting

mytalius.com

your comprehensive web portal populated with valuable information about Talius products and services.

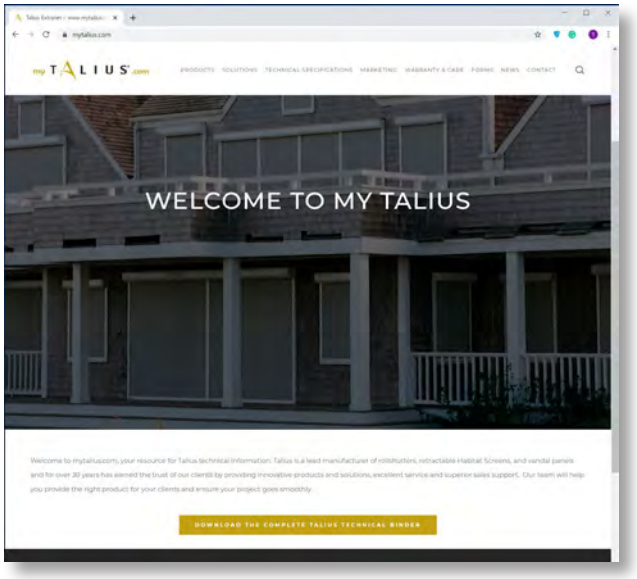
Developed with our dealers in mind, mytalius.com is your portal for technical information to help your project run smoothly, from planning to installation. Discover the many dynamic features and reap the profitable benefits that this easy-to-navigate, practical and informative resource centre has to offer. On mytalius.com, you will find all the information you will need to specify, sell and install Talius products with confidence.

Send architects or contractors you are working with here to find written specification, wiring diagrams or architectural drawings.

mytalius.com allows you to preview and download installation and technical information all at your fingertips.

Following is some of the information that you will discover on mytalius.com:

- General technical requirements
- Applications
- Component options
- Electrical component options
- Architectural drawings in both PDF and CAD formats
- Written specifications
- Wiring Diagrams
- Installation guides and tips
- Warranty Documents
- Talius Brochures
- Talius Logo
- Talius photo library
- Talius News



If you are looking for a specific shop drawing, photo, or other resource that you cannot find on mytalius.com, contact our knowledgeable Inside Sales Team at insidesales@talius.com. They can provide technical information, quotes, project advice and even help you pursue product alternate approval on project specifications.

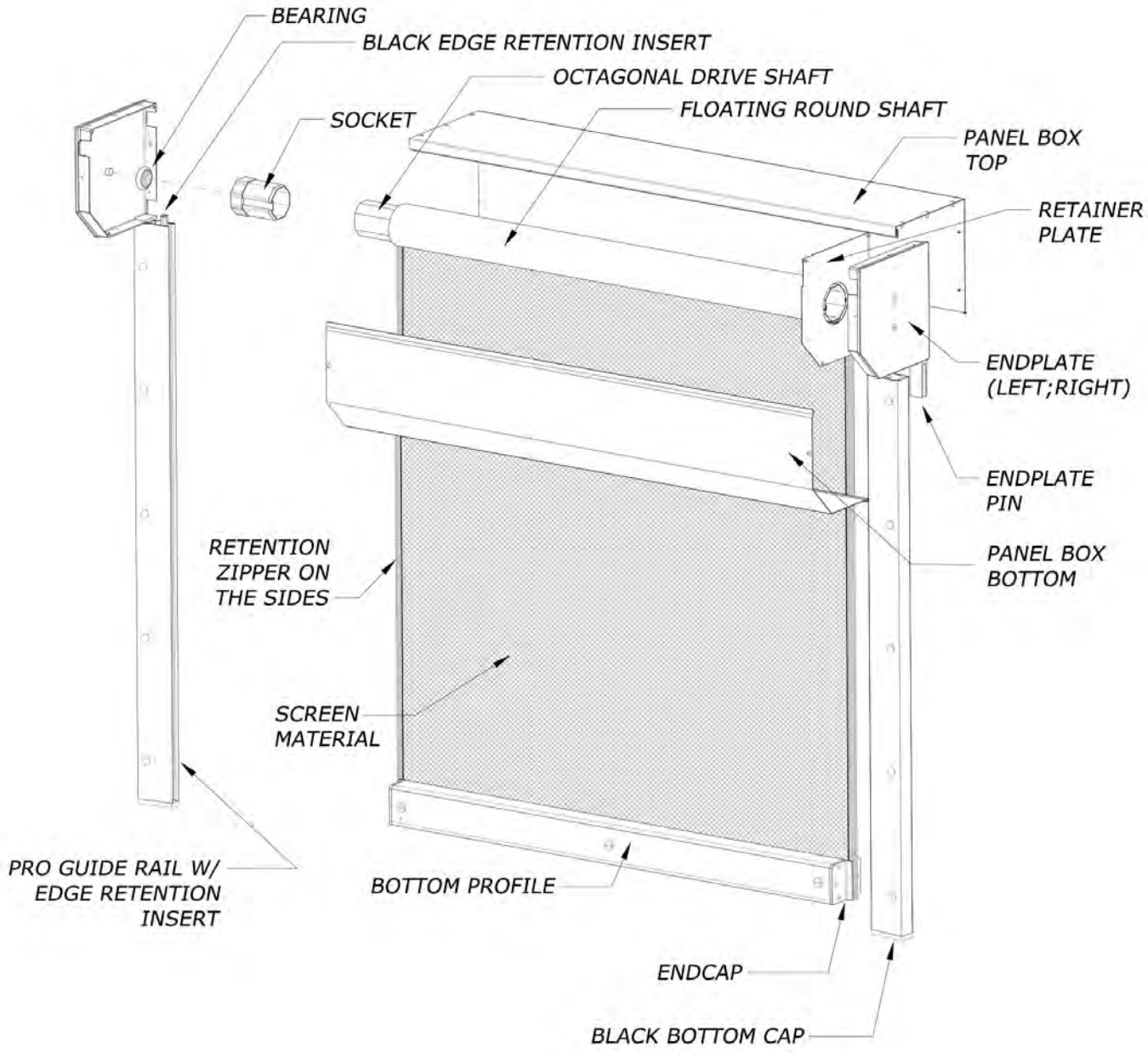
To learn more about how we work together to grow your business with Talius, please contact us at 800-665-5550.

Technical Binder © 2020

Introduction to Talius Habitat Screens™

Habitat Screens™ are retractable screens that are installed on the exterior of the building. Habitat Screens™ block the sun without blocking the view. Talius Habitat Screens™ provide solar protection, reduce internal temperatures, mitigate UV damage and provide daytime privacy. Habitat Screens™ are custom made for each application and harmonize with the exterior of the building or patio.

The frame of Habitat Screens™ are made with high-quality aluminum making them lightweight but durable and comes in 5 stock colors. Talius carries three varieties of screen material specifically formulated for use in exterior applications, these have three different openness factors corresponding to the amount of light let in. The screen material comes in a variety of colors. Talius also offers custom painting with over 1800 available options. Talius offers manual or motorized operation with a variety of control options.



Solutions & Applications

Fabric Openness	**TuffScreen®** Average 45%	**SunTex® 90** Average 10%	**SunTex® 95** Average 5%
SOLUTIONS			
Blocks Heat		●	●
Preserves your view	●	●	●
Saves Energy		●	●
Made for exterior use	●	●	●
Blocks UV rays		●	●
Easy to clean	●	●	●
Protects from insects	●	●	●
Blocks wind		●	●
Daytime privacy		●	●
APPLICATIONS			
Window	●	●	●
Door	●	●	●
Patio/Deck	●	●	●
Garage	●	●	●
Gazebo	●	●	●

Technical Binder © 2020

Habitat Screen™ Components

Habitat Screen™ Standard Features

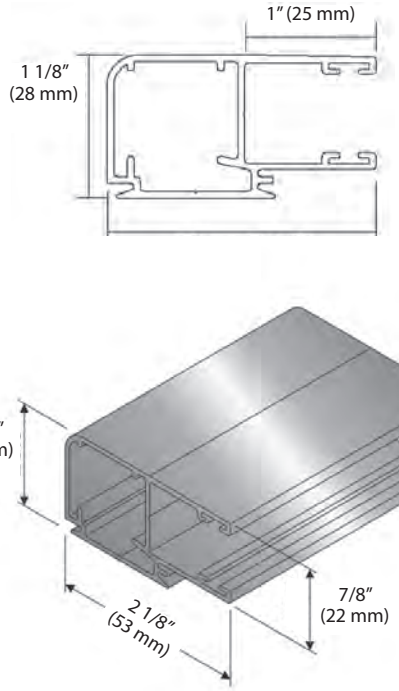
- Talius edge retention screen insert
- Aluminum components in Talius standard factory colours: White, Brown, Beige, Silver, or Black
- Extruded aluminum Habitat Screen™ bottom profile
- 5" x 5" (125mm x 125mm) precision roll-formed aluminum panel box assembly with dual shaft system
- Two extruded aluminum PRO guide rails
- Option of the following fabrics in manufacturers colour range:
  - TuffScreen®, SunTex® 90, SunTex® 95
- Build-up for appropriate mounting method:
  - Face of wall mount includes 7/8" build-up for bottom profile clearance for both guide rails and top of panel box
  - Between jamb mount includes either L build-up, L-sill or 7/8" build-up for both guide rails depending on mounting style
- Choice of operator option:
  - Manual gear reduction operator with aluminum universal and removable crank rod handle with bell connector
  - Standard limit 120VAC/60Hz tubular motor with 6' (1.83m) hard-wired motor cable with bare ends and SPDT paddle switch
  - Somfy® RTS 120VAC/60Hz tubular motor with 6' (1.83m) hard wired motor cable with bare ends and Telis 1 channel RTS transmitter

Habitat Screen™ Additional Feature Options

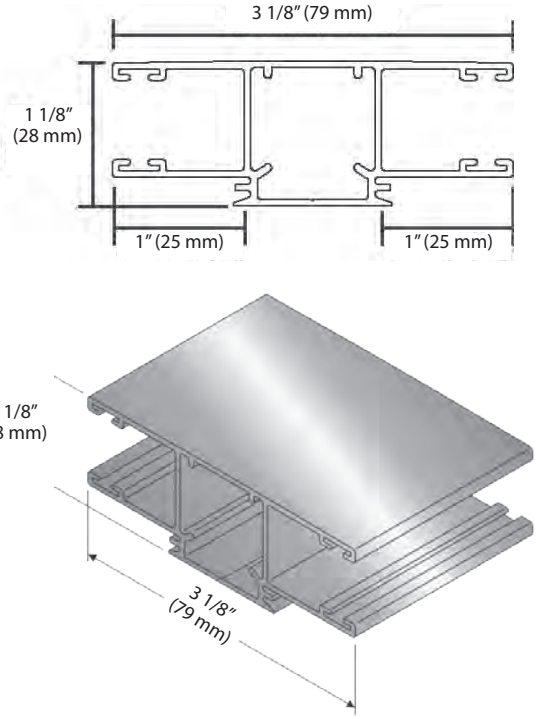
- 1800 custom paint colour options and colour matching available
- Alternate switching options and additional sun sensors, timers or transmitters
- Additional sill and build-up
- Talius Bug Brush™ to increase your projects bug protection

Habitat Screen™ Components *(continued)*

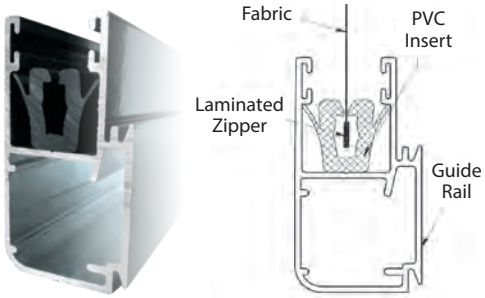
Pro Rail



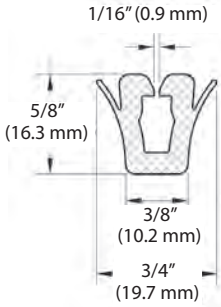
Pro Centre Rail



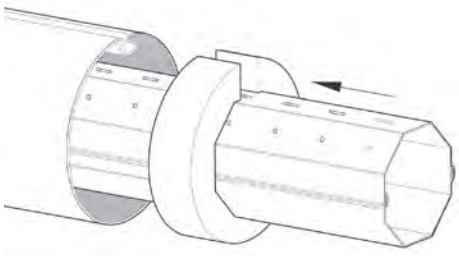
Guide Rail Assembly



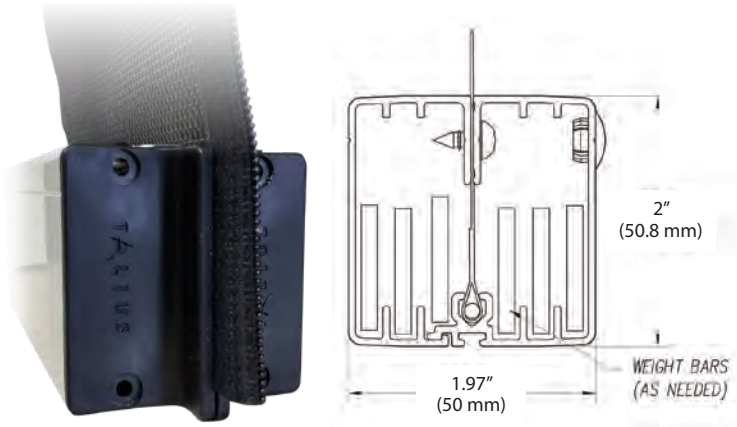
Insert



Shaft Assembly

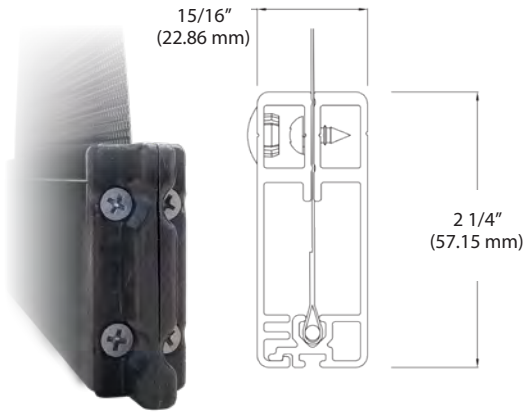


Heavy-duty Bottom Profile



COMING SOON

Slim Bottom Profile *- eliminates the need for 7/8" build-up required for the Heavy-duty Bottom Profile to clear the opening.*



Technical Binder © 2020

Fabric Options

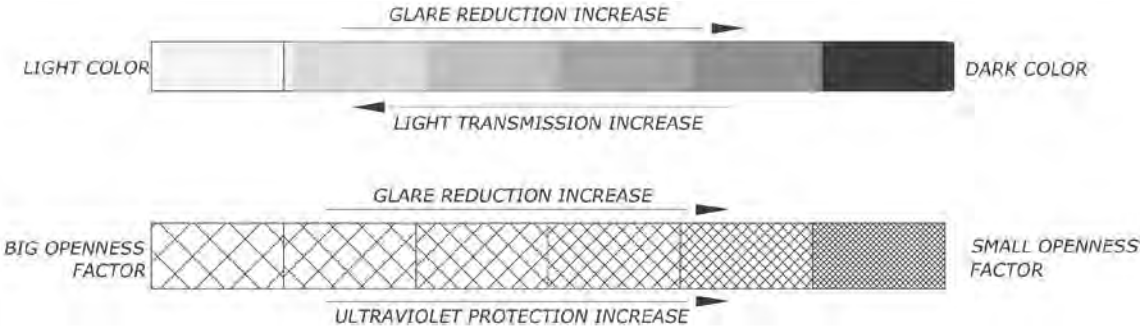
Talius Habitat Screens™ are made using a vinyl-coated polyester fabric, engineered specifically for exterior applications. The fabrics are available in a variety of different colours and 3 different weave densities to provide the exact design and amount of shade needed on every project.

Fabric Types

TuffScreen®: Openness factor of approximately 45%. This is an insect protection screen and is used in applications where a reduction in insects is desired but solar protection is not needed.

SunTex® 90: Openness factor of approximately 10%. This is a screen for solar and thermal protection and is used in applications where insect reduction and solar protection is desired but more air flow is desired.

SunTex® 95: Openness factor of approximately 5%. This is a screen for solar and thermal protection and is used in applications where insect and wind reduction and solar protection is desired.



Architectural Specifications

	TuffScreen®	SunTex® 90	SunTex® 95
Manufacturer	Phifer Incorporated		
Material	Vinyl Coated Polyester		
Designation	Insect Control, Ventilation, Solar Protection		
Application	Insect Protection	Thermal Protection	Thermal Protection
Openness	Average 45%	Average 10%	Average 5%
Weight	283.5 g/m² 7.3 oz/yd² 0.00065 lbs/in²	583 g/m² 17.2 oz/yd² 0.00083 lbs/in²	522 g/m² 15.4 oz/yd² 0.00074 lbs/in²
Thickness	0.686 mm 0.027 in	0.99 mm 0.039 in	0.746 mm 0.029 in
Breaking Strength	Warp = 140 FILL 112	Warp = 480 FILL 340	Warp = 350 FILL 235
Fire Classification	California Technical Bulletin 117 Sec. E (CS-191-53). NFPA 101 (Class A Rating) and IBC Section 903.1 (Class A Rating)		

Maximum Dimensions

	Maximum Overall Width		Maximum Guide Rail Height	
	Feet	Metre	Feet	Metre
ALL SCREENS	19'2"	5.84	14	4.26

Each Habitat Screen™ unit must not exceed the maximum limitations of height and width

For wider applications, Talius's recommends our multiple curtain solution.

Fabric Seams

Horizontal seaming of screen material is required when the height and width of the Habitat Screen™ unit exceeds the size of the fabric roll width.

Horizontal Seaming of TuffScreen®:

Width Between Guide Rails >119" (3.02 m)	Guide Rail Height from:		Guide Rail Height to:	
	Inch	Metre	Inch	Metre
No visible seam required	0	0	118	3.0
Visible Seam Required	120	3.02	168	4.26

Horizontal Seaming of SunTex® 90:

Width Between Guide Rails >119" (3.02 m)	Guide Rail Height from:		Guide Rail Height to:	
	Inch	Metre	Inch	Metre
No visible seam required	0	0	118	3.0
Visible Seam Required *(All colours except Grey - see below)*	120	3.02	168	4.26
Grey Fabric	96	2.44	168	4.26

Horizontal Seaming of SunTex® 95:

Width Between Guide Rails >125" (3.18 m)	Guide Rail Height from:		Guide Rail Height to:	
	Inch	Metre	Inch	Metre
No visible seam required	0	0	124	3.15
Visible Seam Required	125	3.18	168	4.26

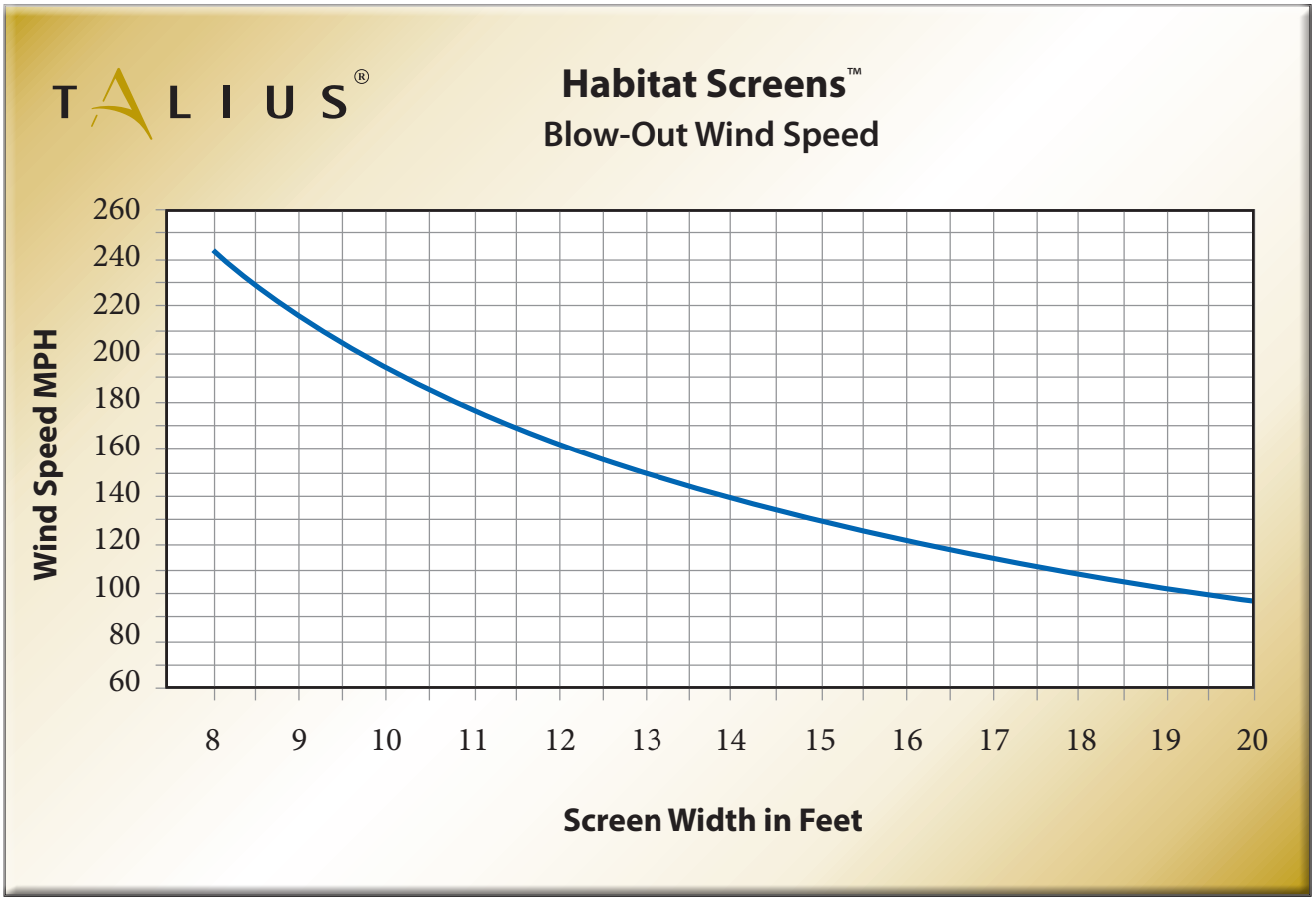
If there are several Habitat Screens™ installed side-by-side it is advisable to order all units with seams at the same height level.

If the Habitat Screen™ requires a visible seam, it will be placed where it will create the least amount of obstruction and be least visible at eye level. Please contact Inside Sales, insidesales@talius.com or 1-800-665-5550 to confirm your seam location.

Technical Binder © 2020

Wind Loading

When Habitat Screens™ are in the fully projected (downward) position, Talius' unique edge retention system allows Talius Habitat Screens™ to withstand winds up to 100 mph depending on the size and mounting conditions of the Habitat Screen™ unit. The chart below is an estimation of wind loads only. Talius has performed internationally recognized testing in a controlled environment to determine these estimates. As Mother Nature does not act in this same controlled way, performance may vary. In areas susceptible to high winds, Talius strongly recommends the use of a wind sensor to protect the integrity of the Habitat Screen™.



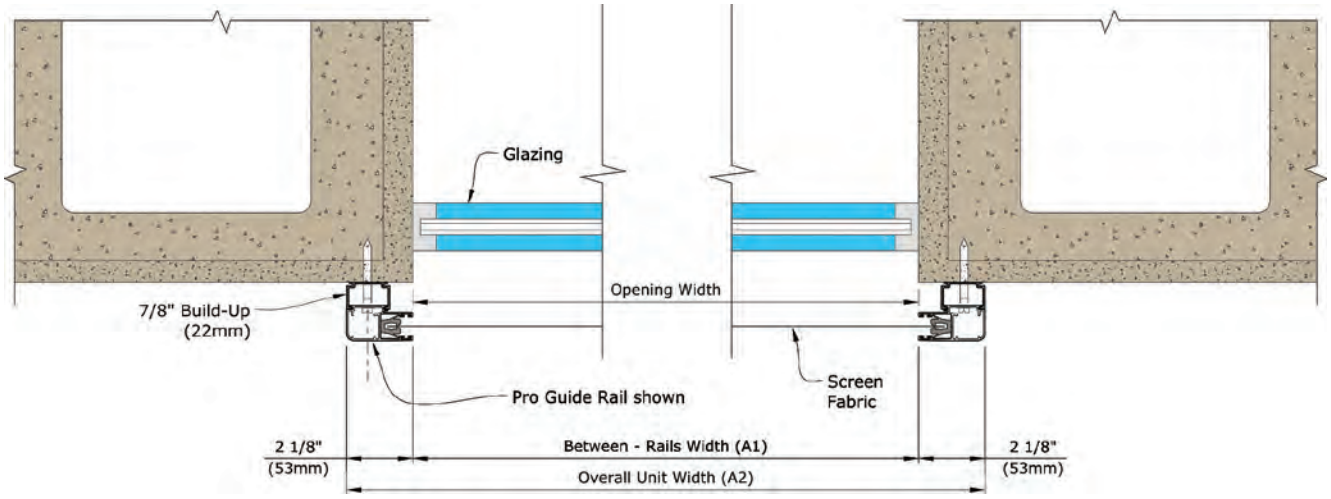
Talius does not recommend that you operate your Habitat Screens™ in windy conditions. During windy conditions, downward operation of Talius Habitat Screens™ is hampered due to the resistance and friction created by the wind pushing against the screen fabric. Upward operation can be performed even in windy conditions.

Mounting Options

Width Dimensions (“A”)

Face of Wall Mount

When mounting Habitat Screens™ on the face-of-wall; use the generic face-of-wall mount diagram below to assist in determining your width dimensions. Provide the critical width dimension for each application: (A1) dimension if the guide rail must not encroach on the opening, or the (A2) dimension if the overall width of the Habitat Screen™ unit must fit between obstructions. Face of wall mount Habitat Screens™ include 1 piece of 7/8” build-up behind both guide rails and the panel box to ensure that the heavy-duty bottom profile clears the opening. When the slim bottom profile becomes available, no 7/8” build-up is required for this mounting option.



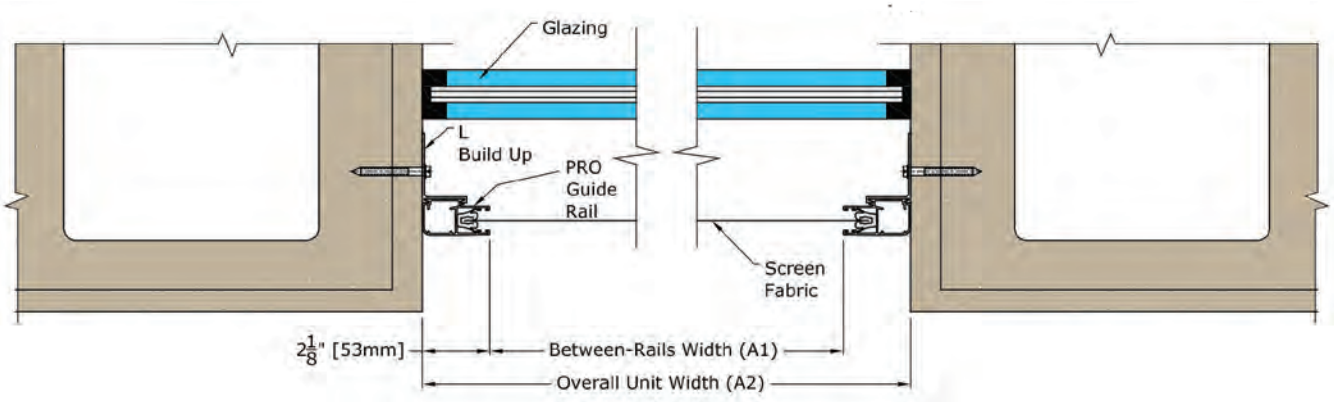
Between Jamb Mount Options

When mounting a Habitat Screen™ unit between jamb (or within an opening), the critical dimension required is the overall Habitat Screen™ unit width (A2), which is often equal to the opening width of the structure. Use the generic diagrams below to view the mounting options and assist in your installation.

Talius suggests that you deduct 1/8” from the overall A2 dimension measurement to allow clearance for the Habitat Screen™ to fit into the jamb opening.

Between Jamb Mount with L Build-Up

L Build-Up is used when the opening is square. Talius L build-up slides onto the back of the rail and the unit can be mounted through the flange with no visible screw on the back of the rails.

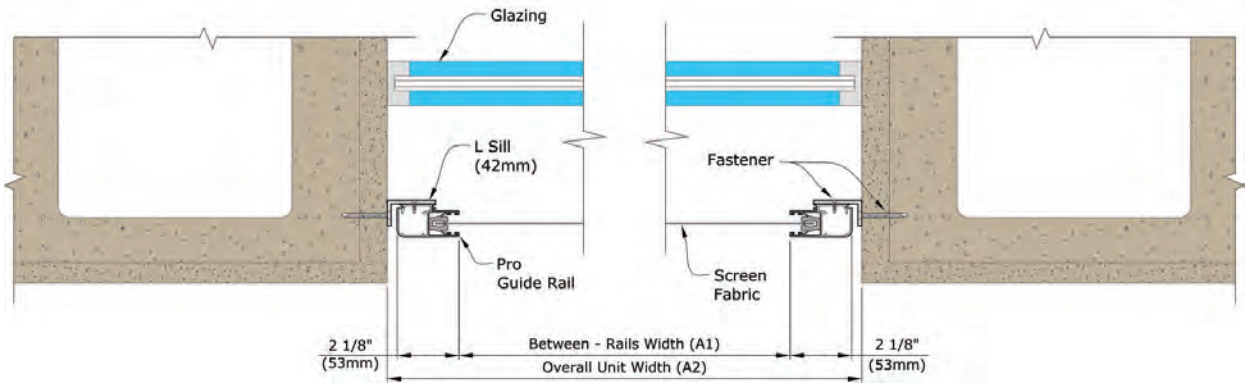


Technical Binder © 2020

Mounting Options *(continued)*

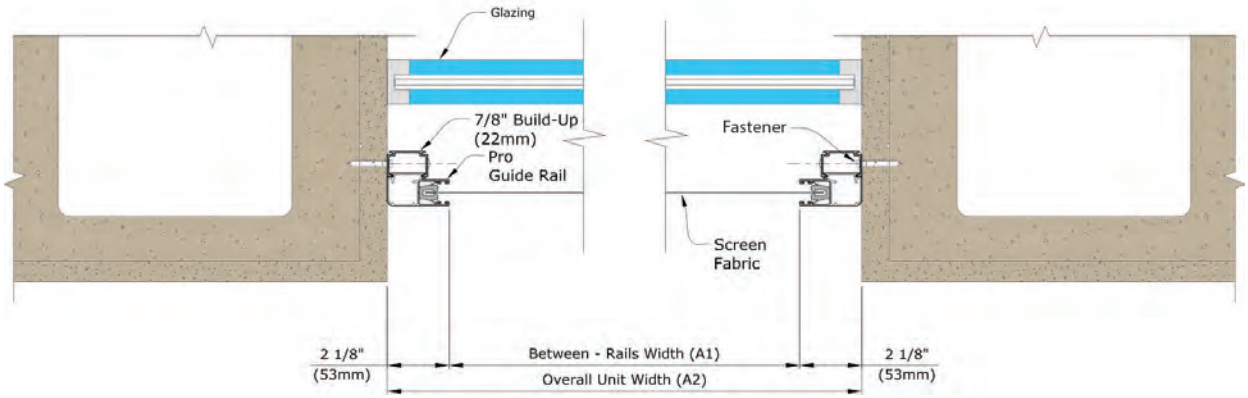
Between Jamb Mount with L-Sill

L-Sill is used when the existing opening is out of square or more flexibility is needed for where the rail is located on the build-up.



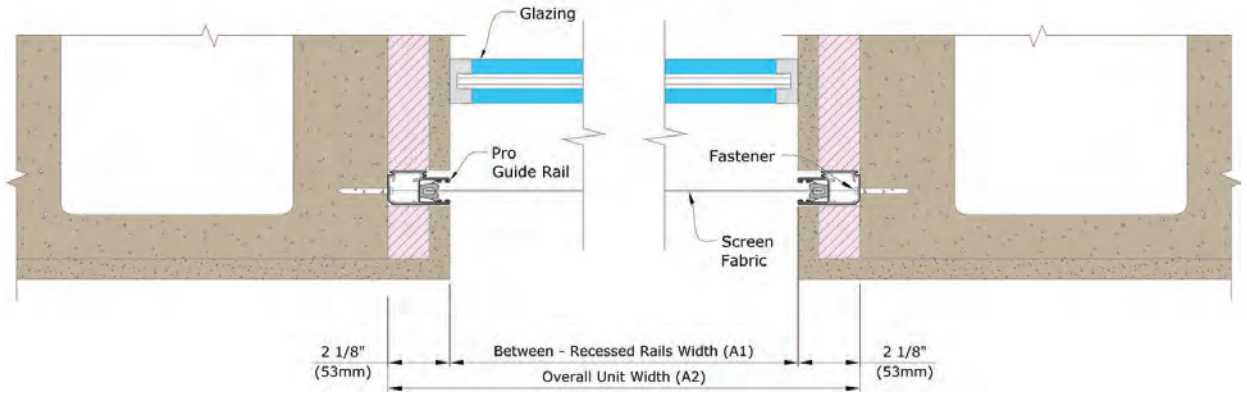
Between Jamb Mount with 7/8" Build-Up

7/8" build-up is used when the installation requires no visible fasteners. The 7/8" build-up slides onto the back of the guide rail and the Habitat Screen™ is mounted through the build-up and caps are used to cover the screws.



Between Jamb Mount with Recessed Rails

Recessed rails are common in new architectural and construction projects. The guide rails are recessed into a cavity hiding them from site. The edge retention insert is removed from the guide rail, the guide rail is installed by drilling through channel and the edge retention insert is put back in place.



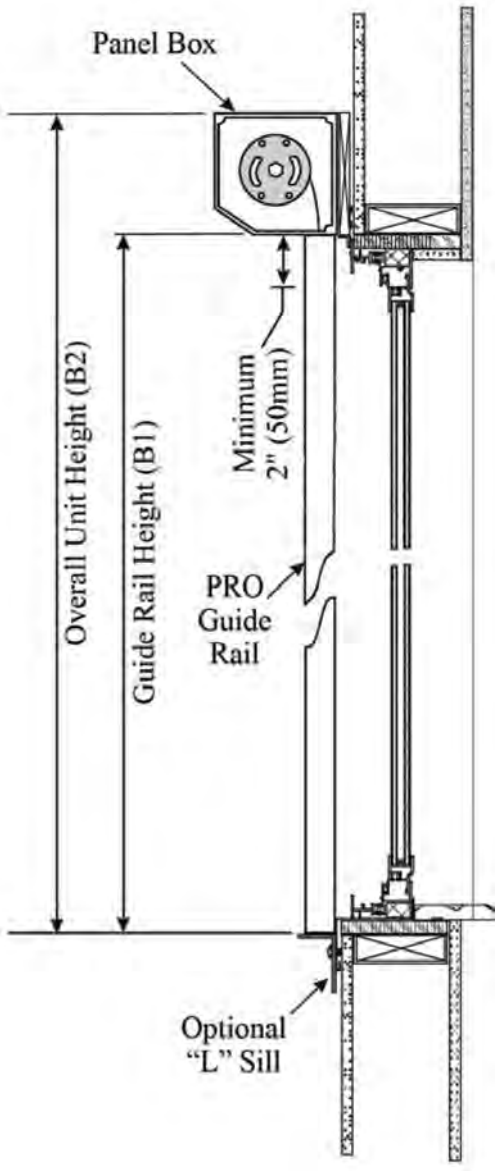
For questions about the mounting methods shown, or about what mounting method is best for your project, contact Talius at 1-800-665-5550.

Mounting Options *(continued)*

Height Dimensions ("B")

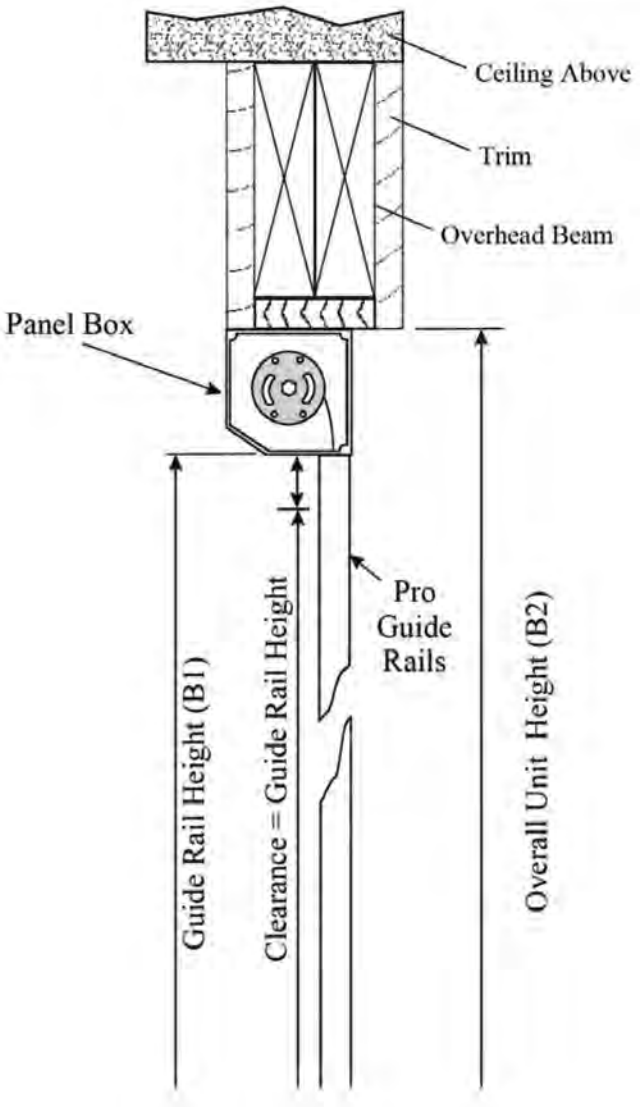
Face-of-Wall Installation

For Habitat Screens™ mounted Face-of-Wall over a window or similar opening, ensure that the guide rail height (B1) extends slightly below the opening, and a minimum of 2" (50mm) above the opening, or the opening window sash. An optional "L" Sill may be added below the guide rails. Ensure that there is a minimum of 5 1/2" (140mm) clearance above the top of the guide rail for the panel box.



Below-Header Installation

When mounting tight below a header, or other obstruction, the critical height dimension is the overall unit height (B2). With this mounting method, the clear opening height clearance which remains is equal to the overall unit height (B2) less 7" (178mm). In the generic diagram shown below, the vertical mounting structure posts have been omitted for clarity.



Technical Binder © 2020

Multiple Section Habitat Screens™

A multiple section Habitat Screen™ has a single panel box and multiple curtain sections for the purposes of aesthetics, strength or cost effectiveness. A split has multiple curtain sections and one PRO centre rail, two PRO rails back-to-back or two PRO rails back-to-back with a space in between. Multiple section Habitat Screens™ can be operated with one or more operators.

Notes About Splitting Habitat Screens™

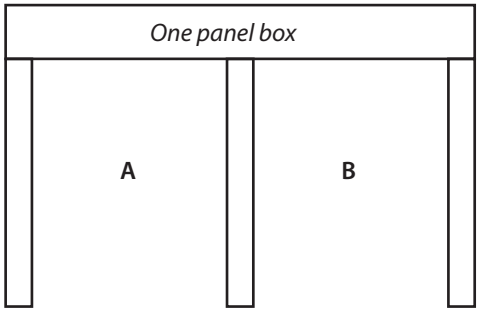
In almost all cases where a Habitat Screen™ has one or more splits and is controlled by a single operator, the horizontal level of the bottom profiles may be out by approximately 1/4" (6 mm) to 3/8" (9 mm) between the first bottom profile and the last when the curtains are fully rolled up. This is a natural occurrence which does not affect the performance of the product, and is purely an aesthetic issue.

Maximum Overall Dimensions

Maximum Overall Width		Maximum Guide Rail Height	
Inch	Metre	Inch	Metre
230	5.8	168	4.2

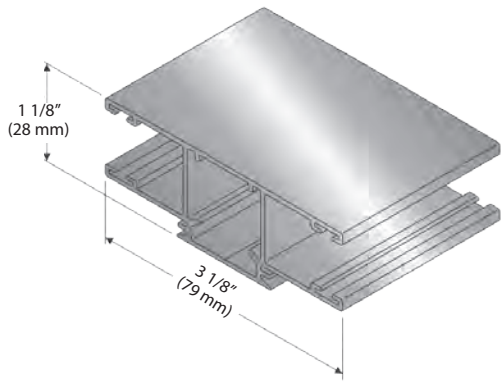
Manual operators have limited lifting capacity due to increased friction with multiple rails. Contact inside sales for sizing options.

Example: One panel box with two Habitat Screen™ Curtains

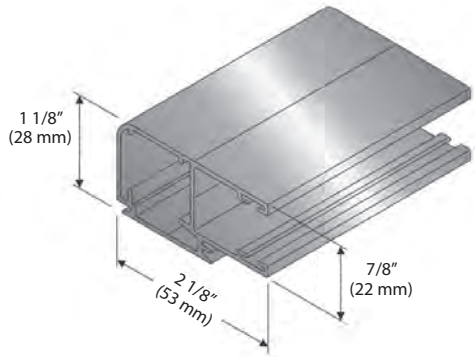


Centre Rail Options – Per Each Split Location

Split Location Rail Style	
1 x PRO Centre Rail Includes 1/4" (6.5 mm) build-up *Same application restraints as the PRO Rail*	**2 x PRO Rails** Includes 1/4" (6.5 mm) build-up



VS



Paint Options and Logo Printing

Talius offers 5 standard Habitat Screen™ colours of white, brown, beige, black and silver and over 1800 custom colour options.

SILVER WHITE BEIGE BROWN BLACK

(Colours shown above may not display accurately on electronic devices or when reproduced - please refer to samples provided in your Talius dealer kit)

Talius Custom Paint Options



Talius has over 1800 options for custom colours available to customers. These options are available through a Benjamin Moore paint fan or by custom colour matching.

Talius custom paints each product in our state of the art manufacturing facility using a two component pure polyurethane paint system which utilizes aliphatic isocyanate reacted with resin polyols. This paint is the same as those commonly applied in demanding conditions such as commercial air crafts, chemical plants, oil and gas platforms and commercial ships like ferries or navy ships.

There will be a minuscule change in the gloss and colour level over the first 5 years. Over the first 15 years, a colour change between 1-4 McAdam units can be expected, where 1 is not perceptible to the human eye. The top coat will continue to preform chemical, corrosion and abrasion services under normal conditions solidly throughout the products lifetime.

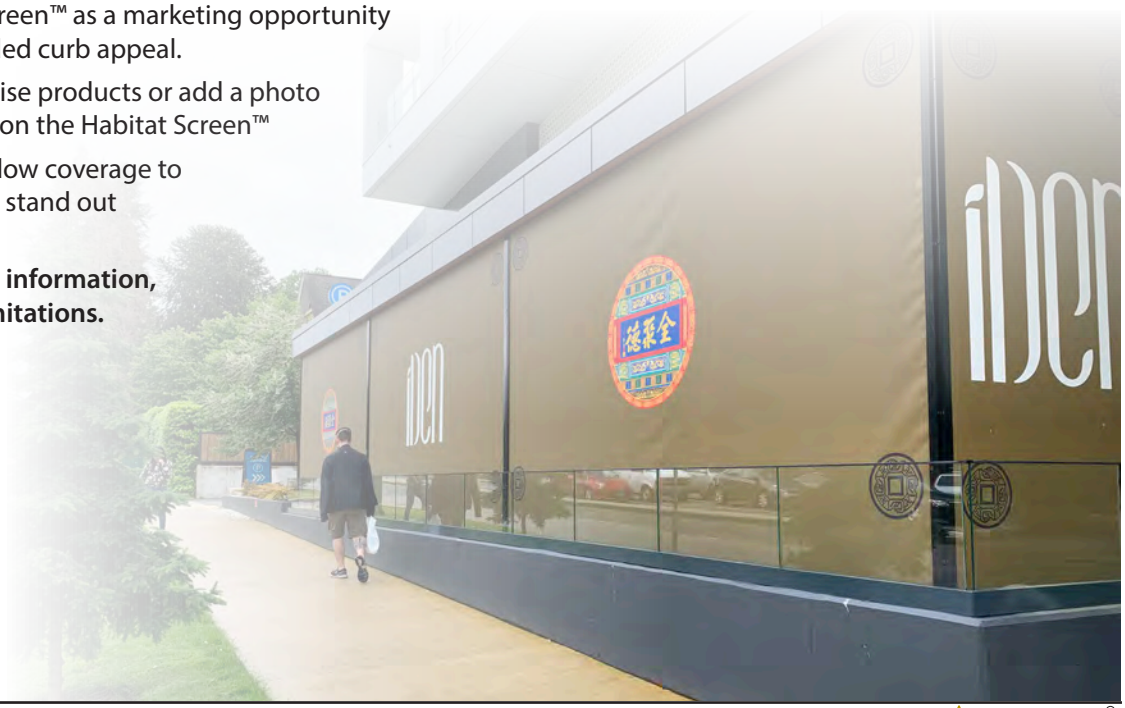
Logo Printing

Utilize your Habitat Screen™ as a marketing opportunity and provide some added curb appeal.

Print your logo, advertise products or add a photo quality image directly on the Habitat Screen™

Make use of your window coverage to make a statement and stand out from the rest.

Contact us for pricing information, requirements, and limitations.



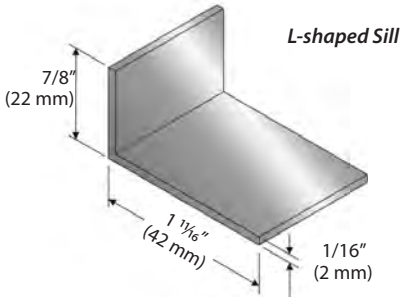
Technical Binder © 2020

Build-Up and Sills

Talius Habitat Screens™ have build-up included depending on the mounting method used in each unit. If additional build-up or sills are required Talius has build-up in our 5 standard colours with the ability of custom painting to help with the ease of installation. Talius build-up and the PRO series guide rails slide together ensuring a snug and secure fit.

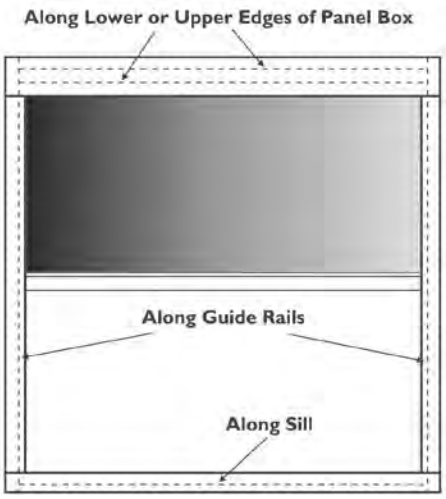
Sills

Habitat Screens™ do not need to close down onto a sill like rollshutters do. However, if a sill is needed for other reasons or if the customer would like one for aesthetic reasons, Talius offers an L-sill. This is the same sill that is included when the mounting method is between jamb with L-sill.

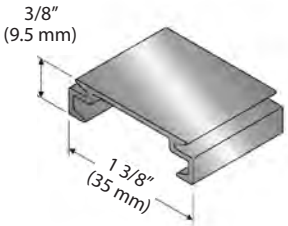


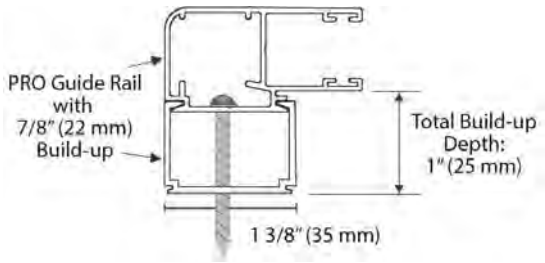
Build-Up

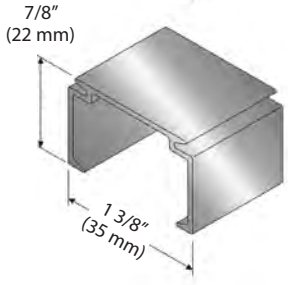
Talius build-up comes in three different options, 3/8" (9.5mm), 7/8" (22mm) and L build-up. Talius recommends utilizing these build-up options on existing sites where Habitat Screens™ are being added and the opening is not level or sites where door handles or other obstructions need to be cleared. Talius build-up easily fits onto the PRO series rails and other build-up, allowing you to use them in combination. See below for common locations and diagrams of build-up for your project.



3/8" & 7/8" Build-up







Build-up Stacking Options



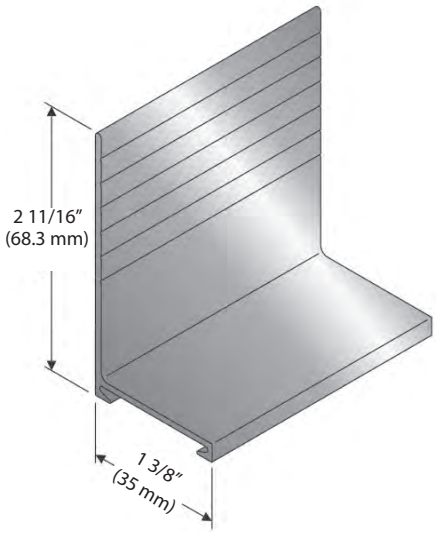
Total Build-up achieved with Pro Rail:

1 3/4"	1 1/4"	1"	3/4"	1/2"
45 mm	32 mm	25 mm	19 mm	13 mm

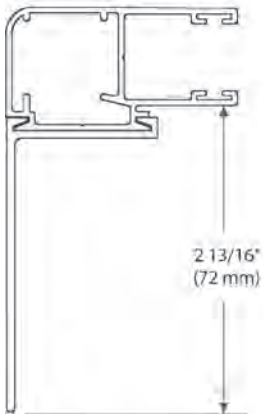
Build-up and Sills (continued)

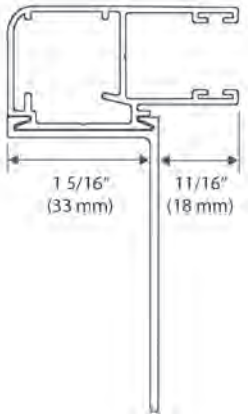
L Shaped Build-up

The L Build-up may be slid onto the PRO Guide Rail or regular Build-up. It's flange is marked with tiny grooves for easy, straight cutting down to required size on a job site. It may be slid onto a rail with the flange flush to the edge of the rail or 1 5/16" (33 mm) offset from the edge of the rail.



Mounting Choices

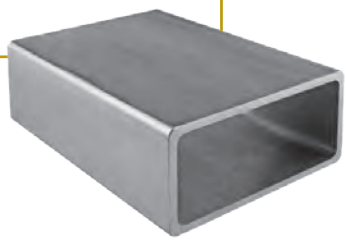


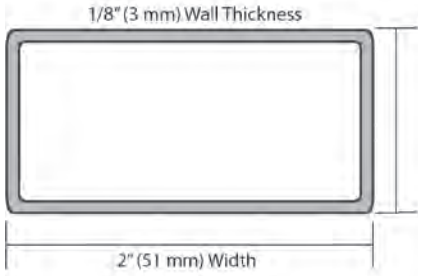


Build-up Tubing

The slide-on and L-shaped build-up will be suitable for most applications where additional clearance is required. However, when build-up depth exceeds 1 3/4" (45 mm), it is recommended that build-up tubing is used for greater surface mounting stability.

As aluminum build-up tubing requires painting, please allow up to one additional week for delivery





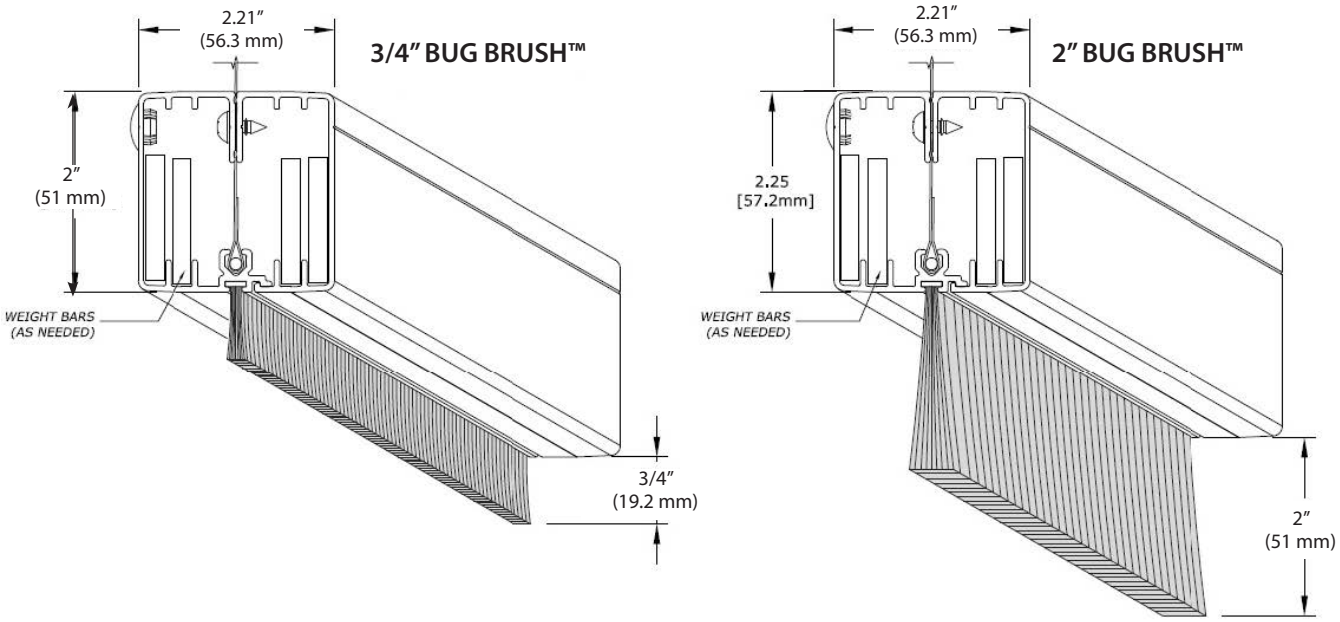
Tubing Sizes Available:

2" x 1"
2" x 2"
2" x 3"
2" x 4"

Technical Binder © 2020

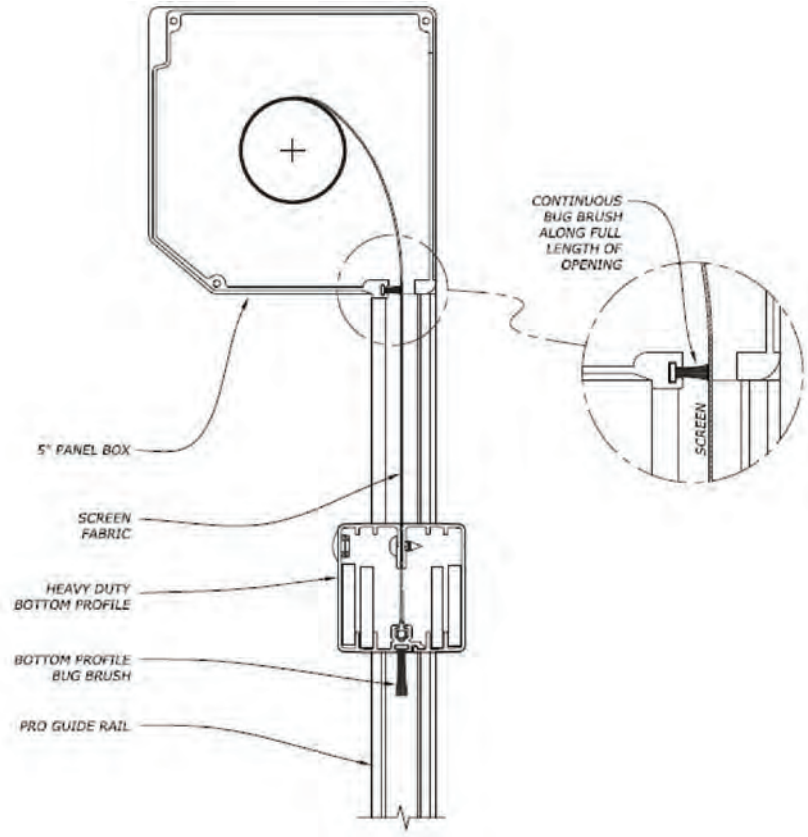
Bug Brush™ for Habitat Screens™

Talius Habitat Screen™ with Bug Brush™ offers the ultimate solution to create a comfortable patio oasis and protection from insects. Engineered to prevent bugs from entering both the top and bottom of Habitat Screens™, Bug Brush™ is installed inside of the panel box bottom and along the bottom edge of the bottom profile.



PANEL BOX BUG BRUSH™

1/2″ nylon brush that helps to deter insects from entering the panel box and is effective as a gentle cleaner to wipe away surface debris.



Operator Options

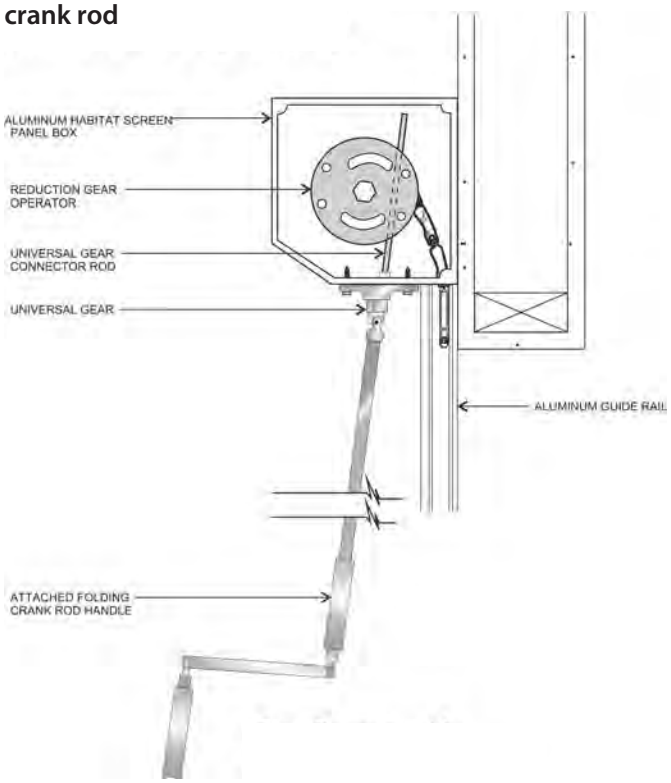
Manual Operators

Talius offers manually operated Habitat Screens™ with a manual gear with crank. All manually operated Habitat Screens™ have limitations that depend on the size of the Habitat Screen™ unit. Please contact Talius at 1-800-665-5550 with your project details if you require a manual operator.

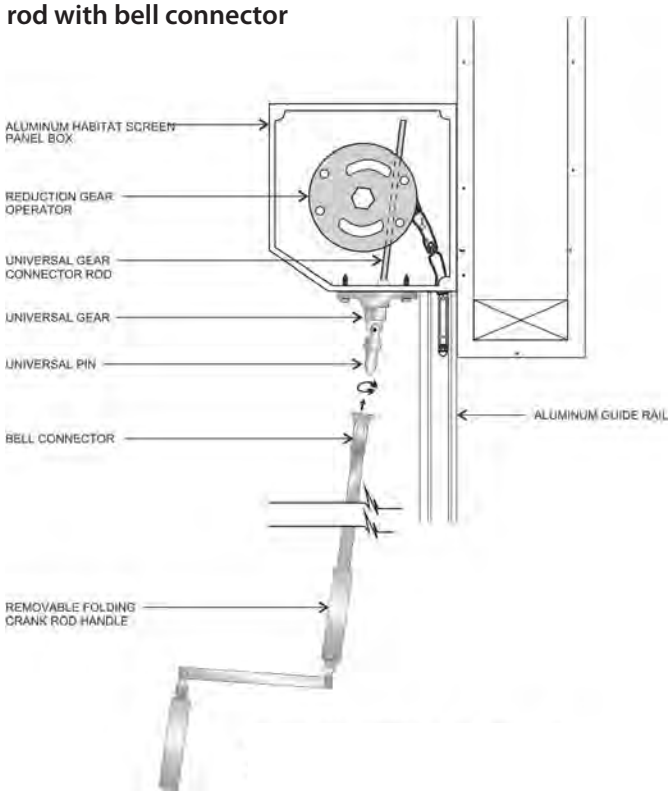
Gear with Crank Rod

Manual gear with crank operated Habitat Screens™ have multiple mounting options as seen below. Cranks can come as a removable unit with a bell connector or attached to the wall or panel box. Standard crank rod lengths are 68" in the extended position however custom lengths are available.

Gear with attached crank rod



Gear with removable crank rod with bell connector

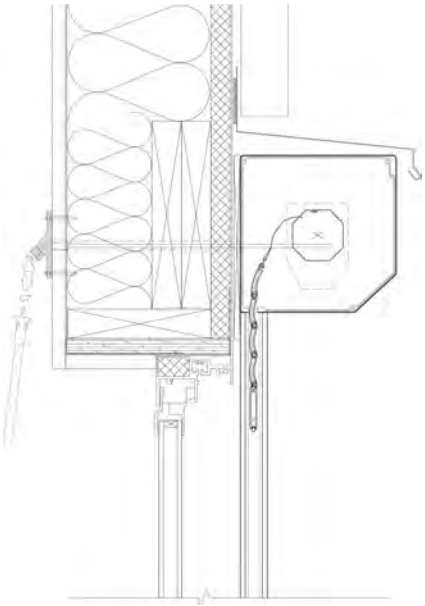


Operator Options (continued)

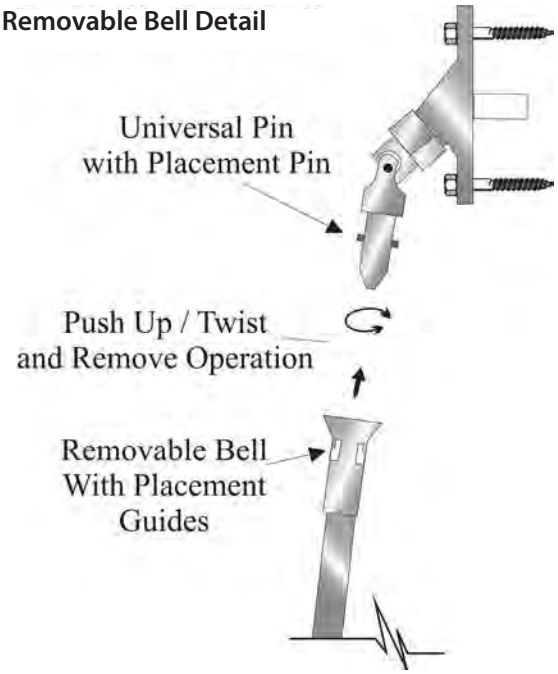
Manual Operators *continued*

Manual with gear Habitat Screens™ can be operated from the panel box side of the Habitat Screen™ or out the back of the panel box. The universal that controls the gear can then go through the wall with the bell connector mounted on the other side of the wall. This application is often used when the Habitat Screen™ is mounted on top of a window and the customer would like operation inside of the building.

Regular Side Operator



Removable Bell Detail



Operator Options (continued)

Motorized Operators – An Overview

Talius offers two main motor options for Habitat Screens™, Standard Limit Motors and Somfy® RTS Motors. Both motor types are available in a variety of torque capacities to operate any size of Habitat Screen™.

Standard Limit Motors

High quality Standard Limit tubular motors are designed for reliable, long lasting, maintenance-free operation. These motors are hard-wired, with hard-wired switches, and feature mechanical limits. The standard limit motor can be operated with the flip of a switch or the push of a button. Choose from a variety of controls including: single switches for individual operation such as Decora Paddle Switches or Key-switches, or add relays to allow for group control of multiple Talius products from one master location.

Features:

- 110v/60 Hz
- CSA and UL certified
- Thermal overload switch
- 6-10' Motor cable

Somfy® RTS Motors

Somfy® Radio Technology (RTS) products provide flexible, convenient options. Somfy® RTS motors feature built-in radio frequency receivers and electronic limit switches for simple programming. The motors can be operated via hand-held transmitter(s), wireless wall switches, timers, or even from the convenience of your smartphone. When combined with the appropriate interface, these motors will integrate with your fire alarm, or building automation system. Upgrade to the RTS Contact Sensing motor to avoid damage to the unit or motor when an obstruction, pet or person is in the downward path of the unit. This motor automatically stop the unit from operating upon contact with an obstruction.

Features:

- 110 v/60 Hz
- CSA and UL certified
- Interim stop position
- Thermal overload switch
- Standard 6-10' cable. 24' cable options are available for an additional charge.

Motor Preparation Package

Purchase this package with your manual operator if you are concerned that your customer may find it difficult to operate the manual Habitat Screen™ in future years, or if your customer simply does not wish to spend the additional cost for a motorized operator at this time but may want to motorize in the future. This package installs during manufacturing all the necessary components, except the motor and switch, for motorized operation. This makes it less time consuming and expensive for the customer to convert to a motorized operator at a later time. The customer simply purchases a motor and switch in the future, and the installer can easily remove the existing manual operator and field-install the new motor and switch, without any further components.

Technical Binder © 2020

Operator Options (continued)

Switches for Standard Limit Motors

If you have selected your Habitat Screen™ with standard limit motorized operation, you'll need to select an appropriate switching device for your motor. Numerous options exist from simple switches and key switches, to Group Control, Timers, and Remote Control. The following pages contain typical switching components that you may select from. **For more special switching requirements, such as sun and wind sensors or home automated controls, please contact Inside Sales for additional switching solutions that may be available for your application.**

A certified electrician should perform all wiring connections for motors and switching devices. Follow the approved wiring information provided for each motor and switching device, and do not deviate without approval from the manufacturer. DO NOT wire more than one Standard Limit Tubular Motor to a single switch without the use of special switching devices available through the manufacturer. Only switching controls for tubular motors approved by the manufacturer can be used on our Habitat Screens™ to prevent voiding the warranty, possible damage to your product and home, or personal injury. Contact the manufacturer for additional information or clarification on any electrical component.

Standard limit motors are easily operated with the flip of a switch or the push of a button. Choose from a variety of controls including:

- Single switches for individual operation.
- Group controls for operating multiple Talius products from one location.
- Timer switches for convenient, automated opening and closing.

What is the difference between Maintained and Momentary Switches?

Maintained switches are three-position switches featuring an up, down and stop position. Maintained switches are designed to allow the user to operate the switch in the direction of their choice (up or down) and the switch will operate the Habitat Screen™ continuously until it has hit its upper or lower limit unless otherwise interrupted in the stop position.

Maintained switches allow the operator to let go of the switch and allow the motor to keep running until it reaches its upper or lower limit.

Momentary switches are three-position switches featuring an up, down, and stop position. Momentary switches are designed to allow the user full control of the operation of the Habitat Screen™ by having to keep contact with the switch in the direction of their choice (up or down) and the ability to stop the operation by releasing their hold on the switch.

Momentary switches are ideal for areas in which safety of small children or animals is a concern, or where the operator needs to monitor the operation of the Habitat Screen™ to ensure that it does not project downward on any objects that may damage the objects or the Habitat Screen™.

Operator Options (continued)

Standard Limit Motor Component Options

Standard limit motors are easily operated with the flip of a switch or the push of a button. For group controls please contact Talius at 1-800-665-5550.

Standard Limit Motor Operator Wall Switches

Paddle Switch	
Decora maintained or momentary contact, SPDT *White*	
Decora maintained contact only, DPDT *White*	

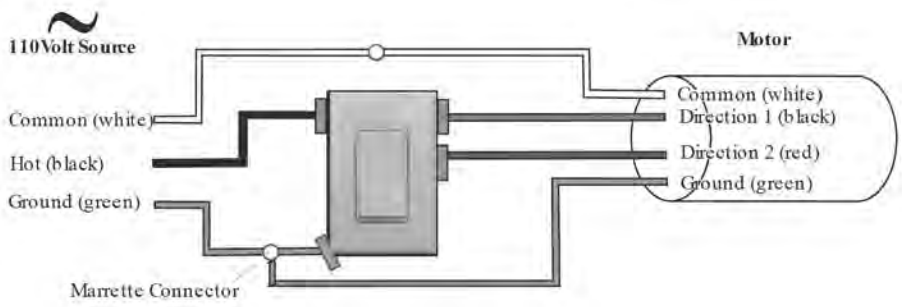


Technical Binder © 2020

Operator Options *(continued)*

Important information about Talius Motor Operators for Standard Limit Motors

Proper Wiring of a Single Pol Double Throw (SPDT) Paddle Switch for Talius Motorized Habitat Screens™



Do not wire more than 1 motor to a switch. This practice is commonly referred to as wiring in parallel and incorrect wiring of Talius products will void the Talius manufacturer's warranty.

Problem:
Wiring multiple motors to a switch in parallel will result in constant capacitor feedback between the motors. This can cause damage to the motors and unstable operation of the Habitat Screens™ because as power is applied to the motors through direction wire A, power is also transferred between the motors through their direction wire B.

Symptoms:
- Motors will not hold their limits. This may not be noticed during the initial install
- Motors may generate abnormal noise
- Motor failure

Solutions:
- Supply one switch per motor
- Supply a Double Pole Double Throw (DPDT) paddle switch which has two separate poles and allows for a maximum control of two motors per switch
- Supply appropriate relay solution based upon customer control configuration requirements
- Contact TALIUS for more information on how to resolve this issue

Exceptions to this rule:
- Somfy® RTS radio frequency motors
- Contact sensing motors

Do not wire more than one switch to a motor. Incorrect wiring of Talius products will void the Talius manufacturer's warranty.

Problem:
Wiring multiple switches to one motor may overload the motor capacitor and micro switches, resulting in irreversible damage to the motor.

Symptoms:
- Motor failure

Solutions:
- Supply one switch per motor
- Supply appropriate relay solution based upon customer control configuration requirements
- Contact TALIUS for more information on how to resolve this issue
- Use of momentary contact switches is not an acceptable solution

Exceptions to this rule:
- Somfy® RTS radio frequency motors
- Motors when used with RC200, or Universal RTS radio frequency receivers and controlled via radio frequency controllers

Questions? Please contact Talius at 1-800-665-5550 or email insidesales@talius.com

Operator Options *(continued)*

Switches for Somfy® RTS Motors

If you have selected your Habitat Screen™ with Somfy® RTS motorized operation, you'll need to select an appropriate switching device. One of the benefits of the Somfy® RTS option is the ability to easily operate multiple units from a single transmitter. Talius offers transmitters that allow for the operation of up to 16 units on a single transmitter.

Somfy® transmitters have a range of approximately 65' through double reinforced concrete. However, this range can vary slightly based on factors such as interference, building construction, wiring, and location of components. If you find that you are having this issue or that you need a longer range an RTS Repeater can be used to extend the range of the signal.

Somfy® RTS Motors also allow for control with sun sensors to provide maximum sun protection for your customer. Sun sensors automatically lower Habitat Screen™ units when the sun hits the sensor and raise when the sun sets. This allows for maximum sun protection and therefore energy efficiency.

Somfy® RTS Wall Transmitters

DecoFlex-1 RTS Transmitter

Single-channel radio frequency wall mounted transmitter.

White



DecoFlex-5 RTS Switch

Five-channel radio frequency wall mounted transmitter.

White



Somfy® RTS Handheld Transmitters

Lets you operate a motorized Habitat Screen™ from anywhere in or around the building. These compact hand-held transmitters are personally coded for maximum security with up, stop and down push buttons make using them just as easy as a wall transmitter.

Telis 1 RTS Pure Transmitter

Single-channel radio frequency hand-held transmitter.

White



Telis 4 RTS Pure Transmitter

Four-channel and group control radio frequency hand-held transmitter.

White



Telis 16 RTS Pure Transmitter

16-channel and group control radio frequency transmitter with intuitive programming and easy-to-use interface.

White



The Telis 1 & 4 RTS Transmitters will be discontinued and the Situo remotes below will be offered as their substitute. The effective date is undetermined at this time.

COMING SOON **Situo 1 RTS Pure II Transmitter**

Single-channel radio f requency hand-held transmitter.

White



COMING SOON **Situo 5 RTS Pure II Transmitter**

Four-channel and group control radio frequency hand-held transmitter.

White



Technical Binder © 2020

Operator Options (continued)

Somfy® RTS Operator Component Options

Somfy® RTS Patio Transmitters

Patio transmitters are shock and water resistant making them ideal for decks, patios or other outdoor usage.

Telis 4 RTS Patio Transmitter

Water resistant four-channel and group control radio frequency hand-held transmitter.

White with Blue Accent



Somfy® RTS Specialty Transmitters

Used to toggle off a Sun Sensor.

Telis 4 SOLIRIS RTS Patio Transmitter

Four channel hand-held remote controls one unit or group control. Offers additional functionality to turn a sun sensor on and off. Compatible with full range of RTS controls and operates within a range of 65 feet.

White with Blue Accent



Motor Cable

Optional 24' length Motor Cable.

Cable installed on motor with pig-tail end.

Plug in head to be supplied and installed by dealer on-site.



Operator Options *(continued)*

Control Your Habitat Screen™ with Your Phone

The Somfy® myLink™ allows you to use your smart phone to control your Habitat Screen™ even when away from home. The myLink allows for full control of your Habitat Screen™ and includes individual control, group control, remote access and a 7-day schedule.



Do more with the services you love!

The Somfy myLink™ allows you to enjoy your Radio Technology Somfy® (RTS) motorized solutions even more with **IFTTT (If This, Then That)** technology.

IFTTT is a free, web-based service that allows myLink to communicate with other smart home solutions easily.

Now, your connected devices and apps work together to create the ultimate ambiance, automatically.

Get started immediately with Applets by Somfy, or create your own, to maximize your experience based on conditions.

IF your connected thermostat reaches 90 degrees, THEN your RTS shades will automatically lower to reduce energy.



Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

IF your connected lights dim after 9pm, THEN your bedroom shades lower for privacy!



Compatible with:

JUST ASK amazon alexa

Google Home with Google Assistant

PHILIPS

nest

wemo

SmartThings

wu

ring

wink

Honeywell

Voice commands
Use natural voice commands to operate your RTS connected products.

App control
Harness the power of your favorite mobile device for Somfy-powered solutions.

Remote access
Activate Somfy-powered solutions even when you're away from home to maximize the many lifestyle benefits they provide such as energy savings, UV protection and privacy.

Timed events
Schedule motorized applications based on time of day or sunrise/sunset times.

On-screen setup wizard
Intuitive installation and setup allows you to enjoy your myLink experience in a few short minutes.

Flexible
Choose the best way to control up to 16 channels of motorized solutions with options such as individual control, group control, and more.

Compatible
Controls all Radio Technology Somfy® (RTS) products including motorized blinds, shades, curtains, screens, awnings, and rolling shutters as well as RTS enabled lighting devices. The myLink also works with third-party automation systems, Amazon Alexa and Google Assistant via IFTTT.

Technical Binder © 2020

Operator Options *(continued)*

Somfy® RTS Specialty Transmitters

Telis 1 Chronis RTS 24 Hour/7 Day Timer

The Chronis Comfort Timer is a 7 day programmable timer that will automatically raise and lower Habitat Screens™ based on the user's programmed time of day. The Chronis can be programmed to operate at the same time each day or at different times every day. It has a security function typically used while on vacation that will raise or lower Habitat Screens™ randomly to give the impression of an occupied home.

White



Somfy® myLink™

Control the unit by using a smart device.

Control options include individual and group control, remote access and a 7 day schedule.

White



Smoove® 1 RTS Pure Transmitter

Single-channel surface-mounted and battery powered wall switch. Additional frames are available in multiple colors and finishes (sold separately).

- Tactile buttons for up/down/my/stop control
- LED illuminates to confirm RTS signal transmission
- Supplied with white faceplate



Smoove® Decorative Face Plates



Standard Upgrade Colours
Black or Double Pure
Double Pure (2 gang)

Premium Upgrade Colours
Cherry, Silver Matte, Light Bamboo, Amber Bamboo, or Walnut



Smoove® 4 RTS Pure Transmitter

Multi-channel surface-mounted and battery powered wall switch for up to 4 motors or 4 groups. Additional frames are available in multiple colors and finishes (sold separately).

- Tactile buttons for up/down/my/stop control
- LED illuminates to confirm RTS signal transmission
- Supplied with white faceplace

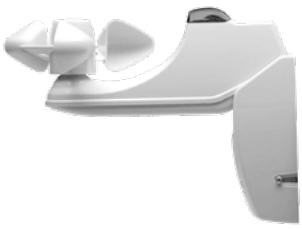
Sun and Wind Sensors

SOLIRIS RTS Sun and Wind Sensor

Combined sun and wind sensor that will lower a Habitat Screen™ automatically when the sun shines and will raise a Habitat Screen™ with the detection of wind.

- Plugs into 120V electrical outlet.
- Compatible with Somfy® RTS motors, controls and sensors.
- Requires Soliris Transmitter to toggle off Sun Sensor.

White



EOLIS RTS Wind Sensor

Wind sensor that will raise a Habitat Screen™ automatically during windy conditions. Wind sensitivity levels are set by the customer and/or the installer.

- Plugs into a 120V electrical outlet.
- Compatible with Somfy® RTS motors, controls and sensors.

White





Somfy® Outdoor Sunnis RTS Sun Sensor

Powered by a built in solar cell, this outdoor sun sensor will open or retract your Habitat Screens™ based on sun light levels.

White

Operator Options *(continued)*

Somfy® RTS Motor Wiring Diagrams and Limit Setting Instructions

Power Supply (120 VAC / 60 Hz)

a. All wiring must conform to NEC (National Electrical Code) and local codes.

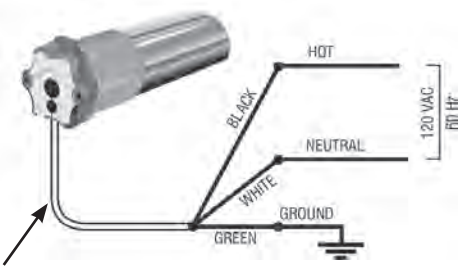
b. The ALTUS® RTS motors can be wired in Parallel. A means of disconnecting the power at each motor independently should be provided

c. Power only needs to be supplied to the motor. The receiver is completely enclosed inside the motor tube.

d. Somfy® reserves the right to void the motor warranty if wiring recommendations are not followed.

MOTOR WIRING COLOR CODE

120 VAC	CODE
BLACK	HOT
WHITE	NEUTRAL
GREEN	GROUND



Integrated Antenna

DO NOT cut power cable shorter than 18″

Somfy® RTS motors can be wired in parallel. For future servicing ease, Talius recommends setting up your site so you have the ability to disconnect power to each individual unit.

Somfy® Limit Adjustment Tips

Somfy® RF product installation instructions

When you receive your Talius Habitat Screen™ with a Somfy® radio frequency operated product, it will be in user mode.

The installation process to adjust the limits is simple. Follow the steps below to ensure that the proper limits are set. Adjust each Habitat Screen™ individually before connecting and operating as a group.

❶ ADJUST THE UPPER LIMIT

1. Move the motor to its preset UPPER limit position and let it stop
2. Press the **UP** and **DOWN** buttons simultaneously on the transmitter until the motor jogs, then release
3. Adjust to a **NEW UPPER** limit position
4. Press the **MY/STOP** button until the motor jogs, then release.
5. Check it

❷ ADJUST THE LOWER LIMIT

1. Move the motor to its preset **LOWER** limit position and let it stop
2. Press the **UP** and **DOWN** buttons simultaneously on the transmitter until the motor jogs, then release
3. Adjust to a new **LOWER** limit position
4. Press the **MY/STOP** button until the motor jogs, then release.
5. Check it

For Limit Setting example watch: https://youtu.be/fmyRXkBj8MA

These limit setting instructions apply to non-manual override motors only. For instructions on limit setting for manual override motors, please refer to the instructions enclosed with your small parts or contact our inside sales team at 1-800-665-5550.

Technical Binder © 2020

Tips for Integrating Talius Products with Home Automation

The popularity of home automation has been increasing greatly in recent years due to the technology becoming affordable for most and simple to use through smartphone and tablet connectivity. A home automation system integrates electrical devices in a house with each other. The techniques employed in home automation include those in building automation as well as the control of domestic activities. Devices may be connected through a home network to allow control by a personal computer, and may allow remote access from the internet. Through the integration of information technologies with the home environment, systems and appliances are able to communicate in an integrated manner which results in convenience, energy efficiency, and safety benefits.

Talius Habitat Screens™ can be integrated with a variety of home automation systems. To assist in specifying the right solution for your clients, please use the following questions as a guide. After you have obtained answers to these questions, please contact Talius with this information and let us consult you on determining the appropriate motor and interface solution for your client.

1. **What is the name of the home automation system manufacturer?**
2. **Is there an automation contractor involved?**
3. **What is the application?**
    a. Commercial or Residential?
    b. Windows and/or Doors?
    c. Are there concerns that the units might operate when a door, out opening casement or awning window is open?
    d. Provide a general description of what our products are being used for and the desired function
4. **How many Habitat Screen™units are involved?**
5. **What is the largest Habitat Screen™ required for this project?**
6. **What is the control configuration?**
    a. Is individual control required?
    b. Is master control required?
    c. Is sub-group control required?
7. **How will the units be operated?**
    a. Strictly by the building automation system, or does the customer desire additional switches or controls?
8. **Are there special control considerations?**
    a. Does the client want remote control?
    b. Are weather sensors requested?
    c. Are times requested?
9. **Is there any resistance from the building owner or automation contractor to using a Radio Frequency system?**
    a. Are there considerations with respect to radio reception, interference or range that might lead us to stick with a hard wired solution?

This is basic guideline for considerations when integrating Habitat Screens™ with a home automation system. If you have any further questions, please contact our Inside Sales team at insidesales@talius.com, or toll free at 1-800-665-5550.


TALIUS®

TALIUS®

Products
Cable Guided Habitat Screens™

Table of Contents

- mytalius.com.....ii
- Introduction to Talius Cable Guided Habitat Screens™.....1
- Cable Guided Habitat Screen™ Dimensions.....2
- Cable Guided Habitat Screen™ Mounting Options.....3

40 YEARS
Building solutions for the future

Technical Binder © 2020

Enhance your experience

with Talius by visiting

mytalius.com

your comprehensive web portal populated with valuable information about Talius products and services.

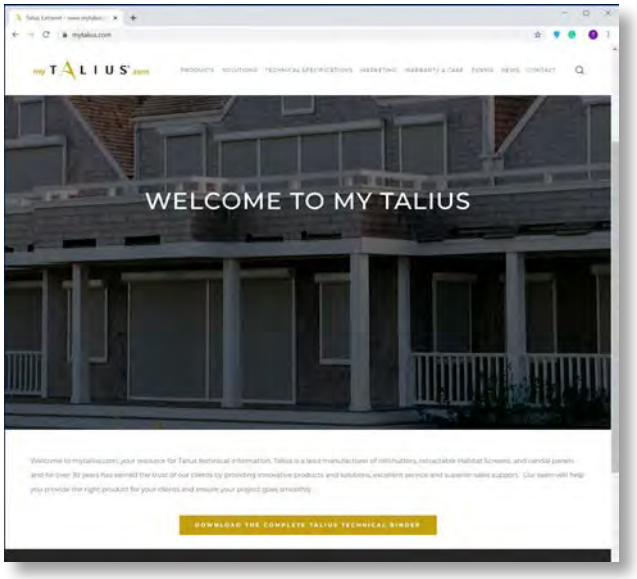
Developed with our dealers in mind, mytalius.com is your portal for technical information to help your project run smoothly, from planning to installation. Discover the many dynamic features and reap the profitable benefits that this easy-to-navigate, practical and informative resource centre has to offer. On mytalius.com, you will find all the information you will need to specify, sell and install Talius products with confidence.

Send architects or contractors you are working with here to find written specification, wiring diagrams or architectural drawings.

mytalius.com allows you to preview and download installation and technical information all at your fingertips.

Following is some of the information that you will discover on mytalius.com:

- General technical requirements
- Applications
- Component options
- Electrical component options
- Architectural drawings in both PDF and CAD formats
- Written specifications
- Wiring Diagrams
- Installation guides and tips
- Warranty Documents
- Talius Brochures
- Talius Logo
- Talius photo library
- Talius News



If you are looking for a specific shop drawing, photo, or other resource that you cannot find on mytalius.com, contact our knowledgeable Inside Sales Team at insidesales@talius.com. They can provide technical information, quotes, project advice and even help you pursue product alternate approval on project specifications.

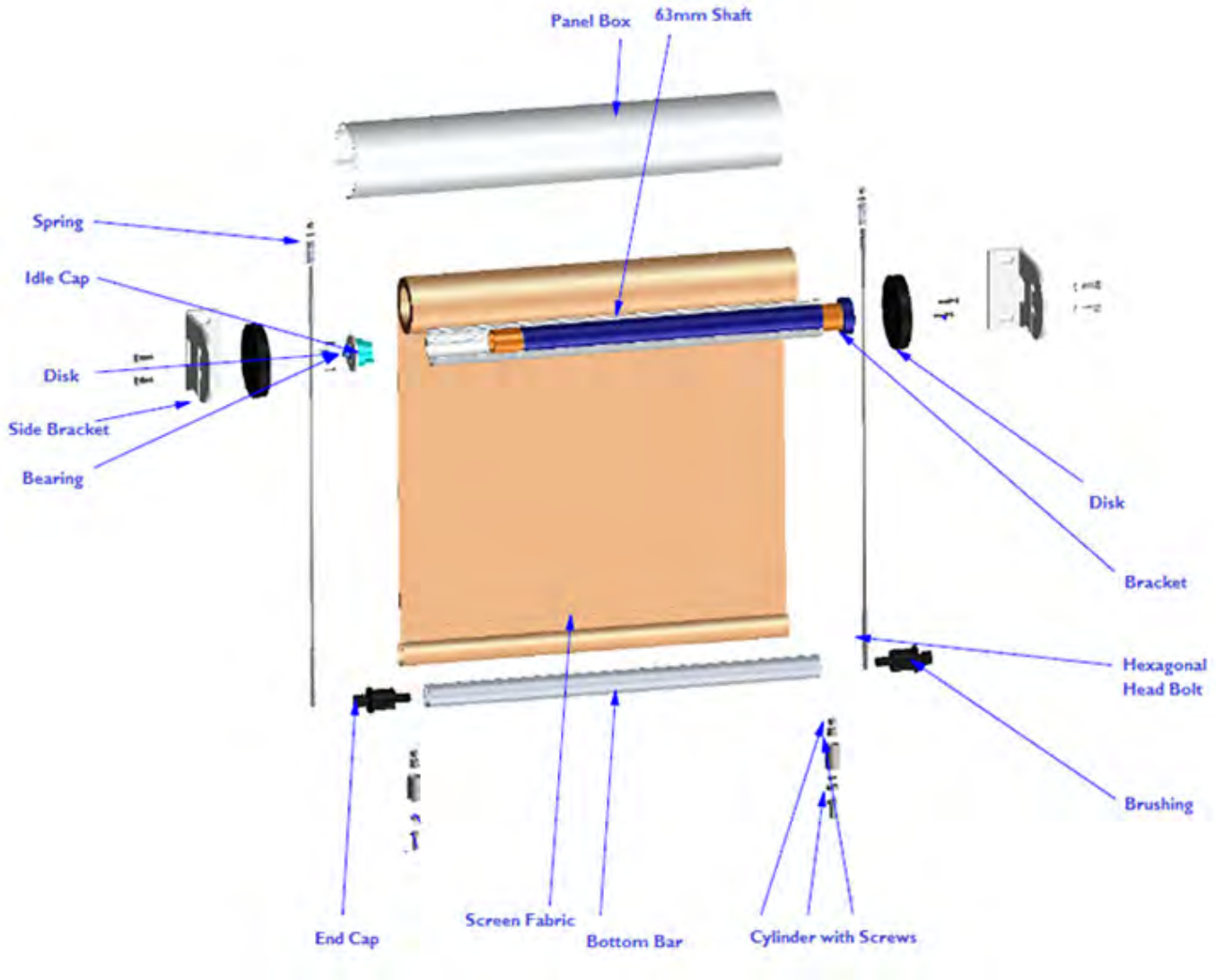
To learn more about how we work together to grow your business with Talius, please contact us at 800-665-5550.

Technical Binder © 2020

Introduction to Talius Cable Guided Habitat Screens™

Habitat Cable Guided Screens are an external roller shade system guided by stainless steel cables. The Habitat Cable Guided Screens provide excellent control of heat and glare with fabrics that are specifically formulated for use on exterior applications. The Habitat Cable Guided Screen system can be installed virtually anywhere, on residential and commercial projects. Habitat Cable Guided Screens are an ideal way to reduce heat gain, lower energy costs, provide glare control and optimize daylight.

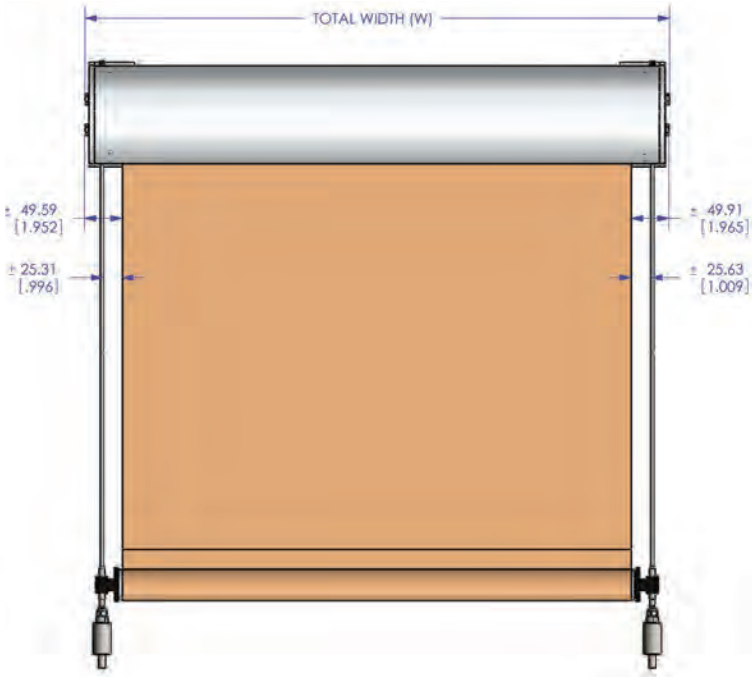
Habitat Cable Guided Screens can be used in a range of installations from under header, extended projection from building edge to more standard mounts. The Habitat Cable Guided Screen is encased in a weather protected aluminum housing with a heavy-duty bracket system, telescopic bottom bar with 5mm stainless steel cables with stainless steel anchors and attachment. All components are exterior rated and designed to withstand adverse weather conditions. The Habitat Cable Guided Screen System is available with motorized or manual operation and has an optional sun sensor to optimize energy efficiency.



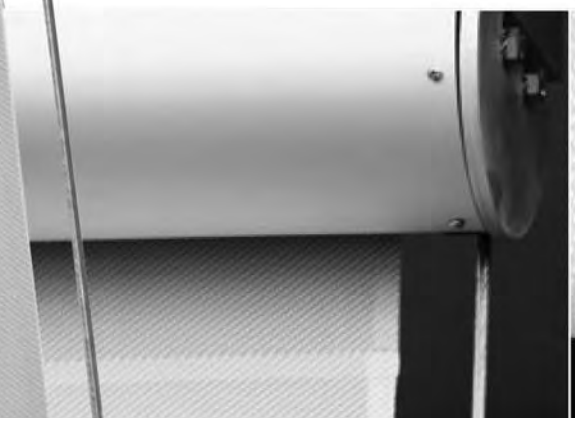
Cable Guided Habitat Screen™ Dimensions



Maximum Dimensions	Dimension	
	mm	in
Max. Width	5850	230
Min. Width	800	32
Max. Height	3048	120
Min. Height	610	24
Max. Exposed Area	17.83 m^2	196 $feet^2$





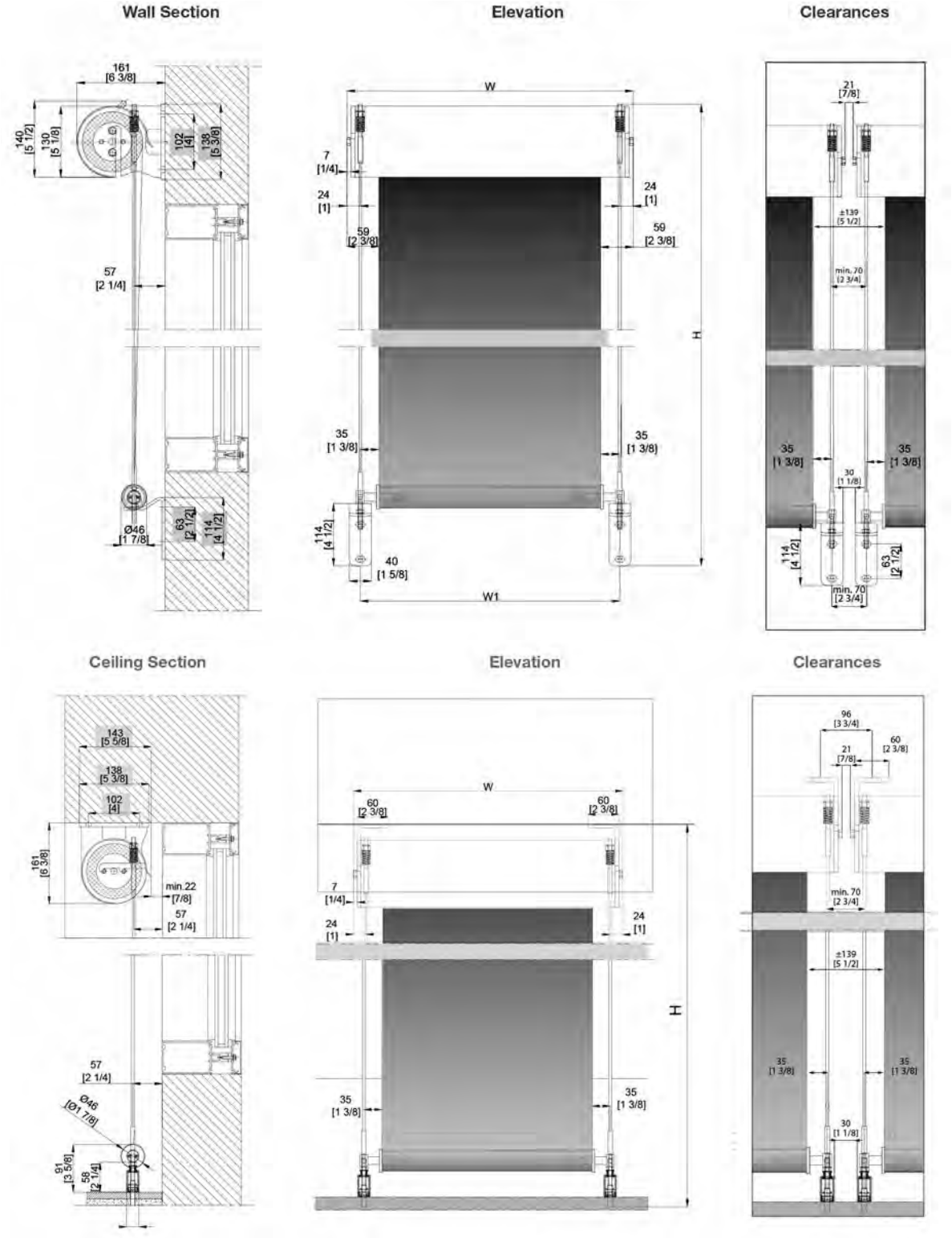




Technical Binder © 2020

Cable Guided Habitat Screen™ Mounting Options

Talius Cable Guided Habitat Screen™ system supports a variety of installation techniques from under-slab installations, extended projection from building edge to standard mounts.



For more information about our Cable Guided Habitat Screen™ System, please contact Talius at 1-800-665-5550.

TALIUS®

Technical Binder © 2020



WRITTEN SPECIFICATIONS

Specifications by Solution ■

Content Library ■

UNIQUE APPLICATIONS


TALIUS®

TALIUS®

Written Specifications

Table of Contents

- **Written Specifications**
  - Security Solutions 1
  - Storm Protection 5
  - Sun Protection - Habitat Screens 9
  - Sun Protection - Rollshutters 13
  - Energy Efficiency 16
  - Insect Protection 21
  - Vandalism Protection 25

Content Library

- **Rollshutter Curtain Profiles and Habitat Screen™ Fabric**
  - HQ Macro 29
  - SHIELD Mini 29
  - SAFE Mini 29
  - SHIELD Standard 29
  - TuffScreen 29
  - SunTex 90 30
  - SunTex 95 30
- **Guide Rails**
  - Rollshutters PRO and PRO-40 Rail 31
  - Rollshutters SAFE and SAFE-40 Rails 31
  - Habitat Screens™ PRO Rail with Edge Retention Insert 31
- **Bottom Profile**
  - Habitat Screen™ Bottom Profile 31
- **Sill**
  - Rollshutter SAFE U-Sill: 32
  - Rollshutter & Habitat Screen™ L Sill: 32
- **Build-Up**
  - Rollshutter & Habitat Screen™ Build Up: 32
- **Panel Box Housing**
  - Rollshutter Panel Boxes 32
  - Habitat Screen Panel Boxes 32
- **Colour Selection**
  - Rollshutter Colour Selection: 33
  - Habitat ScreenTM Colour Selection 33
- **Operation**
  - Manual Crank with Gear Operation: 33
  - Standard Limit Motor Operation 33
  - Somfy RTS Motor Operation 34
  - Somfy RTS Motor with Sun Sensor Operation 34
  - Rollshutter with Manual Override 34
- **Locking Devices** *(Rollshutters Only)*
  - No Lock Required 35
  - Manual Sliding Lock Bars 35
  - Centre Key Lock (Access Both Sides) 35
  - Octopod Centre-Mounted Sliding Bar Key Lock 35
  - Talius Hanger Locks 35
- **Storm Bars** 36
- **Habitat Screen™ Bug Brush** 36

40 YEARS
Building solutions for the future

Technical Binder © 2020

TALIUS®

Recommended Specification

SECURITY SOLUTIONS

Product and Installation Specifications

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Related Work

.1 Related work to be determined by project architect or owner's representative.

1.2 Scope of Work

.1 The work of this section covers the supply and installation of rollshutters called for on the drawings and herein specified.

.2 The Talius Authorized Dealer, or General Contractor, to provide all wood blocking and/or solid mounting surfaces required for a proper installation.

.3 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install all flashing for rollshutter panel boxes.

.4 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install exterior and/or interior finishing trim for the rollshutters

1.3 Quality Assurance

.1 Approved Manufacturer:
TALIUS
Head Office: PO Box 3279, Salmon Arm, BC V1E 4S1
Tel: 250-832-7777
Fax: 250-832-8577
Website: www.talius.com
E-mail: info@talius.com

1.4 Submittals

.1 Shop drawings: submit shop drawings showing details of rollshutters including curtains, guide rails, panel box housing, operators and other relevant hardware.

.2 Submit manufacturer's data sheets. Indicate specific rollshutter types, construction components, material finishes, and operators.

.3 Rollshutters are detailed on architectural drawings as scheduled. Sizes shown are nominal and confirmation by field measurement is required.

.4 Submit samples of standard colours.

1.5 Products Delivery, Handling and Storage

.1 Deliver materials to site in shipping crates and packing. Store off the ground on wood supports spaced to prevent damage. Store inside building under cover to prevent damage from weather or construction activities. Coordinate delivery with construction schedule to prevent loss or damage.

1.6 Operation and Maintenance

.1 Rollshutters are to be of maintenance free design.

1.7 Guarantee

.1 Manufacturer to provide a written warranty that all components are guaranteed against defects in material, design and workmanship for one year from date of installation for commercial and institutional installations and five years from the date of installation for residential installations. Installer to provide written guarantee that there will be no labour charge for warranty repairs for one year from date of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Rollshutters

.1 The Rollshutter curtain:

The rollshutter curtain is to be made from individual roll formed aluminum profiles with an injected super-hard resin foam core and shall have a cover width of 38 mm (1 1/2") and a thickness of 9 mm (11/32"). Minimum aluminum gauge to be 0.62 mm (0.0244"). Finish to be baked-on enamel with a dry film thickness of at least 0.05 mm (0.0020"). The minimum weight per square metre is to be 8.0 kg (0.0114 lbs/inch^2). Manufacturer's description: **SAFE MINI**.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

.2 Guide Rails:

The guide rails are to be minimum 0.065" or 1.60 mm gauge aluminum extrusions fitted with two noise and weather insulating strips. All guide rails must have undergone a multiple stage pre-treatment procedure and be painted with a baked-on paint. Guide rails to be acid, alkali and oil resistant. The guide rail is to be made of two snap-together parts that prevent unauthorized access to the mounting screws. Curtain penetration into the guide rail shall be at least 41 mm (1 5/8") for sections less than 1.83 m (72") in width and at least 66 mm (2 5/8") for sections over 1.83 m (72") in width. Manufacturer's description: **SAFE RAIL**, and **SAFE-40 RAIL** respectively.

On rollshutter sections where width dimensions exceed 3.05 m (120"), split the rollshutter into two or more sections by means of a centre guide rail(s). Manufacturer's description: **SAFE CENTRE RAIL.**

.3 Sill:

If applicable, provide a 30 mm x 47 mm (1 1/8" x 1 13/16") U-shaped aluminum sill to hold the curtain securely in placed when closed. Manufacturer's description: **SAFE U-SILL**. Where the U-sill is exposed to weather, drill a minimum of two "weep" holes in the inside channel of the U-sill to allow for moisture drainage.

.4 Build-Up:

If applicable, provide heavy-gauge aluminum build-up underneath the guide rails, along the panel box top, panel box bottom, and sill. Unless otherwise specified, the width of the build-up is to be 35 mm (1 3/8"), depth to be suitable to provide obstruction-free operation of the rollshutter curtain.

.5 Panel Box Housing:

Panel boxes are to be precision roll formed from 1.0 - 1.2 mm (0.040" - 0.0472") aluminum with an electro-statically bonded and baked finish. Lower half of the panel box must be detachable for future servicing access. Panel box service lid to be secured with tamper-proof security screws on all panel boxes below 2.13m (7') off the ground. All panels to be delivered to jobsite covered with protective, adhesive plastic film to prevent scratching. The protective film is to be removed by installer after job completion. All panel box endplates to be manufactured by pressure die-casting procedure from high grade aluminum alloy. Endplates must be chromed and laminated with a resistant PVC surface. The panel box style to be 5-corner. Panel box sizes to suit Rollshutters dimensions.

.6 Colour Selections:

Unless otherwise indicated, items to be selected from manufacturer's standard colour range: white, beige, brown, black and silver.

- rollshutter curtain
- rollshutter curtain bottom profile
- guide rails
- sill
- aluminum build-up
- panel box housing

.7 Operation:

Unless otherwise indicated, the Rollshutters shall be electrically operated. Provide a tubular 120 VAC motor installed inside the shaft. The motor unit shall be constructed with solenoid brakes, thermal overload protection switch with automatic reset and enclosed, permanently lubricated bearings and gears. All electrical components to

Technical Binder © 2020

TALIUS
Security Solution
Recommended Specification

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

be C.S.A. and U.L. certified. The motor unit shall be connected to a manual over-ride control in order to operate the rollshutter in case of power failure. A metal pin extrusion shall be connected to a stainless steel universal joint at a downward angle of at least 45 degrees. A long handle crank of at least 1450mm made from anodized aluminum shall be connected to the universal joint on the operating person's side. The crank shall have two joints and a wall mounted clip for storing when not in use. Color of the crank rod to be silver.

Each motor unit shall be controlled by a momentary-contact, recessed, three position key switch. Switches to fit standard electrical boxes. Coverplates to be polished steel with one-way security screws. Locations as shown on drawings. The Wiring is per manufacturer's instructions and to local electrical code requirements. Supply and installation of electrical wiring (including drilling of wiring routing holes through mounting surfaces), mounting of supplied electrical switches, and the connection of all wiring to be performed by certified electricians.

.8 Locking Devices:

All rollshutters will be equipped with hanger locks constructed of corrosion resistant materials. Hanger locks are to be installed at sufficient intervals between shaft and curtain in order to prevent the curtains from being lifted by more than 40 mm (1 9/16") from the closed position, without the use of an operator. Talius hanger locks meet the requirements of European Standard EN 13659 and resist an upward force of 100 kg (220lbs).

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 Installation

.1 Rollshutters and hardware as described herein shall be installed by approved rollshutter installers. Installers must be factory authorized and installation must proceed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

.2 The rollshutter contractor shall provide written confirmation before commencing installation that its Workers' Compensation Board account is currently active and in good standing, and that all of its employees working on site are covered by the rollshutter contractor's WCB account

.3 The rollshutter contractor to supply and use suitable mounting hardware for the mounting surface application, including hollow-wall and concrete anchors, where necessary. Mounting hardware size to be a minimum of #8 x 2". Mounting hardware for the guide rails, build-up and U-sills to be installed between 20 cm – 30 cm (8" – 12") on centers. Mounting hardware for the panel box to be installed between 40 cm – 50 cm (16" – 20") on centers, horizontally along the top inside corner of the panel box, and each screw head to be supplemented with a large flat washer to avoid tearing through the sheet aluminum. Each cast aluminum end plate on a panel box to be secured with one fastener to the mounting surface, two if the rollshutter curtain weight exceeds 22 kg (50 lbs). When installation into brick or concrete surfaces is necessary, mounting hardware to be used shall be Tapcon style of suitable diameter and length.

.4 Install Rollshutters plumb, true, square and level, free from distortion or defects affecting appearance or performance. Adjust and test moving parts to ensure smooth operation.

.5 Suitable exterior caulking to be applied by the rollshutter contractor around the exterior perimeter of the completed rollshutter installation to prevent infiltration of moisture, wind and debris behind the rollshutter when the curtain is fully closed.

.6 All work to be completed in a professional, safe and timely manner.

PART 3 - EXECUTION *(continued)*

3.2 Clean-Up

.1 As the work proceeds and upon completion, clean up and remove from the site all rubbish and packages. Leave all rollshutter and fixed panel parts clean.

3.3 Schedule

.1 As per the Jobsite Specification Addendum.

Technical Binder © 2020

Recommended Specification

STORM PROTECTION

Product and Installation Specifications

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Related Work

.1 Related work to be determined by project architect or owner's representative.

1.2 Scope of Work

.1 The work of this section covers the supply and installation of rollshutters called for on the drawings and herein specified.

.2 The Talius Authorized Dealer, or General Contractor, to provide all wood blocking and/or solid mounting surfaces required for a proper installation.

.3 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install all flashing for rollshutter panel boxes.

.4 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install exterior and/or interior finishing trim for the rollshutters

1.3 Quality Assurance

.1 Approved Manufacturer:
TALIUS
Head Office: PO Box 3279, Salmon Arm, BC V1E 4S1
Tel: 250-832-7777
Fax: 250-832-8577
Website: www.talius.com
E-mail: info@talius.com

1.4 Submittals

.1 Shop drawings: submit shop drawings showing details of rollshutters including curtains, guide rails, panel box housing, operators and other relevant hardware.

.2 Submit manufacturer's data sheets. Indicate specific rollshutter types, construction components, material finishes, and operators.

.3 Rollshutters are detailed on architectural drawings as scheduled. Sizes shown are nominal and confirmation by field measurement is required.

.4 Submit samples of standard colours.

1.5 Products Delivery, Handling and Storage

.1 Deliver materials to site in shipping crates and packing. Store off the ground on wood supports spaced to prevent damage. Store inside building under cover to prevent damage from weather or construction activities. Coordinate delivery with construction schedule to prevent loss or damage.

1.6 Operation and Maintenance

.1 Rollshutters are to be of maintenance free design.

1.7 Guarantee

.1 Manufacturer to provide a written warranty that all components are guaranteed against defects in material, design and workmanship for one year from date of installation for commercial and institutional installations and five years from the date of installation for residential installations. Installer to provide written guarantee that there will be no labour charge for warranty repairs for one year from date of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Rollshutters

.1 The Rollshutter curtain:

The rollshutter curtain is to be made from individual roll formed aluminum profiles with an injected super-hard resin foam core and shall have a cover width of 38 mm (1 1/2") and a thickness of 9 mm (11/32"). Minimum aluminum gauge to be 0.62 mm (0.0244"). Finish to be baked-on enamel with a dry film thickness of at least 0.05 mm (0.0020"). The minimum weight per square metre is to be 8.0 kg (0.0114 lbs/inch^2). Manufacturer's description: **SAFE MINI**.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

.2 Guide Rails:

The guide rails are to be minimum 0.065" or 1.60 mm gauge aluminum extrusions fitted with two noise and weather insulating strips. All guide rails must have undergone a multiple stage pre-treatment procedure and be painted with a baked-on paint. Guide rails to be acid, alkali and oil resistant. The guide rail is to be made of two snap-together parts that prevent unauthorized access to the mounting screws. Curtain penetration into the guide rail shall be at least 41 mm (1 5/8") for sections less than 1.83 m (72") in width and at least 66 mm (2 5/8") for sections over 1.83 m (72") in width. Manufacturer's description: **SAFE RAIL**, and **SAFE-40 RAIL** respectively.

On rollshutter sections where width dimensions exceed 3.05 m (120"), split the rollshutter into two or more sections by means of a centre guide rail(s). Manufacturer's description: **SAFE CENTRE RAIL.**

.3 Sill:

If applicable, provide a 30 mm x 47 mm (1 1/8" x 1 13/16") U-shaped aluminum sill to hold the curtain securely in placed when closed. Manufacturer's description: **SAFE U-SILL**. Where the U-sill is exposed to weather, drill a minimum of two "weep" holes in the inside channel of the U-sill to allow for moisture drainage.

.4 Build-Up:

If applicable, provide heavy-gauge aluminum build-up underneath the guide rails, along the panel box top, panel box bottom, and sill. Unless otherwise specified, the width of the build-up is to be 35 mm (1 3/8"), depth to be suitable to provide obstruction-free operation of the rollshutter curtain.

.5 Panel Box Housing:

Panel boxes are to be precision roll formed from 1.0 - 1.2 mm (0.040" - 0.0472") aluminum with an electro-statically bonded and baked finish. Lower half of the panel box must be detachable for future servicing access. Panel box service lid to be secured with tamper-proof security screws on all panel boxes below 2.13m (7') off the ground. All panels to be delivered to jobsite covered with protective, adhesive plastic film to prevent scratching. The protective film is to be removed by installer after job completion. All panel box endplates to be manufactured by pressure die-casting procedure from high grade aluminum alloy. Endplates must be chromed and laminated with a resistant PVC surface. The panel box style to be 5-corner. Panel box sizes to suit Rollshutters dimensions.

.6 Colour Selections:

Unless otherwise indicated, items to be selected from manufacturer's standard colour range: white, beige, brown, black and silver.

- rollshutter curtain
- rollshutter curtain bottom profile
- guide rails
- sill
- aluminum build-up
- panel box housing

.7 Operation:

Unless otherwise indicated, the Rollshutters shall be electrically operated. Provide a tubular 120 VAC motor installed inside the shaft. The motor unit shall be constructed with solenoid brakes, thermal overload protection switch with automatic reset and enclosed, permanently lubricated bearings and gears. All electrical components to be C.S.A. and U.L. certified.

Technical Binder © 2020

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

Each motor unit shall be controlled by a momentary-contact, recessed, three position paddle switch. The switches are to fit standard electrical boxes. Switch locations as shown on drawings. The Wiring is per manufacturer's instructions and to local electrical code requirements.

Supply and installation of electrical wiring (including drilling of wiring routing holes through mounting surfaces), mounting of supplied electrical switches, and the connection of all wiring to be performed by certified electricians.

.8 Locking Devices:

All rollshutters will be equipped with hanger locks constructed of corrosion resistant materials. Hanger locks are to be installed at sufficient intervals between shaft and curtain in order to prevent the curtains from being lifted by more than 40 mm (1 9/16") from the closed position, without the use of an operator. Talius hanger locks meet the requirements of European Standard EN 13659 and resist an upward force of 100 kg (220 lbs). Manufacturer's description: **HANGER LOCKS**

.9 Storm Protection Device:

All rollshutters will be equipped with one cross bar and one storm bar. The cross bar and storm bar are to be a minimum 5/32" or 4 mm guage aluminum extrusions that have undergone multiple stage pre-treatment procedure and painted with baked on paint. Storm bar and cross bar to be acid, alkali and oil resistant. Manufacturer's description: **HEAVY DUTY STORM BAR**

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 Installation

.1 Rollshutters and hardware as described herein shall be installed by approved rollshutter installers. Installers must be factory authorized and installation must proceed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

.2 The rollshutter contractor shall provide written confirmation before commencing installation that its Workers' Compensation Board account is currently active and in good standing, and that all of its employees working on site are covered by the rollshutter contractor's WCB account

.3 The rollshutter contractor to supply and use suitable mounting hardware for the mounting surface application, including hollow-wall and concrete anchors, where necessary. Mounting hardware size to be a minimum of #8 x 2". Mounting hardware for the guide rails, build-up and U-sills to be installed between 20 cm – 30 cm (8" – 12") on centers. Mounting hardware for the panel box to be installed between 40 cm – 50 cm (16" – 20") on centers, horizontally along the top inside corner of the panel box, and each screw head to be supplemented with a large flat washer to avoid tearing through the sheet aluminum. Each cast aluminum end plate on a panel box to be secured with one fastener to the mounting surface, two if the rollshutter curtain weight exceeds 22 kg (50 lbs). When installation into brick or concrete surfaces is necessary, mounting hardware to be used shall be Tapcon style of suitable diameter and length.

.4 Install Rollshutters plumb, true, square and level, free from distortion or defects affecting appearance or performance. Adjust and test moving parts to ensure smooth operation.

PART 3 - EXECUTION *(continued)*

.5 Suitable exterior caulking to be applied by the rollshutter contractor around the exterior perimeter of the completed rollshutter installation to prevent infiltration of moisture, wind and debris behind the rollshutter when the curtain is fully closed.

.6 All work to be completed in a professional, safe and timely manner.

3.2 Clean-Up

.1 As the work proceeds and upon completion, clean up and remove from the site all rubbish and packages. Leave all rollshutter and Vandal Panels parts clean.

3.3 Schedule

.1 As per the Jobsite Specification Addendum.

Technical Binder © 2020

Recommended Specification

SUN PROTECTION - HABITAT SCREENS™

Product and Installation Specifications

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Related Work

.1 Related work to be determined by project architect or owner's representative.

1.2 Scope of Work

.1 The work of this section covers the supply and installation of Habitat Screens called for on the drawings and herein specified.

.2 The Talius Authorized Dealer, or General Contractor, to provide all wood blocking and/or solid mounting surfaces required for a proper installation.

.3 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install all flashing for Habitat Screen panel boxes.

.4 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install exterior and/or interior finishing trim for the Habitat Screens™.

1.3 Quality Assurance

.1 Approved Manufacturer:
TALIUS
Head Office: PO Box 3279, Salmon Arm, BC V1E 4S1
Tel: 250-832-7777
Fax: 250-832-8577
Website: www.talius.com
E-mail: info@talius.com

1.4 Submittals

.1 Shop drawings: submit shop drawings showing details of Habitat Screens including Thermoscreen material, guide rails, panel box housing, operators and other relevant hardware.

.2 Submit manufacturer's data sheets. Indicate specific Habitat Screen types, construction components material finishes and operators.

.3 Habitat Screens™ are detailed on architectural drawings as scheduled. Sizes shown are nominal and confirmation by field measurement is required..

.4 Submit samples of standard colours.

1.5 Products Delivery, Handling and Storage

.1 Deliver materials to site in shipping crates and packing. Store off the ground on wood supports spaced to prevent damage. Store inside building under cover to prevent damage from weather or construction activities. Coordinate delivery with construction schedule to prevent loss or damage.

1.6 Operation and Maintenance

.1 Habitat Screens™ are to be of maintenance free design.

1.7 Guarantee

.1 Manufacturer to provide a written warranty that all components are guaranteed against defects in material, design and workmanship for one year from date of installation for commercial and institutional installations and five years from the date of installation for residential installations. Installer to provide written guarantee that there will be no labour charge for warranty repairs for one year from date of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Habitat Screens

.1 The Habitat Screen curtain:

The Habitat Screen curtain is to be made from exterior, vinyl-coated polyester roller shade fabric, with a 28% polyester, 72% vinyl on polyester composition. The openness factor (O-F) is approximately 5%. The weight of the curtain is to be 522 g/m^2, 0.000742 lbs/inch^2, or 15.4 oz/yd^2. The thickness of the Habitat Screen curtain is to be 0.74 mm, 0.029 inch. The breaking strength of the Habitat Screen curtain is warp: 350 lbs/inch and fill: 235 lbs/inch. Each side of the Habitat Screen curtain must feature a #4.5 Coil

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

zipper attached via heat weldable film and welding process. Standard fabric roll widths of 126", to minimize visible seams. Horizontal seaming of screen material is required when the height and width of the Habitat Screen exceeds the size of the fabric roll width.

Fire classification for Habitat Screen Fabric is:

- California Technical Bulletin 117 Sec. E. (CS-191-53)
- NFPA 101 (Class A Rating)
- IBC Section 903.1 (Class A Rating)

Manufacturer's description: **SUNTEX® 95**.

.2 Guide Rails:

The guide rails are to be heavy gauge aluminum extrusions fitted with a PVC guide rail insert. All guide rails must have undergone a multiple stage chromate procedure and be painted with a baked-on paint. Guide rails to be acid, alkali and oil resistant. The guide rail is to include ¼", 6.5 mm build-up to incorporate slide-on Talius aluminum build-up. Curtain penetration into the guide rail shall be at least 26 mm (1"). Manufacturer's description: **HABITAT SCREEN PRO GUIDE RAIL WITH EDGE RETENTION INSERT.**

.3 Bottom Profile:

The Habitat Screen™ Bottom Profile is to be made of two aluminum extrusions fitted together with a retaining channel for the screen fabric at the bottom. The extrusions are to be minimum 0.055" or 1.40 mm wall thickness and weighing 1.10 kg/lineal meter raw combined extrusion. The Bottom profile will be fitted with a weather insulating seal at the bottom. The Bottom Profile must allow for secure fitting of internal weight bars where required. The Bottom Profile must have undergone a multiple stage chromating procedure and be painted with baked-on paint. Bottom Profile to be acid, alkali, and oil resistant. The ends of the Bottom Profile must be capped off with a PVC caps.

.4 Sill:

If applicable, provide a 22 mm x 42 mm (7/8" x 1 11/16") L-shaped aluminum sill for the Habitat Screen bottom profile to rest upon when closed. Manufacturer's description: **L-SILL**.

.5 Build-Up:

If applicable, provide heavy-gauge aluminum build-up underneath the guide rails, along the panel box top, and panel box bottom. Unless otherwise specified, the width of the build-up is to be 35 mm (1 3/8"), depth to be suitable to provide obstruction-free operation of the habitat screen curtain.

.6 Panel Box Housing:

Panel boxes are to be precision roll formed from 1.0 - 1.2 mm (0.040" - 0.0472") aluminum with an electro-statically bonded and baked finish. Lower half of the panel box must be detachable for future servicing access. Panel box service lid to be secured with tamper-proof security screws on all panel boxes below 2.13 m (7') off the ground. All panels to be delivered to jobsite covered with protective, adhesive plastic film to prevent scratching. The protective film is to be removed by installer after job completion. All panel box endplates to be manufactured by pressure die-casting

Technical Binder © 2020

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

procedure from high grade aluminum alloy. Endplates must be chromed and laminated with a resistant PVC surface. The panel box style to be 5-corner. Panel box size is 125 mm, or 5".

.7 Colour Selections:

Unless otherwise indicated, items to be selected from manufacturer's standard colour range: white, beige, brown, black and silver.

- Habitat Screen™ curtain
- Habitat Screen™ bottom profile
- guide rails
- sill
- aluminum build-up
- panel box housing.

.8 Operation:

Unless otherwise indicated, the Habitat Screens shall be electrically operated. Provide a tubular 120 VAC motor installed inside the shaft. The motor shall be constructed with an internal Radio Frequency Receiver and electronically programmable limits. The motor unit shall be constructed with solenoid brakes, thermal overload protection switch with automatic reset and enclosed, permanently lubricated bearings and gears. The motor shall be controlled wirelessly by a solar powered RTS Sun Sensor. For service and building maintenance by district staff: Exterior Solaris RTS remotes required to allow for individual shade control and to allow for turning on/off sun sensors, to accommodate service and building maintenance needs.

All electrical components to be C.S.A. and U.L. certified.

The Wiring is per manufacturer's instructions and to local electrical code requirements.

Supply and installation of electrical wiring (including drilling of wiring routing holes through mounting surfaces), mounting of supplied electrical switches, and the connection of all wiring to be performed by the certified electricians.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 Installation

.1 Habitat Screen and hardware as described herein shall be installed by approved Habitat Screen installers. Installers must be factory authorized and installation must proceed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

.2 The Habitat Screen contractor shall provide written confirmation before commencing installation that its Workers' Compensation Board account is currently active and in good standing, and that all of its employees working on site are covered by the Habitat Screen contractor's WCB account.

.3 The Habitat Screen contractor will supply and use mounting hardware suitable for the mounting surface application, including hollow-wall and concrete anchors when necessary. The mounting hardware size is to be a minimum of #8 x 2" Mounting hardware for the guide rails, build-up L-sills to be installed between 20 cm – 30 cm (8" – 12") on centres. The mounting hardware for the panel box to be installed between 40 cm – 50 cm (16" – 20") on centres, horizontally along the top inside corner of the panel box, and each screw head to be supplemented with a large flat washer to avoid tearing through the sheet aluminum. Each cast aluminum end plate on a panel box to be secured with one fastener to the mounting surface.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

(continued)

When installation into brick or concrete surfaces is necessary, mounting hardware to be used shall be Tapcon style of suitable diameter and length.

.4 Install Habitat Screens plumb, true, square and level, free from distortion or defects affecting appearance or performance. Adjust and test moving parts to ensure smooth operation.

.5 Suitable exterior caulking to be applied by the Habitat Screen contractor around the exterior perimeter of the completed Habitat Screen installation to prevent infiltration of moisture, wind and debris behind the Habitat Screen when the curtain is fully closed.

.6 All work to be completed in a professional, safe and timely manner.

3.2 Clean-Up

.1 As the work proceeds and upon completion, clean up and remove from the site all rubbish and packages. Leave all Habitat Screen and fixed panel parts clean.

3.3 Schedule

.1 As per the Jobsite Specification Addendum.

Technical Binder © 2020

TALIUS

Recommended Specification

SUN PROTECTION - ROLLSHUTTERS

Product and Installation Specifications

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Related Work

.1 Related work to be determined by project architect or owner's representative.

1.2 Scope of Work

.1 The work of this section covers the supply and installation of rollshutters called for on the drawings and herein specified.

.2 The Talius Authorized Dealer, or General Contractor, to provide all wood blocking and/or solid mounting surfaces required for a proper installation.

.3 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install all flashing for rollshutter panel boxes.

.4 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install exterior and/or interior finishing trim for the rollshutters

1.3 Quality Assurance

.1 Approved Manufacturer:
TALIUS
Head Office: PO Box 3279, Salmon Arm, BC V1E 4S1
Tel: 250-832-7777
Fax: 250-832-8577
Website: www.talius.com
E-mail: info@talius.com

1.4 Submittals

.1 Shop drawings: submit shop drawings showing details of rollshutters including curtains, guide rails, panel box housing, operators and other relevant hardware.

.2 Submit manufacturer's data sheets. Indicate specific rollshutter types, construction components, material finishes, and operators.

.3 Rollshutters are detailed on architectural drawings as scheduled. Sizes shown are nominal and confirmation by field measurement is required.

.4 Submit samples of standard colours.

1.5 Products Delivery, Handling and Storage

.1 Deliver materials to site in shipping crates and packing. Store off the ground on wood supports spaced to prevent damage. Store inside building under cover to prevent damage from weather or construction activities. Coordinate delivery with construction schedule to prevent loss or damage.

1.6 Operation and Maintenance

.1 Rollshutters are to be of maintenance free design.

1.7 Guarantee

.1 Manufacturer to provide a written warranty that all components are guaranteed against defects in material, design and workmanship for one year from date of installation for commercial and institutional installations and five years from the date of installation for residential installations. Installer to provide written guarantee that there will be no labour charge for warranty repairs for one year from date of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Rollshutters

.1 The Rollshutter curtain:

The rollshutter curtain is to be made from individual roll formed aluminum profiles with an injected insulated hard foam core and shall have a cover width of 40 mm (1 9/16") and a thickness of 9 mm (11/32"). Minimum aluminum gauge to be 0.33 mm (0.0244"). Finish being a polyurethane/polyamide topcoat with a dry film thickness of at least 0.03mm. The minimum weight per square metre is to be 4.55 kg. Manufacturer's description: **SHIELD MINI**.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

.2 Guide Rails:

The guide rails are to be heavy gauge aluminum extrusions fitted with two noise and weather insulating strips. All guide rails must have undergone a multiple stage chromate procedure and be painted with a baked-on paint. Guide rails to be acid, alkali and oil resistant. The guide rail is to be made of two snap-together parts that prevent unauthorized access to the mounting screws. Curtain penetration into the guide rail shall be at least 40 mm (1 9/16"). Manufacturer's description: **SAFE-40 RAIL**.

On rollshutter sections where width dimensions exceed 3.05 m (120"), split the rollshutter into two or more sections by means of a centre guide rail(s). Manufacturer's description: **SAFE CENTRE RAIL.**

.3 Sill:

If applicable, provide a 30 mm x 47 mm (1 1/8" x 1 13/16") U-shaped aluminum sill to hold the curtain securely in placed when closed. Manufacturer's description: **SAFE U-SILL**. Where the U-sill is exposed to weather, drill a minimum of two "weep" holes in the inside channel of the U-sill to allow for moisture drainage.

.4 Build-Up:

If applicable, provide heavy-gauge aluminum build-up underneath the guide rails, along the panel box top, panel box bottom, and sill. Unless otherwise specified, the width of the build-up is to be 35 mm (1 3/8"), depth to be suitable to provide obstruction-free operation of the rollshutter curtain.

.5 Panel Box Housing:

Panel boxes are to be precision roll formed from 1.0 - 1.2 mm (0.040" - 0.0472") aluminum with an electro-statically bonded and baked finish. Lower half of the panel box must be detachable for future servicing access. Panel box service lid to be secured with tamper-proof security screws on all panel boxes below 2.13m (7') off the ground. All panels to be delivered to jobsite covered with protective, adhesive plastic film to prevent scratching. The protective film is to be removed by installer after job completion. All panel box endplates to be manufactured by pressure die-casting procedure from high grade aluminum alloy. Endplates must be chromed and laminated with a resistant PVC surface. The panel box style to be 5-corner. Panel box sizes to suit Rollshutters dimensions.

.6 Colour Selections:

Unless otherwise indicated, items to be selected from manufacturer's standard colour range: white, beige, brown, black and silver.

- rollshutter curtain
- rollshutter curtain bottom profile
- guide rails
- sill
- aluminum build-up
- panel box housing

.7 Operation:

Unless otherwise indicated, the Rollshutters shall be electrically operated. Provide a tubular 120 VAC motor installed inside the shaft. The motor unit shall be constructed with solenoid brakes, thermal overload protection switch with automatic reset and enclosed, permanently lubricated bearings and gears. All electrical components to be C.S.A. and U.L. certified. Each motor unit shall be controlled by a momentary-contact,

Technical Binder © 2020

PART 2 - PRODUCTS *(continued)*

three position toggle switch. The switches are to fit standard electrical boxes. Switch locations as shown on drawings. The Wiring is per manufacturer's instructions and to local electrical code requirements.

Supply and installation of electrical wiring (including drilling of wiring routing holes through mounting surfaces) mounting of supplied electrical switches, and the connection of all wiring to be performed by certified electricians.

.8 Locking Devices:

All rollshutters will be equipped with hanger locks constructed of corrosion resistant materials. Hanger locks are to be installed at sufficient intervals between shaft and curtain in order to prevent the curtains from being lifted by more than 40 mm (1 9/16") from the closed position, without the use of an operator. Talius hanger locks meet the requirements of European Standard EN 13659 and resist an upward force of 100 kg (220 lbs).

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 Installation

.1 Rollshutters and hardware as described herein shall be installed by approved rollshutter installers. Installers must be factory authorized and installation must proceed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

.2 The rollshutter contractor shall provide written confirmation before commencing installation that its Workers' Compensation Board account is currently active and in good standing, and that all of its employees working on site are covered by the rollshutter contractor's WCB account

.3 The rollshutter contractor to supply and use suitable mounting hardware for the mounting surface application, including hollow-wall and concrete anchors, where necessary. Mounting hardware size to be a minimum of #8 x 2". Mounting hardware for the guide rails, build-up and U-sills to be installed between 20 cm – 30 cm (8" – 12") on centers. Mounting hardware for the panel box to be installed between 40 cm – 50 cm (16" – 20") on centers, horizontally along the top inside corner of the panel box, and each screw head to be supplemented with a large flat washer to avoid tearing through the sheet aluminum. Each cast aluminum end plate on a panel box to be secured with one fastener to the mounting surface, two if the rollshutter curtain weight exceeds 22 kg (50 lbs). When installation into brick or concrete surfaces is necessary, mounting hardware to be used shall be Tapcon style of suitable diameter and length.

.4 Install Rollshutters plumb, true, square and level, free from distortion or defects affecting appearance or performance. Adjust and test moving parts to ensure smooth operation.

.5 Suitable exterior caulking to be applied by the rollshutter contractor around the exterior perimeter of the completed rollshutter installation to prevent infiltration of moisture, wind and debris behind the rollshutter when the curtain is fully closed.

.6 All work to be completed in a professional, safe and timely manner.

3.2 Clean-Up

.1 As the work proceeds and upon completion, clean up and remove from the site all rubbish and packages. Leave all rollshutter and fixed panel parts clean.

3.3 Schedule

.1 As per the Jobsite Specification Addendum.

Recommended Specification

ENERGY EFFICIENCY

Product and Installation Specifications

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Related Work

.1 Related work to be determined by project architect or owner's representative.

1.2 Scope of Work

.1 The work of this section covers the supply and installation of rollshutters and/or habitat screens™ called for on the drawings and herein specified.

.2 The Talius Authorized Dealer, or General Contractor, to provide all wood blocking and/or solid mounting surfaces required for a proper installation.

.3 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install all flashing for rollshutters and/or habitat screens panel boxes.

.4 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install exterior and/or interior finishing trim for the rollshutters and/or habitat screens™.

1.3 Quality Assurance

.1 Approved Manufacturer:
TALIUS
Head Office: PO Box 3279, Salmon Arm, BC V1E 4S1
Tel: 250-832-7777
Fax: 250-832-8577
Website: www.talius.com
E-mail: info@talius.com

1.4 Submittals

.1 Shop drawings: submit shop drawings showing details of rollshutters and/or habitat screens including curtains, guide rails, panel box housing, operators and other relevant hardware.

.2 Submit manufacturer's data sheets. Indicate specific rollshutter and/or habitat screen™ types, construction components material finishes and operators.

.3 Rollshutters and/or habitat screens™ are detailed on architectural drawings as scheduled. Sizes shown are nominal and confirmation by field measurement is required.

.4 Submit samples of standard colours.

1.5 Products Delivery, Handling and Storage

.1 Deliver materials to site in shipping crates and packing. Store off the ground on wood supports spaced to prevent damage. Store inside building under cover to prevent damage from weather or construction activities. Coordinate delivery with construction schedule to prevent loss or damage.

1.6 Operation and Maintenance

.1 Rollshutters and/or habitat screens™ are to be of maintenance free design.

1.7 Guarantee

.1 Manufacturer to provide a written warranty that all components are guaranteed against defects in material, design and workmanship for one year from date of installation for commercial and institutional installations and five years from the date of installation for residential installations. Installer to provide written guarantee that there will be no labour charge for warranty repairs for one year from date of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Rollshutters

.1 The Rollshutter curtain:

The Rollshutter curtain is to be made from individual rollformed aluminum profiles with an injected insulated hard foam core and shall have a cover width of 40 mm and a thickness of 9.0 mm. The minimum aluminum gauge is to be 0.33 mm. Finish being a polyurethane/polyamide topcoat with a dry film thickness of at least 0.03 mm. The minimum weight per square metre is to be 4.55 kg. Manufacturer's description: **SHIELD MINI.**

Technical Binder © 2020

TALIUS

Energy Efficiency
Recommended Specification

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

.2 Guide Rails:

The guide rails are to be heavy gauge aluminum extrusions fitted with two noise and weather insulating strips. All guide rails must have undergone a multiple stage chromate procedure and be painted with a baked-on paint. Guide rails to be acid, alkali and oil resistant. The guide rail is to be made of two snap-together parts that prevent unauthorized access to the mounting screws. Curtain penetration into the guide rail shall be at least 40 mm (1-9/16"). Manufacturer's description: **SAFE-40 RAIL**.

On Rollshutter sections where width dimensions exceed 3.05 m (120"), split the Rollshutter into two or more sections by means of a centre guide rail(s). Manufacturer's description: **SAFE CENTRE RAIL**.

.3 Sill:

If applicable, provide a 30 mm x 47 mm (1 1/8" x 1 13/16") U-shaped aluminum sill to hold the curtain securely in placed when closed. Manufacturer's description: **SAFE U-SILL**. Where the U-sill is exposed to weather, drill a minimum of two "weep" holes in the inside channel of the U-sill to allow for moisture drainage.

.4 Build-Up:

If applicable, provide heavy-gauge aluminum build-up underneath the guide rails, along the panel box top, panel box bottom, and sill. Unless otherwise specified, the width of the build-up is to be 35mm (1-3/8"), depth to be suitable to provide obstruction free operation of the Rollshutter curtain.

.5 Panel Box Housing:

Panel boxes are to be precision rollformed from 1.0 – 1.2mm (0.040" – 0.0472") aluminum with an electro-statically bonded and baked finish. Lower half of the panel box must be detachable for future servicing access. Panel box service lid to be secured with tamper-proof security screws on all panel boxes below 2.13m (7') off the ground. All panels to be delivered to jobsite covered with protective, adhesive plastic film to prevent scratching. The protective film is to be removed by installer after job completion. All panel box endplates to be manufactured by pressure die-casting procedure from high grade aluminum alloy. Endplates must be chromed and laminated with a resistant PVC surface. The panel box style to be 5-corner. Panel box sizes to suit Rollshutters dimensions.

.6 Colour Selections:

Unless otherwise indicated, items to be selected from manufacturer's standard colour range: white, beige, brown, black and silver.

- rollshutter curtain
- rollshutter curtain bottom profile
- guide rails
- sill
- aluminum build-up
- panel box housing

.7 Operation:

Unless otherwise indicated, the Rollshutters shall be electrically operated. Provide a tubular 120 VAC motor installed inside the shaft. The motor unit shall be constructed with solenoid brakes, thermal overload protection switch with automatic reset and enclosed, permanently lubricated bearings and gears. All electrical components to be C.S.A. and U.L. certified. Each motor unit shall be controlled by a momentary-contact, three position toggle switch. The switches are to fit standard electrical boxes. Switch locations as shown on drawings. The Wiring is per manufacturer's instructions and to local electrical code requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

Supply and installation of electrical wiring (including drilling of wiring routing holes through mounting surfaces) mounting of supplied electrical switches, and the connection of all wiring to be performed by certified electricians.

.8 Locking Devices:

All rollshutters will be equipped with hanger locks constructed of corrosion resistant materials. Hanger locks are to be installed at sufficient intervals between shaft and curtain in order to prevent the curtains from being lifted by more than 40 mm (1 9/16") from the closed position, without the use of an operator. Talius hanger locks meet the requirements of European Standard EN 13659 and resist an upward force of 100 kg (220 lbs).

2.2 Habitat Screens

.1 The Habitat Screen curtain:

The Habitat Screen curtain is to be made from exterior, vinyl-coated polyester roller shade fabric, with a 28% polyester, 72% vinyl on polyester composition. The openness factor (O-F) is approximately 5%. The weight of the curtain is to be 522 g/m^2, 0.000742 lbs/inch^2, or 15.4 oz/yd^2. The thickness of the Habitat Screen curtain is to be 0.74 mm, 0.029 inch. The breaking strength of the Habitat Screen curtain is warp: 350 lbs/inch and fill: 235 lbs/inch. Each side of the Habitat Screen curtain must feature a #4.5 Coil zipper attached via heat weldable film and welding process. Standard fabric roll widths of 126", to minimize visible seams. Horizontal seaming of screen material is required when the height and width of the Habitat Screen exceeds the size of the fabric roll width.

Fire classification for Habitat Screen Fabric is:

- California Technical Bulletin 117 Sec. E. (CS-191-53)
- NFPA 101 (Class A Rating)
- IBC Section 903.1 (Class A Rating)

Manufacturer's description: **SUNTEX® 95.**

.2 Guide Rails:

The guide rails are to be heavy gauge aluminum extrusions fitted with a PVC guide rail insert. All guide rails must have undergone a multiple stage chromate procedure and be painted with a baked-on paint. Guide rails to be acid, alkali and oil resistant. The guide rail is to include ¼", 6.5 mm build-up to incorporate slide-on Talius aluminum build-up. Curtain penetration into the guide rail shall be at least 26 mm (1"). Manufacturer's description: **HABITAT SCREEN PRO GUIDE RAIL WITH EDGE RETENTION INSERT.**

.3 Bottom Profile:

The Habitat Screen™ Bottom Profile is to be made of two aluminum extrusions fitted together with a retaining channel for the screen fabric at the bottom. The extrusions are to be minimum 0.055" or 1.40 mm wall thickness and weighing 1.10 kg/lineal meter raw combined extrusion. The Bottom profile will be fitted with a weather insulating seal at the bottom. The Bottom Profile must allow for secure fitting of internal weight bars where required. The Bottom Profile must have undergone a multiple stage chromating procedure and be painted with baked-on paint. Bottom Profile to be acid, alkali, and oil resistant. The ends of the Bottom Profile must be capped off with a PVC caps.

Technical Binder © 2020

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

.4 Sill:

If applicable, provide a 22 mm x 42 mm (7/8" x 1-11/16") L-shaped aluminum sill for the Habitat Screen bottom profile to rest upon when closed. Manufacturer's description: **L-SILL**.

.5 Build-Up:

If applicable, provide heavy-gauge aluminum build-up underneath the guide rails, along the panel box top, and panel box bottom. Unless otherwise specified, the width of the build-up is to be 35 mm (1 3/8"), depth to be suitable to provide obstruction-free operation of the Habitat Screen curtain.

.6 Panel Box Housing:

Panel boxes are to be precision roll formed from 1.0 - 1.2 mm (0.040" - 0.0472") aluminum with an electro-statically bonded and baked finish. Lower half of the panel box must be detachable for future servicing access. Panel box service lid to be secured with tamper-proof security screws on all panel boxes below 2.13m (7') off the ground. All panels to be delivered to jobsite covered with protective, adhesive plastic film to prevent scratching. The protective film is to be removed by installer after job completion. All panel box endplates to be manufactured by pressure die-casting procedure from high grade aluminum alloy. Endplates must be chromed and laminated with a resistant PVC surface. The panel box style to be 5-corner. Panel box size is 125 mm, or 5".

.7 Colour Selections:

Unless otherwise indicated, items to be selected from manufacturer's standard colour range: white, beige, brown, black and silver.

- Habitat Screen™ curtain
- Habitat Screen™ bottom profile
- guide rails
- sill
- aluminum build-up
- panel box housing

.8 Operation:

Unless otherwise indicated, the Habitat Screens shall be electrically operated. Provide a tubular 120 VAC motor installed inside the shaft. The motor shall be constructed with an internal Radio Frequency

Receiver and electronically programmable limits. The motor unit shall be constructed with solenoid brakes, thermal overload protection switch with automatic reset and enclosed, permanently lubricated bearings and gears. The motor shall be controlled wirelessly by a solar powered RTS Sun Sensor. For service and building maintenance by district staff: Exterior Solaris RTS remotes required to allow for individual shade control and to allow for turning on/off sun sensors, to accommodate service and building maintenance needs.

All electrical components to be C.S.A. and U.L. certified.

The Wiring is per manufacturer's instructions and to local electrical code requirements.

Supply and installation of electrical wiring (including drilling of wiring routing holes through mounting surfaces), mounting of supplied electrical switches, and the connection of all wiring to be performed by the certified electricians.

TALIUS

Energy Efficiency
Recommended Specification

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 Installation

.1 Rollshutters, Habitat Screen and hardware as described herein shall be installed by approved Habitat Screen installers. Installers must be factory authorized and installation must proceed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

.2 The Rollshutter and Habitat Screen contractor shall provide written confirmation before commencing installation that its Workers' Compensation Board account is currently active and in good standing, and that all of its employees working on site are covered by the Habitat Screen contractor's WCB account.

.3 The Rollshutter and Habitat Screen contractor will supply and use mounting hardware suitable for the mounting surface application, including hollow-wall and concrete anchors when necessary. The mounting hardware size is to be a minimum of #8 x 2" Mounting hardware for the guide rails, build-up L-sills to be installed between 20 cm – 30 cm (8" – 12") on centres. The mounting hardware for the panel box to be installed between 40 cm – 50 cm (16" – 20") on centres, horizontally along the top inside corner of the panel box, and each screw head to be supplemented with a large flat washer to avoid tearing through the sheet aluminum. Each cast aluminum end plate on a panel box to be secured with one fastener to the mounting surface.

When installation into brick or concrete surfaces is necessary, mounting hardware to be used shall be Tapcon style of suitable diameter and length.

.4 Install Rollshutters and/or Habitat Screens plumb, true, square and level, free from distortion or defects affecting appearance or performance. Adjust and test moving parts to ensure smooth operation.

.5 Suitable exterior caulking to be applied by the Rollshutter and Habitat Screen contractor around the exterior perimeter of the completed Rollshutter and/or Habitat Screen installation to prevent infiltration of moisture, wind and debris behind the Habitat Screen when the curtain is fully closed.

.6 All work to be completed in a professional, safe and timely manner.

3.2 Clean-Up

.1 As the work proceeds and upon completion, clean up and remove from the site all rubbish and packages. Leave all Rollshutter, Habitat Screen and fixed panel parts clean.

3.3 Schedule

.1 As per the Jobsite Specification Addendum.

Technical Binder © 2020

Recommended Specification

INSECT PROTECTION

Product and Installation Specifications

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Related Work

.1 Related work to be determined by project architect or owner's representative.

1.2 Scope of Work

.1 The work of this section covers the supply and installation of Habitat Screens™ called for on the drawings and herein specified.

.2 The Talius Authorized Dealer, or General Contractor, to provide all wood blocking and/or solid mounting surfaces required for a proper installation.

.3 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install all flashing for Habitat Screen™ panel boxes.

.4 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install exterior and/or interior finishing trim for the Habitat Screens™.

1.3 Quality Assurance

.1 Approved Manufacturer:
TALIUS
Head Office: PO Box 3279, Salmon Arm, BC V1E 4S1
Tel: 250-832-7777
Fax: 250-832-8577
Website: www.talius.com
E-mail: info@talius.com

1.4 Submittals

.1 Shop drawings: submit shop drawings showing details of Habitat Screens including Thermoscreen material, guide rails, panel box housing, operators and other relevant hardware.

.2 Submit manufacturer's data sheets. Indicate specific Habitat Screen types, construction components material finishes and operators.

.3 Habitat Screens™ are detailed on architectural drawings as scheduled. Sizes shown are nominal and confirmation by field measurement is required.

.4 Submit samples of standard colours.

1.5 Products Delivery, Handling and Storage

.1 Deliver materials to site in shipping crates and packing. Store off the ground on wood supports spaced to prevent damage. Store inside building under cover to prevent damage from weather or construction activities. Coordinate delivery with construction schedule to prevent loss or damage.

1.6 Operation and Maintenance

.1 Habitat Screens™ are to be of maintenance free design.

1.7 Guarantee

.1 Manufacturer to provide a written warranty that all components are guaranteed against defects in material, design and workmanship for one year from date of installation for commercial and institutional installations and five years from the date of installation for residential installations. Installer to provide written guarantee that there will be no labour charge for warranty repairs for one year from date of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Habitat Screens

.1 The Habitat Screen™ curtain:

The Habitat Screen curtain is to be made from exterior, vinyl-coated polyester insect screening. The openness factor (O-F) is approximately 45%. The fabric is tear and

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

puncture resistant. The weight of the curtain is to be 283.5 g/m^2, 0.000403 lbs/inch^2, or 7.3 oz/yd^2. The thickness of the Habitat Screen™ curtain is to be 0.686 mm, 0.027 inch. The breaking strength of the Habitat Screen™ curtain is warp: 140 lbs/inch and fill: 112 lbs/inch. Each side of the Habitat Screen curtain must feature a #4.5 coil zipper attached via heat weldable film and welding process. Standard fabric roll widths of 120", to minimize visible seams. Horizontal seaming of screen material is required when the height and width of the Habitat Screen™ exceeds the size of the fabric roll width. Manufacturer's description: **TuffScreen®**

.2 Guide Rails:

The guide rails are to be heavy gauge aluminum extrusions fitted with a PVC guide rail insert. All guide rails must have undergone a multiple stage chromate procedure and be painted with a baked-on paint. Guide rails to be acid, alkali and oil resistant. The guide rail is to include ¼", 6.5 mm build-up to incorporate slide-on Talius aluminum build-up. Curtain penetration into the guide rail shall be at least 26 mm (1"). Manufacturer's description: **HABITAT SCREEN PRO GUIDE RAIL WITH EDGE RETENTION INSERT.**

.3 Bottom Profile:

The Habitat Screen™ Bottom Profile is to be made of two aluminum extrusions fitted together with a retaining channel for the screen fabric at the bottom. The extrusions are to be minimum 0.055" or 1.40 mm wall thickness and weighing 1.10 kg/lineal meter raw combined extrusion. The Bottom profile will be fitted with a weather insulating seal at the bottom. The Bottom Profile must allow for secure fitting of internal weight bars where required. The Bottom Profile must have undergone a multiple stage chromating procedure and be painted with baked-on paint. Bottom Profile to be acid, alkali, and oil resistant. The ends of the Bottom Profile must be capped off with a PVC caps.

.4 Sill:

If applicable, provide a 22 mm x 42 mm (7/8" x 1 11/16") L-shaped aluminum sill for the Habitat Screen bottom profile to rest upon when closed. Manufacturer's description: **L-SILL**.

.5 Build-Up:

If applicable, provide heavy-gauge aluminum build-up underneath the guide rails, along the panel box top, and panel box bottom. Unless otherwise specified, the width of the build-up is to be 35 mm (1 3/8"), depth to be suitable to provide obstruction-free operation of the habitat screen curtain.

.6 Panel Box Housing:

Panel boxes are to be precision roll formed from 1.0 - 1.2 mm (0.040" - 0.0472") aluminum with an electro-statically bonded and baked finish. Lower half of the panel box must be detachable for future servicing access. Panel box service lid to be secured with tamper-proof security screws on all panel boxes below 2.13 m (7') off the ground. All panels to be delivered to jobsite covered with protective, adhesive plastic film to prevent scratching. The protective film is to be removed by installer after job completion. All panel box endplates to be manufactured by pressure die-casting procedure from high grade aluminum alloy. Endplates must be chromed and laminated with a resistant PVC surface. The panel box style to be 5-corner. Panel box size is 125 mm, or 5".

Technical Binder © 2020

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

.7 Colour Selections:

Unless otherwise indicated, items to be selected from manufacturer's standard colour range: white, beige, brown, black and silver.

- Habitat Screen™ curtain
- Habitat Screen™ bottom profile
- guide rails
- sill
- aluminum build-up
- panel box housing

.8 Operation:

Unless otherwise indicated, the Habitat Screen™ shall be electrically operated. Provide a tubular 120 VAC motor installed inside the shaft. The motor shall be constructed with an internal Radio Frequency Receiver and electronically programmable limits. The motor unit shall be constructed with solenoid brakes, thermal overload protection switch with automatic reset and enclosed, permanently lubricated bearings and gears. The motor shall be controlled wirelessly.

All electrical components to be C.S.A. and U.L. certified. The Wiring is per manufacturer's instructions and to local electrical code requirements.

Supply and installation of electrical wiring (including drilling of wiring routing holes through mounting surfaces), mounting of supplied electrical switches, and the connection of all wiring to be performed by the certified electricians.

.8 Bug Brush:

The Habitat Screen bottom profile includes either 3/4" (19.05 mm) or 2" (50.8 mm) nylon slide in style bug brush along its length. The panel box includes a 1 1/2" (38.1 mm) nylon bug brush with aluminum extrusion installed along its length. Manufacturers description: **BUG BRUSH**

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 Installation

.1 Habitat Screen and hardware as described herein shall be installed by approved Habitat Screen installers. Installers must be factory authorized and installation must proceed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

.2 The Habitat Screen contractor shall provide written confirmation before commencing installation that its Workers' Compensation Board account is currently active and in good standing, and that all of its employees working on site are covered by the Habitat Screen contractor's WCB account.

.3 The Habitat Screen contractor will supply and use mounting hardware suitable for the mounting surface application, including hollow-wall and concrete anchors when necessary. The mounting hardware size is to be a minimum of #8 x 2" Mounting hardware for the guide rails, build-up L-sills to be installed between 20 cm – 30 cm (8" – 12") on centres. The mounting hardware for the panel box to be installed between 40 cm – 50 cm (16" – 20") on centres, horizontally along the top inside corner of the panel box, and each screw head to be supplemented with a large flat washer to avoid tearing through the sheet aluminum. Each cast aluminum end plate on a panel box to be secured with one fastener to the mounting surface.

When installation into brick or concrete surfaces is necessary, mounting hardware to be used shall be Tapcon style of suitable diameter and length.

TALIUS

Insect Protection
Recommended Specification

PART 3 - EXECUTION

(continued)

.4 Install Habitat Screens plumb, true, square and level, free from distortion or defects affecting appearance or performance. Adjust and test moving parts to ensure smooth operation.

.5 Suitable exterior caulking to be applied by the Habitat Screen contractor around the exterior perimeter of the completed Habitat Screen installation to prevent infiltration of moisture, wind and debris behind the Habitat Screen when the curtain is fully closed.

.6 All work to be completed in a professional, safe and timely manner.

3.2 Clean-Up

.1 As the work proceeds and upon completion, clean up and remove from the site all rubbish and packages. Leave all Habitat Screen and fixed panel parts clean.

3.3 Schedule

.1 As per the Jobsite Specification Addendum.

Technical Binder © 2020

TALIUS

Recommended Specification

VANDALISM PROTECTION

Product and Installation Specifications

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Related Work

.1 Related work to be determined by project architect or owner's representative.

1.2 Scope of Work

.1 The work of this section covers the supply and installation of rollshutters called for on the drawings and herein specified.

.2 The Talius Authorized Dealer, or General Contractor, to provide all wood blocking and/or solid mounting surfaces required for a proper installation.

.3 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install all flashing for rollshutter panel boxes.

.4 If required, the Talius Authorized Dealer, or General contractor, to provide and install exterior and/or interior finishing trim for the rollshutters

1.3 Quality Assurance

.1 Approved Manufacturer:
TALIUS
Head Office: PO Box 3279, Salmon Arm, BC V1E 4S1
Tel: 250-832-7777
Fax: 250-832-8577
Website: www.talius.com
E-mail: info@talius.com

1.4 Submittals

.1 Shop drawings: submit shop drawings showing details of rollshutters including curtains, guide rails, panel box housing, operators and other relevant hardware.

.2 Submit manufacturer's data sheets. Indicate specific rollshutter types, construction components, material finishes, and operators.

.3 Rollshutters are detailed on architectural drawings as scheduled. Sizes shown are nominal and confirmation by field measurement is required.

.4 Submit samples of standard colours.

1.5 Products Delivery, Handling and Storage

.1 Deliver materials to site in shipping crates and packing. Store off the ground on wood supports spaced to prevent damage. Store inside building under cover to prevent damage from weather or construction activities. Coordinate delivery with construction schedule to prevent loss or damage.

1.6 Operation and Maintenance

.1 Rollshutters are to be of maintenance free design.

1.7 Guarantee

.1 Manufacturer to provide a written warranty that all components are guaranteed against defects in material, design and workmanship for one year from date of installation for commercial and institutional installations and five years from the date of installation for residential installations. Installer to provide written guarantee that there will be no labour charge for warranty repairs for one year from date of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Rollshutters

.1 The Rollshutter curtain:

The Rollshutter curtain is to be made from individual rollformed aluminum profiles with an injected super-hard resin foam core and shall have a cover width of 38 mm and a thickness of 9 mm. Minimum aluminum gauge to be 0.62 mm. Finish to be baked-on enamel with a dry film thickness of at least 0.05 mm. The minimum weight per square metre to be 8.0 kg. Manufacturer's description: **SAFE MINI**.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

.2 Guide Rails:

The guide rails are to be minimum 0.065" or 1.60 mm gauge aluminum extrusions fitted with two noise and weather insulating strips. All guide rails must have undergone a multiple stage pretreatment procedure and be painted with a baked-on paint. Guide rails to be acid, alkali and oil resistant. The guide rail is to be made of two snap-together parts that prevent unauthorized access to the mounting screws. Curtain penetration into the guide rail shall be at least 41 mm (1 5/8") for sections less than 1.83 m (72") in width and at least 66 mm (2 5/8") for sections over 1.83 m (72") in width. Manufacturer's description: **SAFE RAIL**, and **SAFE-40 RAIL** respectively.

On rollshutter sections where width dimensions exceed 3.05m (120"), split the rollshutter into two or more sections by means of a centre guide rail(s). Manufacturer's description: **SAFE CENTRE RAIL.**

.3 Sill:

If applicable, provide a 30 mm x 47 mm (1 1/8" x 1 13/16") U-shaped aluminum sill to hold the curtain securely in placed when closed. Manufacturer's description: **SAFE U-SILL**. Where the U-sill is exposed to weather, drill a minimum of two "weep" holes in the inside channel of the U-sill to allow for moisture drainage.

.4 Build-Up:

If applicable, provide heavy-gauge aluminum build-up underneath the guide rails, along the panel box top, panel box bottom, and sill. Unless otherwise specified, the width of the build-up is to be 35 mm (1 3/8"), depth to be suitable to provide obstruction-free operation of the rollshutter curtain.

.5 Panel Box Housing:

Panel boxes are to be precision roll formed from 1.0 - 1.2 mm (0.040" - 0.0472") aluminum with an electro-statically bonded and baked finish. Lower half of the panel box must be detachable for future servicing access. Panel box service lid to be secured with tamper-proof security screws on all panel boxes below 2.13m (7') off the ground. All panels to be delivered to jobsite covered with protective, adhesive plastic film to prevent scratching. The protective film is to be removed by installer after job completion. All panel box endplates to be manufactured by pressure die-casting procedure from high grade aluminum alloy. Endplates must be chromed and laminated with a resistant PVC surface. The panel box style to be 5-corner. Panel box sizes to suit Rollshutters dimensions.

.6 Colour Selections:

Unless otherwise indicated, items to be selected from manufacturer's standard colour range: white, beige, brown, black and silver.

- rollshutter curtain
- rollshutter curtain bottom profile
- guide rails
- sill
- aluminum build-up
- panel box housing.

.7 Operation:

Unless otherwise indicated, the Rollshutters shall be electrically operated. Provide a tubular 120 VAC motor installed inside the shaft. The motor unit shall be constructed with solenoid brakes, thermal overload protection switch with automatic reset and

Technical Binder © 2020

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(continued)

enclosed, permanently lubricated bearings and gears. All electrical components to be C.S.A. and U.L. certified. The motor unit shall be connected to a manual over-ride control in order to operate the rollshutter in case of power failure. A metal pin extrusion shall be connected to a stainless steel universal joint at a downward angle of at least 45 degrees. A long handle crank of at least 1450mm made from anodized aluminum shall be connected to the universal joint on the operating person's side. The crank shall have two joints and a wall mounted clip for storing when not in use. Color of the crank rod to be silver.

Each motor unit shall be controlled by a momentary-contact, recessed, three position key switch. Switches to fit standard electrical boxes. Coverplates to be polished steel with one-way security screws. Locations as shown on drawings.

The Wiring is per manufacturer's instructions and to local electrical code requirements. Supply and installation of electrical wiring (including drilling of wiring routing holes through mounting surfaces), mounting of supplied electrical switches, and the connection of all wiring to be performed by certified electricians.

.8 Locking Devices:

All rollshutters will be equipped with hanger locks constructed of corrosion resistant materials. Hanger locks are to be installed at sufficient intervals between shaft and curtain in order to prevent the curtains from being lifted by more than 40 mm (1 9/16") from the closed position, without the use of an operator. Talius hanger locks meet the requirements of European Standard EN 13659 and resist an upward force of 100 kg (220 lbs).

9. Anti-Graffiti Coating

All Talius rollshutter curtains, guide rails, sills and panel boxes shall be coated with Talius non-sacrificial anti-graffiti coating designed to allow for easy clean-up of graffiti from the exposed rollshutter surfaces. Talius Anti-Graffiti coating is a modified aliphatic-polyurethane coating with enhanced abrasion resistance to provide resistance to chemicals, abrasions and impact. It is a clear coat that provides a gloss finish over stock and custom colors, and offers color retention and a non-stick surface. Anti-Graffiti coating is applied with a dry film thickness of 1.0 – 2.0 mils (25-50 microns). Hardness: ASTM D3363, 2H. Solvent Resistance: ASTM D4752, 100 MEK rubs; NO failure. Abrasion Resistance: 1000 cycles CS-17, ASTM D4060, 32 mg loss. Impact Resistance: ASTM D2794, 40 in lbs; NO failure. Flexibility: ASTM D522, 1/8" mandrel blend; NO failure.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 Installation

.1 Rollshutters and hardware as described herein shall be installed by approved rollshutter installers. Installers must be factory authorized and installation must proceed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

.2 The rollshutter contractor shall provide written confirmation before commencing installation that its Workers' Compensation Board account is currently active and in good standing, and that all of its employees working on site are covered by the rollshutter contractor's WCB account

.3 The rollshutter contractor to supply and use suitable mounting hardware for the mounting surface application, including hollow-wall and concrete anchors, where necessary. Mounting hardware size to be a minimum of #8 x 2". Mounting hardware for the guide rails, build-up and U-sills to be installed between 20 cm – 30 cm (8" – 12") on centers. Mounting hardware for the panel box to be installed between 40 cm

PART 3 - EXECUTION

(continued)

– 50 cm (16" – 20") on centers, horizontally along the top inside corner of the panel box, and each screw head to be supplemented with a large flat washer to avoid tearing through the sheet aluminum. Each cast aluminum end plate on a panel box to be secured with one fastener to the mounting surface, two if the rollshutter curtain weight exceeds 22 kg (50 lbs). When installation into brick or concrete surfaces is necessary, mounting hardware to be used shall be Tapcon style of suitable diameter and length.

.4 Install Rollshutters plumb, true, square and level, free from distortion or defects affecting appearance or performance. Adjust and test moving parts to ensure smooth operation.

.5 Suitable exterior caulking to be applied by the rollshutter contractor around the exterior perimeter of the completed rollshutter installation to prevent infiltration of moisture, wind and debris behind the rollshutter when the curtain is fully closed.

.6 All work to be completed in a professional, safe and timely manner.

3.2 Clean-Up

.1 As the work proceeds and upon completion, clean up and remove from the site all rubbish and packages. Leave all rollshutter and fixed panel parts clean.

3.3 Schedule

.1 As per the Jobsite Specification Addendum.

Technical Binder © 2020

Rollshutter Curtain Profiles and Habitat Screen™ Fabric

HQ Macro

Used for sun protection in residential applications, used when security is not a concern.

The Rollshutter curtain is to be made from roll-formed aluminum profiles with injected polyurethane foam core and shall have a cover width of 42 mm and a thickness of 9 mm. Minimum aluminum gauge to be 0.36 mm. Finish to be baked-on enamel with a dry film thickness of at least 0.05 mm. The weight per square metre to be 4.0 kg. Manufacturer's description: **HQ Macro**.

SHIELD Mini

Used for sun protection in residential and commercial applications, used for interior counter enclosures, used for medium security protection

The Rollshutter curtain is to be made from individual roll-formed aluminum profiles with an injected insulated hard foam core and shall have a cover width of 40 mm and a thickness of 9 mm. The minimum aluminum gauge is to be 0.33 mm. Finish being a polyurethane/polyamide topcoat with a dry film thickness of at least 0.03 mm. The minimum weight per square metre is to be 4.55 kg. Manufacturer's description: **SHIELD MINI**.

SAFE Mini

High security profile used in residential, commercial and institutional applications where high security or storm protection is needed.

The Rollshutter curtain is to be made from individual roll-formed aluminum profiles with an injected super-hard resin foam core and shall have a cover width of 38 mm and a thickness of 9 mm. Minimum aluminum gauge to be 0.62 mm. Finish to be baked-on enamel with a dry film thickness of at least 0.05 mm. The minimum weight per square metre to be 8.0 kg. Manufacturer's description: **SAFE MINI.**

AG-77

Used in residential and commercial applications for medium to high security where the opening is too large for SAFE Mini.

The rollshutter curtain is to be made from roll-formed aluminum profiles with an injected foam core and shall have a cover height of 77 mm and a thickness of 19 mm. Minimum aluminum gauge to be 0.62 mm. The minimum weight per square metre to be 4.64 kg. Manufacturer's description: **AG-77**.

TuffScreen®

Used when insect protection and/or air flow is needed but solar and thermal protection are not a concern

The Habitat Screen™ curtain is to be made from heavy duty, vinyl-coated polyester insect screening. The openness factor (O-F) is approximately 45%. The fabric is tear and puncture resistant. The weight of the curtain is to be 283.5 g/m2, 0.000403 lbs/inch2, or 7.3 oz/yd2. The thickness of the Habitat Screen™ curtain is to be 0.686 mm, 0.027 inch. The breaking strength of the Habitat Screen™ curtain is warp: 140 lbs/inch and fill: 112 lbs/inch. Each side of the Habitat Screen™ curtain must feature a #4.5 coil zipper attached via heat weldable film and welding process. Standard fabric roll widths of 120", to minimize visible seams. Horizontal seaming of screen material is required when the height and width of the Habitat Screen™ exceeds the size of the fabric roll width. Manufacturer's description: **TuffScreen®**.

Rollshutter Curtain Profiles and Habitat Screen™ Fabric *(continued)*

SunTex® 90

Used when solar protection is required

The Habitat Screen™ curtain is to be made from exterior, vinyl-coated polyester roller shade fabric, with a 31% polyester, 69% vinyl on polyester composition. The openness factor (O-F) is approximately 10%. The weight of the curtain is to be 583.18 g/m2, 0.0008295 lbs/inch2, or 17.2 oz/yd2. The thickness of the Habitat Screen™ curtain is to be 0.99mm, 0.039 inch. The breaking strength of the Habitat Screen™ curtain is warp: 480 lbs/inch and fill: 340 lbs/inch. Each side of the Habitat Screen™ curtain must feature a #4.5 Coil zipper attached via heat weldable film and welding process. Standard fabric roll widths of 120", to minimize visible seams. Horizontal seaming of screen material is required when the height and width of the Habitat Screen™ exceeds the size of the fabric roll width.

Fire classification for Habitat Screen™ Fabric is:

- California Technical Bulletin 117-2013
- NFPA 101 (Class A Rating)
- IBC Section 803.1.1 (Class A Rating)
- CAN/ULC-S 109-03 (large scale)

Manufacturer's description: **SunTex® 90**.

SunTex® 95

Used when maximum solar protection with visibility is required.

The Habitat Screen™ curtain is to be made from exterior, vinyl-coated polyester roller shade fabric, with a 28% polyester, 72% vinyl on polyester composition. The openness factor (O-F) is approximately 5%. The weight of the curtain is to be 522 g/m2, 0.000742 lbs/inch2, or 15.4 oz/yd2. The thickness of the Habitat Screen™ curtain is to be 0.74mm, 0.029 inch. The breaking strength of the Habitat Screen™ curtain is warp: 350 lbs/inch and fill: 235 lbs/inch. Each side of the Habitat Screen™ curtain must feature a #4.5 Coil zipper attached via heat weldable film and welding process. Standard fabric roll widths of 126", to minimize visible seams. Horizontal seaming of screen material is required when the height and width of the Habitat Screen™ exceeds the size of the fabric roll width.

Fire classification for Habitat Screen Fabric is:

- California Technical Bulletin 117-2013
- NFPA 101 (Class A Rating)
- IBC Section 803.1.1
- CAN/ULC-S 109-03 (large scale)

Manufacturer's description: **SunTex® 95**.

Technical Binder © 2020

Guide Rails

Rollshutters PRO and PRO-40 Rail

Typically used in residential or interior commercial applications when security is not a concern

The guide rails are to be heavy gauge aluminum extrusions fitted with two noise and weather insulating strips. All guide rails must have undergone a multiple stage chromate procedure and be painted with a baked-on paint. Guide rails to be acid, alkali and oil resistant. Curtain penetration into the guide rail shall be at least 26 mm (1") for sections less than 1.83 m (72") in width and at least 40mm (1-9/16") for section over 1.83 m (72") in width. Manufacturer's description: PRO RAIL and PRO-40 RAIL respectively.

On rollshutter sections where width dimensions exceed 3.05 m (120"), split the rollshutter into two or more sections by means of a centre guide rail(s). Manufacturer's description: **PRO CENTRE RAIL.**

Rollshutters SAFE and SAFE-40 Rails

Typically used in all exterior commercial and institutional applications and where ever high security is required

The guide rails are to be minimum 0.065" or 1.60 mm gauge aluminum extrusions fitted with two noise and weather insulating strips. All guide rails must have undergone a multiple stage pretreatment procedure and be painted with a baked-on paint. Guide rails to be acid, alkali and oil resistant. The guide rail is to be made of two snap-together parts that prevent unauthorized access to the mounting screws. Curtain penetration into the guide rail shall be at least 41 mm (1 5/8") for sections less than 1.83 m (72") in width and at least 66 mm (2 5/8") for sections over 1.83 m (72") in width. Manufacturer's description: SAFE RAIL and SAFE-40 RAIL respectively.

On rollshutter sections where width dimensions exceed 3.05 m (120"), split the rollshutter into two or more sections by means of a centre guide rail(s). Manufacturer's description: **SAFE CENTRE RAIL.**

Habitat Screens™ PRO Rail with Edge Retention Insert

Used in all Habitat Screen™ applications

The guide rails are to be heavy gauge aluminum extrusions fitted with a PVC guide rail insert. All guide rails must have undergone a multiple stage chromate procedure and be painted with a baked-on paint. Guide rails to be acid, alkali and oil resistant. The guide rail is to include ¼", 6.5 mm build-up to incorporate slide-on Talius aluminum build-up. Curtain penetration into the guide rail shall be at least 26 mm (1"). Manufacturer's description: **HABITAT SCREEN™ PRO GUIDE RAIL WITH EDGE RETENTION INSERT.**

Bottom Profile

Habitat Screen™ Bottom Profile

Used in all Habitat Screen™ applications.

The Habitat Screen Bottom Profile is to be made of two aluminum extrusions fitted together with a retaining channel for the screen fabric at the bottom. The extrusions are to be minimum 0.055" or 1.40 mm wall thickness and weighing 1.10kg/lineal meter raw combined extrusion. The Bottom profile will be fitted with a weather insulating seal at the bottom. The Bottom Profile must allow for secure fitting of internal weight bars where required. The Bottom Profile must have undergone a multiple stage chromating procedure and be painted with baked-on paint. Bottom Profile to be acid, alkali, and oil resistant. The ends of the Bottom Profile must be capped off with a PVC caps.

Sill

Rollshutter SAFE U-Sill:

Used when security of sun protection is a concern.

If applicable, provide a 30 mm x 47 mm (1-1/8" x 1-13/16") U-shaped aluminum sill to hold the curtain securely in placed when closed. Manufacturer's description: **SAFE U-SILL**. Where the U-sill is exposed to weather, drill a minimum of two "weep" holes in the inside channel of the U-sill to allow for moisture drainage.

Rollshutter & Habitat Screen™ L Sill

Used for rollshutters when security is not a concern and there is no natural sill. Used in Habitat Screen™ installations for aesthetic reasons.

If applicable, provide a 22 mm x 42 mm (7/8" x 1-11/16") L-shaped aluminum sill for the bottom profile to rest upon when closed. Manufacturer's description: **L-SILL.**

Build-Up

Rollshutter & Habitat Screen™ Build Up

Used in installations on existing buildings when the opening is uneven or if there are obstructions to build the unit around.

If applicable, provide heavy-gauge aluminum build-up underneath the guide rails, along the panel box top, and panel box bottom. Unless otherwise specified, the width of the build-up is to be 35 mm (1-3/8"), depth to be suitable to provide obstruction free operation of the curtain.

Panel Box Housing

Rollshutter Panel Boxes

Panel boxes are to be precision roll-formed from 1.0 – 1.2 mm (0.040" – 0.0472") aluminum with an electro-statically bonded and baked finish. Lower half of the panel box must be detachable for future servicing access. Panel box service lid to be secured with tamper-proof security screws on all panel boxes below 2.13 m (7') off the ground. All panels to be delivered to job-site covered with protective, adhesive plastic film to prevent scratching. The protective film is to be removed by installer after job completion. All panel box end-plates to be manufactured by pressure die-casting procedure from high grade aluminum alloy. End-plates must be chromed and laminated with a resistant PVC surface.

The panel box style to be 5-corner. Panel box sizes to suit Rollshutters dimensions.

Habitat Screen Panel Boxes

Panel boxes are to be precision roll-formed from 1.0 – 1.2 mm (0.040" – 0.0472") aluminum with an electro-statically bonded and baked finish. Lower half of the panel box must be detachable for future servicing access. Panel box service lid to be secured with tamper-proof security screws on all panel boxes below 2.13 m (7') off the ground. All panels to be delivered to job-site covered with protective, adhesive plastic film to prevent scratching. The protective film is to be removed by installer after job completion. All panel box end-plates to be manufactured by pressure die-casting procedure from high grade aluminum alloy. End-plates must be chromed and laminated with a resistant PVC surface. The panel box style to be 5-corner. Panel box size is 125 mm, or 5".

Technical Binder © 2020

Colour Selection

Rollshutter Colour Selection

Unless otherwise indicated, items to be selected from manufacturer's standard colour range:

- rollshutter curtain
- rollshutter curtain bottom profile
- guide rails
- sill
- aluminum build-up
- panel box housing

Habitat Screen™ Colour Selection

Unless otherwise indicated, items to be selected from manufacturer's standard colour range:

- Habitat Screen™ curtain
- Habitat Screen™ bottom profile
- guide rails
- sill
- aluminum build-up
- panel box housing

Operation

Manual Crank with Gear Operation

The operation shall be manual by means of a crank rod control. The panel box housing shall incorporate a sealed, permanently lubricated worm wheel or crown & pinion gear. Each gear shall be of sufficient reduction and be equipped with a brake. Each gear shall incorporate either a bottom limit or an Anti-Blocking-System (A.B.S.) clutch. A double-jointed universal with a ball bearing base shall be connected to the gear at a downwards slope as shown on the drawings. A folding crank rod of at least 1,330 mm length made of silver anodized aluminum shall be connected securely to the universal. The crank rod's turning radius shall be at least 140 mm. There shall be a wall mounting clip for crank rod storage when not in use.

Standard Limit Motor Operation

Unless otherwise indicated, the unit shall be electrically operated. Provide a tubular 120 VAC motor installed inside the shaft. The motor unit shall be constructed with solenoid brakes, thermal overload protection switch with automatic reset and enclosed, permanently lubricated bearings and gears. All electrical components to be C.S.A. and U.L. certified. Each motor unit shall be controlled by a maintained-contact, three position paddle switch. The switches are to fit standard electrical boxes. Switch locations as shown on drawings.

The Wiring is per manufacturer's instructions and to local electrical code requirements.

Supply and installation of electrical wiring (including drilling of wiring routing holes through mounting surfaces), mounting of supplied electrical switches, and the connection of all wiring to be performed by certified electricians.

Operation *(continued)*

Somfy® RTS Motor Operation

Unless otherwise indicated, the unit shall be electrically operated. Provide a tubular 120 VAC motor installed inside the shaft. The motor shall be constructed with an internal Radio Frequency Receiver and programmable limits. The motor unit shall be constructed with solenoid brakes, thermal overload protection switch with automatic reset and enclosed, permanently lubricated bearings and gears. The motor shall be controlled wirelessly. All electrical components to be C.S.A. and U.L. certified. The Wiring is per manufacturer's instructions and to local electrical code requirements.

Supply and installation of electrical wiring (including drilling of wiring routing holes through mounting surfaces), mounting of supplied electrical switches, and the connection of all wiring to be performed by certified electricians.

Somfy® RTS Motor with Sun Sensor Operation

Unless otherwise indicated, the unit shall be electrically operated. Provide a tubular 120 VAC motor installed inside the shaft. The motor shall be constructed with an internal Radio Frequency

Receiver and electronically programmable limits. The motor unit shall be constructed with solenoid brakes, thermal overload protection switch with automatic reset and enclosed, permanently lubricated bearings and gears. The motor shall be controlled wirelessly by a solar powered RTS Sun Sensor. For service and building maintenance by district staff: Exterior Solaris RTS remotes required to allow for individual shade control and to allow for turning on/off sun sensors, to accommodate service and building maintenance needs. All electrical components to be C.S.A. and U.L. certified. The Wiring is per manufacturer's instructions and to local electrical code requirements.

Supply and installation of electrical wiring (including drilling of wiring routing holes through mounting surfaces), mounting of supplied electrical switches, and the connection of all wiring to be performed by the certified electricians.

Rollshutter with Manual Override

The motor unit shall be connected to a manual over-ride control in order to operate the rollshutter in case of power failure. A metal pin extrusion shall be connected to a stainless steel universal joint at a downward angle of at least 45 degrees. A longhandle crank of at least 1450 mm made from anodized aluminum shall be connected to the universal joint on the operating person's side. The crank shall have two joints and a wall mounted clip for storing when not in use. Color of the crank rod to be silver.

Technical Binder © 2020

Locking Devices *(Rollshutters Only)*

No Lock Required

All rollshutters shall be equipped with hangers constructed of rust proofed spring steel and chromed bottom bars. All hangers must be painted to prevent chemical reaction with curtains. Hangers are to be installed at sufficient intervals between shafts and curtains to prevent curtains to be lifted by more than six inches from the closed position, without the use of an operator.

Manual Sliding Lock Bars

Used when security is not a concern and the lock side is not accessible by the public side, not recommended with motorized operators

In addition, each rollshutter shall be equipped with two manually locking security devices. Each device shall be installed in the aluminum bottom profile with two metal bars sliding into notches in the guide rails. This device shall prevent any lifting movement of the curtain opposite to the operator's side, when in the locked position. Manufacturer's description: **MANUAL SLIDING LOCK BARS**

Centre Key Lock (Access Both Sides)

Used in interior applications where medium security is needed. Not recommended with motorized operators unless unit is at the only point of entry

In addition, each rollshutter shall be equipped with a manually sliding key lock device, mounted either in the centre of the bottom profile or up to 32" up from the bottom of the bottom profile. This locking device shall lock by means of key and is operable from both sides. Two sliding lock bars slide into a notch inside the guide rails when engaged. This device shall prevent any lifting of the curtain when in the locked position. Manufacturer's description: **CENTRE KEY LOCK (ACCESS BOTH SIDES)**

Octopod Centre-Mounted Sliding Bar Key Lock

Used in applications where high security is needed, not recommended with motorized operators unless unit is located at the only point of entry.

In addition, each rollshutter shall be equipped with a sliding key lock device, mounted in the centre of the bottom profile. This locking device shall be installed in the aluminum bottom profile and lock by means of a key, and operable from one side only. This locking device features a mortise cyclinder, allowing for key matching to common commercial 1 1/8" mortise cylinder locks. Two stainless steel lock bars slide into a notch inside the guide rails. This device shall prevent any lifting movement of the curtain when in the locked position. Manufacturer's description: **OCTOPOD CENTRE KEYLOCK**

Talius Hanger Locks

Used on windows, doors, counter enclosures, and units with both manual and motorized operators when high security is needed.

All rollshutters will be equipped with hanger locks constructed of corrosion resistant materials. Hanger locks

are to be installed at sufficient intervals between shaft and curtain in order to prevent the curtains from being lifted by more than 40 mm (1 9/16") from the closed position, without the use of an operator. Talius hanger locks meet the requirements of European Standard EN 13659 and resist an upward force of 100kg (220lbs). Manufacturers description: **HANGER LOCKS**

Storm Bars

Used when additional protection is needed from high winds

All rollshutters will be equipped with one cross bar and one storm bar. The cross bar and storm bar are to be a minimum 5/32" or 4mm gauge aluminum extrusions that have undergone multiple stage pre-treatment procedure and painted with baked on paint. Storm bar and cross bar to be acid, alkali and oil resistant. Manufacturer's description: **HEAVY DUTY STORM BAR**

On rollshutter sections where width dimensions exceed 2.4m (96") multiple storm bars must be installed. In cases where there is no barrier behind the rollshutter, a storm bar must be installed on both sides of the curtain.

Habitat Screen™ Bug Brush

Used when additional insect protection is required.

The Habitat Screen bottom profile includes either 3/4" (19.05mm) or 2" (50.8mm) nylon slide in style bug brush along its length. The panel box includes a 1 1/2" (38.1mm) nylon bug brush with aluminum extrusion installed along its length. Manufacturers description: **BUG BRUSH**

Technical Binder © 2020



Rollshutters ■

Habitat Screens™ ■

ARCHITECTURAL DRAWINGS

SOPHISTICATED DESIGN


TALIUS®

TALIUS®

Architectural Drawings

Table of Contents

Rollshutters

Brick Wall Application

Rollshutter Retrofit System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail 1
Window Sill Detail 2
Window Jamb Detail 3
Built-up Mullion with Safe Centre Rail 4

Panel Box In-Soffit System

Soffit Detail 5
Panel Box/Window Head Detail 6
Window Sill Detail 7
Window Jamb Detail 8

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Soffit Detail 9

Panel Box In-Wall System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail 10
Window Sill Detail 11
Window Jamb Detail 12
Framing Diagram 13

Stucco Wall Application

Rollshutter Retrofit System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail 14
Window Sill Detail 15
Window Jamb Detail 16
Window Jamb Detail with Safe Rails Back-to-back 17

Panel Box In-Soffit System

Soffit Detail 18

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Soffit Detail 19
Panel Box/Window Head Detail 20
Window Sill Detail 21
Window Jamb Detail 22
Window Jamb with Safe Centre Rail 23

Panel Box In-Wall System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail 24
Window Sill Detail 25
Window Jamb Detail 26
Framing Diagram 27

Wood Siding Wall Application

Rollshutter Retrofit System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail 28
Window Sill Detail 29
Window Jamb Detail 30
Window Jamb Detail with Safe Rails Back-to-back 31

Panel Box In-Soffit System

Soffit Detail 32

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Soffit Detail 33
Panel Box/Window Head Detail 34
Window Sill Detail 35
Window Jamb Detail 36
Window Jamb with Safe Rails Back-to-back 37

Panel Box In-Wall System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail 38
Window Sill Detail 39
Window Jamb Detail 40
Framing Diagram 41

Habitat Screens™

Brick Wall Application

Exterior Wall-Mount Retrofit System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail 43
Window Sill Detail 44
Window Jam Detail 45
Built-up Mullion with Pro Rails Back-to-back 46

Panel Box In-Soffit System

Soffit Detail 47

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Soffit Detail 48
Panel Box/Window Head Detail 49
Window Sill Detail 50
Window Jamb Detail 51

Panel Box In-Wall System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail 52
Window Sill Detail 53
Window Jamb Detail 54
Framing Diagram 55

Stucco Wall Application

Exterior Wall-Mount Retrofit System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail 56
Window Sill Detail 57
Window Jamb Detail 58
Window Jamb Detail with
Pro Guide Rails Back-to-back 59

Panel Box In-Soffit System

Soffit Detail 60

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Soffit Detail 61
Window Sill Detail 62
Window Jamb Detail 63
Window Jamb with Prof Centre Rail 64

Panel Box In-Wall System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail 65
Window Sill Detail 66
Window Jamb Detail 67
Framing Diagram 68

Wood Siding Wall Application

Exterior Wall-Mount Retrofit System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail 69
Window Sill Detail 70
Window Jamb Detail 71
Window Jamb Detail with Pro Guide Rails Back-to-back 72

Panel Box In-Soffit System

Soffit Detail 73

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Soffit Detail 74
Panel Box/Window Head Detail 75
Window Sill Detail 76
Window Jamb Detail 77
Window Jamb with Pro Centre Rail 78

Panel Box In-Wall System

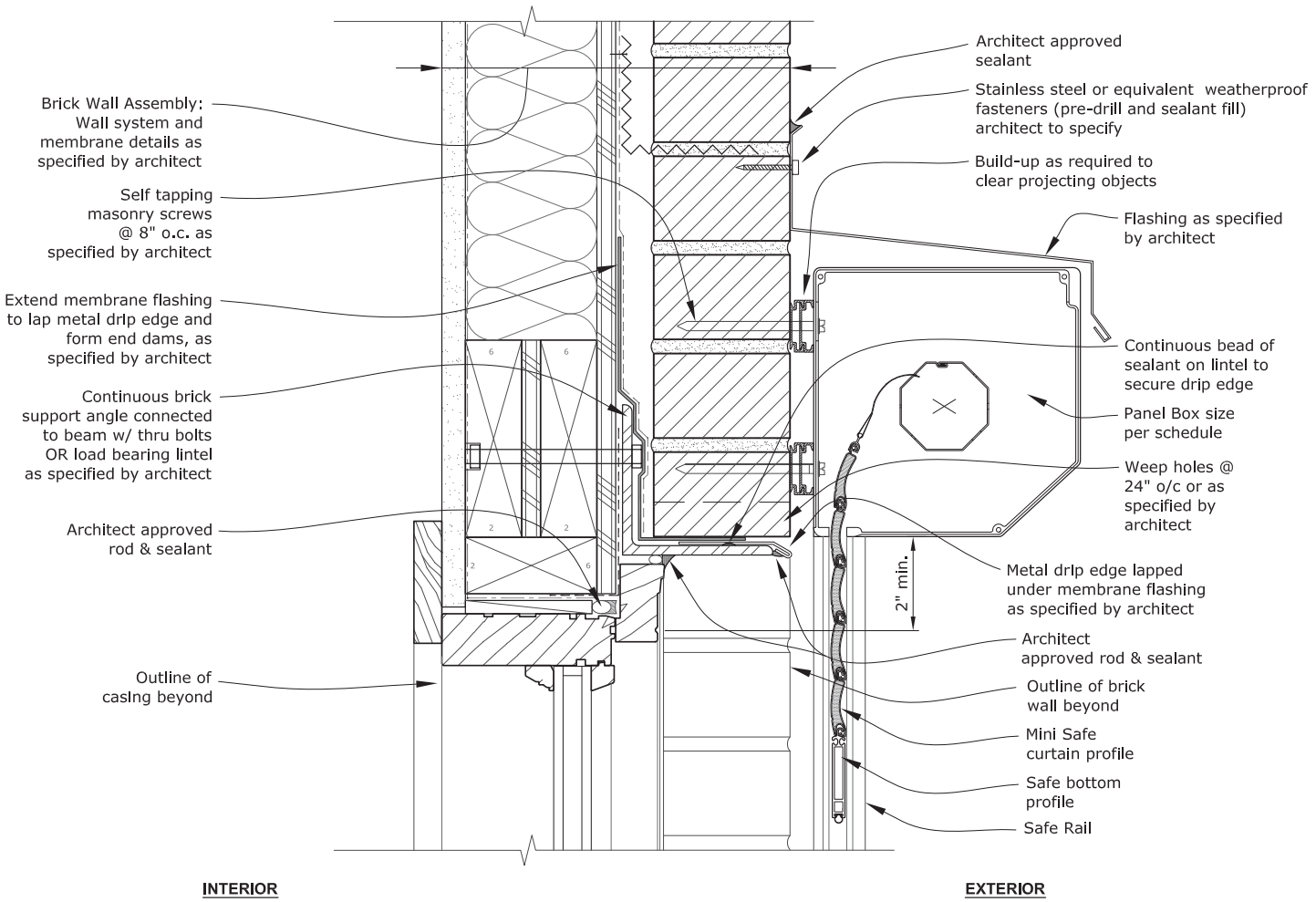
Panel Box/Window Head Detail 79
Window Sill Detail 80
Window Jamb Detail 81
Framing Diagram 82


TALIUS®

Brick Wall Application

Rollshutter Retrofit System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail



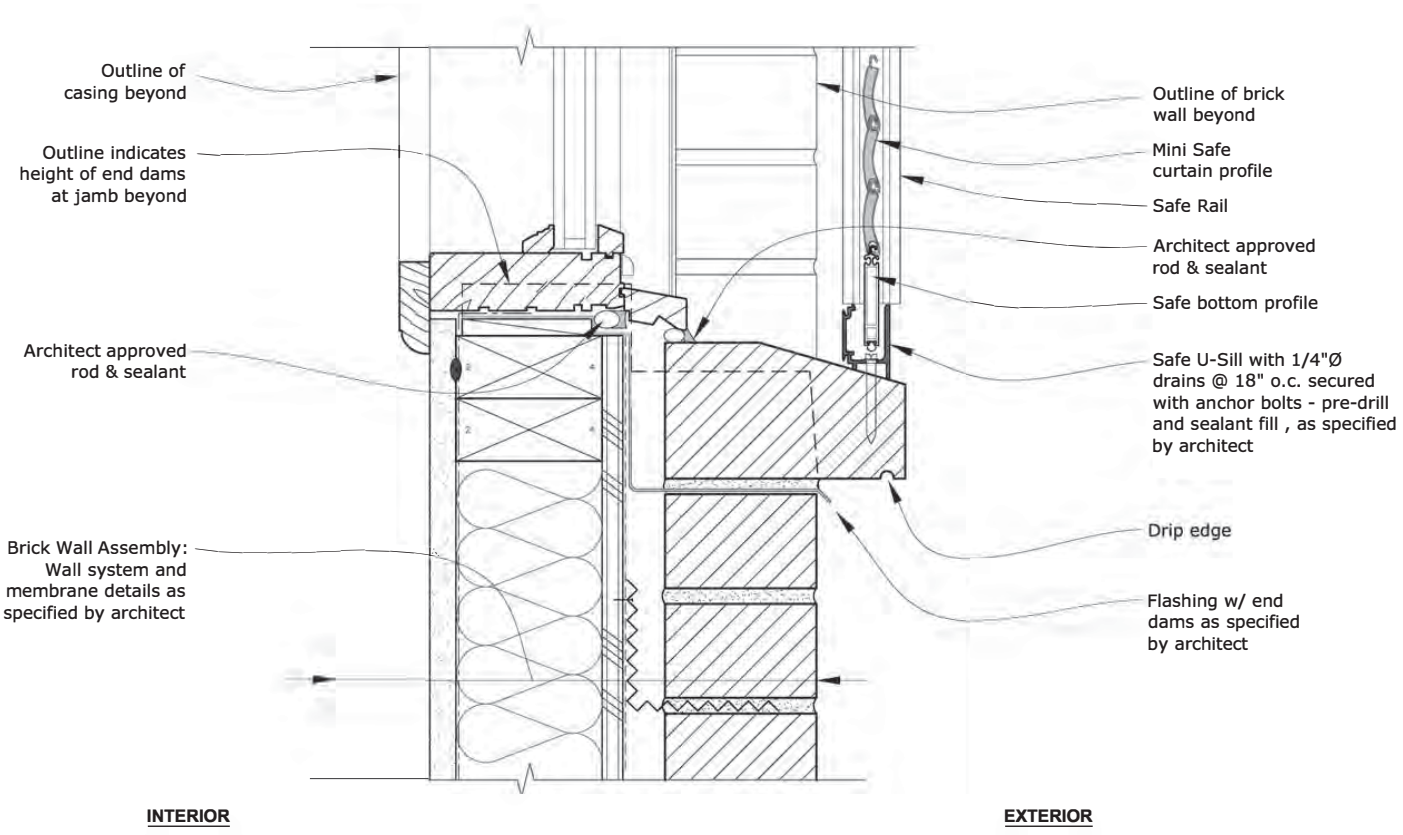
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Brick Wall Application

Rollshutter Retrofit System

Window Sill Detail



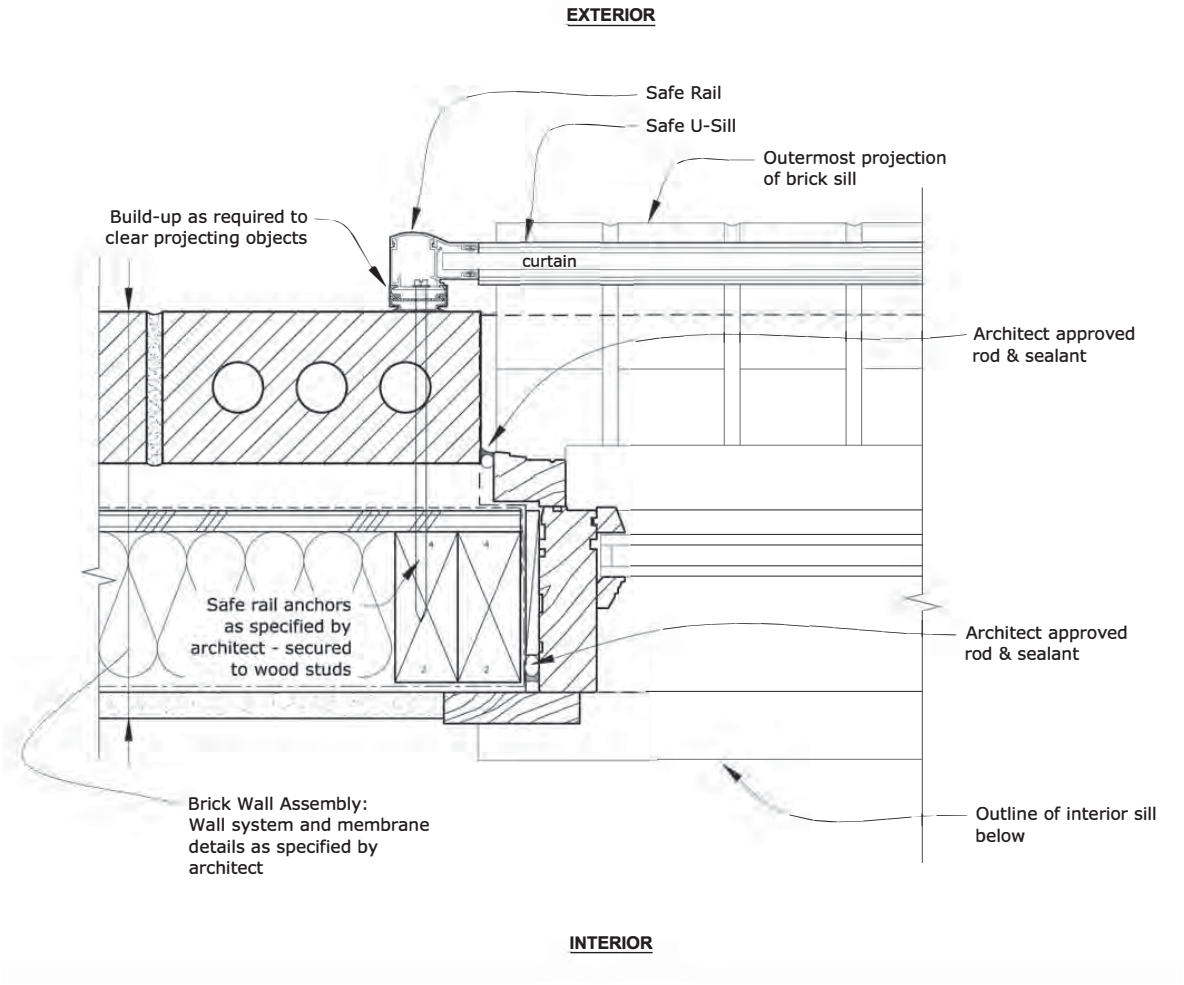
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Brick Wall Application

Rollshutter Retrofit System

Window Jamb Detail

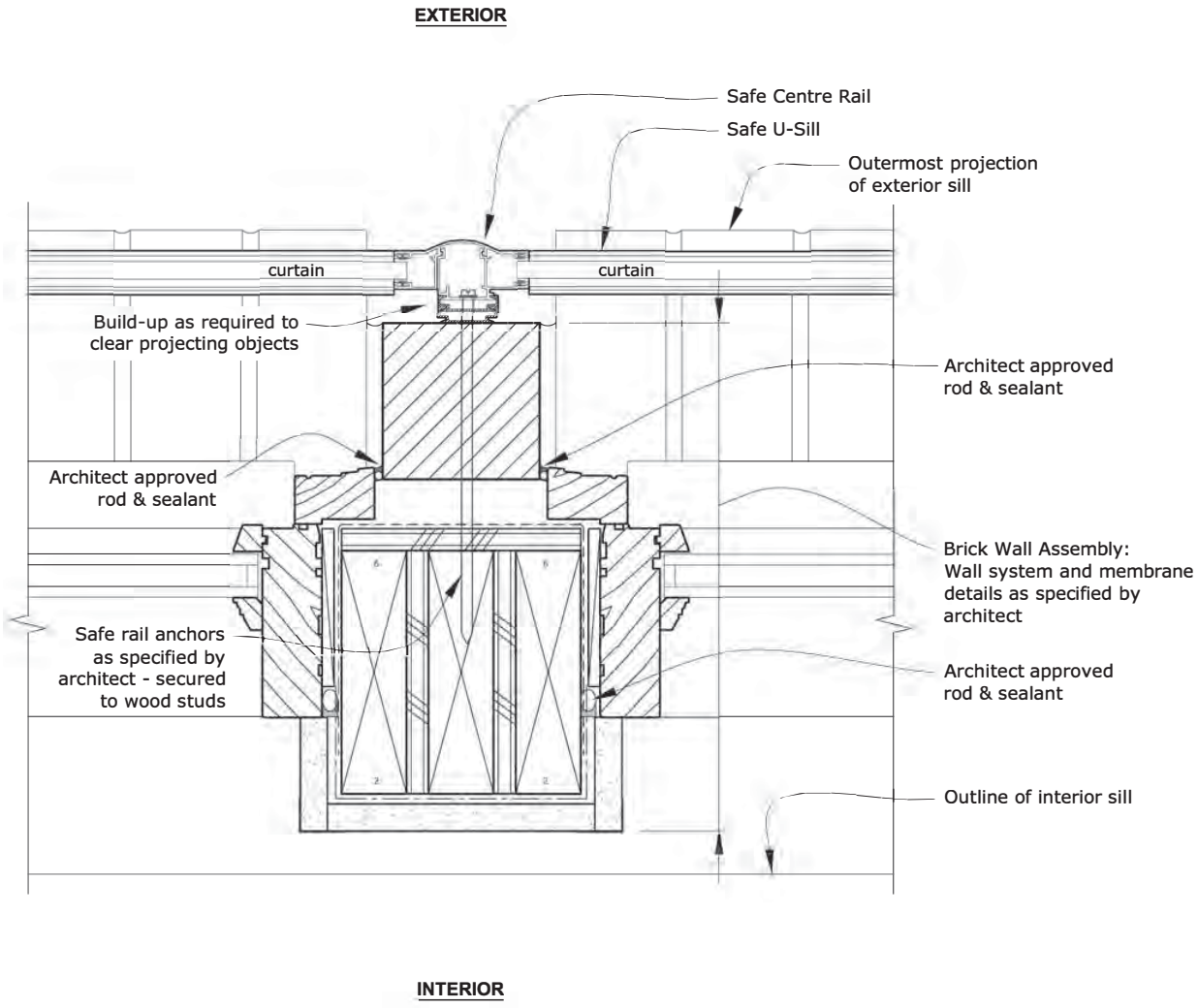


Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Brick Wall Application

Rollshutter Retrofit System
Built-up Mullion with Safe Centre Rail



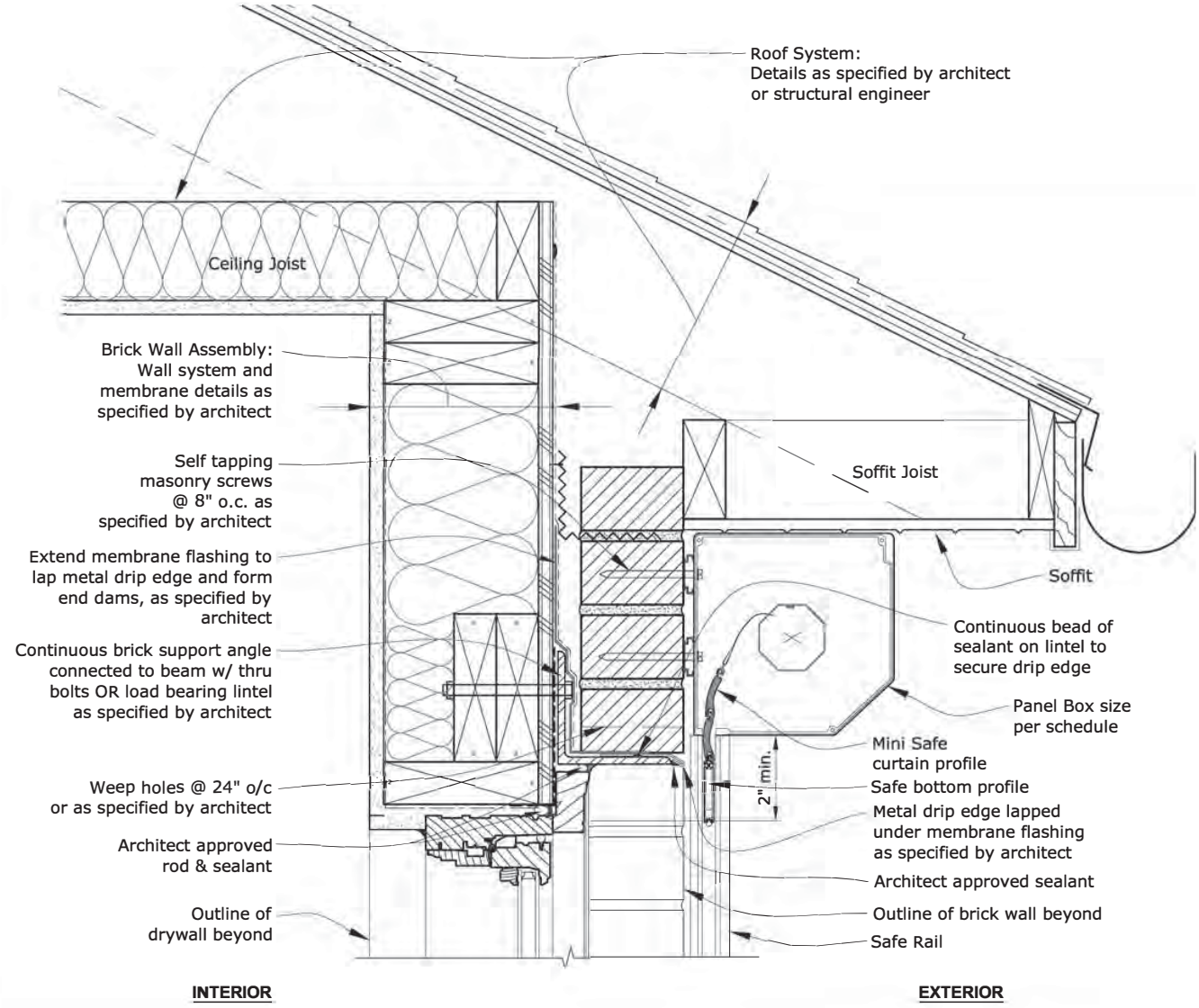
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Brick Wall Application

Panel Box In-Soffit System

Soffit Detail



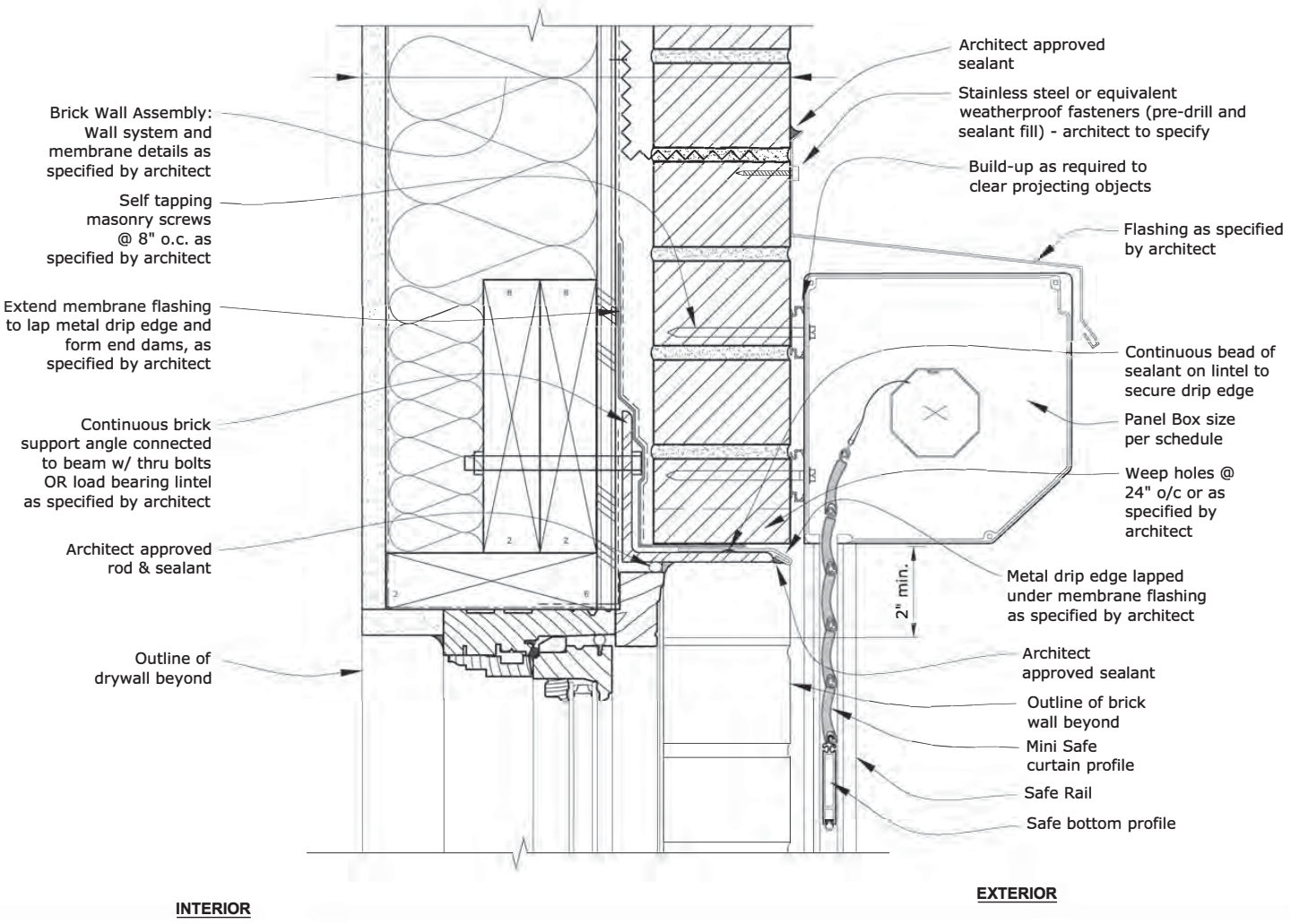
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Brick Wall Application

Panel Box In-Soffit System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail



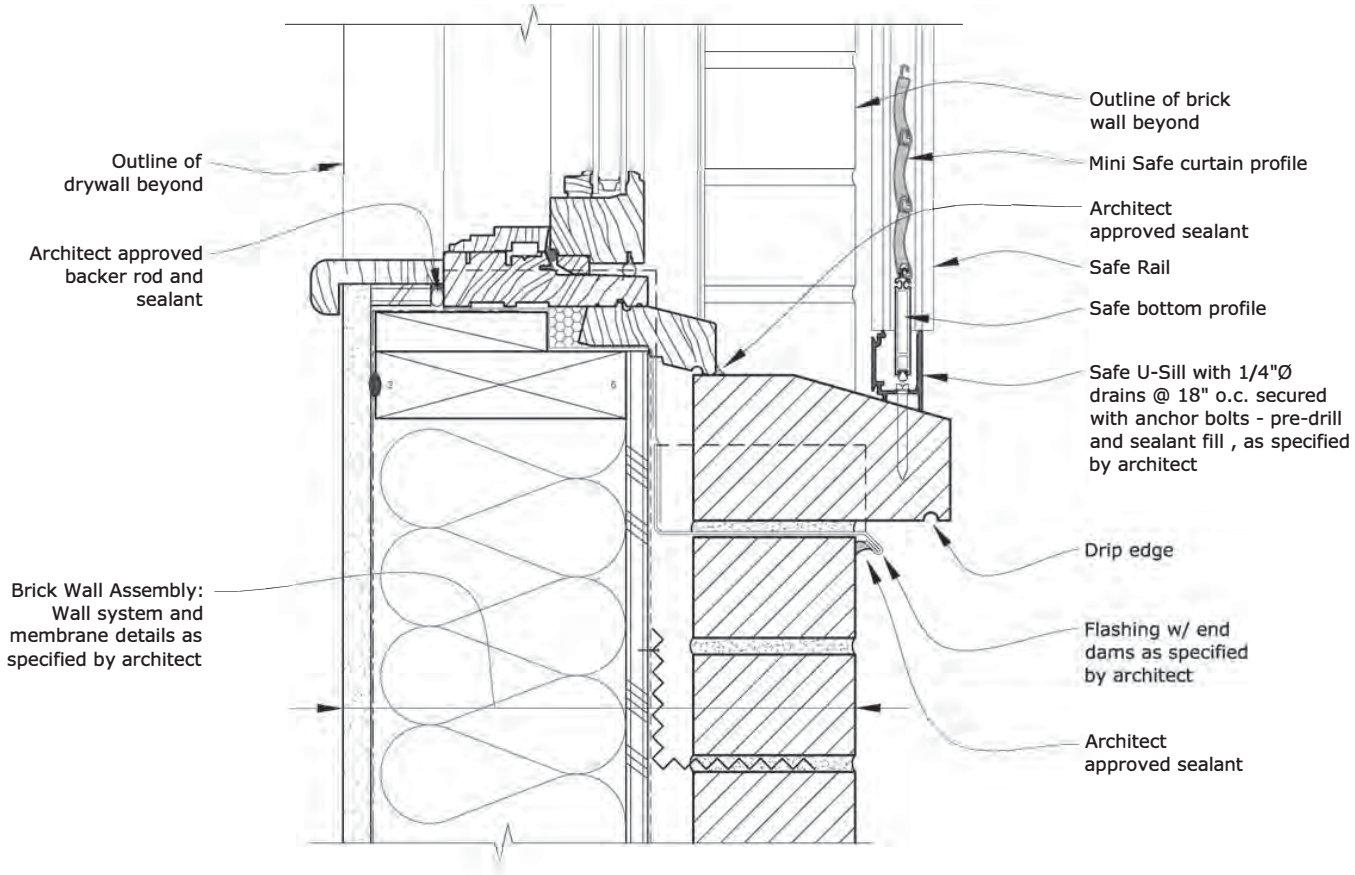
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Brick Wall Application

Panel Box In-Soffit System

Window Sill Detail



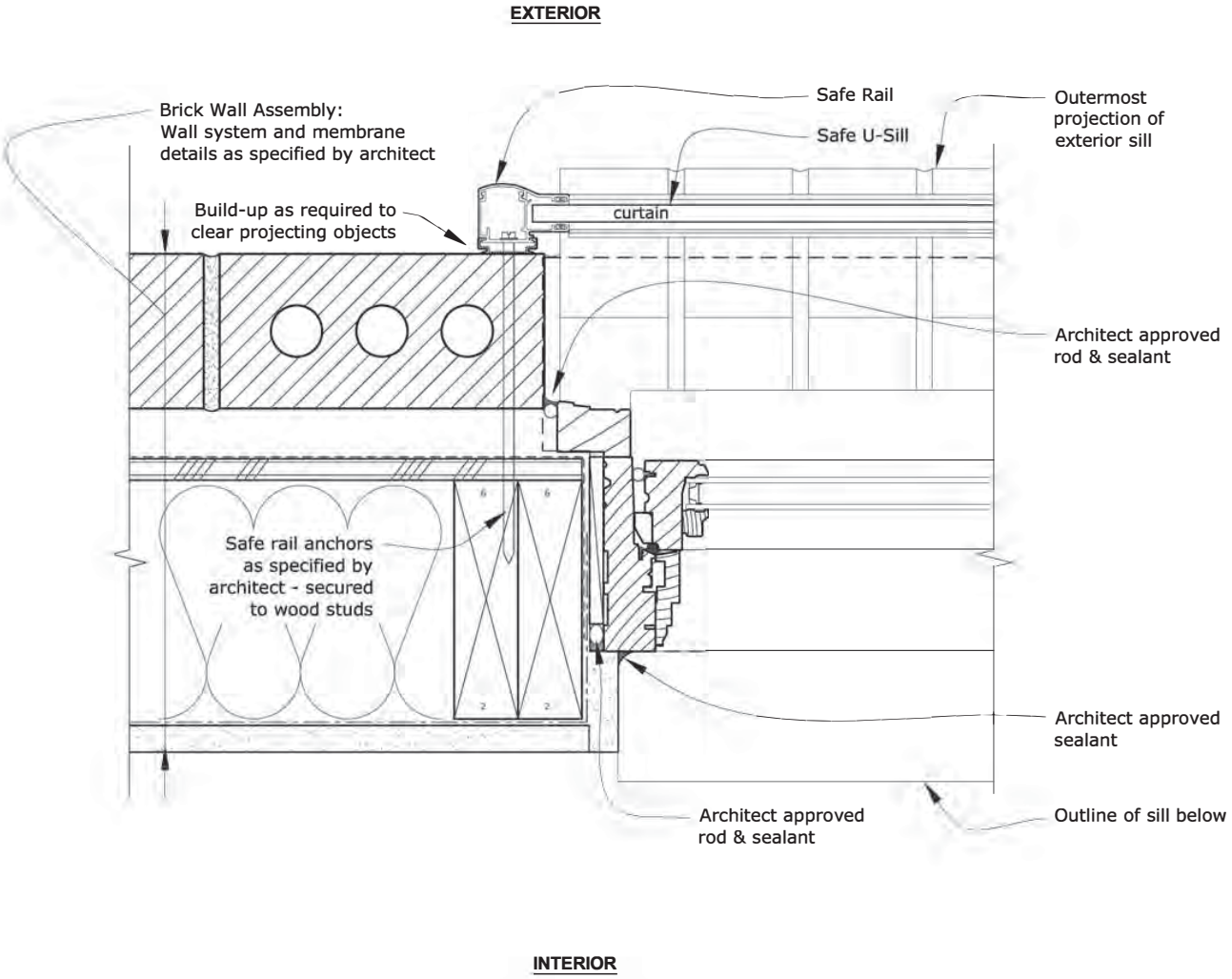
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Brick Wall Application

Panel Box In-Soffit System

Window Jamb Detail



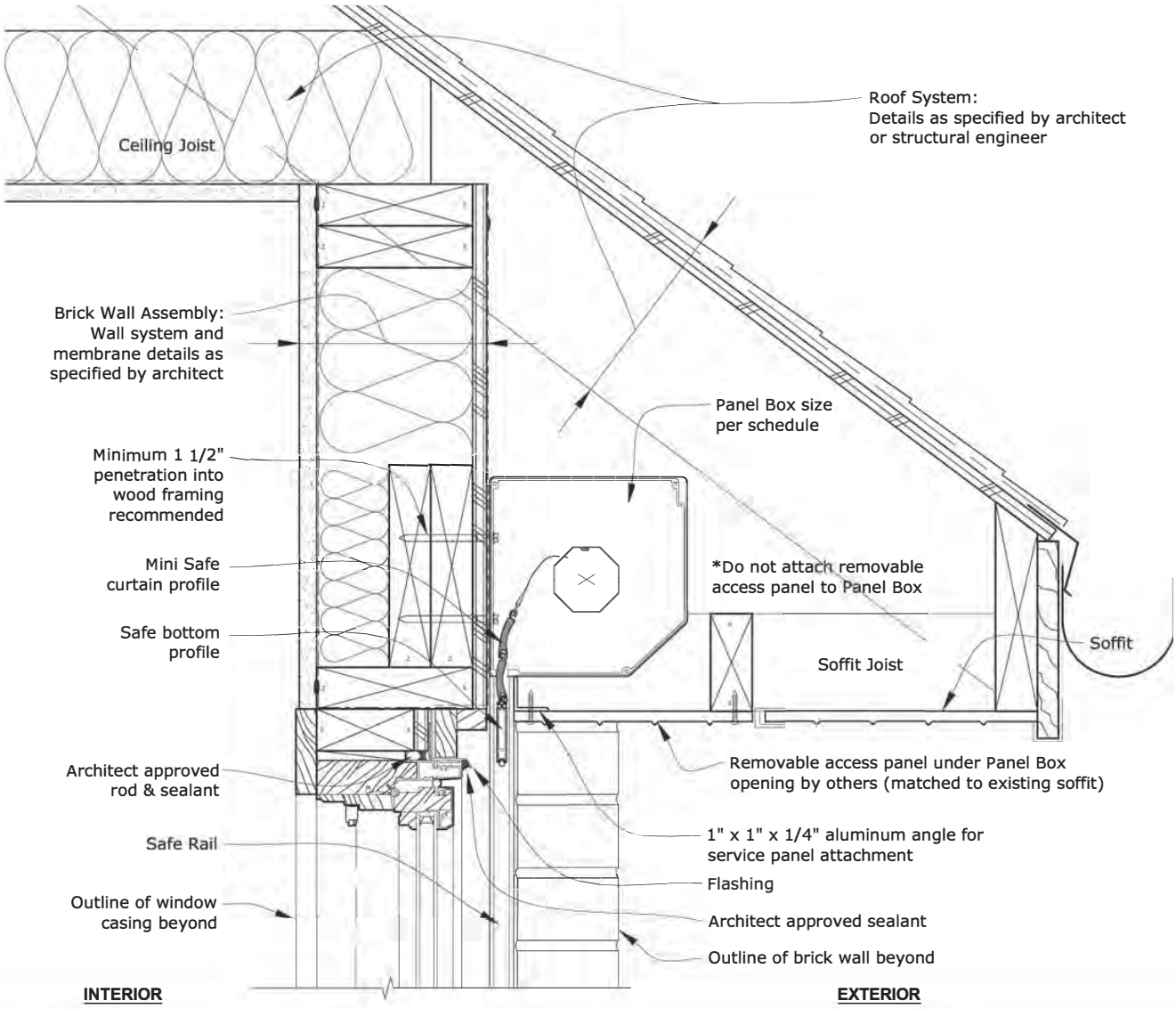
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Brick Wall Application

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Soffit Detail



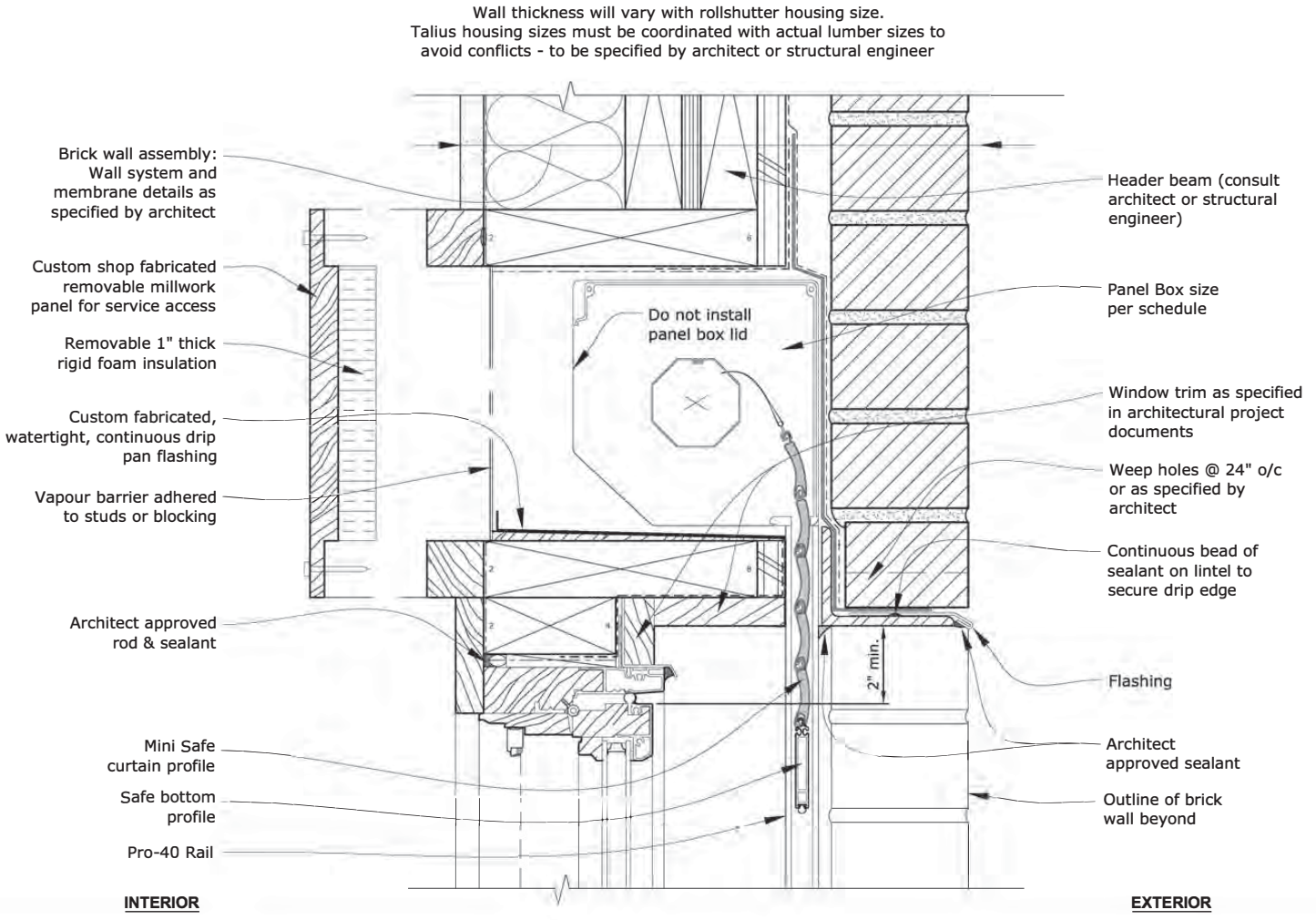
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Brick Wall Application

Panel Box In-Wall System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail



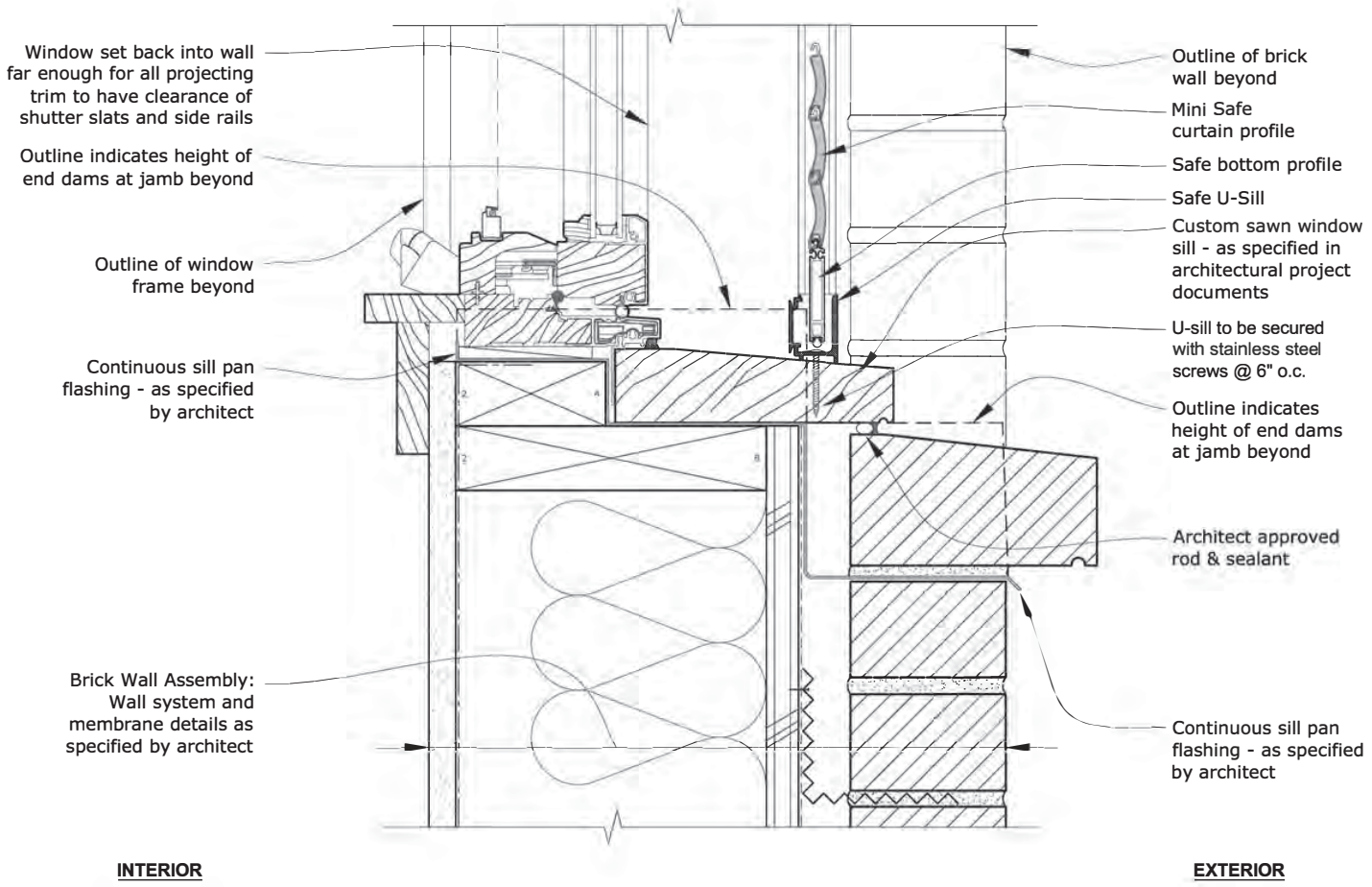
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Brick Wall Application

Panel Box In-Wall System

Window Sill Detail



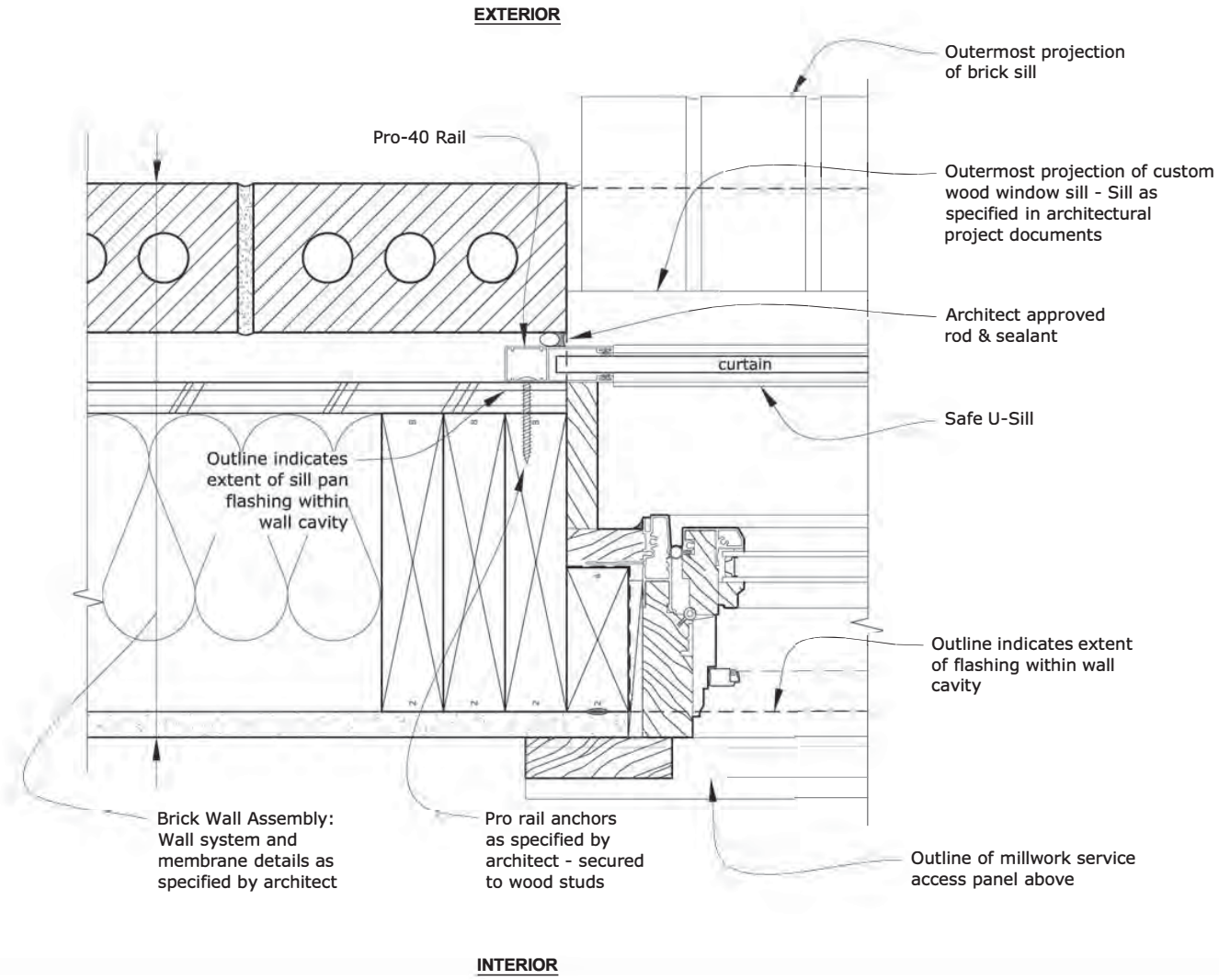
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Brick Wall Application

Panel Box In-Wall System

Window Jamb Detail



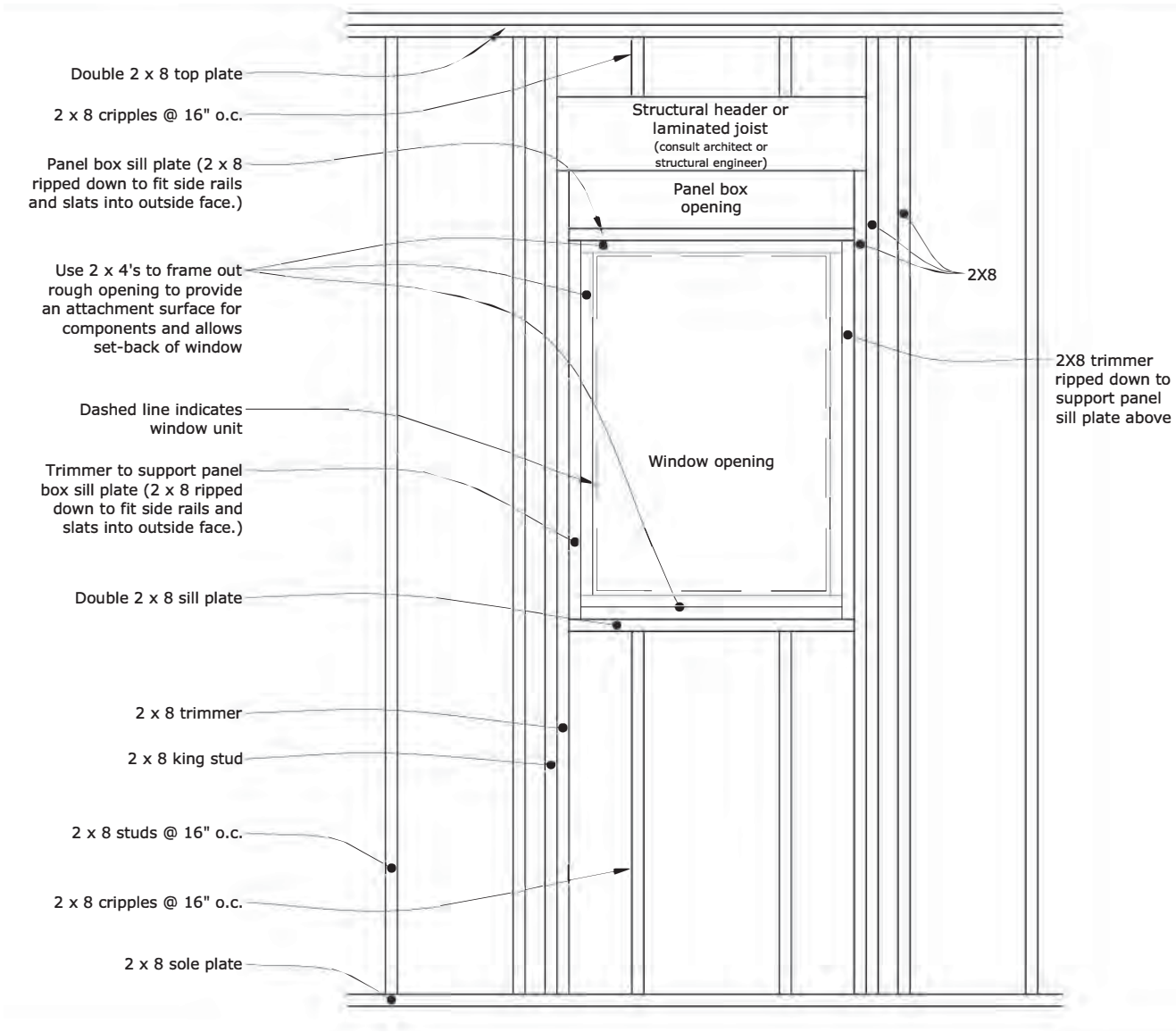
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Brick Wall Application

Panel Box In-Wall System

Framing Diagram



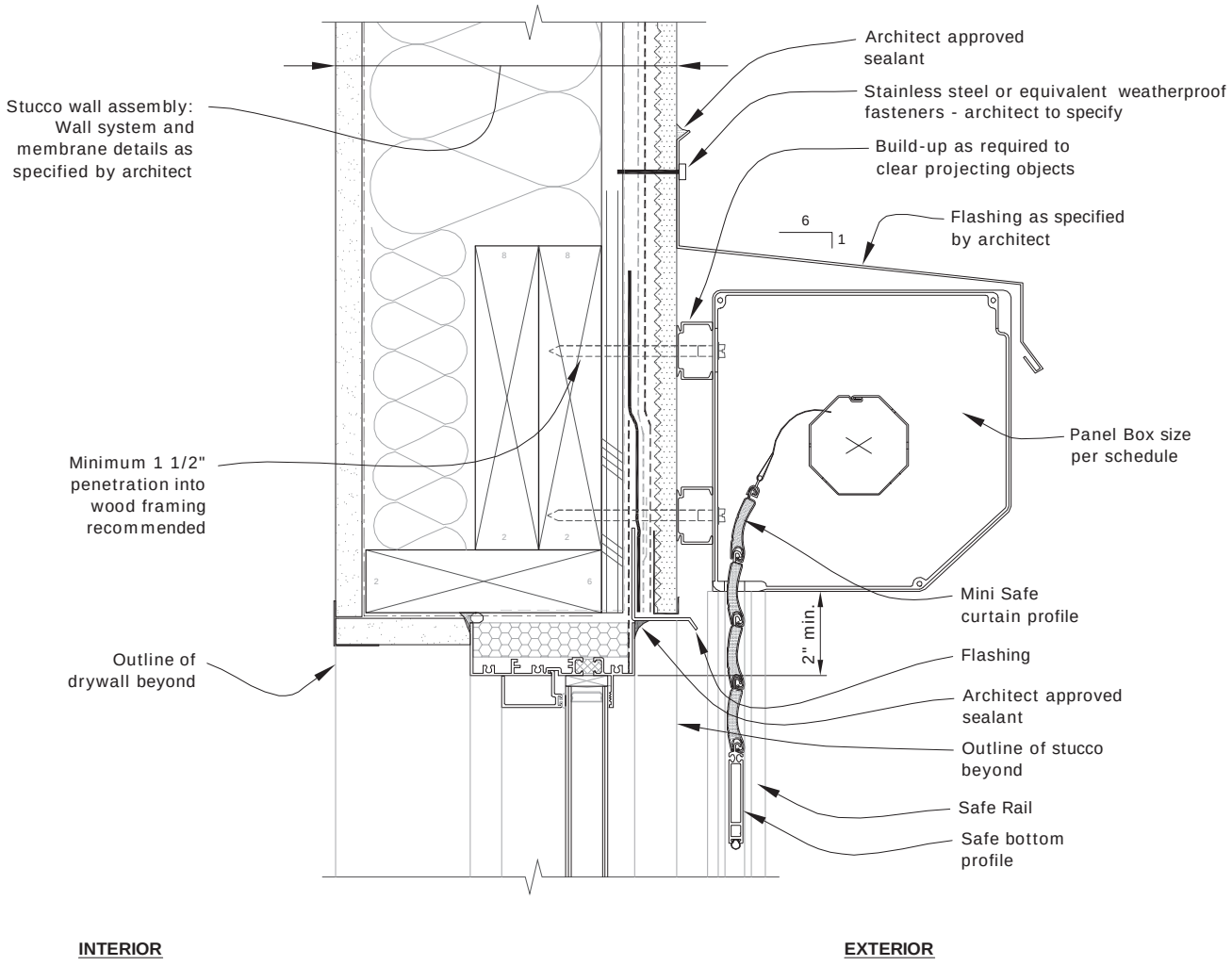
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Rollshutter Retrofit System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail



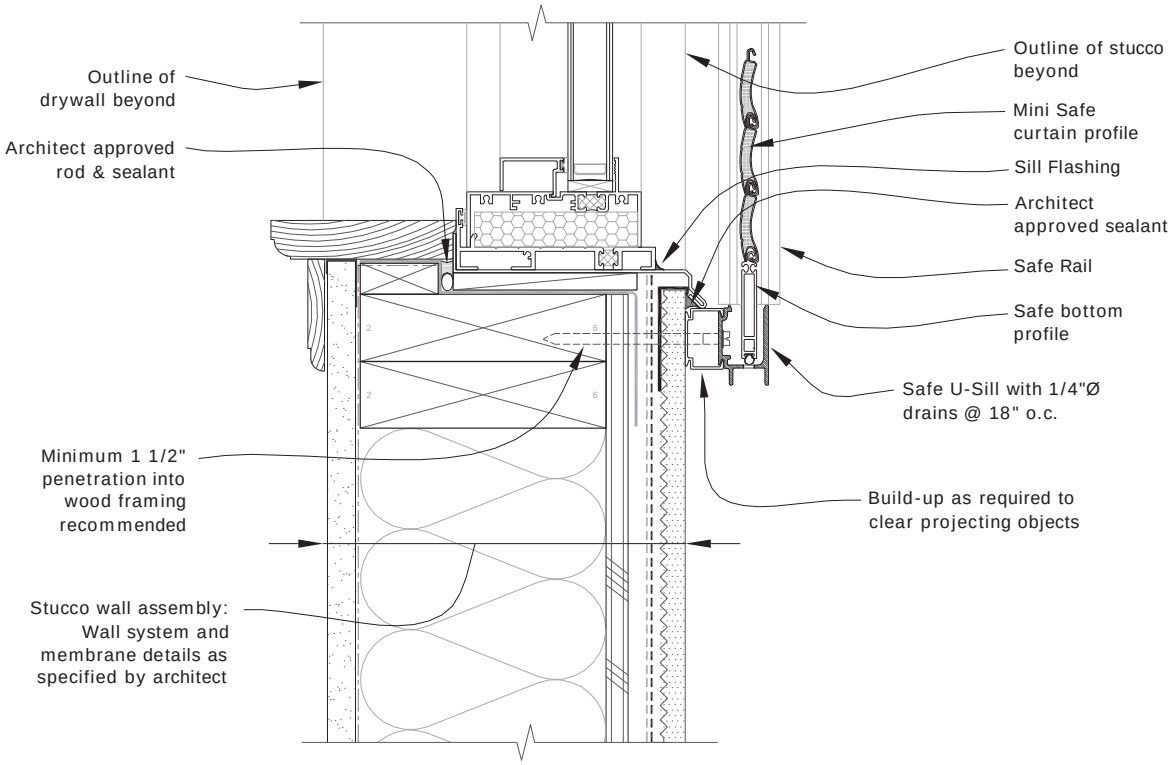
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Rollshutter Retrofit System

Window Sill Detail



Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

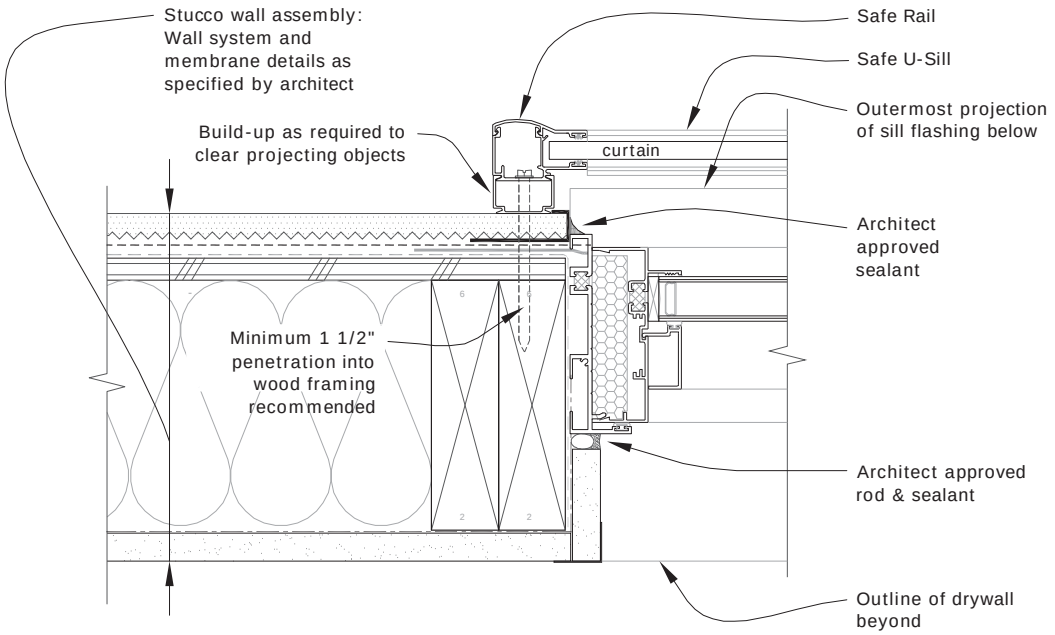
Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Rollshutter Retrofit System

Window Jamb Detail

EXTERIOR



INTERIOR

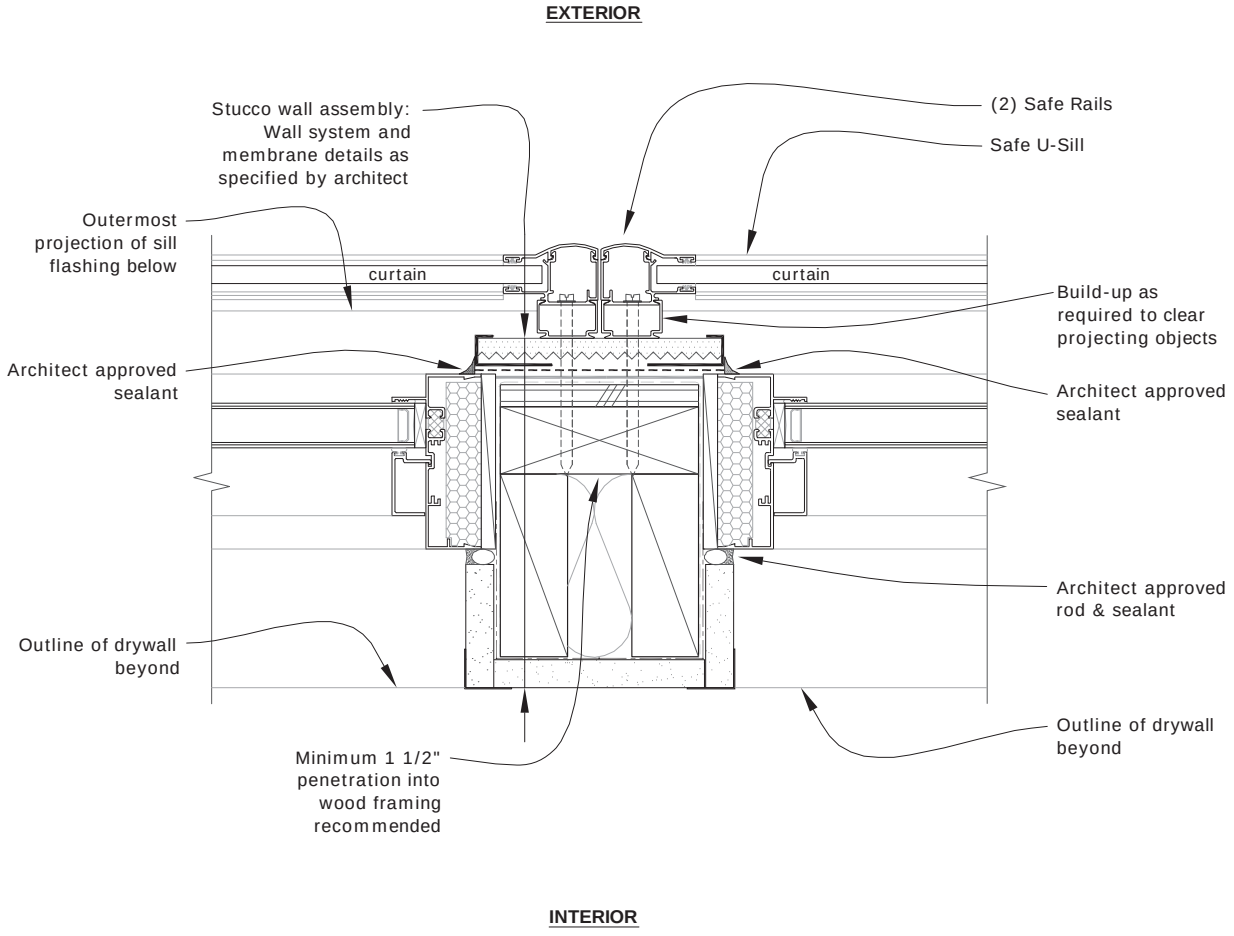
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Rollshutter Retrofit System

Window Jamb Detail with Safe Rails Back-to-back



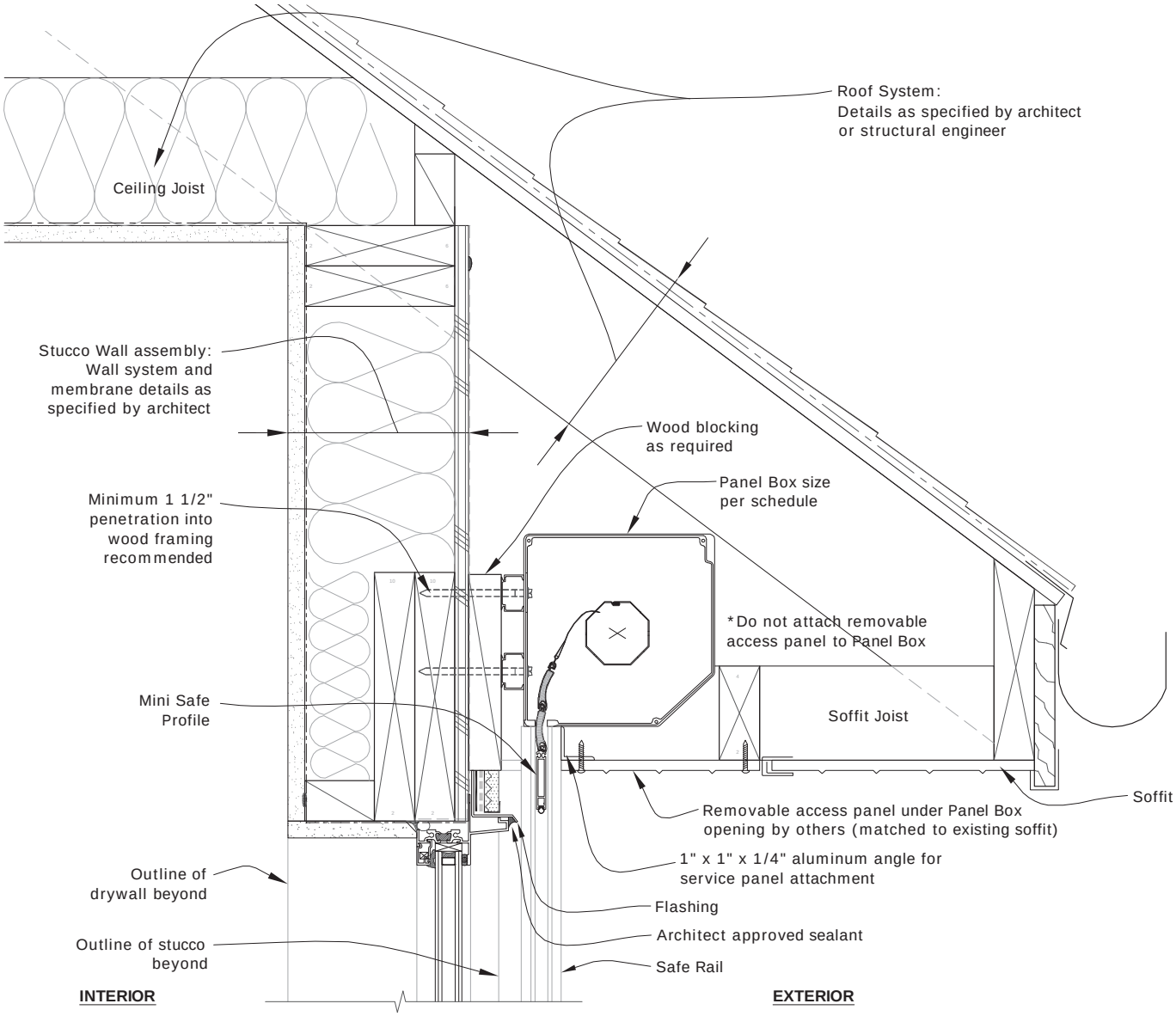
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Panel Box In-Soffit System

Soffit Detail



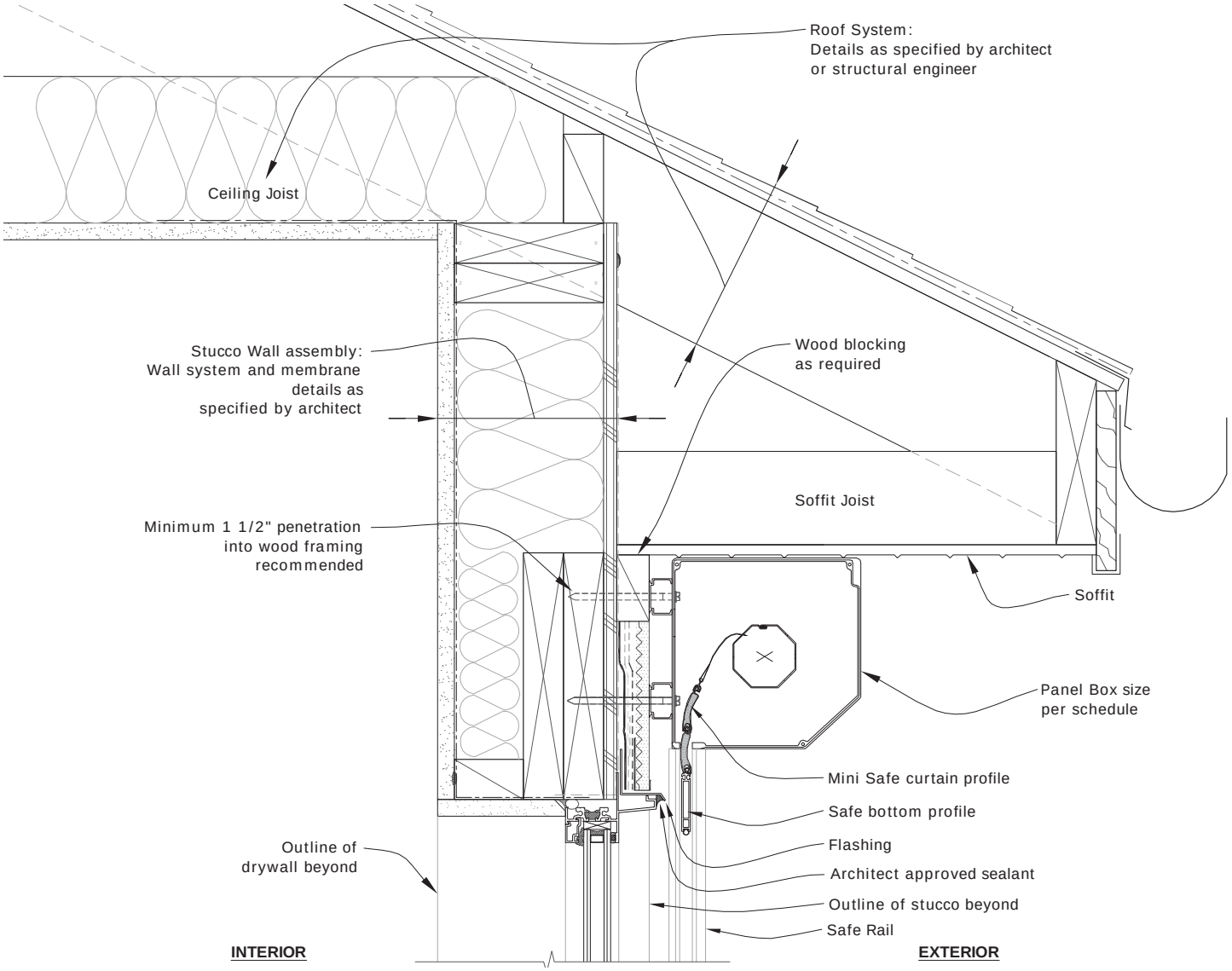
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Soffit Detail



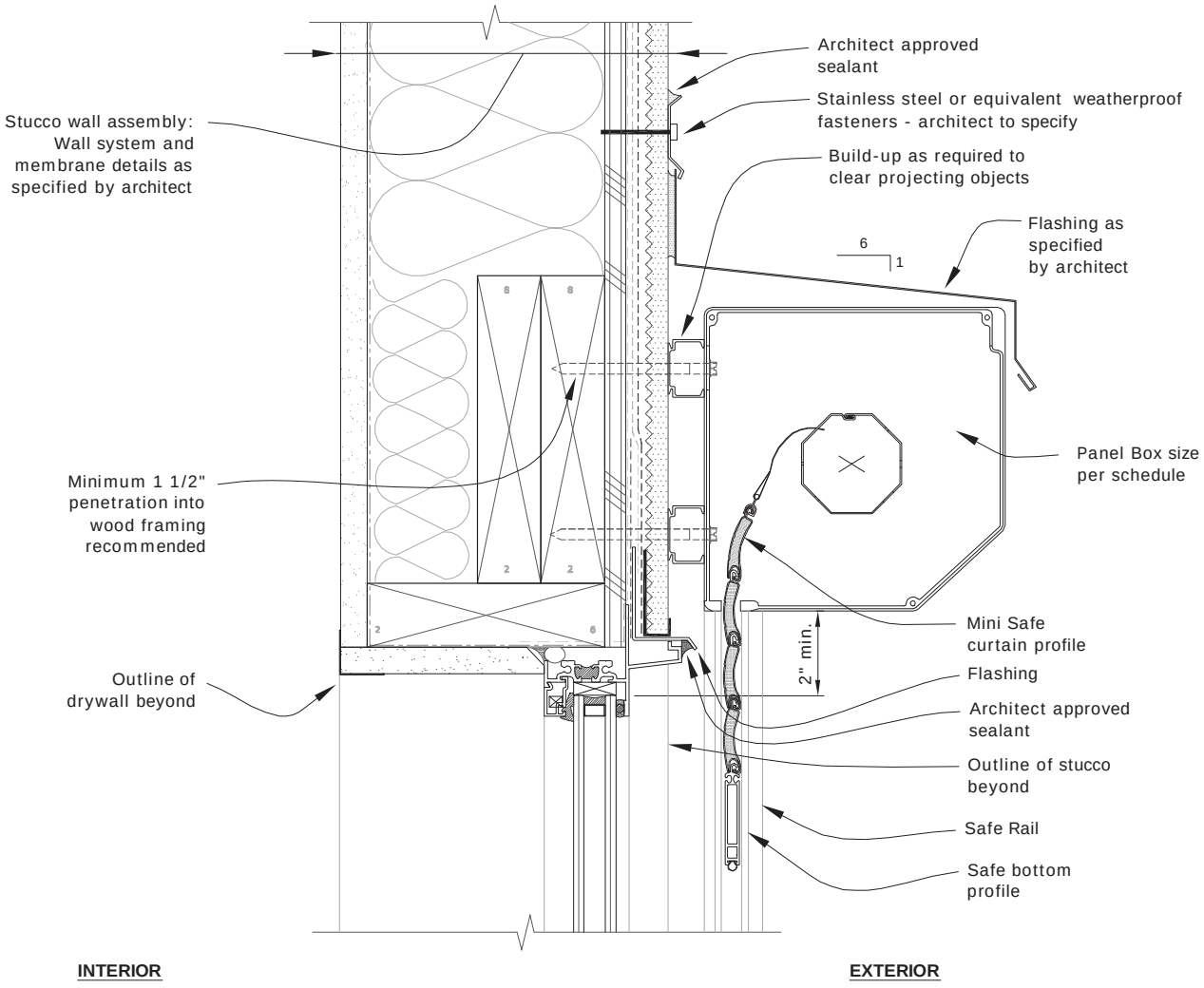
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail



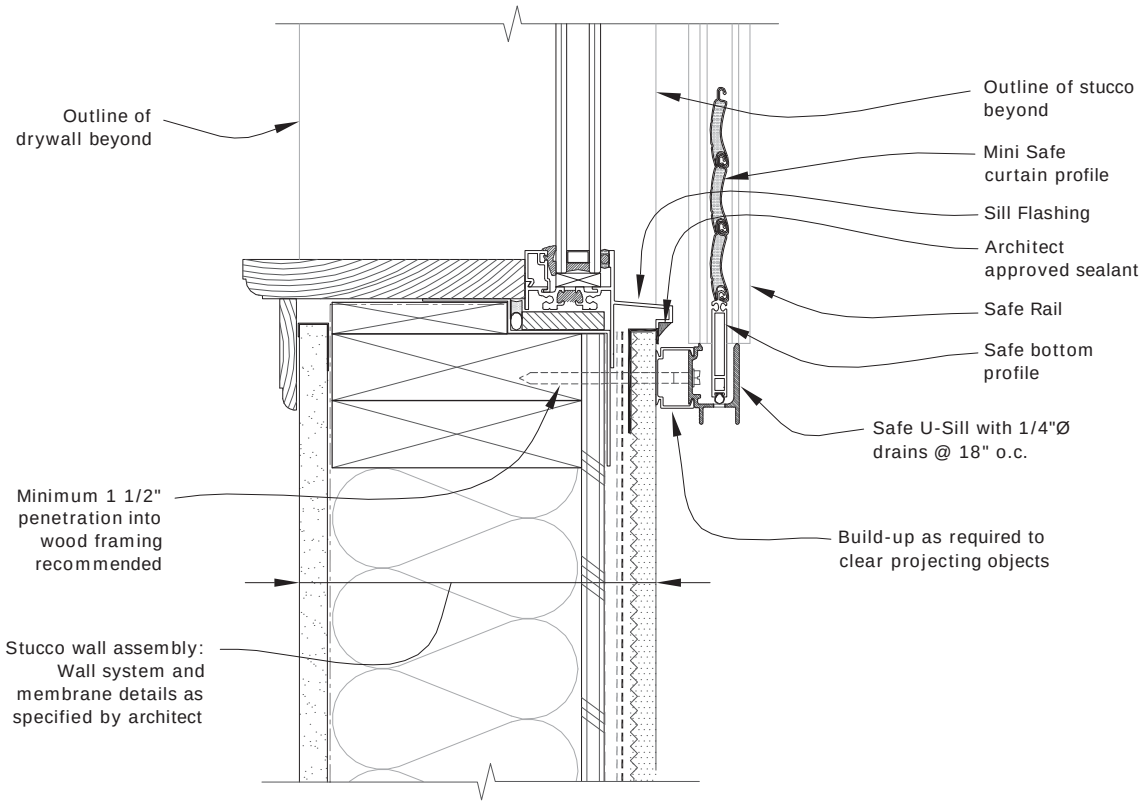
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Window Sill Detail



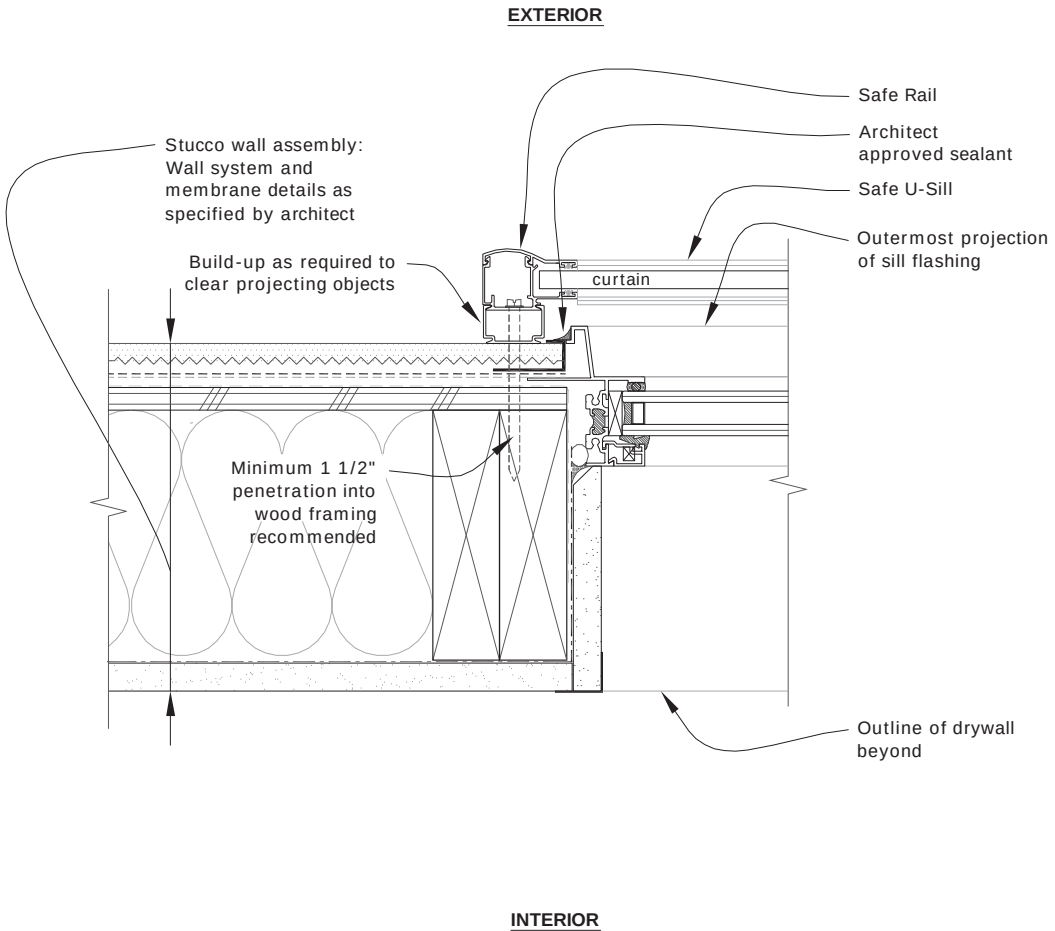
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Window Jamb Detail



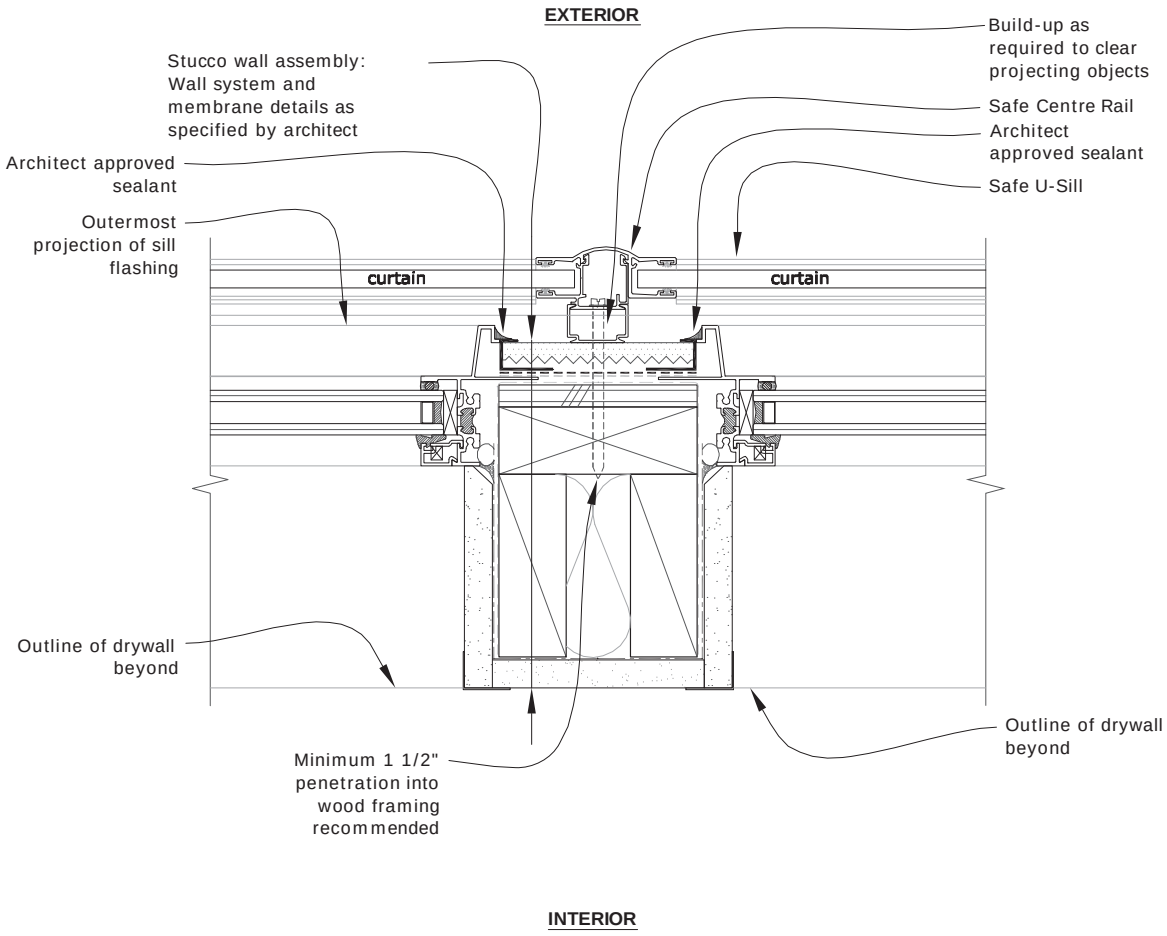
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Window Jamb with Safe Centre Rail



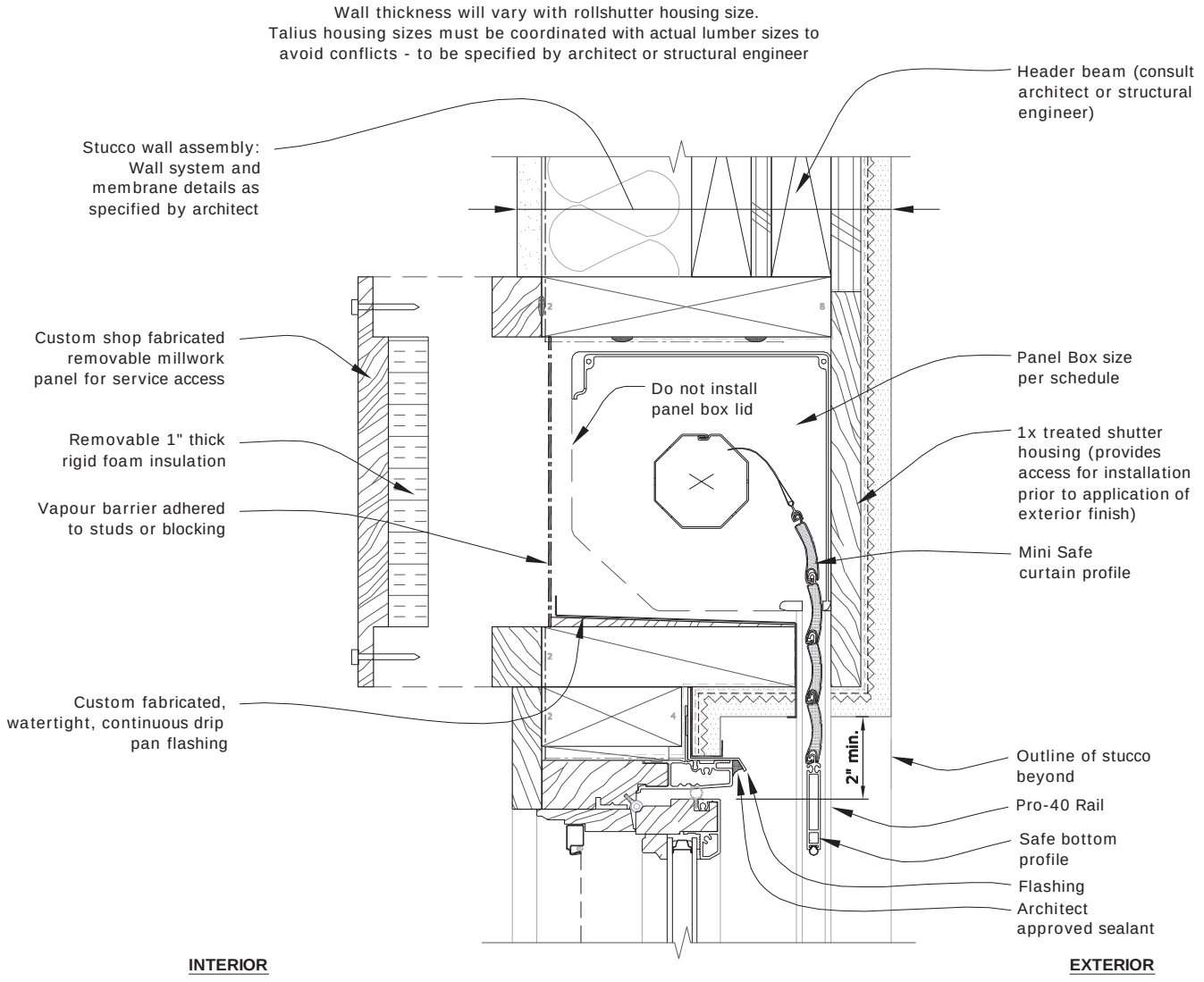
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Panel Box In-Wall System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail



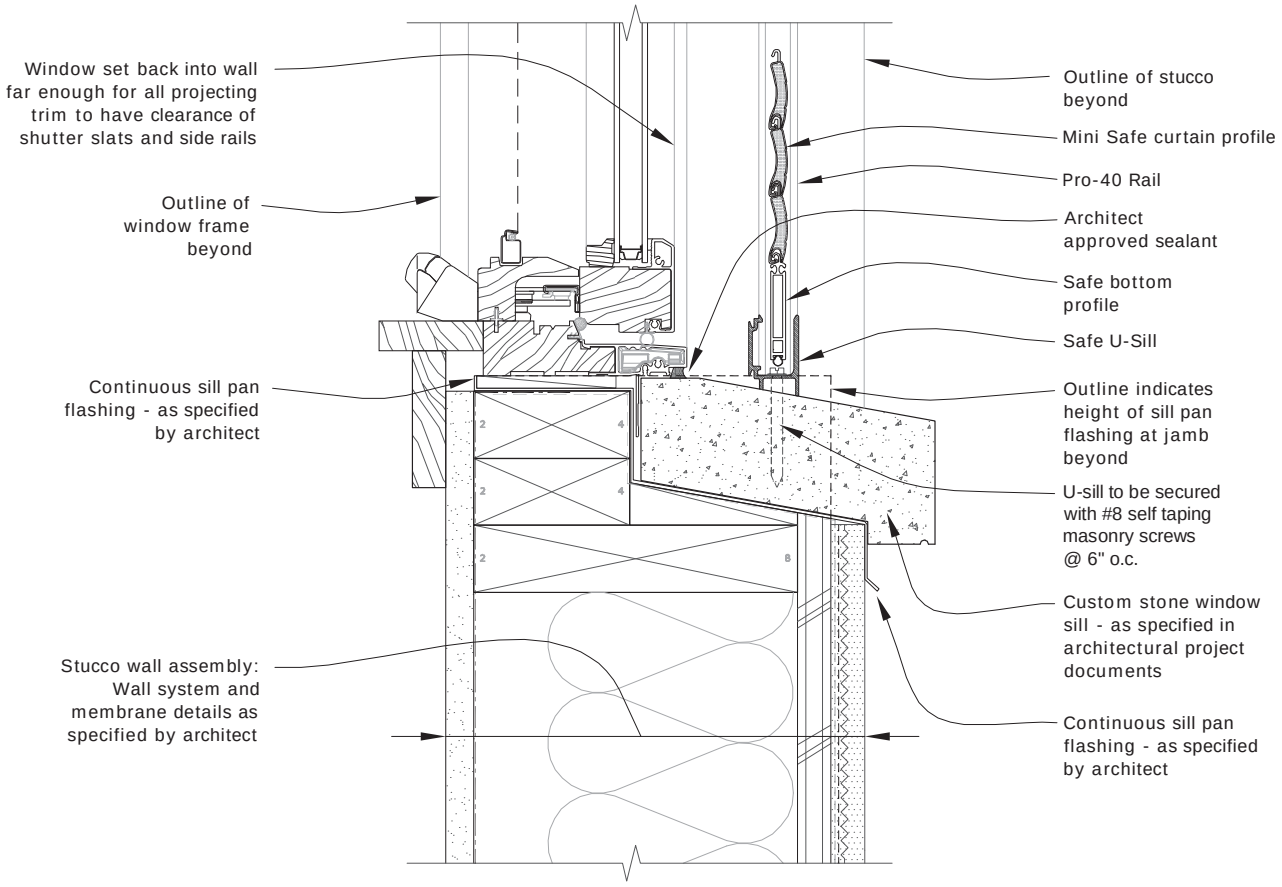
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Panel Box In-Wall System

Window Sill Detail



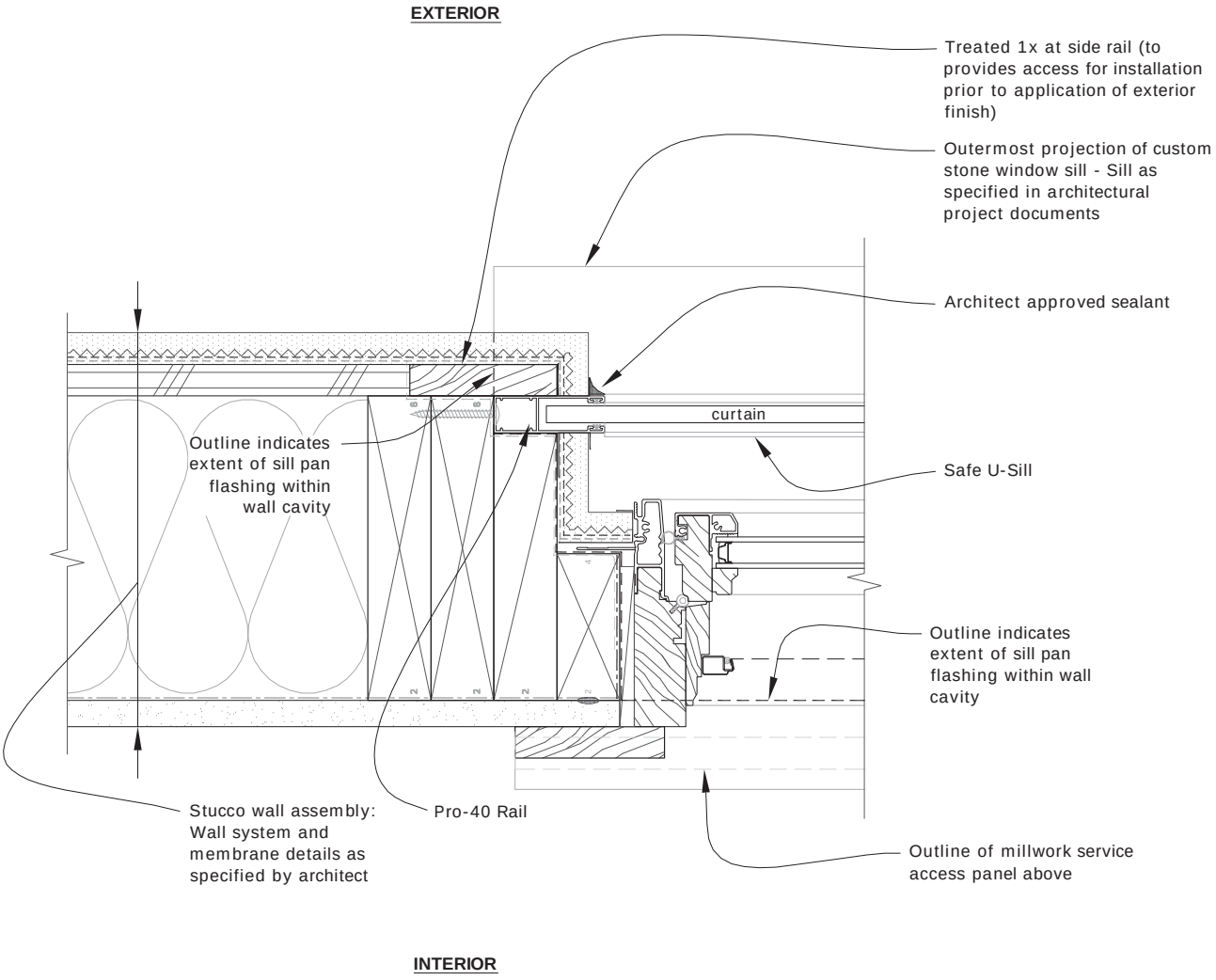
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Panel Box In-Wall System

Window Jamb Detail



Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

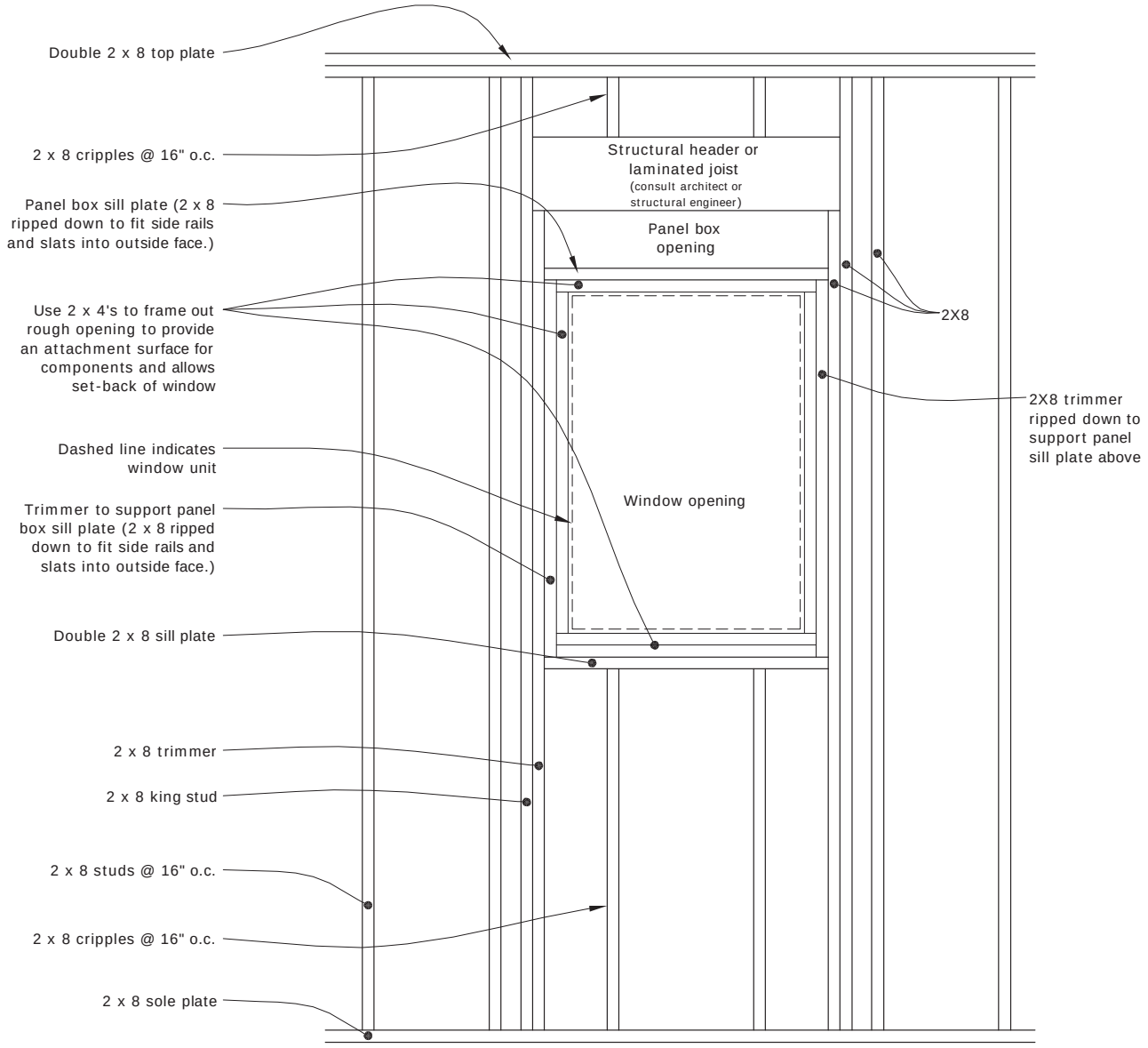
Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Technical Binder © 2020

Stucco Wall Application

Panel Box In-Wall System

Framing Diagram

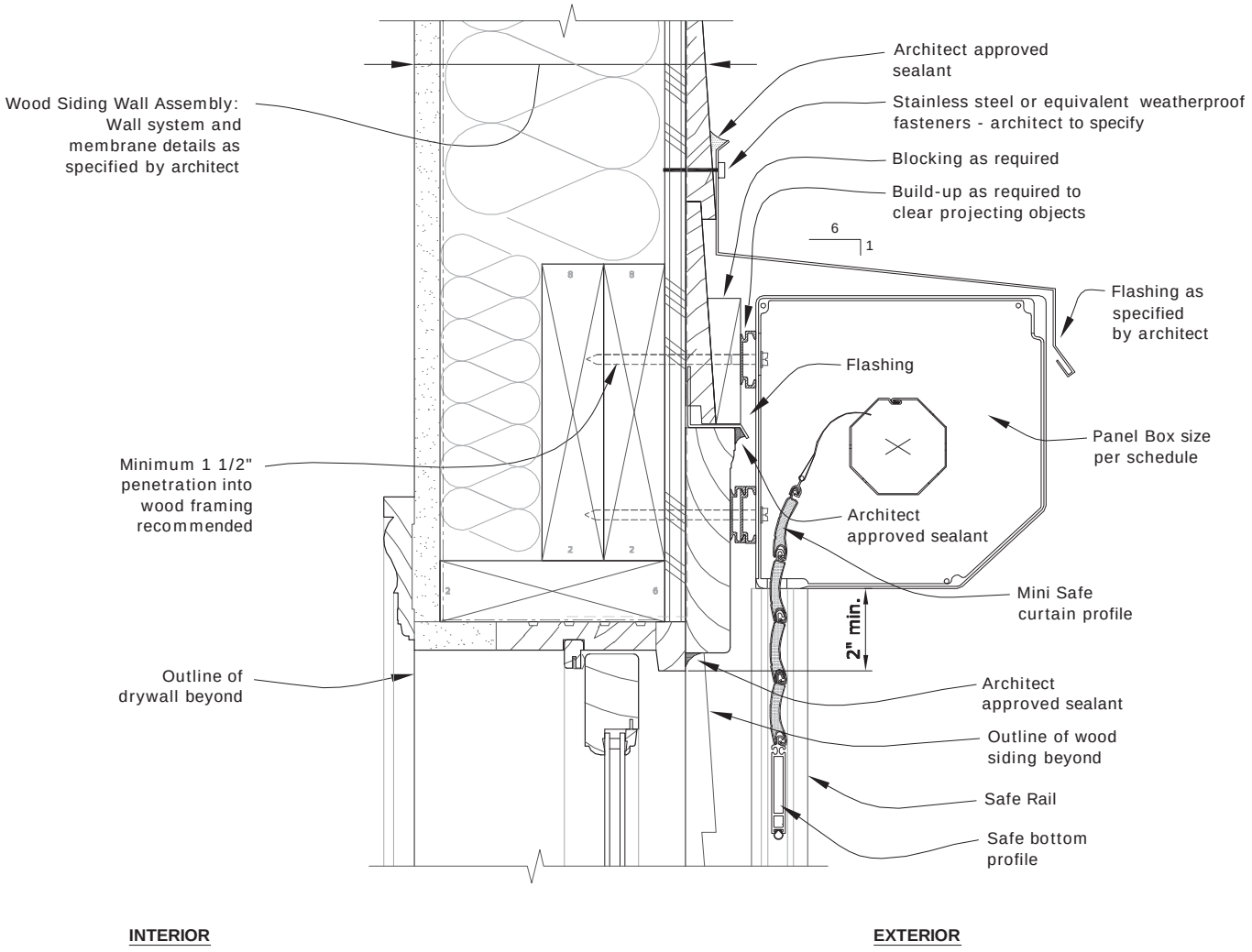


Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Wood Siding Wall Application

Rollshutter Retrofit System
Panel Box/Window Head Detail



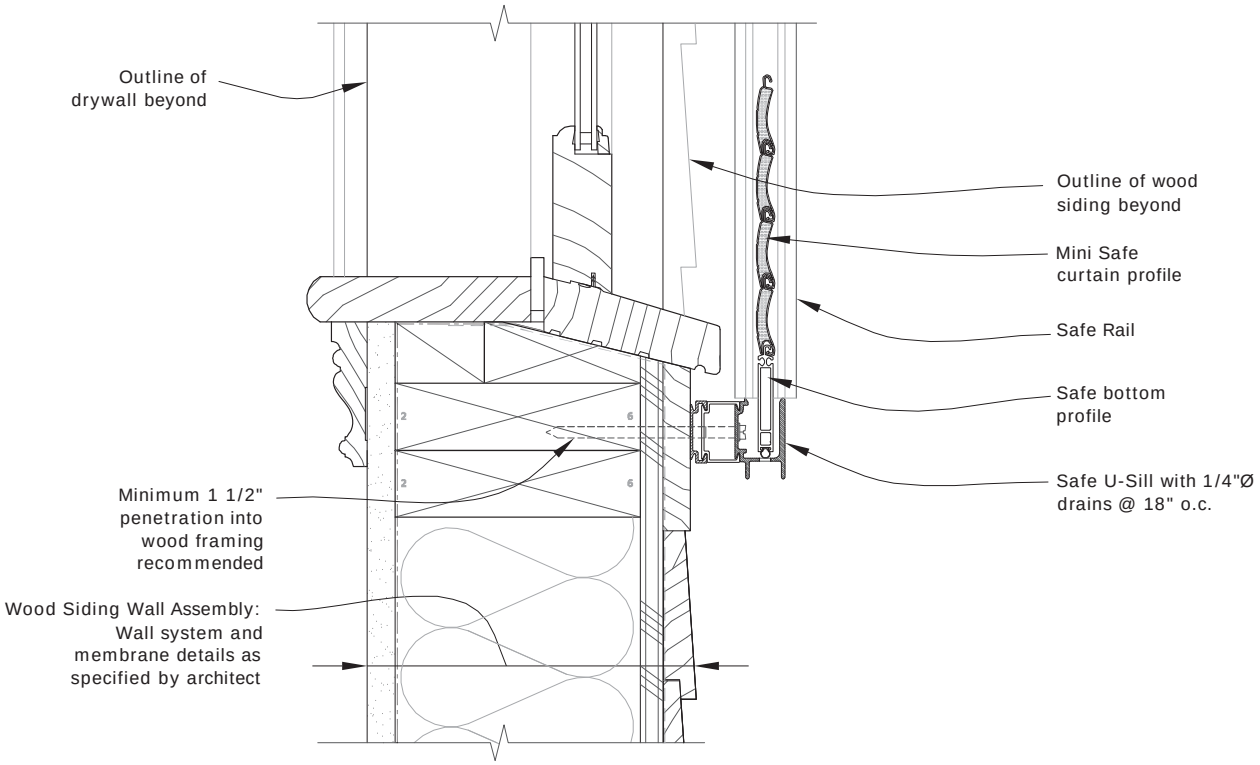
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Wood Siding Wall Application

Rollshutter Retrofit System

Window Sill Detail



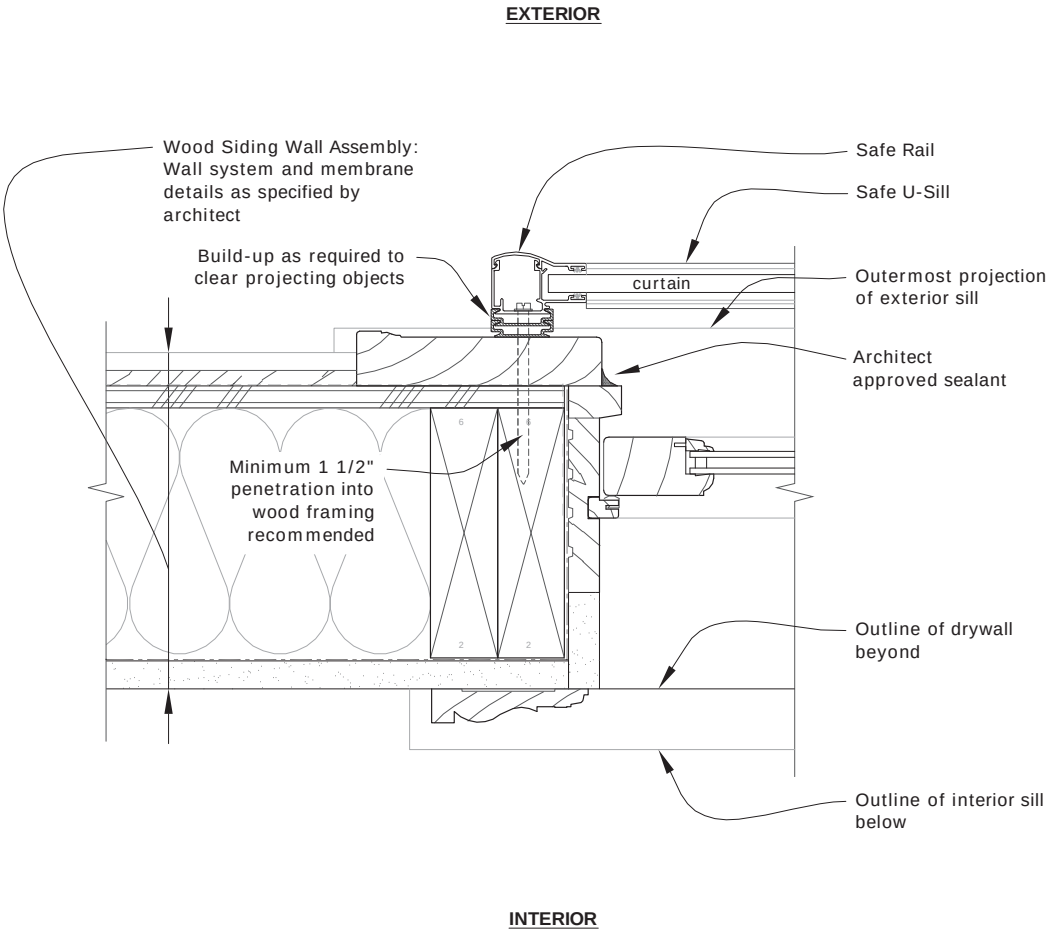
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Wood Siding Wall Application

Rollshutter Retrofit System

Window Jamb Detail



Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

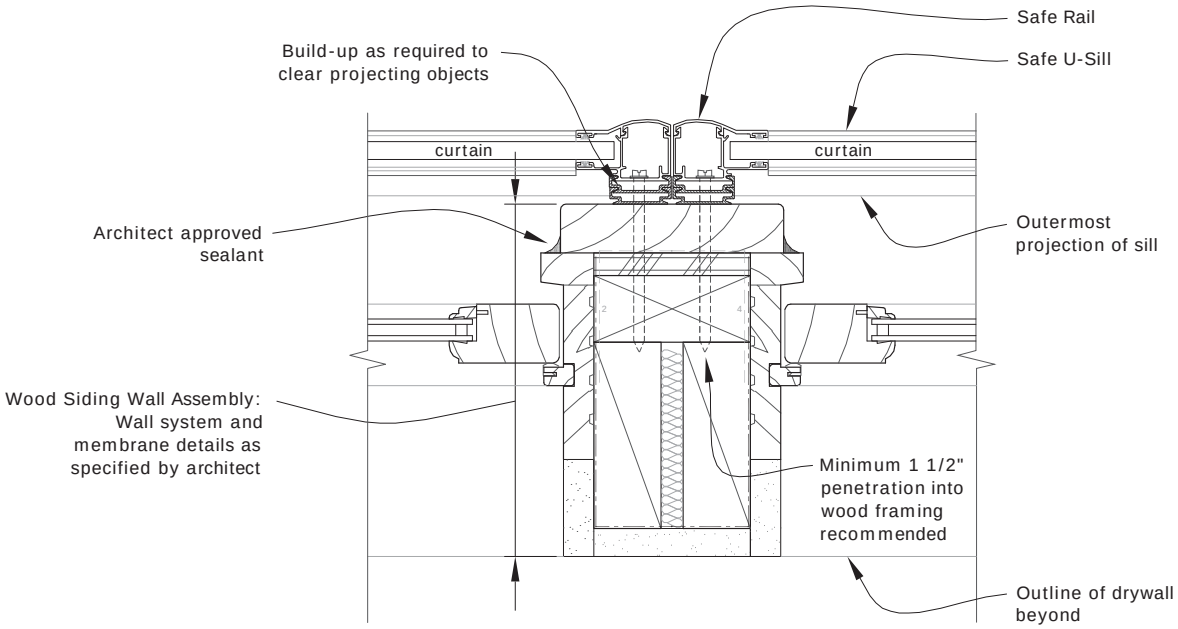
Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Wood Siding Wall Application

Rollshutter Retrofit System

Window Jamb Detail with Safe Rails Back-to-back

EXTERIOR



INTERIOR

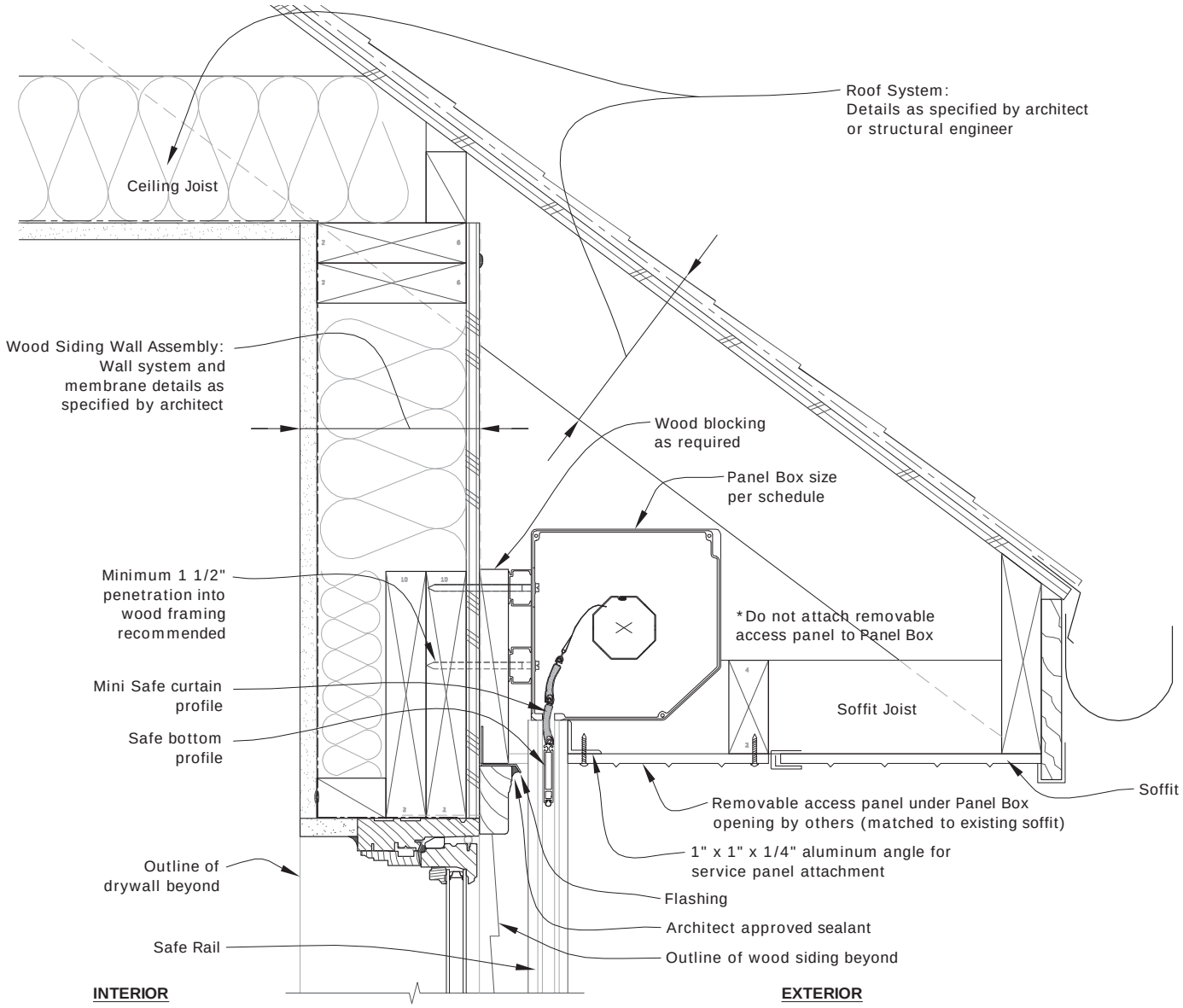
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Wood Siding Wall Application

Panel Box In-Soffit System

Soffit Detail



Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

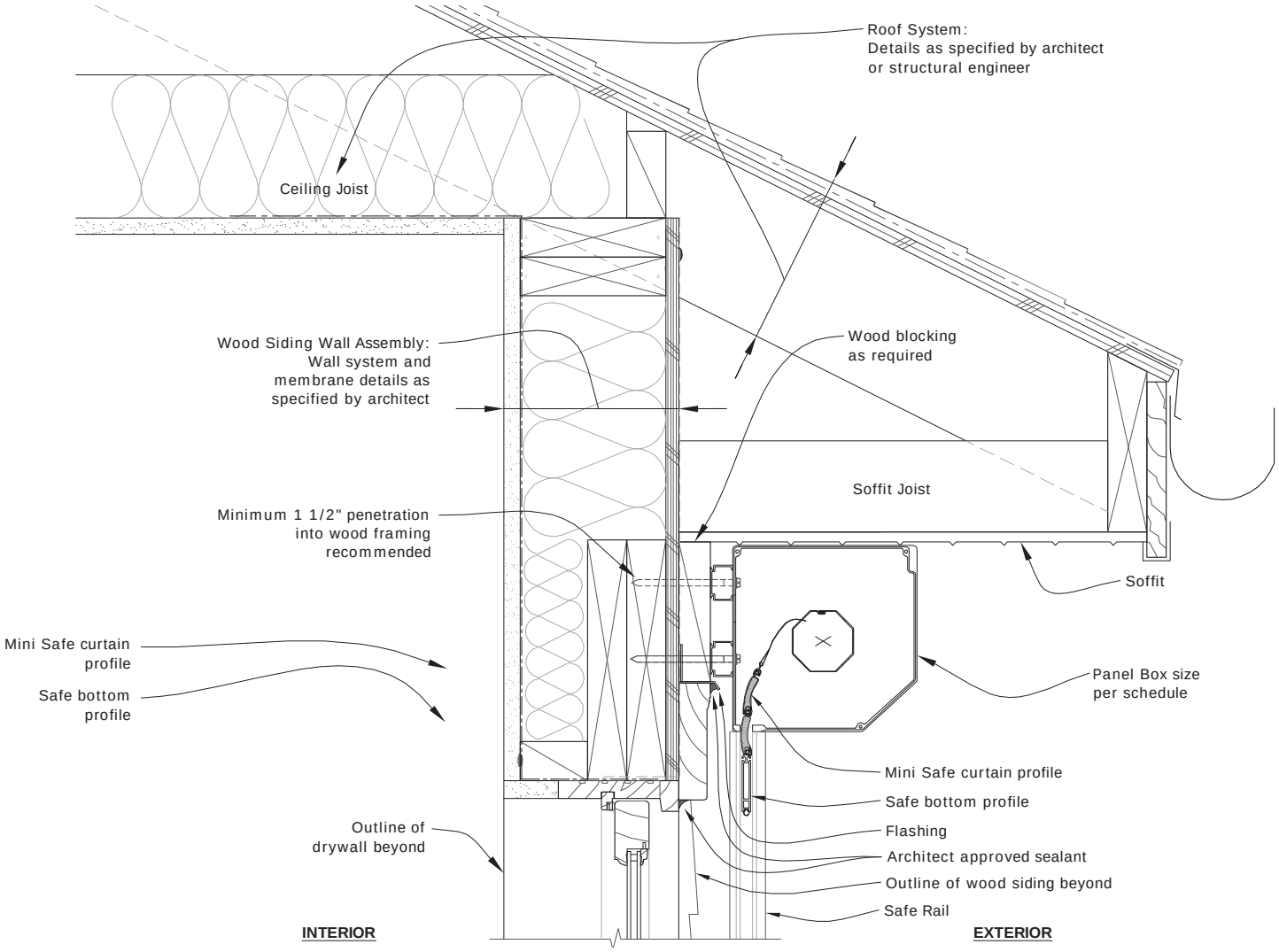
Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Technical Binder © 2020

Wood Siding Wall Application

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Soffit Detail



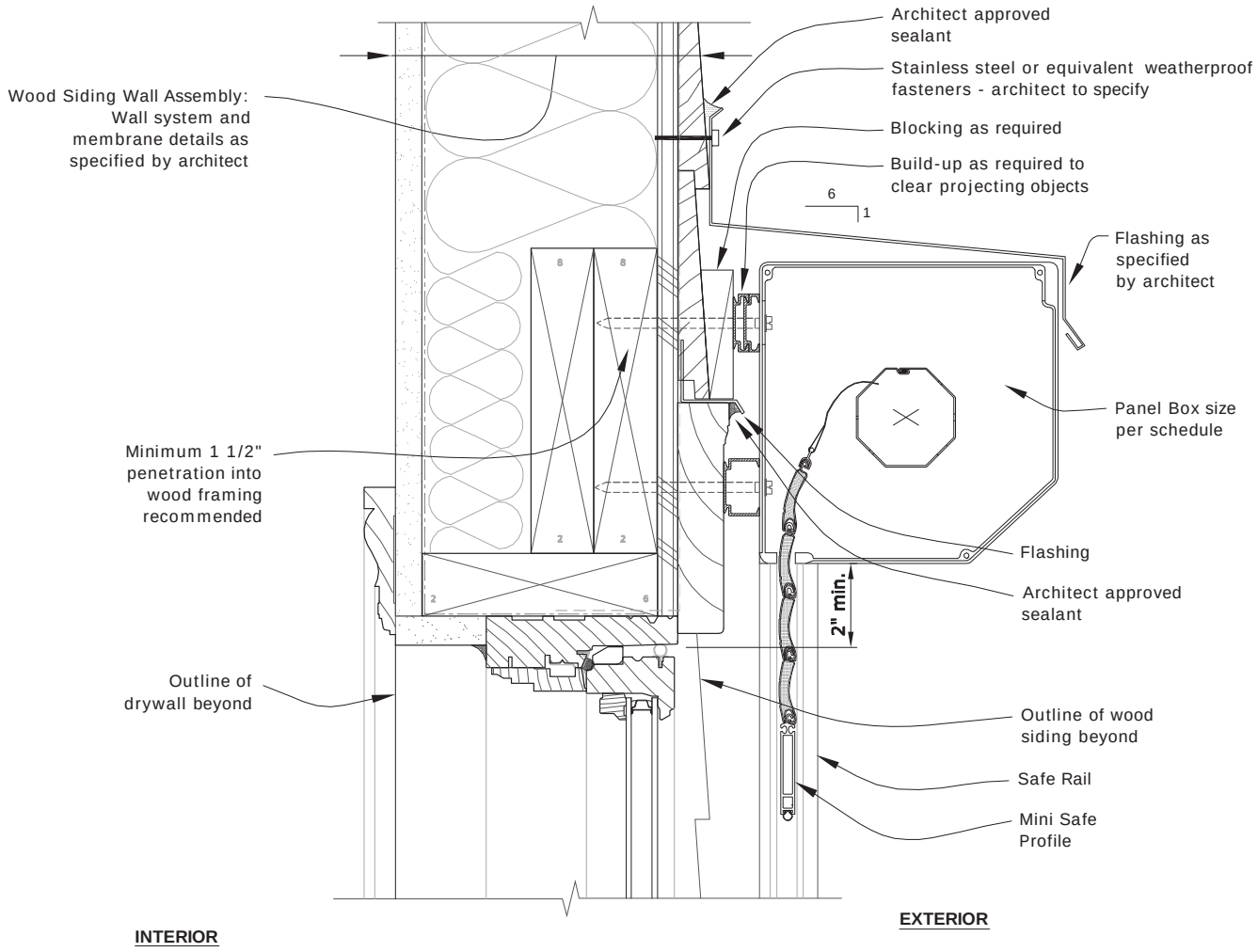
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Wood Siding Wall Application

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail



Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

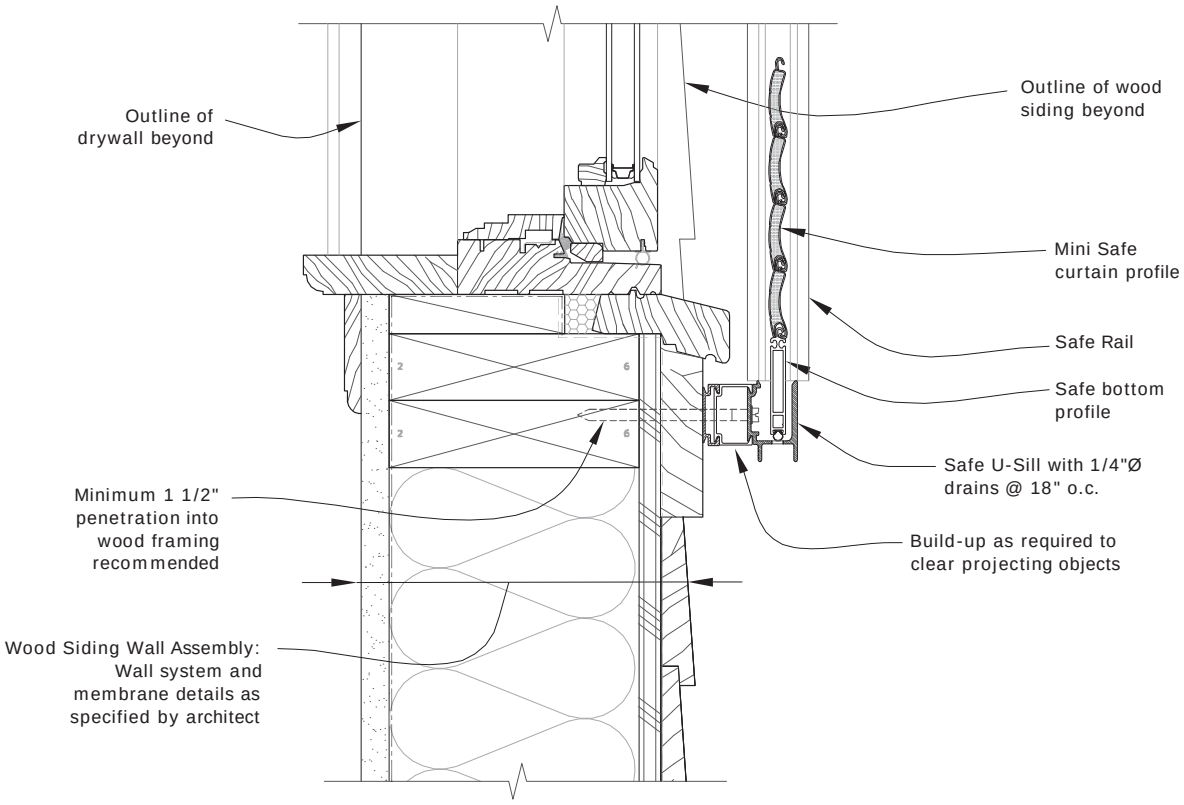
Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Technical Binder © 2020

Wood Siding Wall Application

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Window Sill Detail



Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

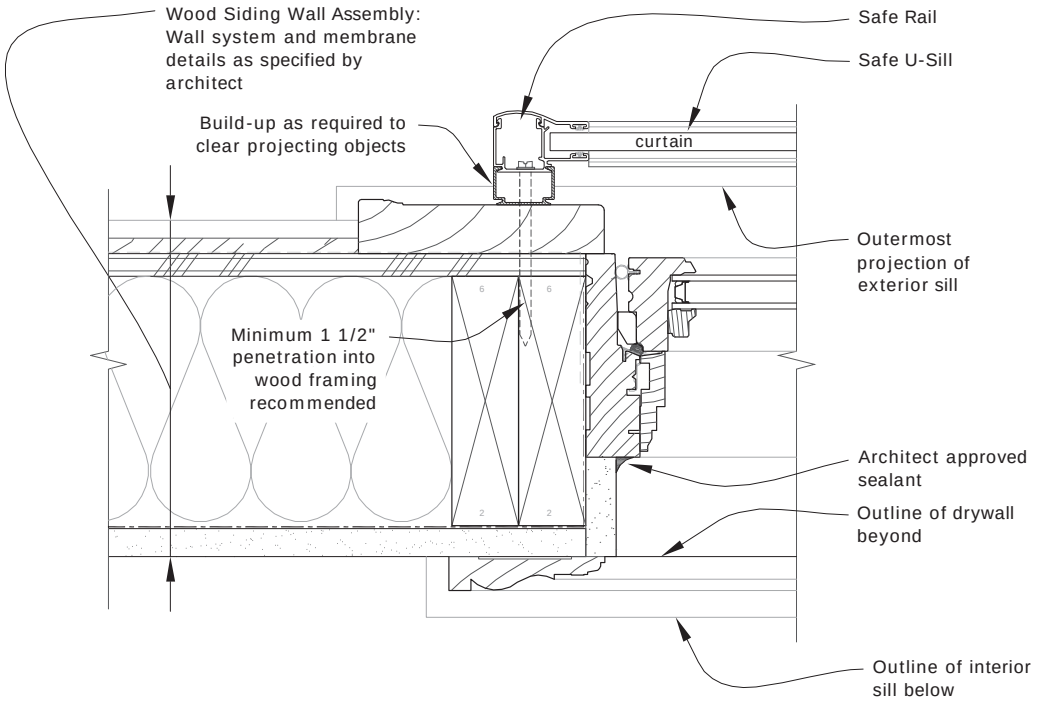
Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Wood Siding Wall Application

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Window Jamb Detail

EXTERIOR



INTERIOR

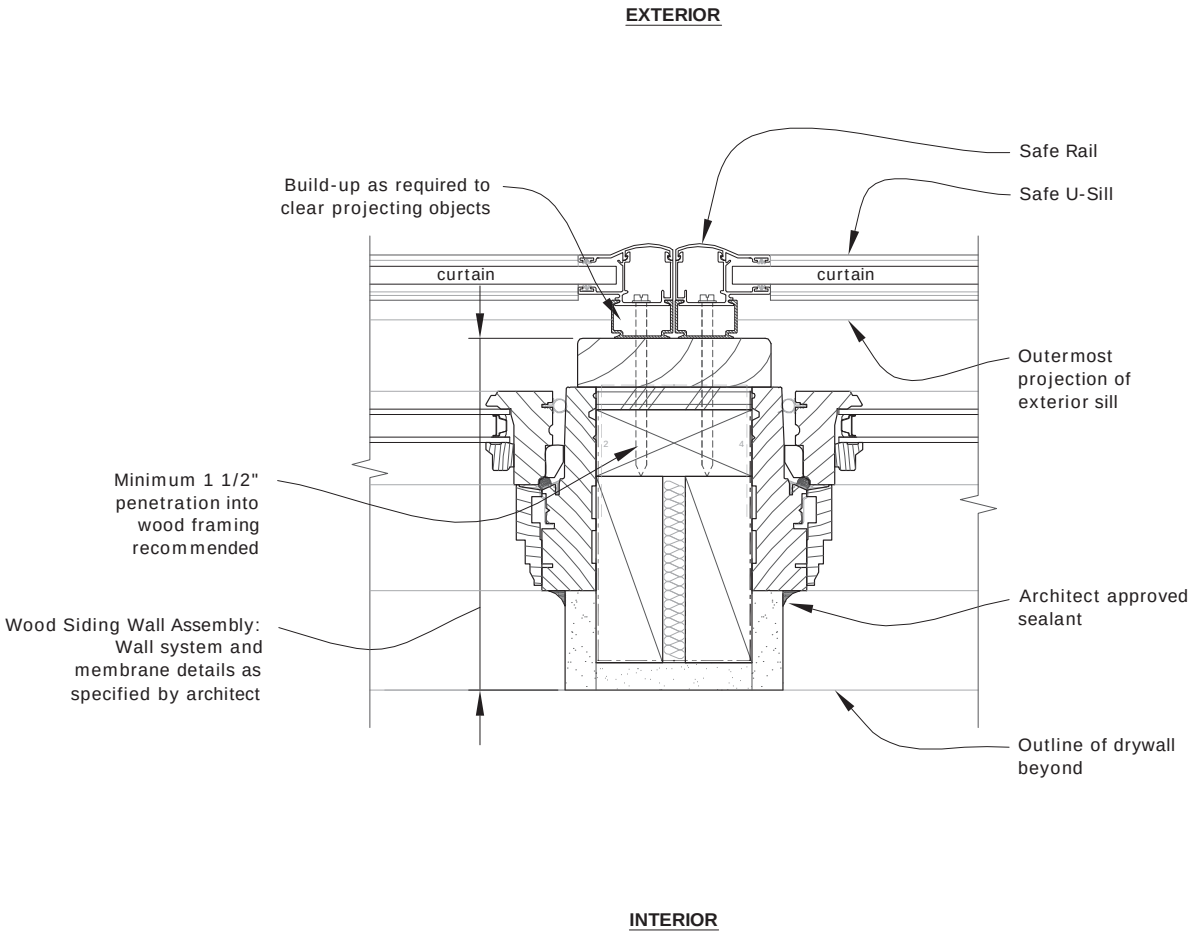
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Wood Siding Wall Application

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Window Jamb with Safe Rails Back-to-back



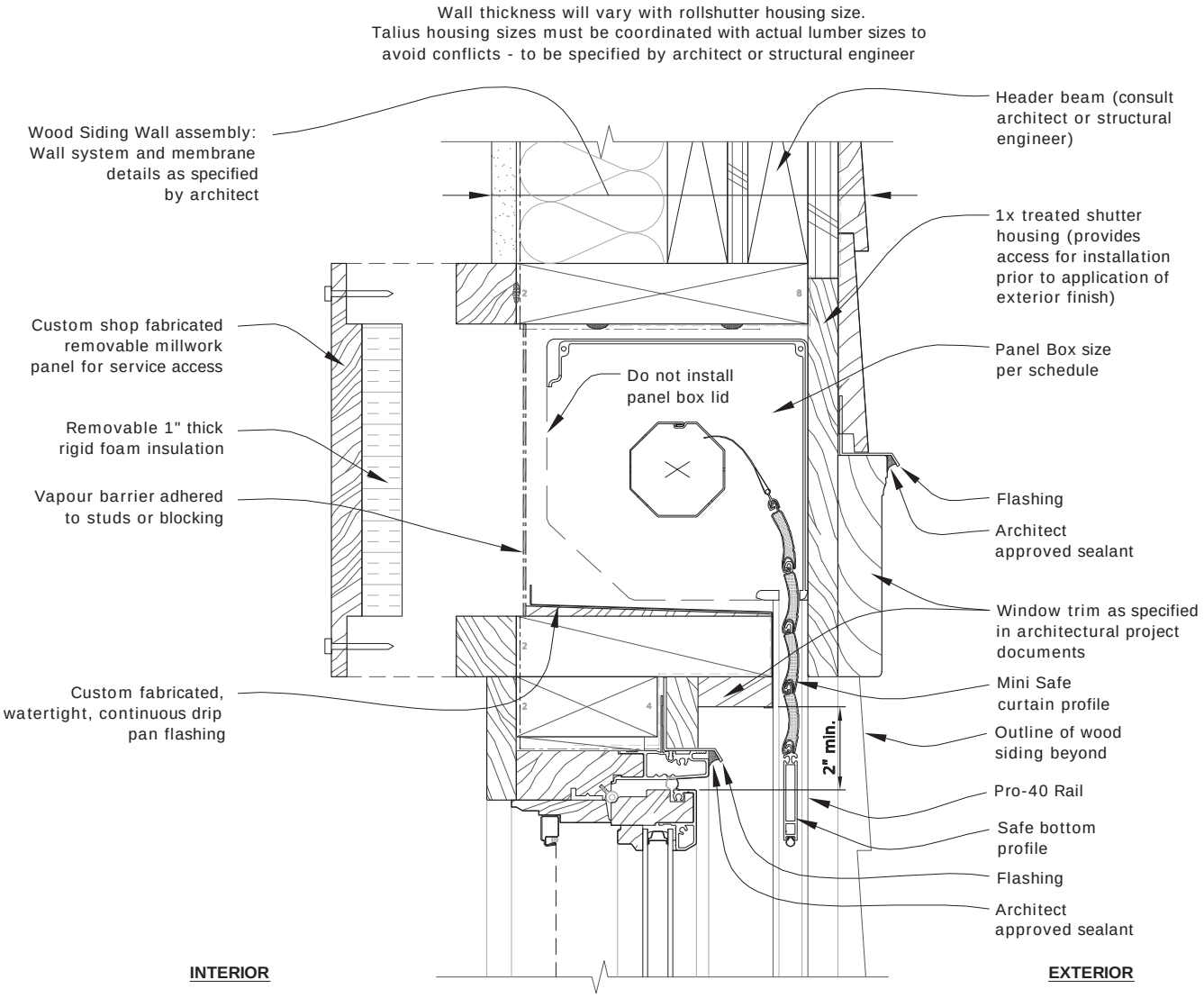
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Wood Siding Wall Application

Panel Box In-Wall System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail



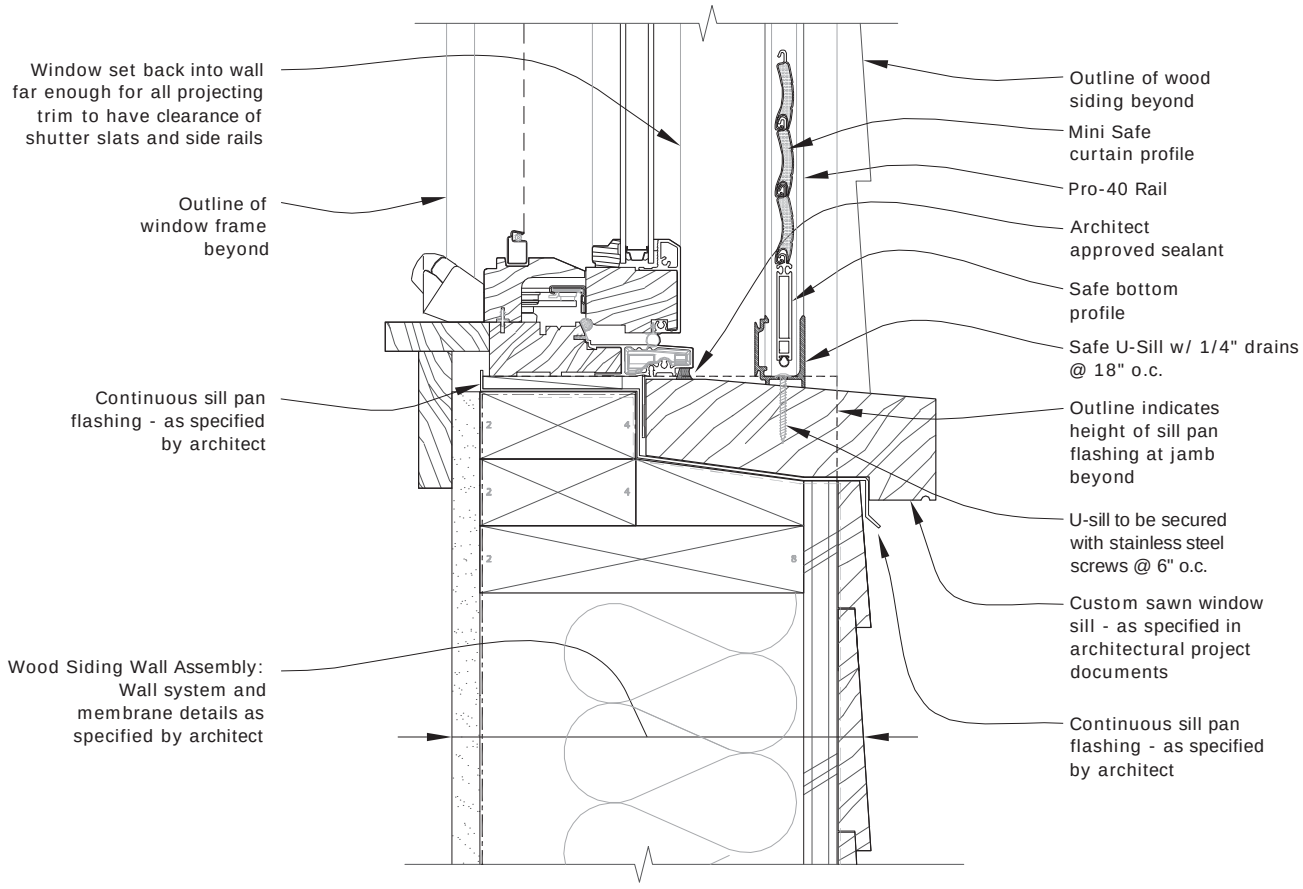
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Wood Siding Wall Application

Panel Box In-Wall System

Window Sill Detail



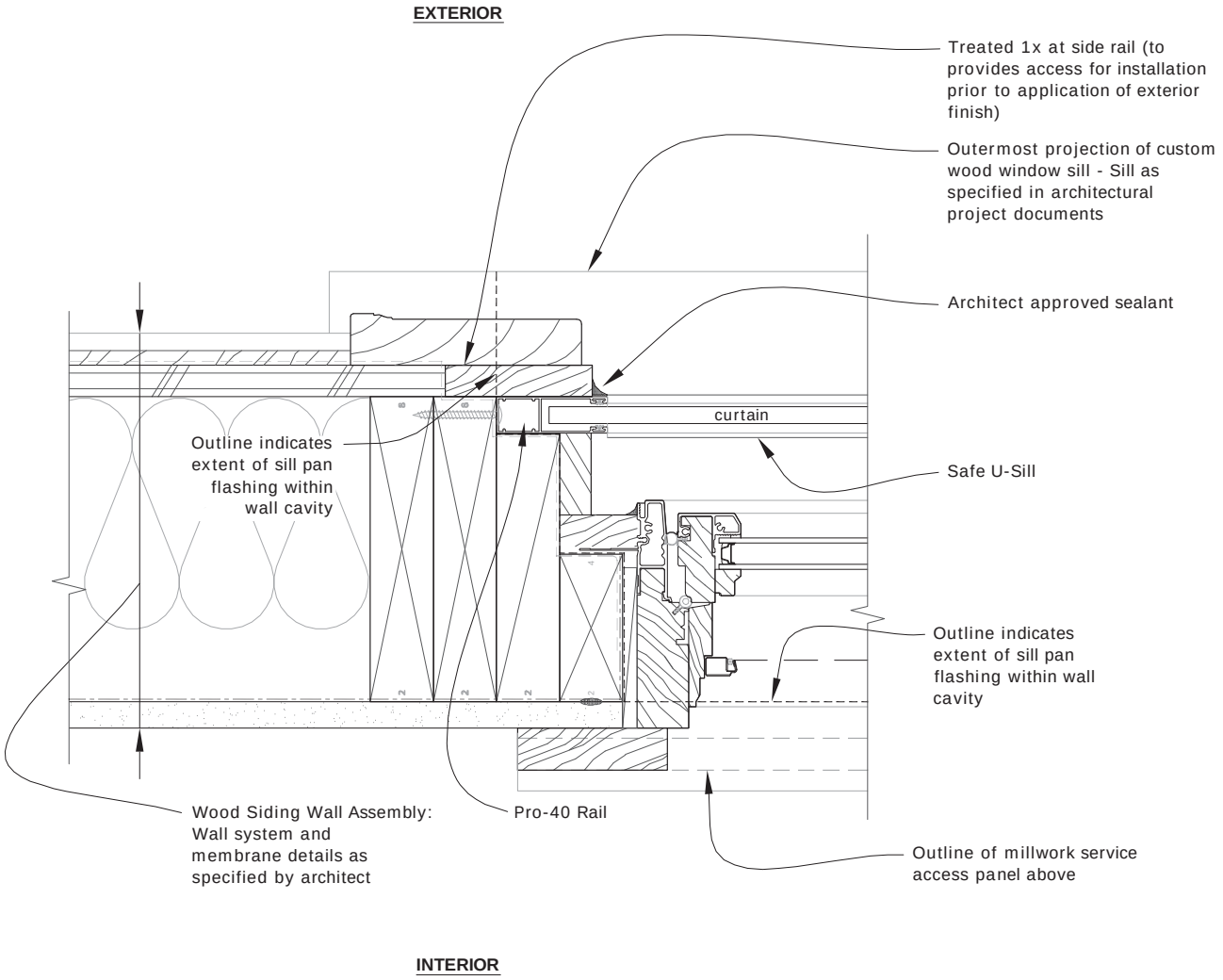
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Wood Siding Wall Application

Panel Box In-Wall System

Window Jamb Detail



Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

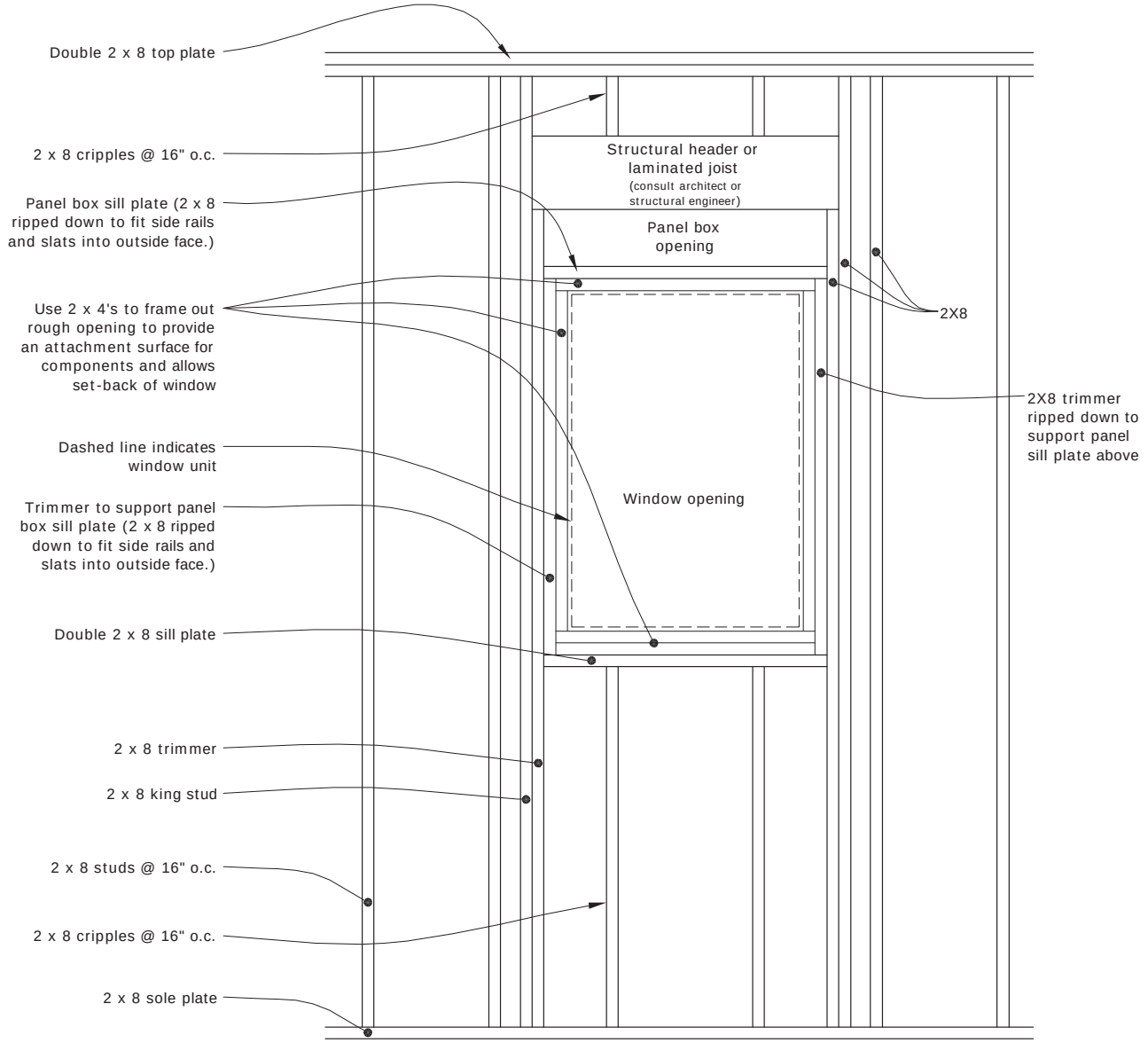
Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Technical Binder © 2020

Wood Siding Wall Application

Panel Box In-Wall System

Framing Diagram



Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

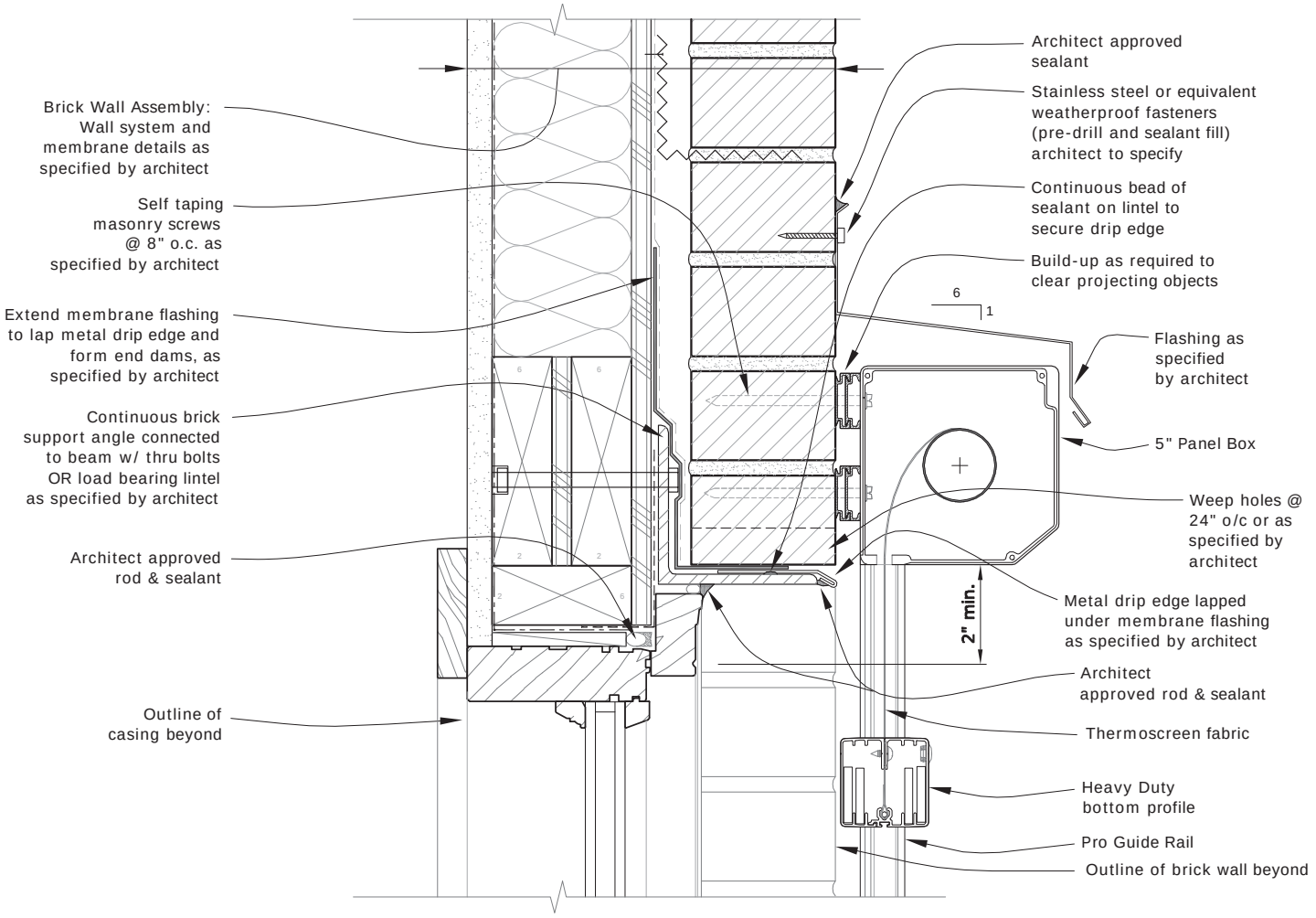
Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

TALIUS®

Brick Wall Application

Exterior Wall-Mount Retrofit System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail



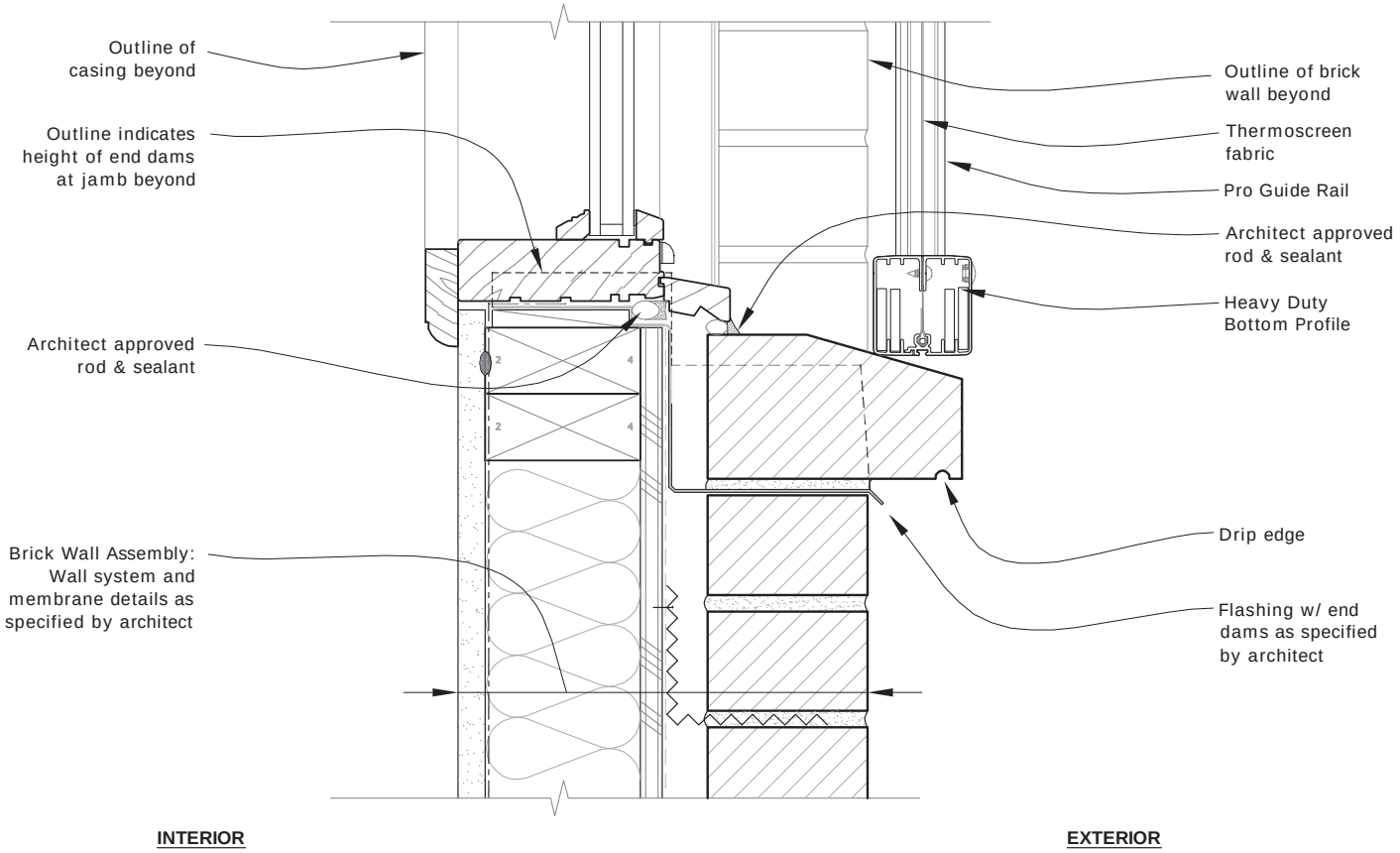
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Brick Wall Application

Exterior Wall-Mount Retrofit System

Window Sill Detail



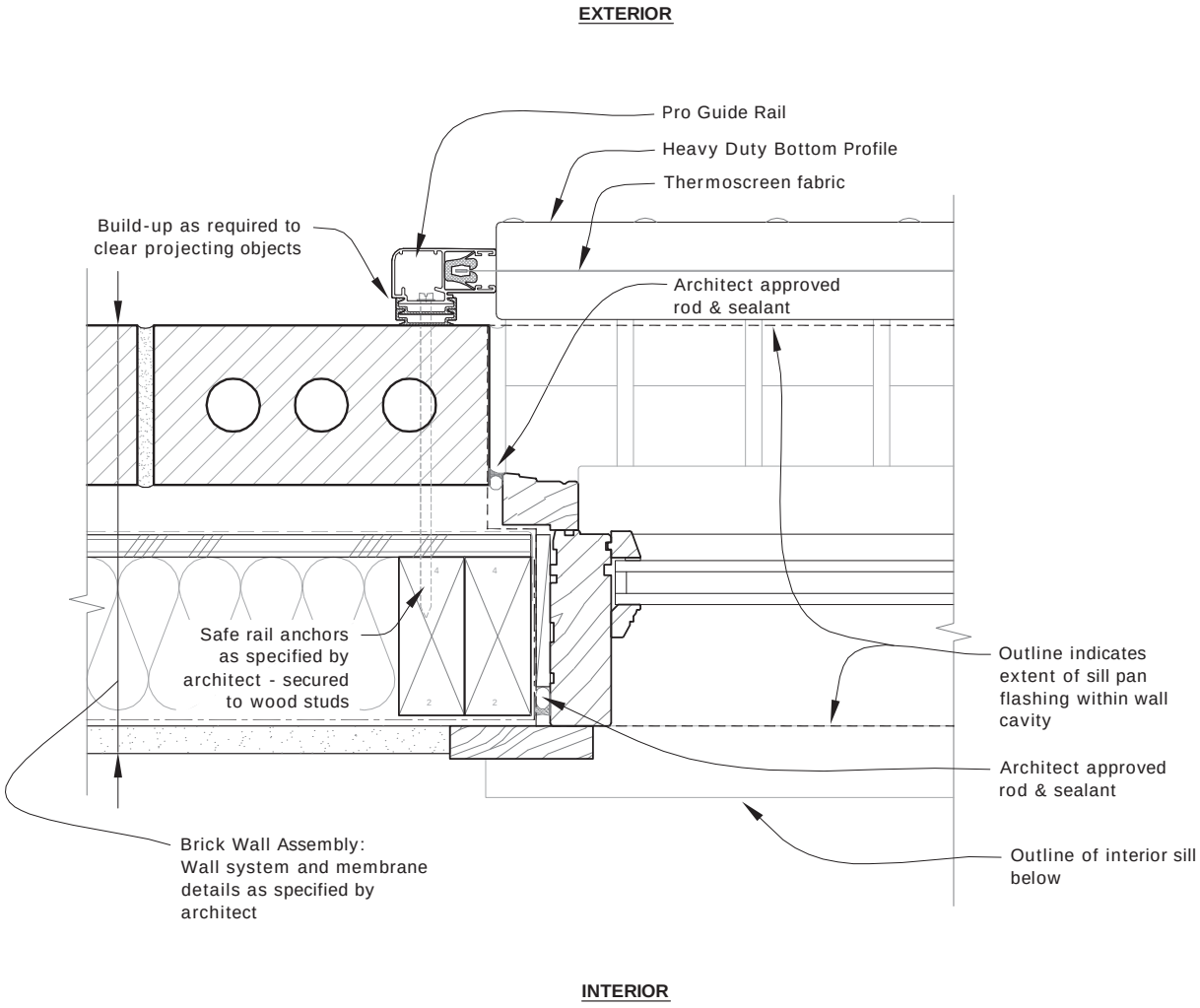
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Brick Wall Application

Exterior Wall-Mount Retrofit System

Window Jam Detail



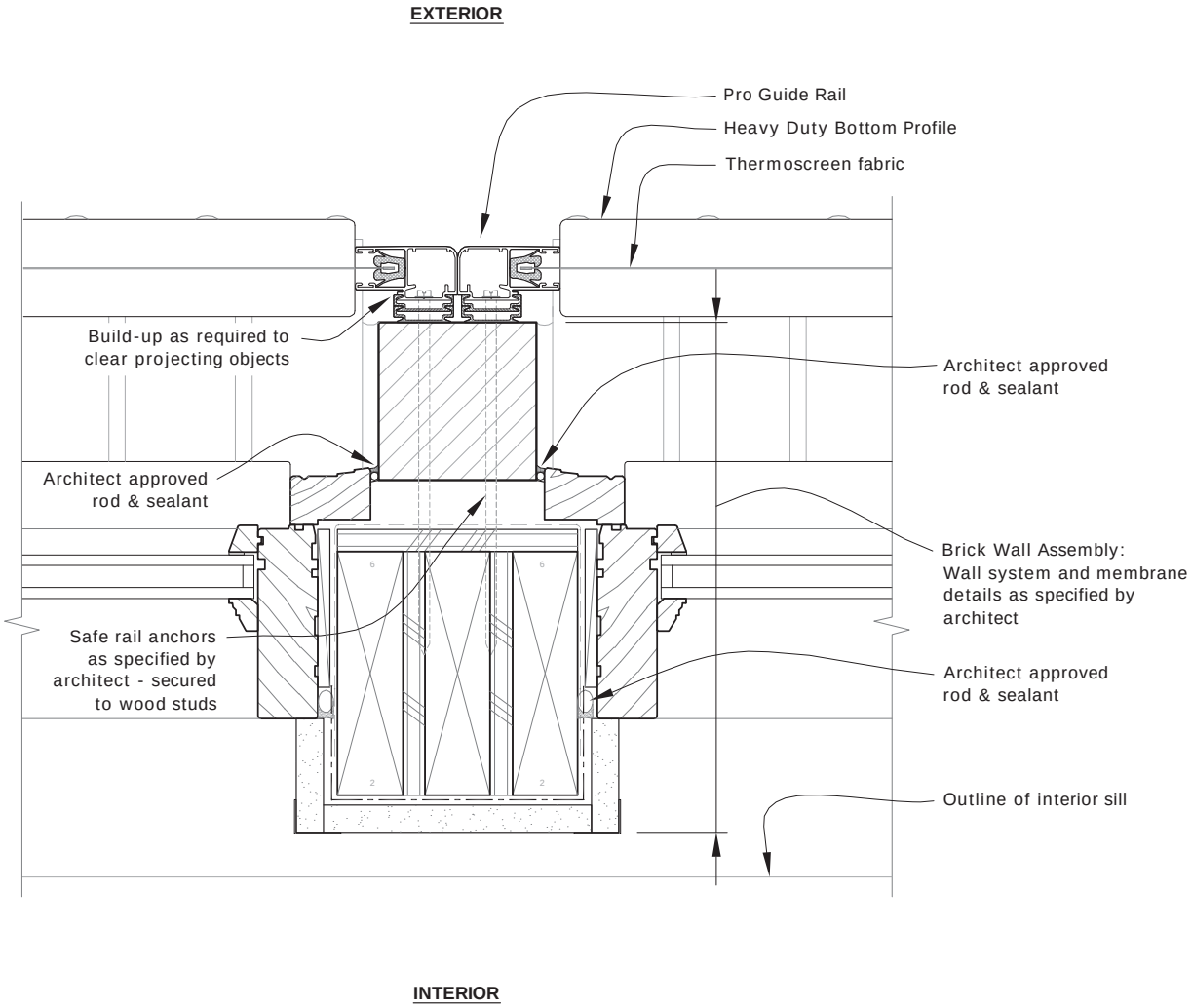
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Brick Wall Application

Exterior Wall-Mount Retrofit System

Built-up Mullion with Pro Rails Back-to-back



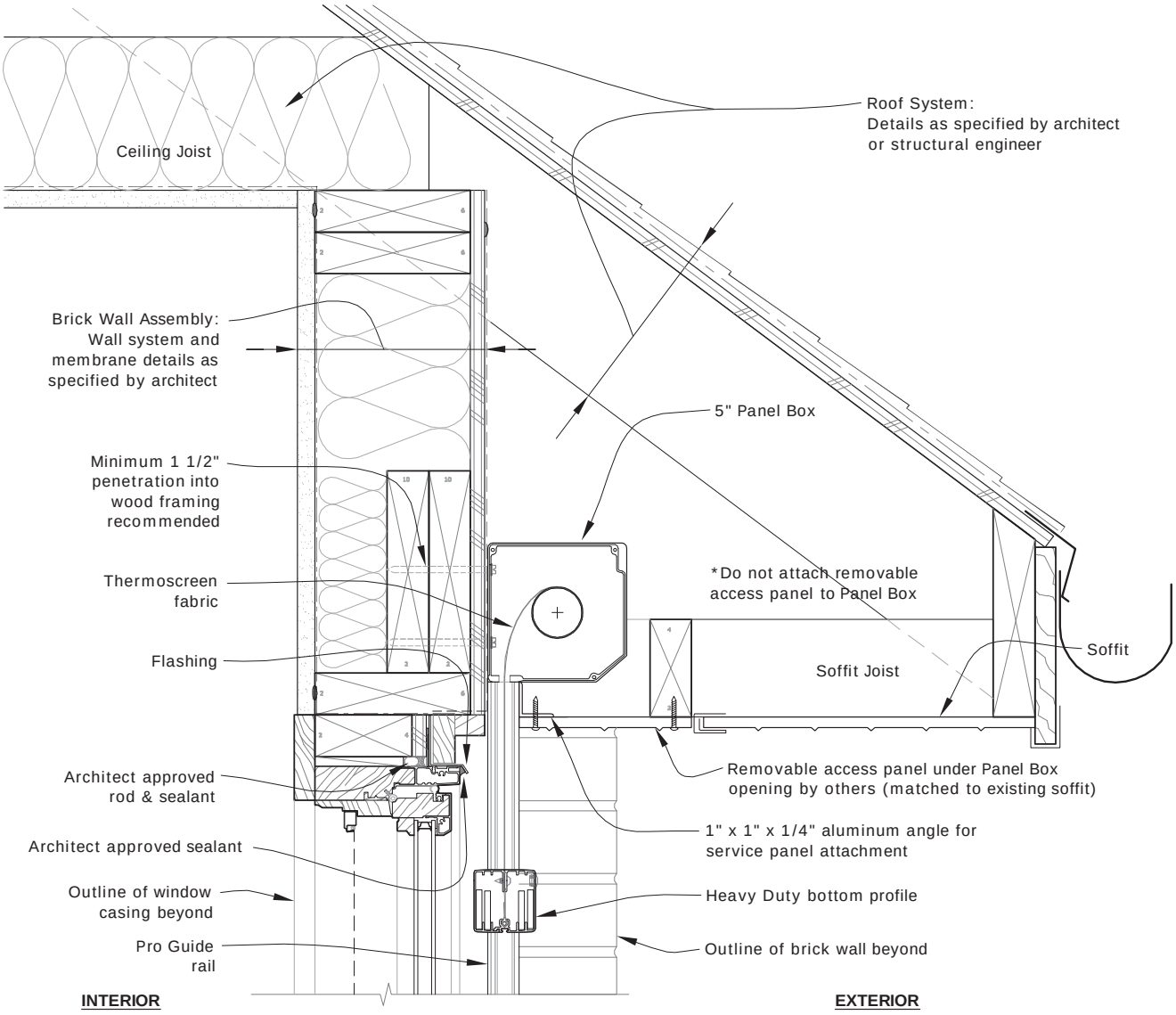
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Brick Wall Application

Panel Box In-Soffit System

Soffit Detail



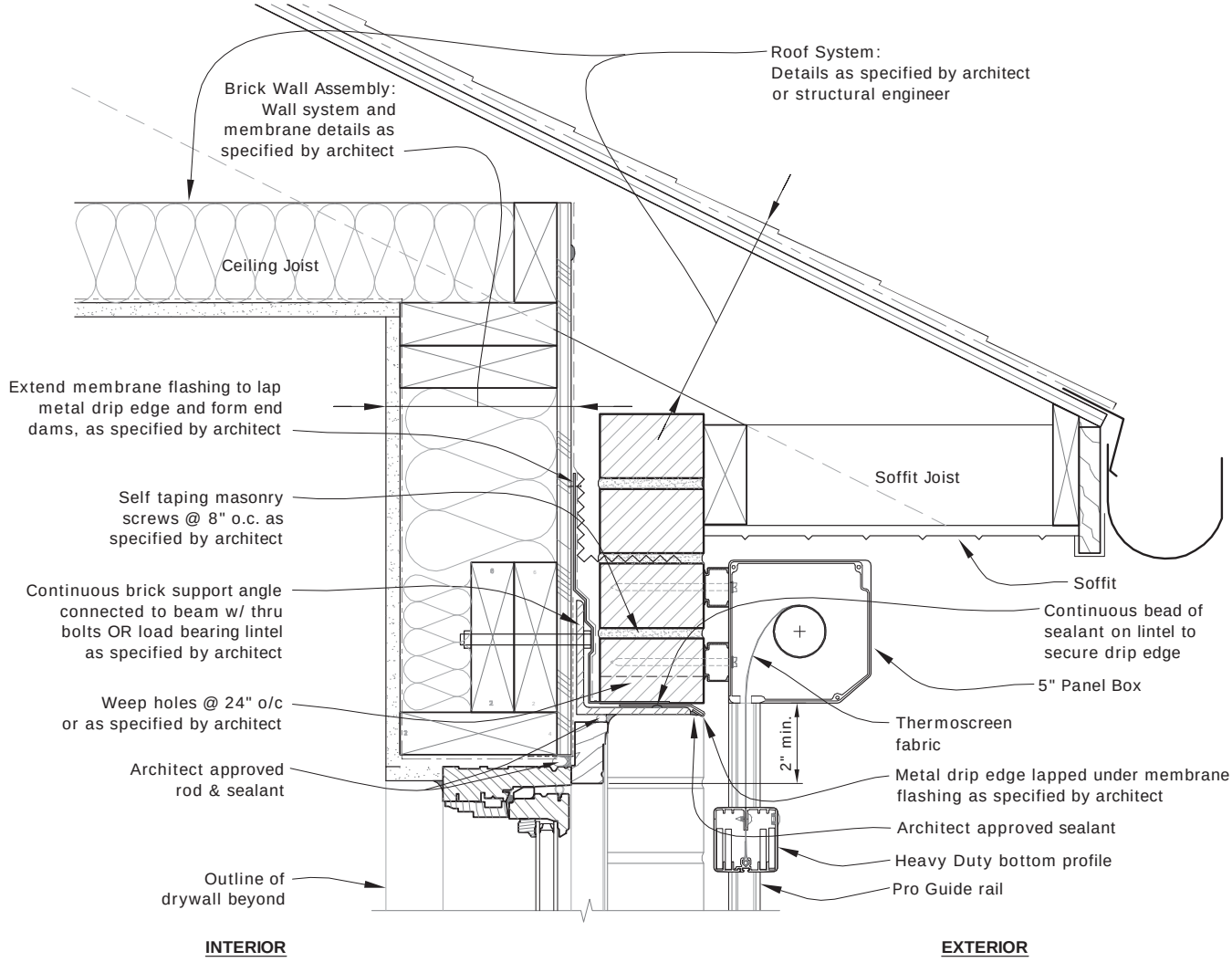
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Brick Wall Application

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Soffit Detail



Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

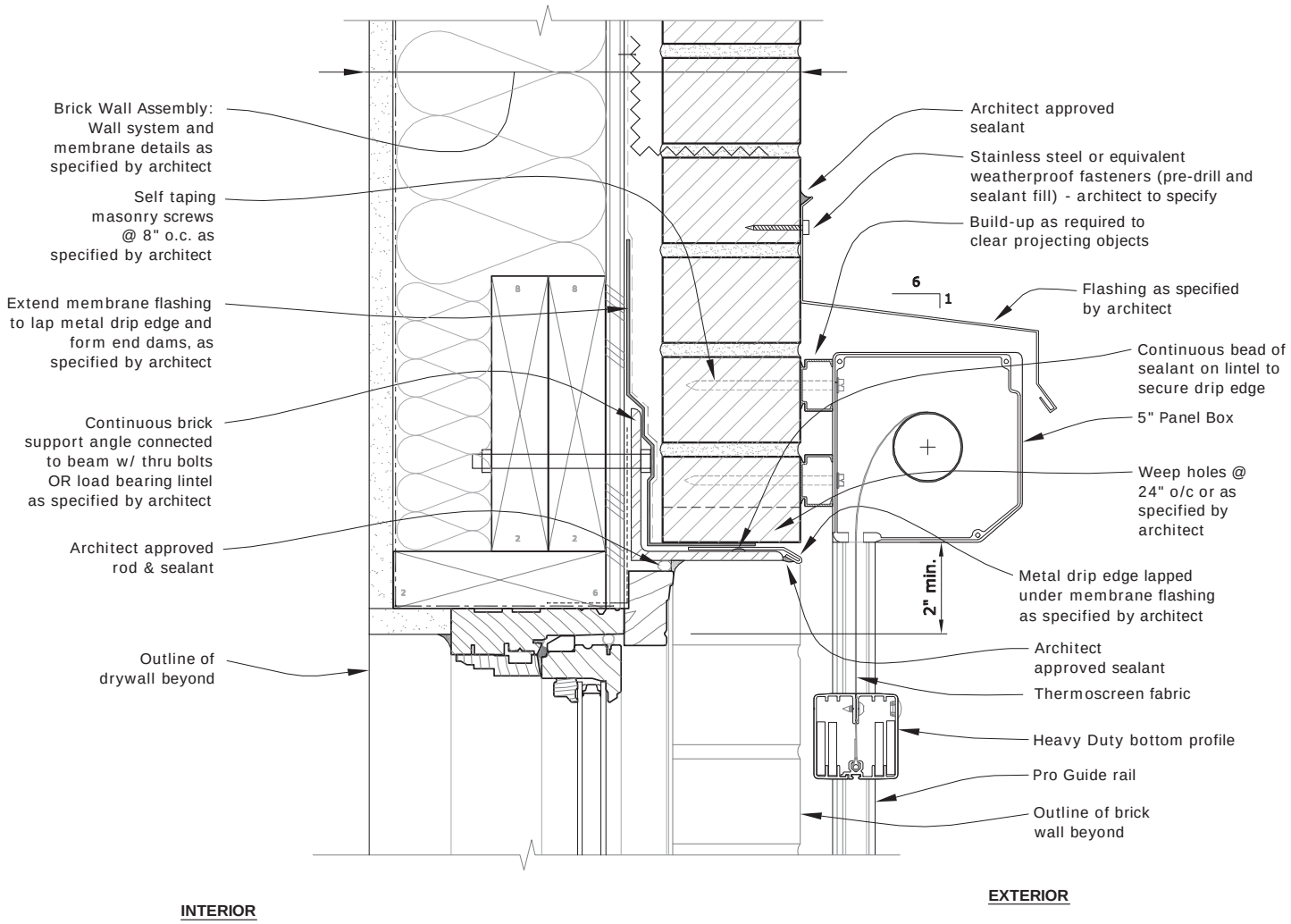
Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Technical Binder © 2020

Brick Wall Application

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail



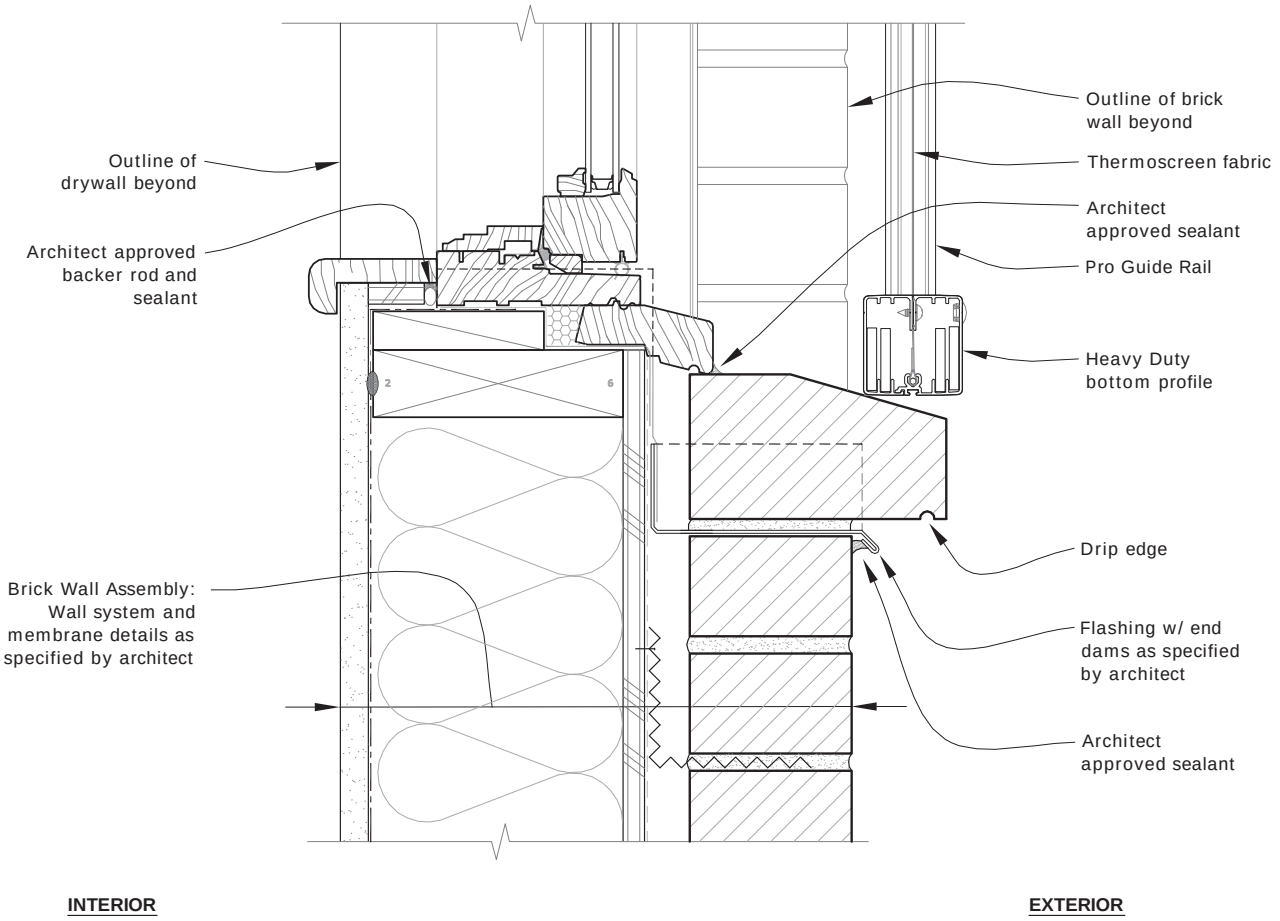
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Brick Wall Application

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Window Sill Detail



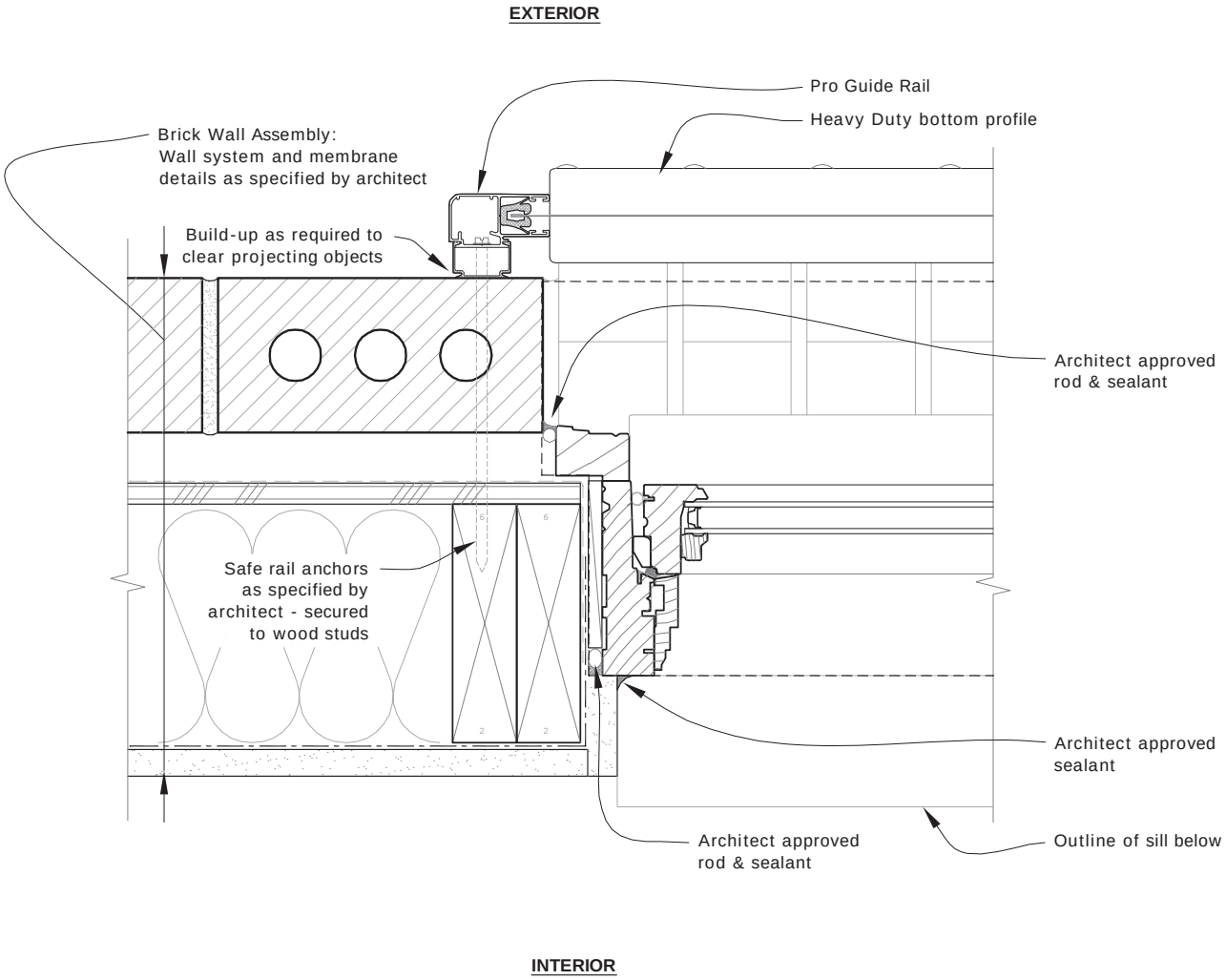
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Brick Wall Application

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Window Jamb Detail



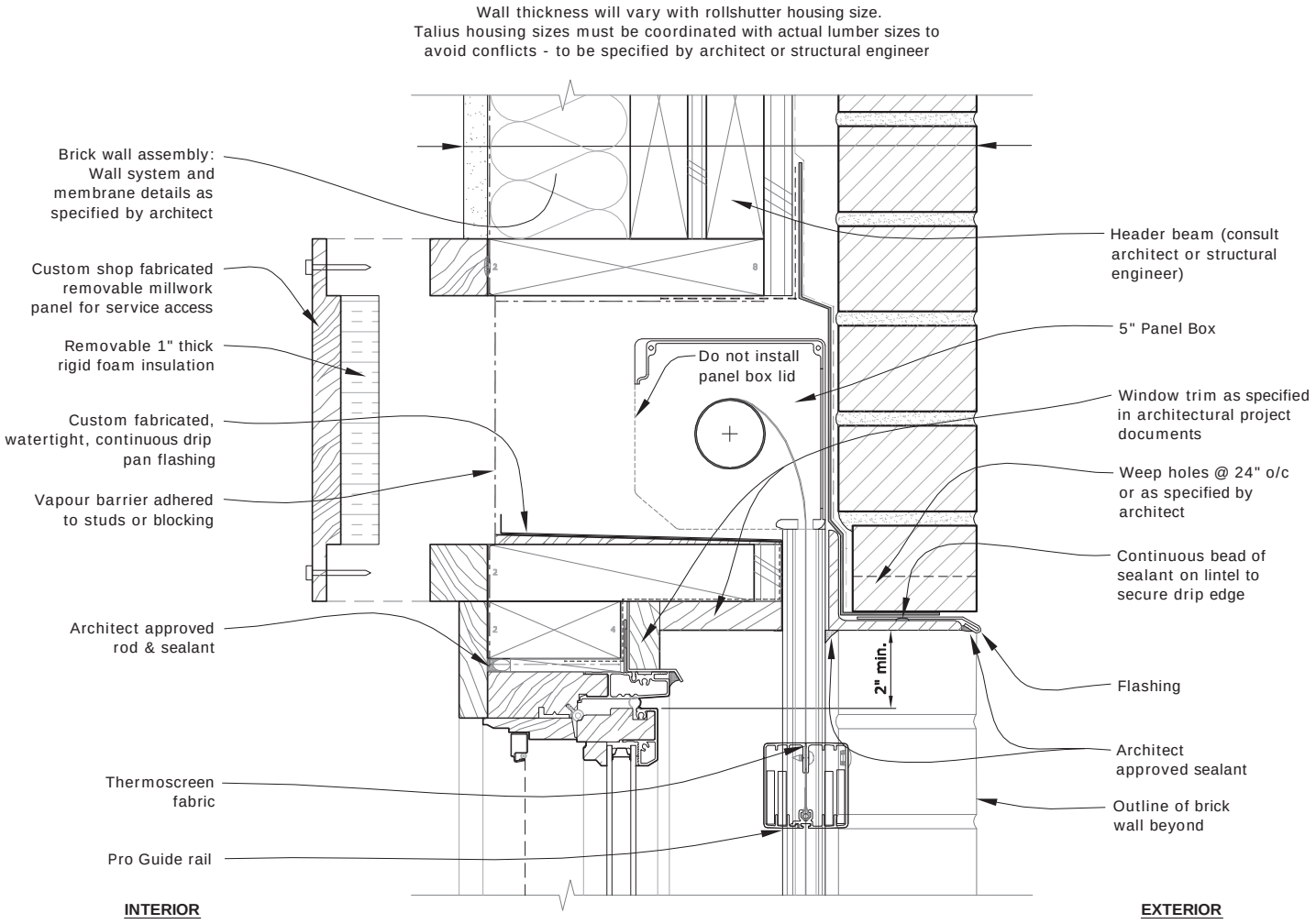
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Brick Wall Application

Panel Box In-Wall System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail



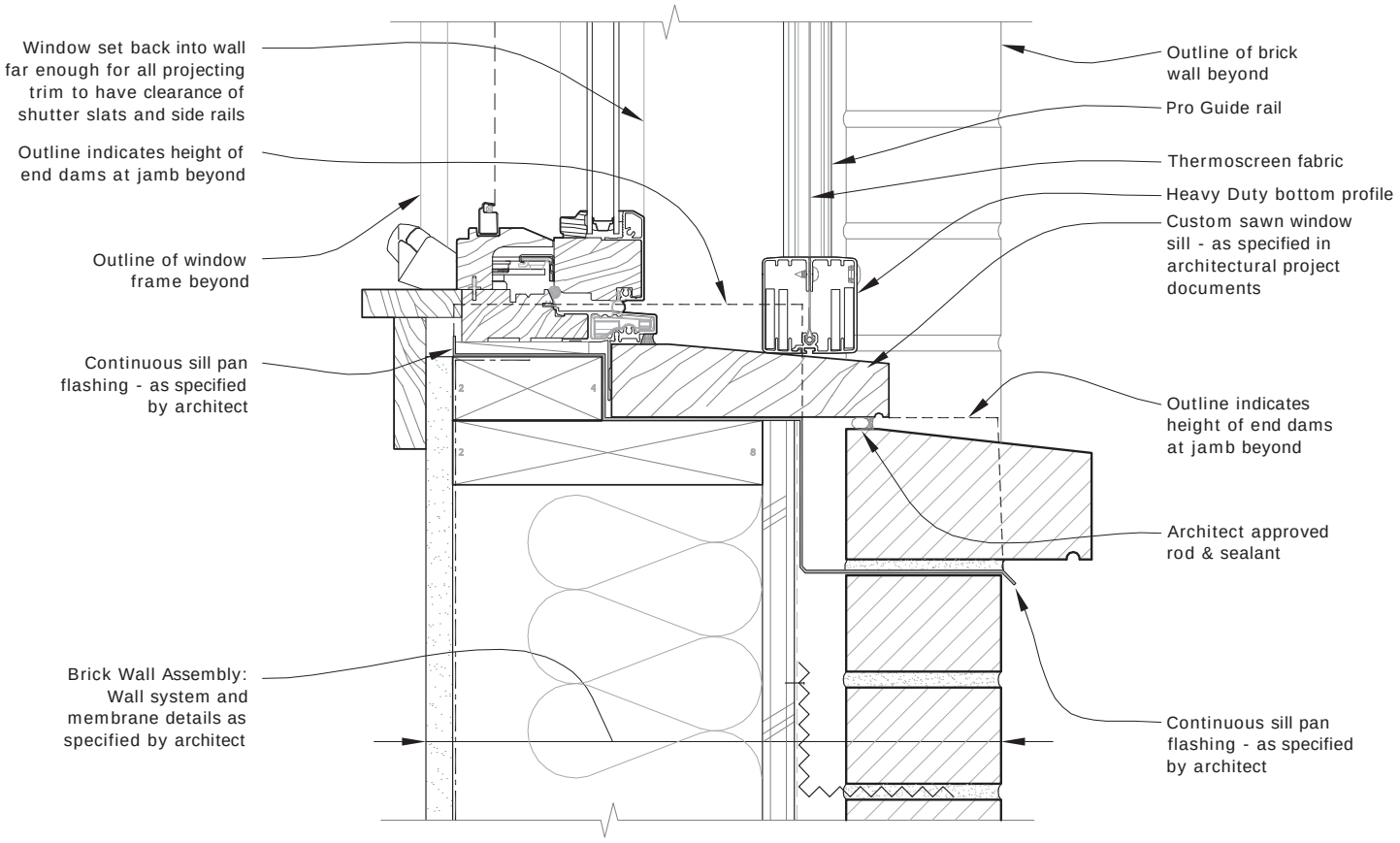
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Brick Wall Application

Panel Box In-Wall System

Window Sill Detail



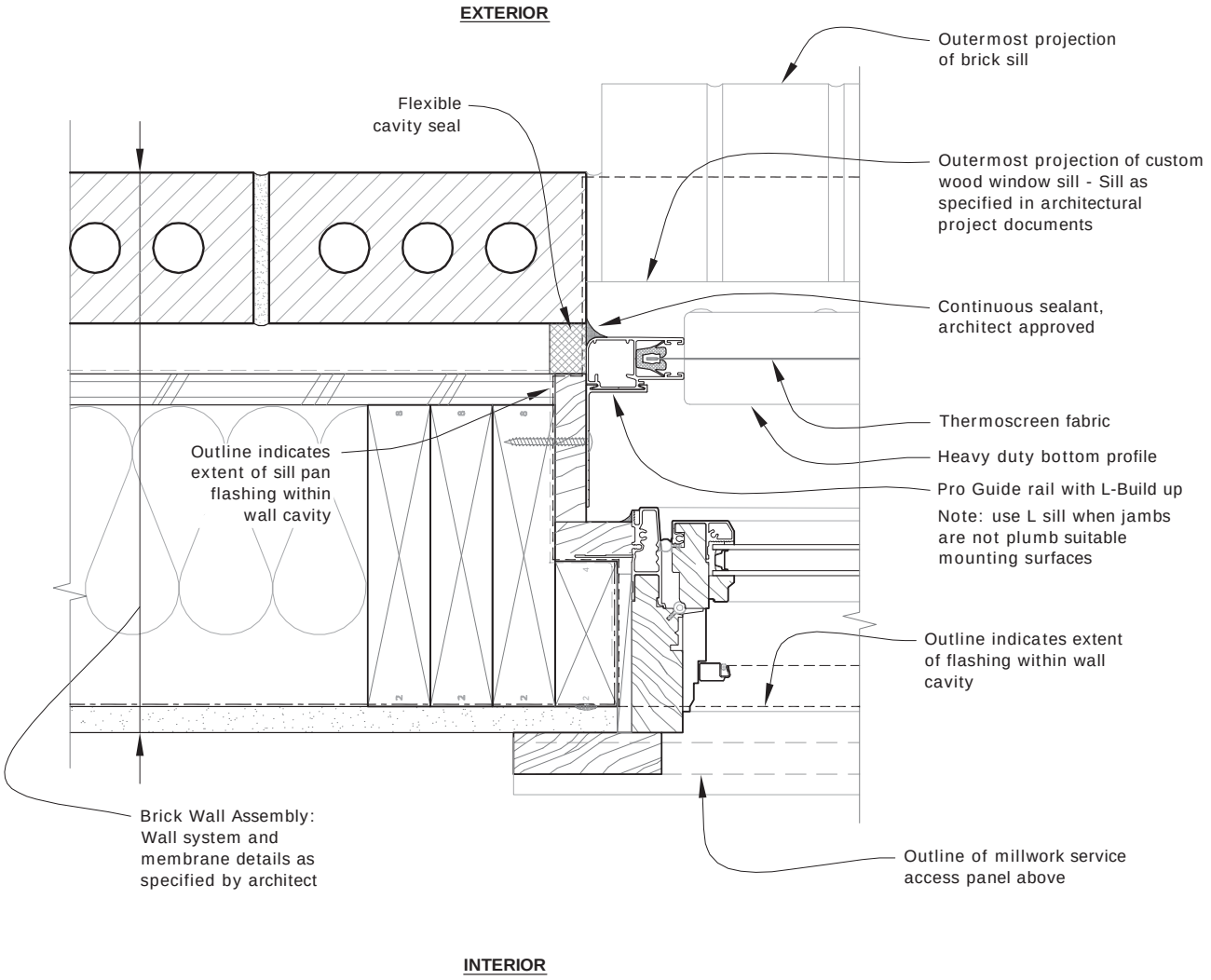
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Brick Wall Application

Panel Box In-Wall System

Window Jamb Detail



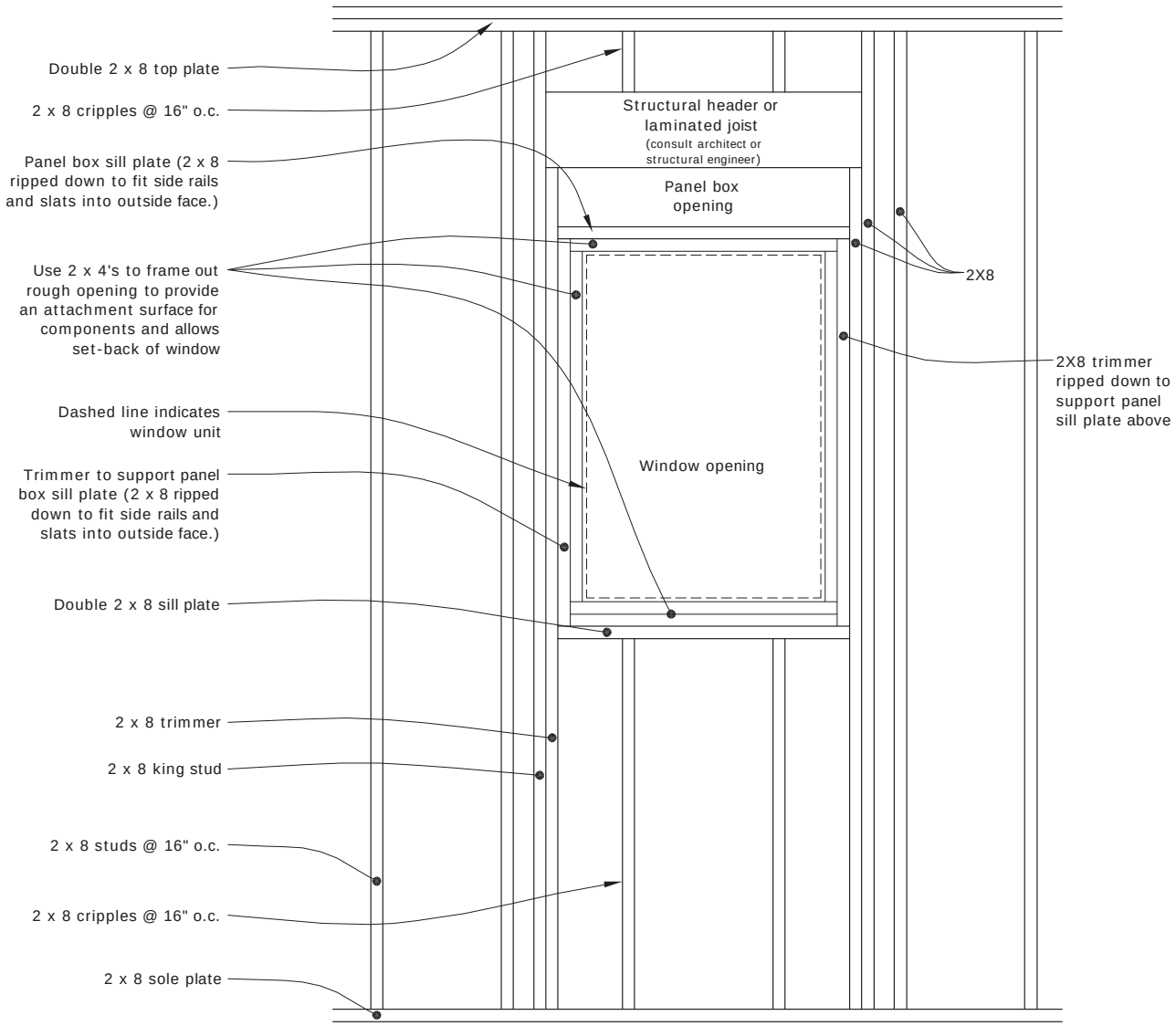
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Brick Wall Application

Panel Box In-Wall System

Framing Diagram



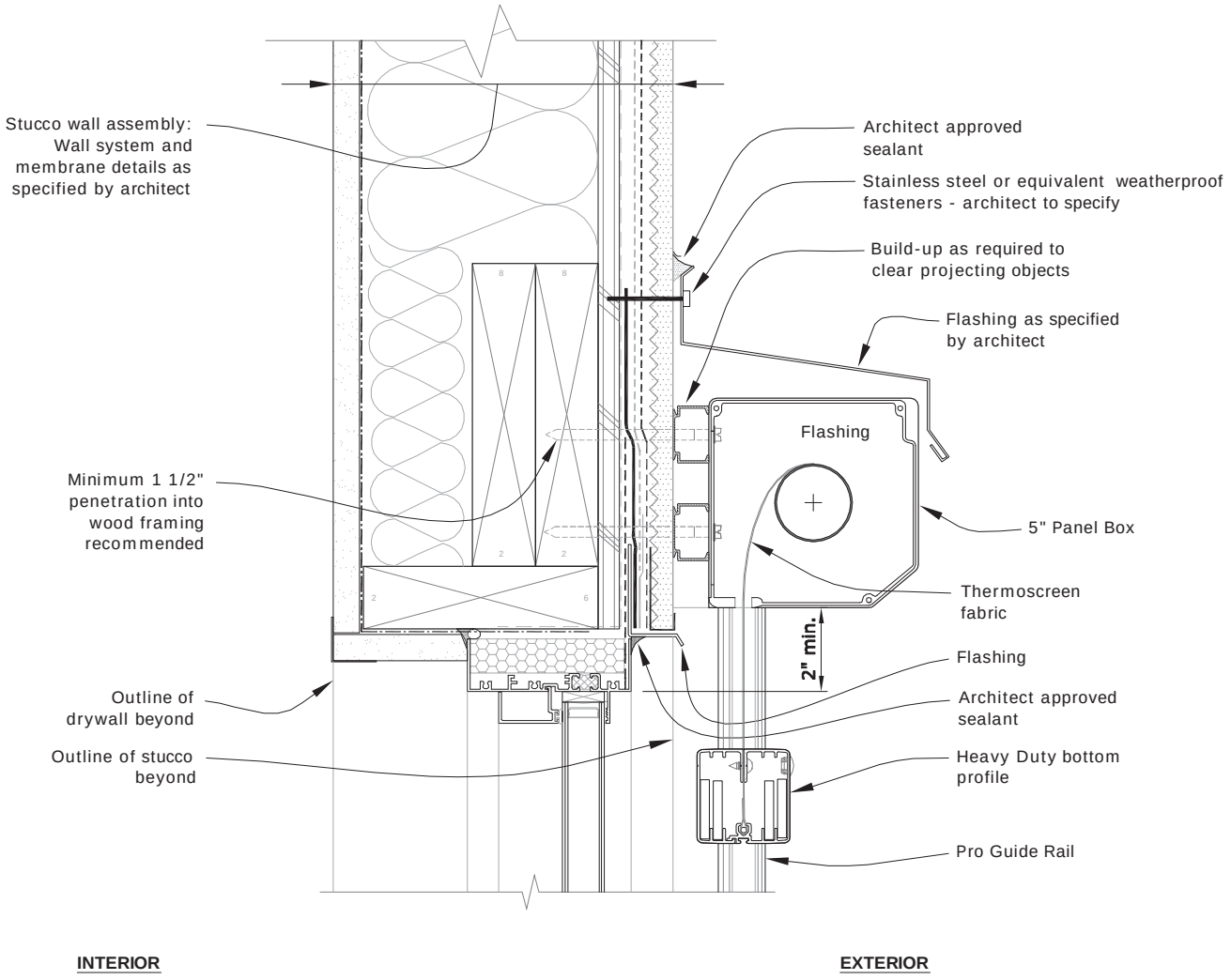
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Exterior Wall-Mount Retrofit System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail



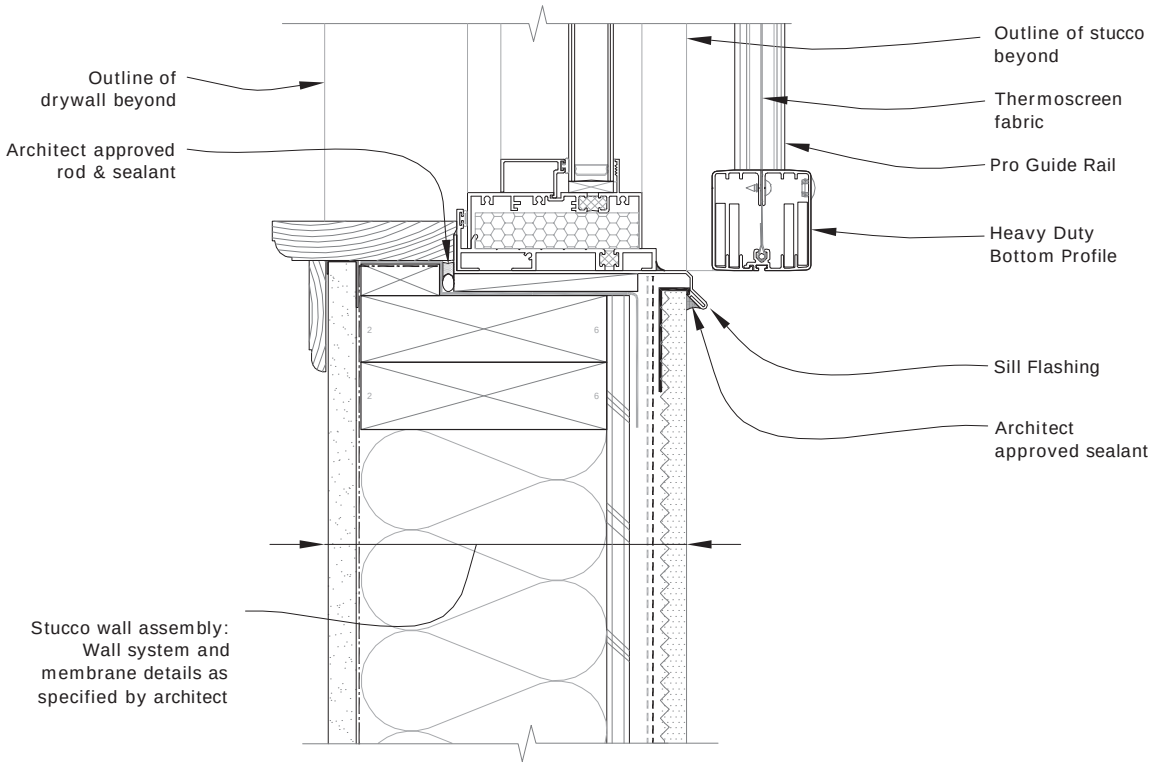
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Exterior Wall-Mount Retrofit System

Window Sill Detail



Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

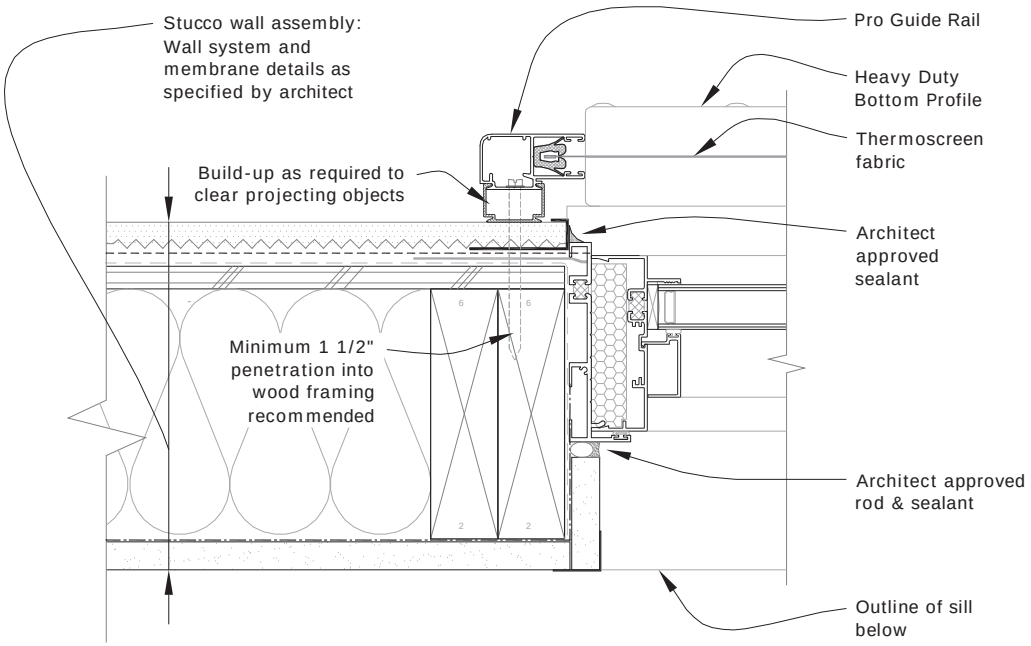
Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Exterior Wall-Mount Retrofit System

Window Jamb Detail

EXTERIOR



INTERIOR

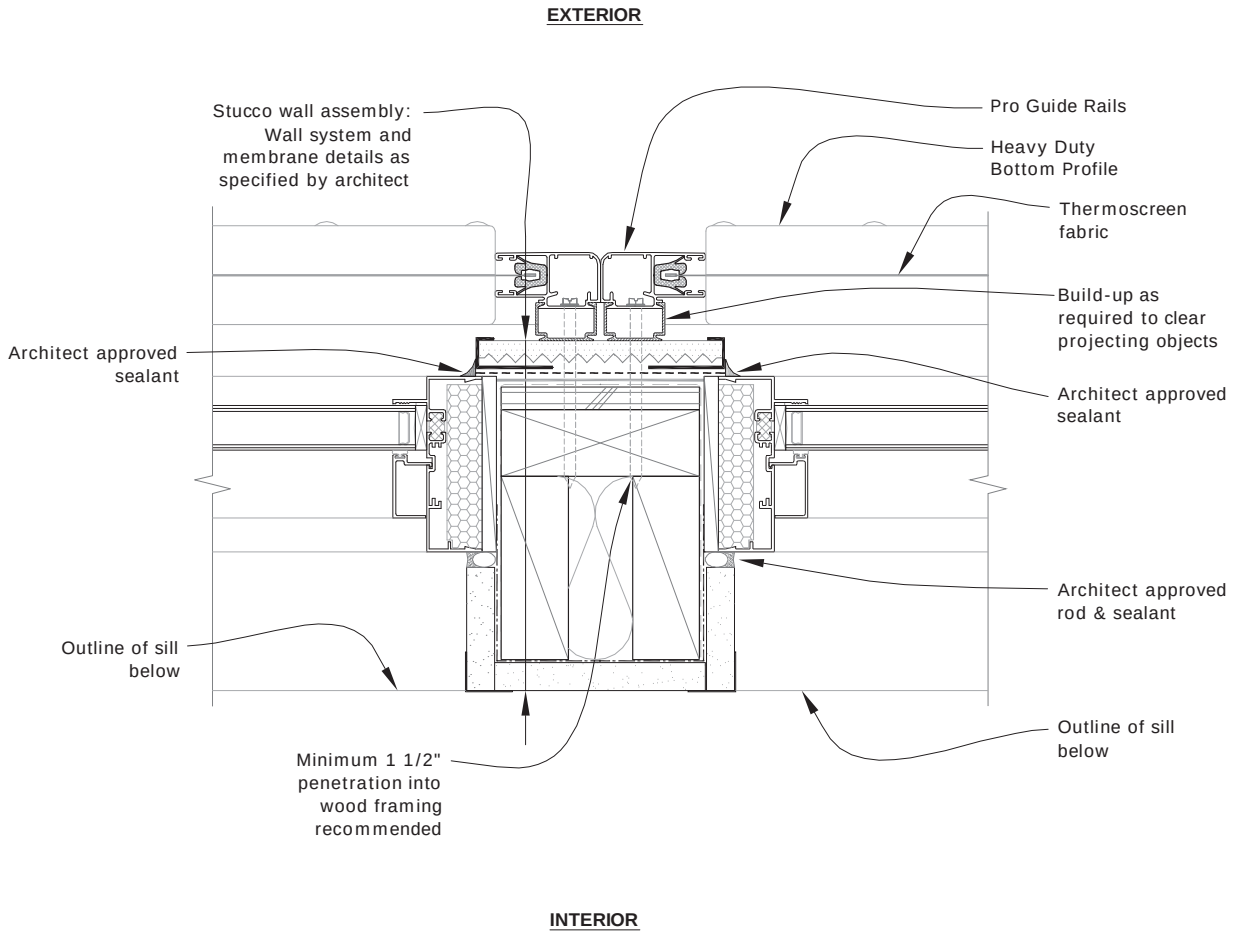
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Exterior Wall-Mount Retrofit System

Window Jamb Detail with
Pro Guide Rails Back-to-back



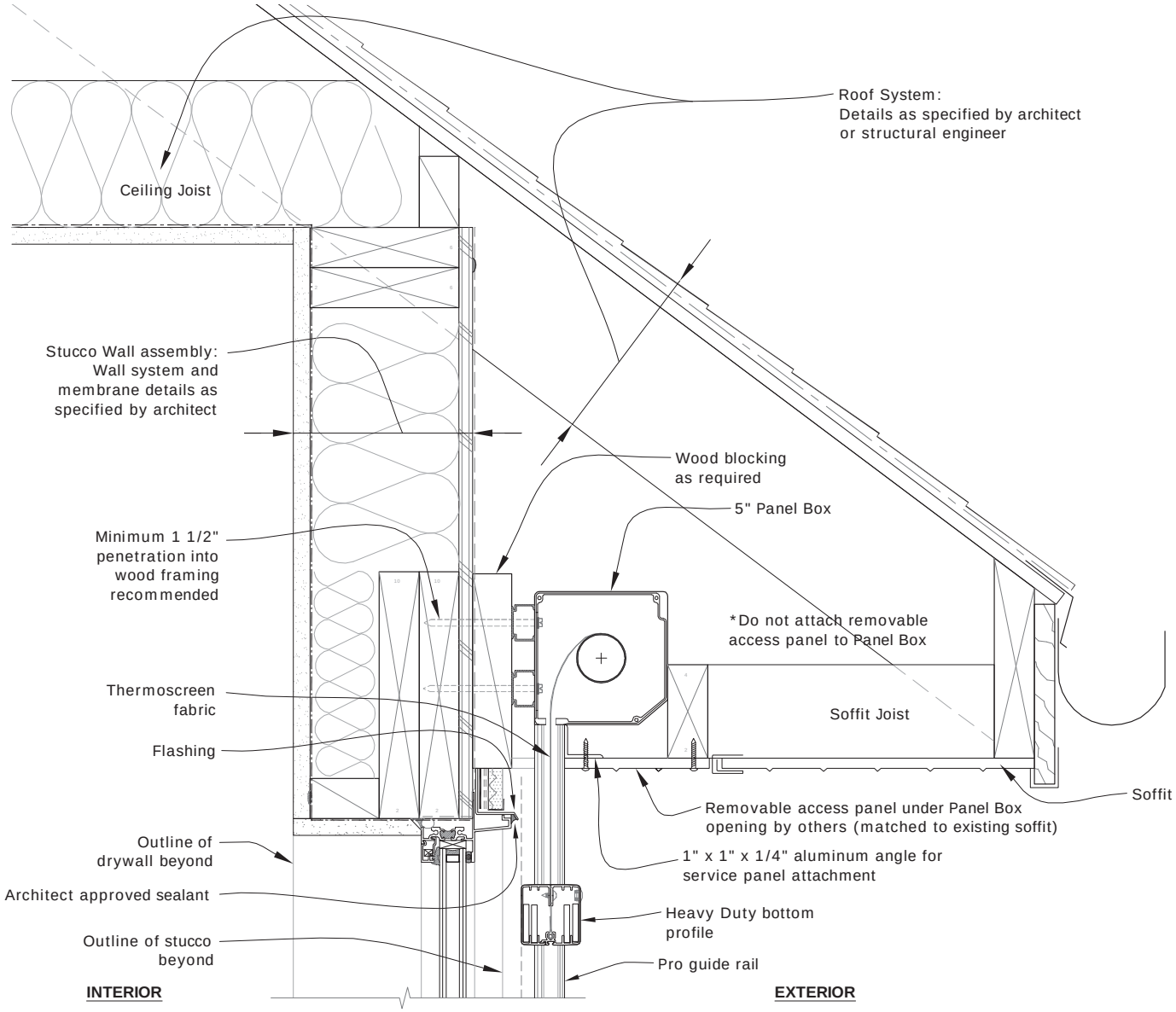
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Panel Box In-Soffit System

Soffit Detail



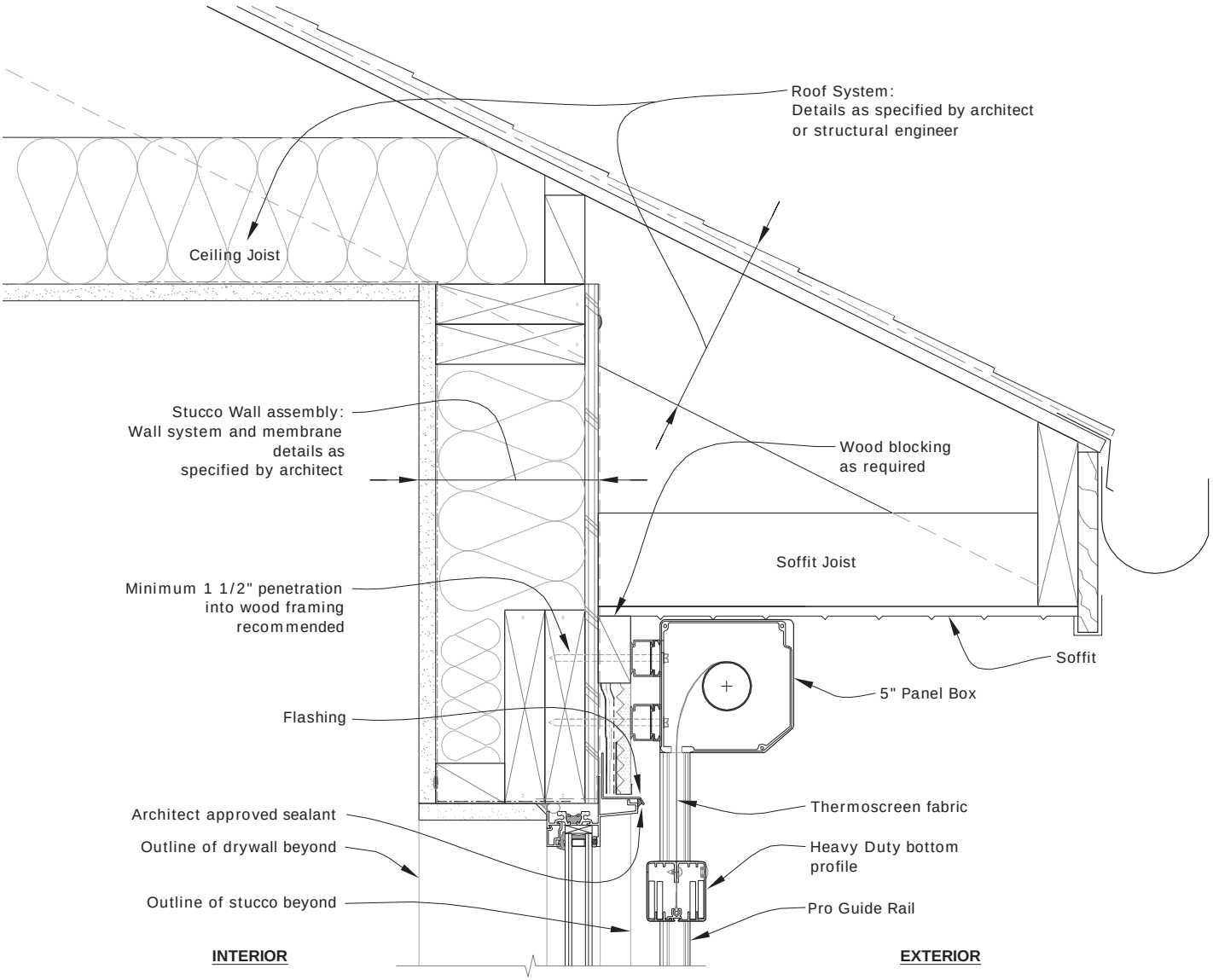
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Soffit Detail



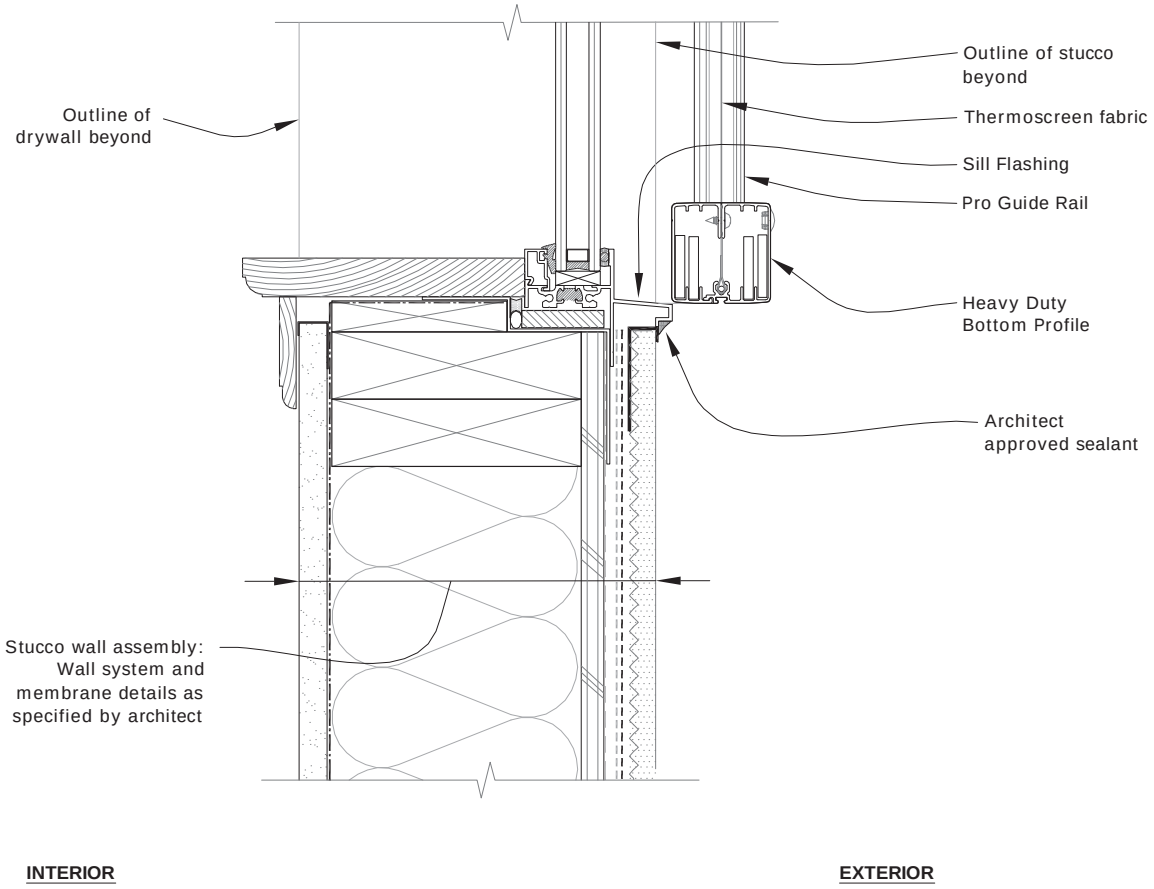
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Panel Box Soffit System

Window Sill Detail



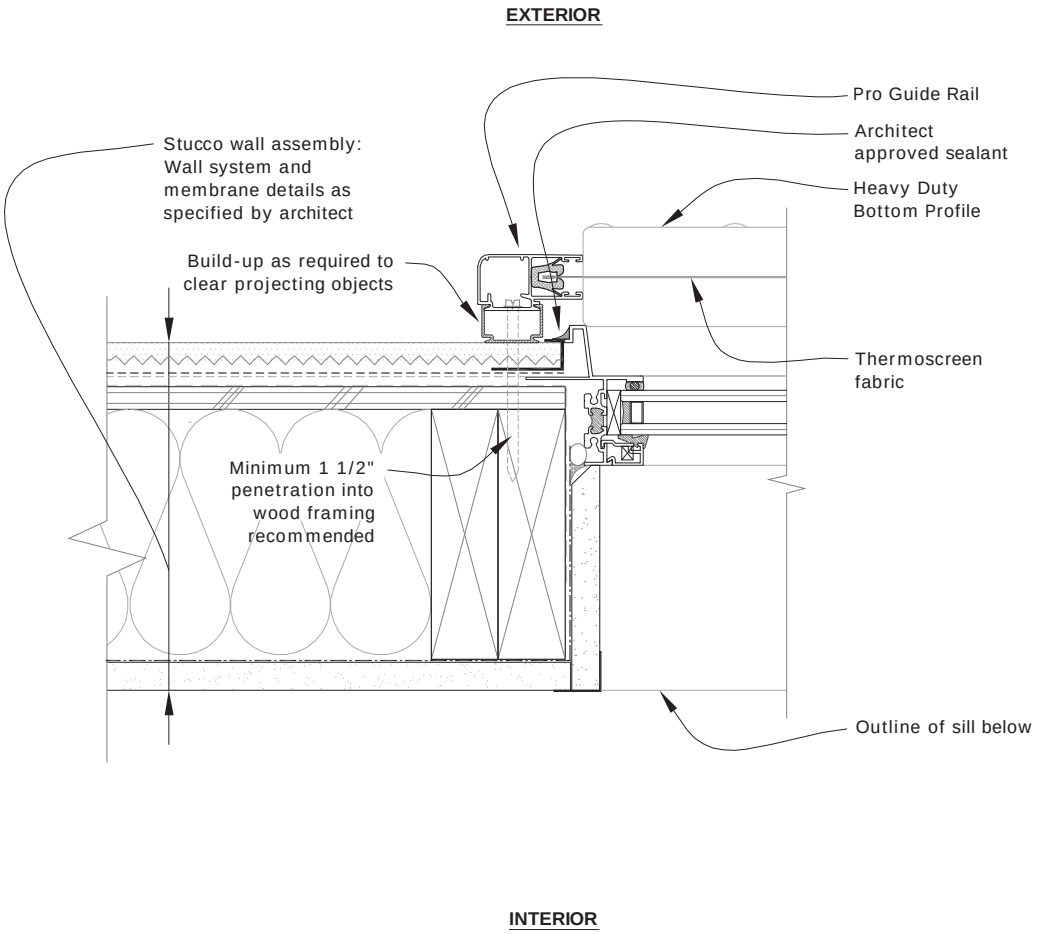
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Panel Box Soffit System

Window Jamb Detail



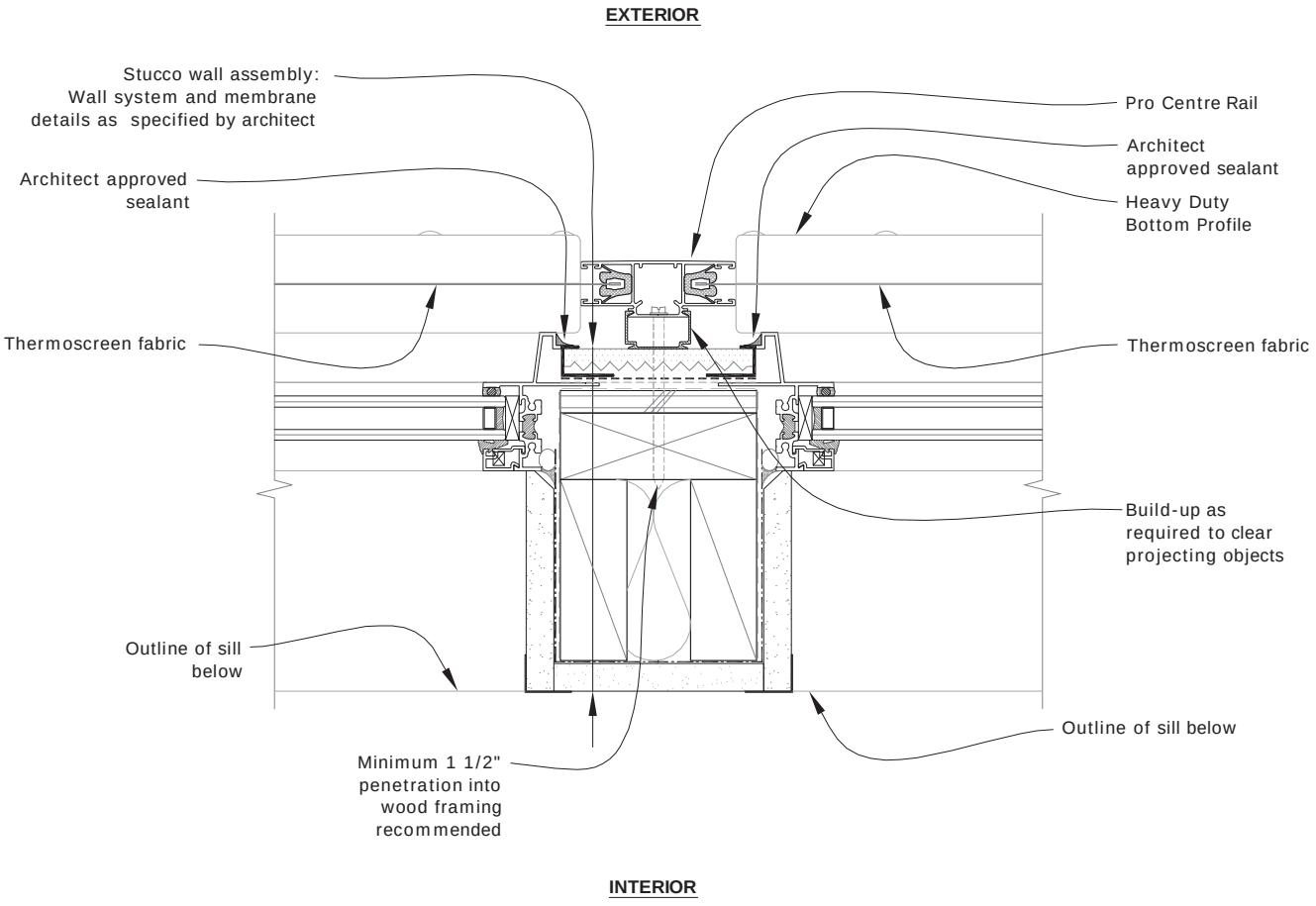
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Panel Box Soffit System

Window Jamb with Prof Centre Rail



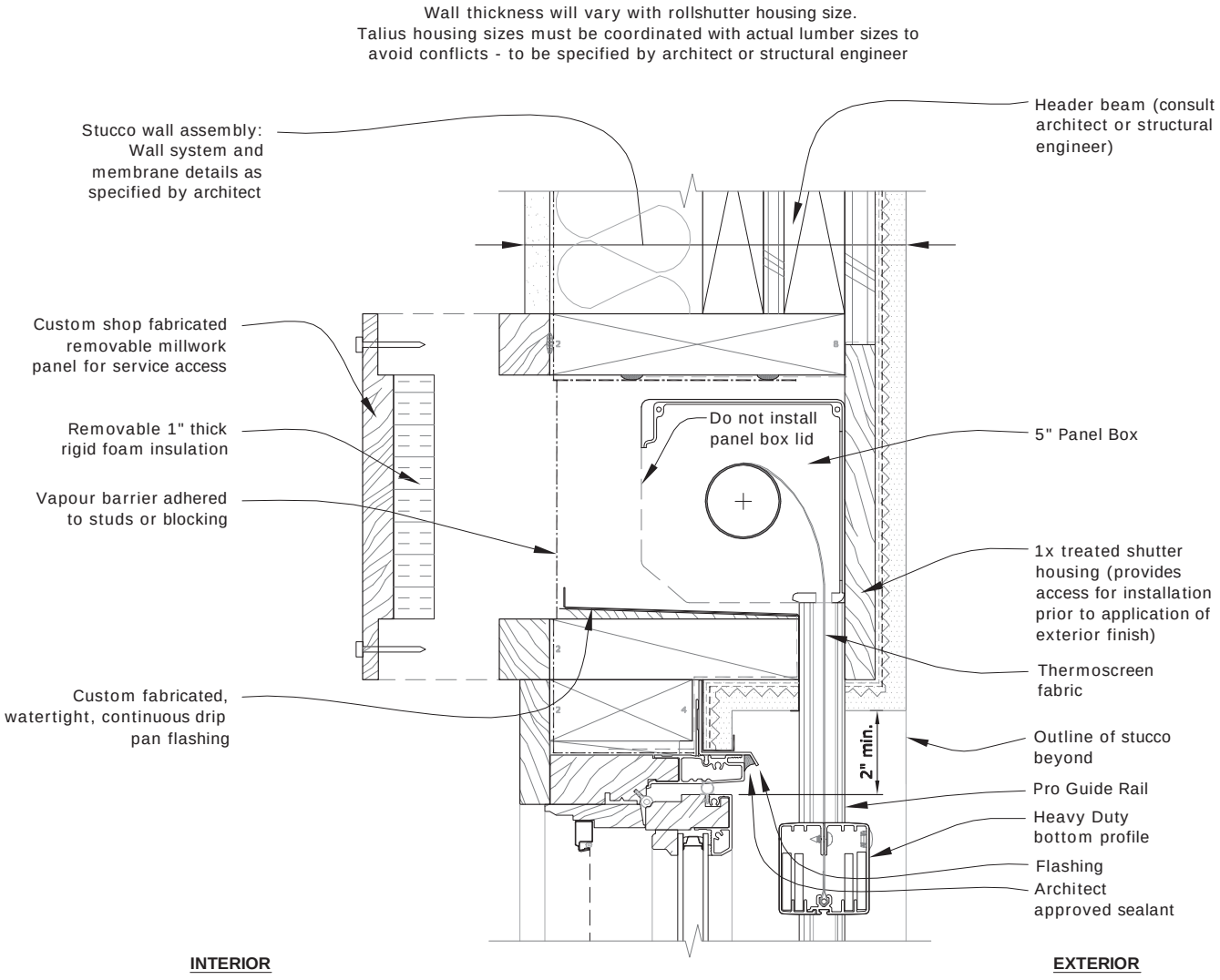
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Panel Box In-Wall System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail



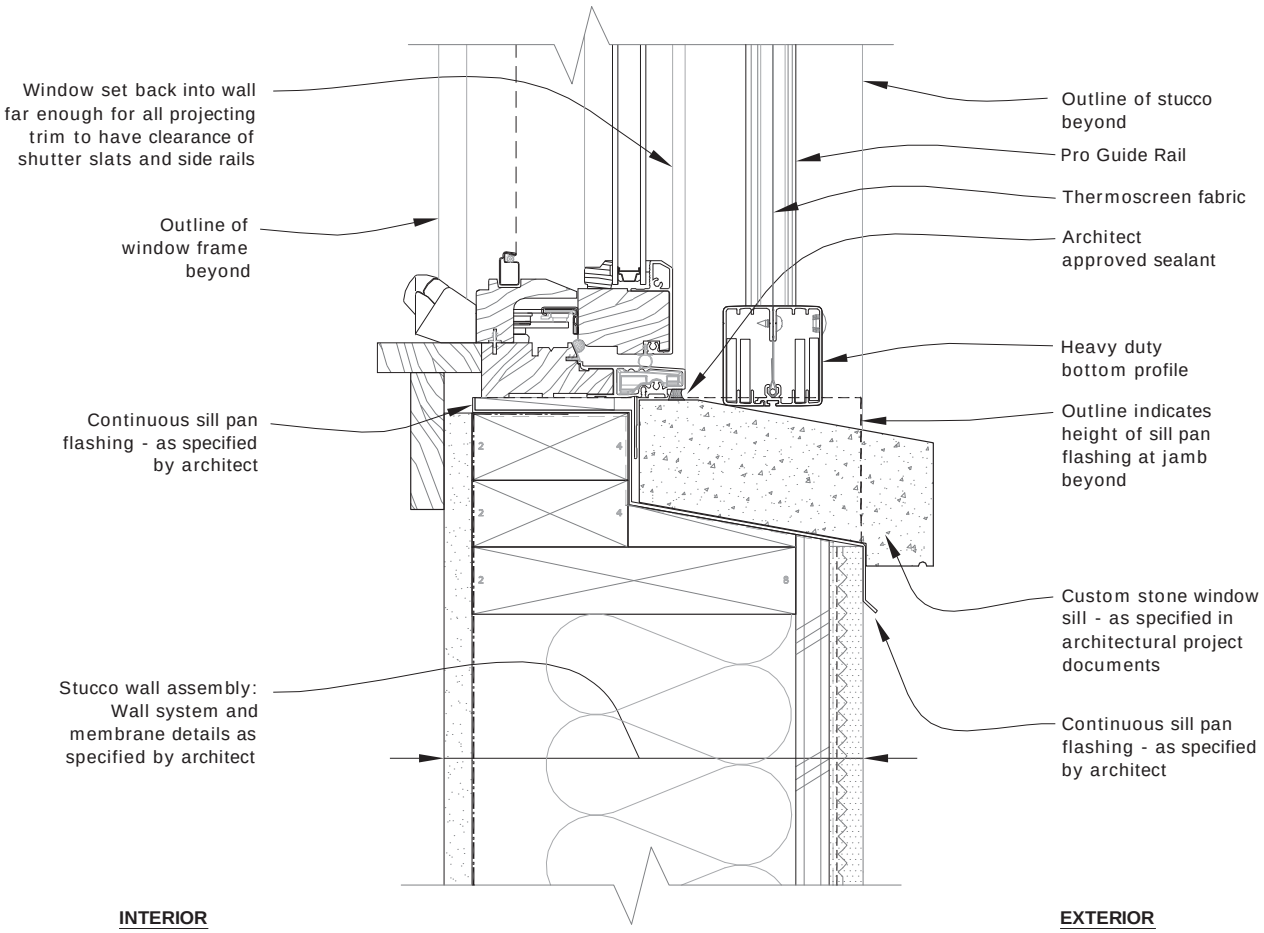
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Panel Box In-Wall System

Window Sill Detail



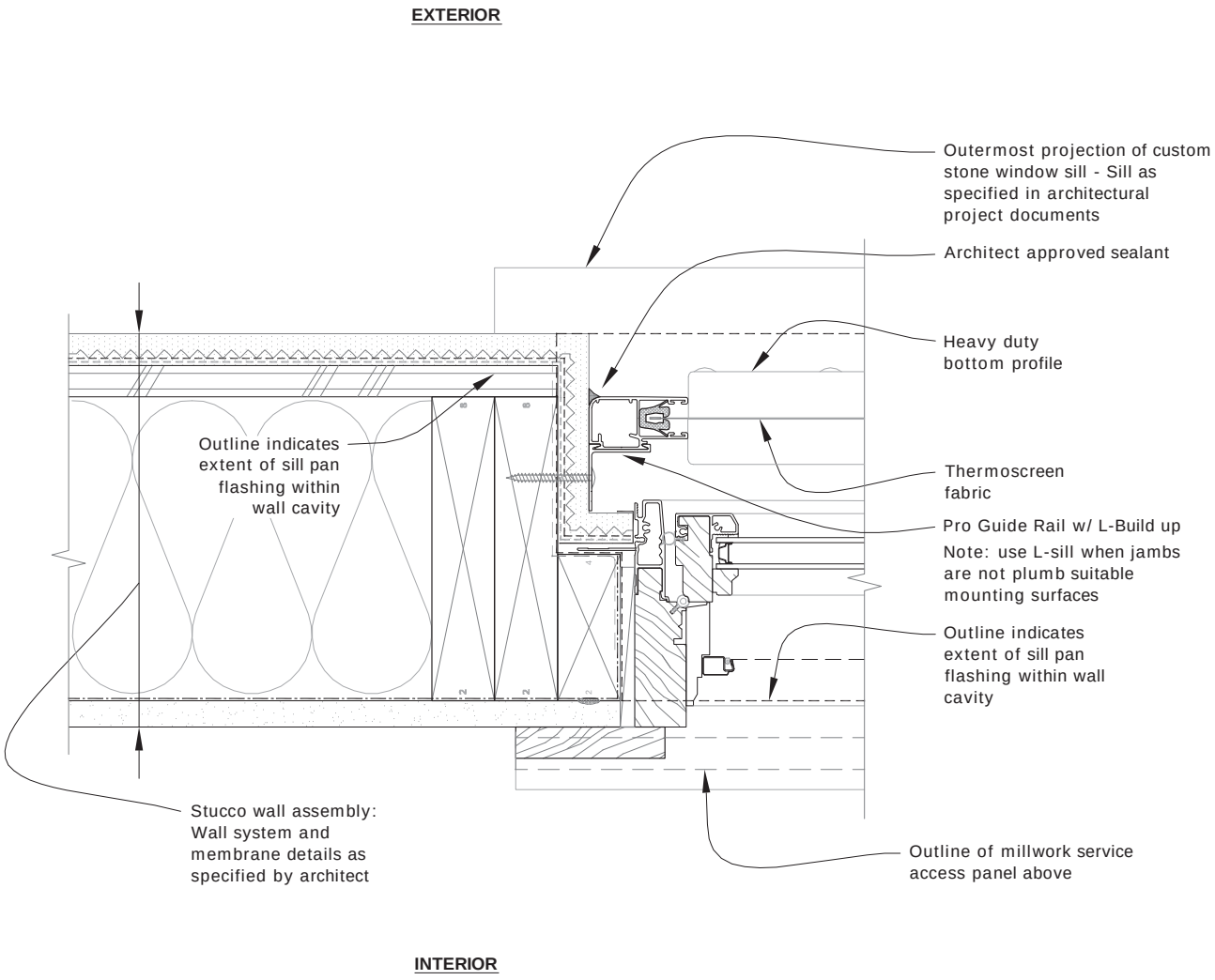
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Panel Box In-Wall System

Window Jamb Detail



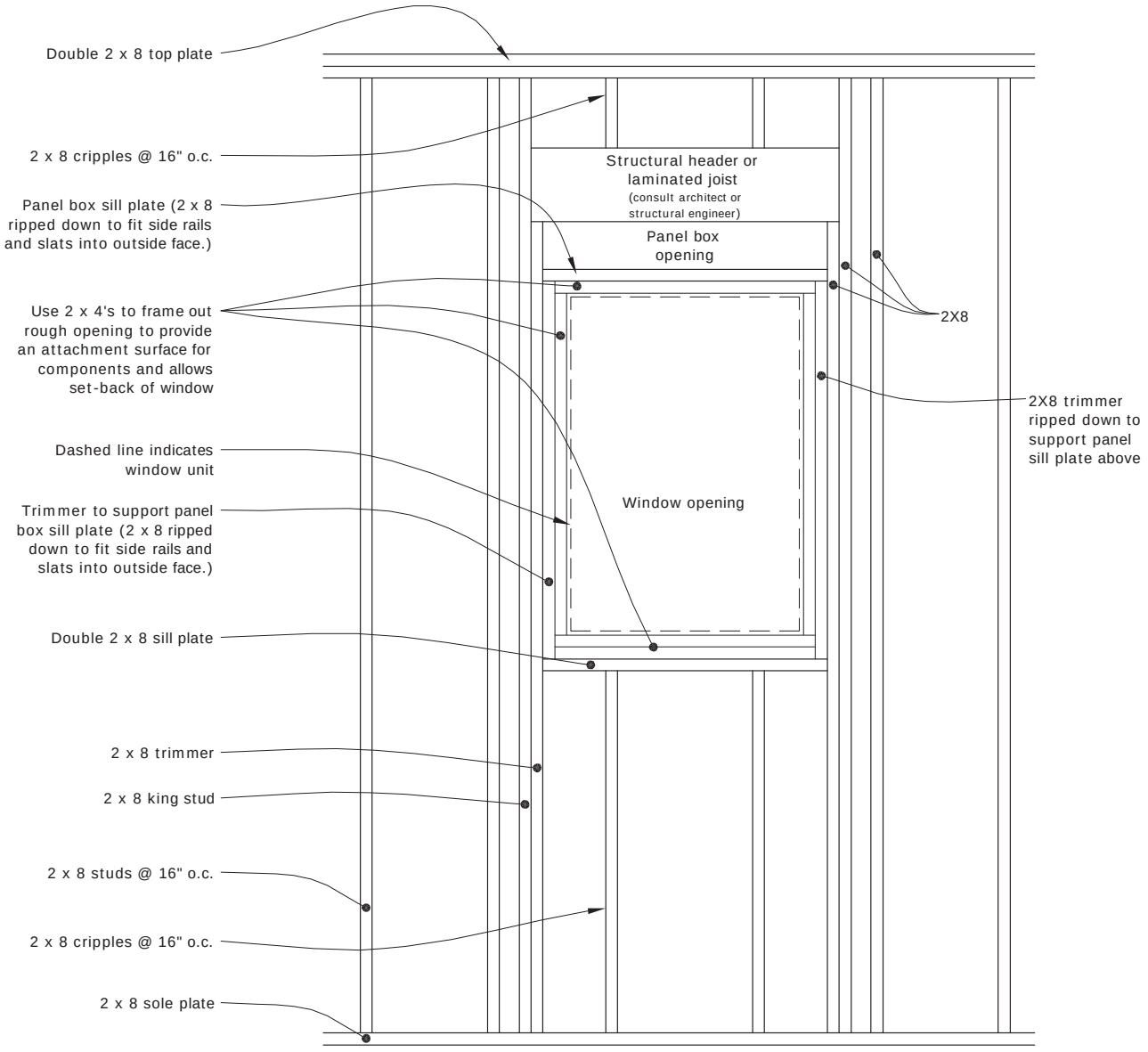
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Stucco Wall Application

Panel Box In-Wall System

Framing Diagram



Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

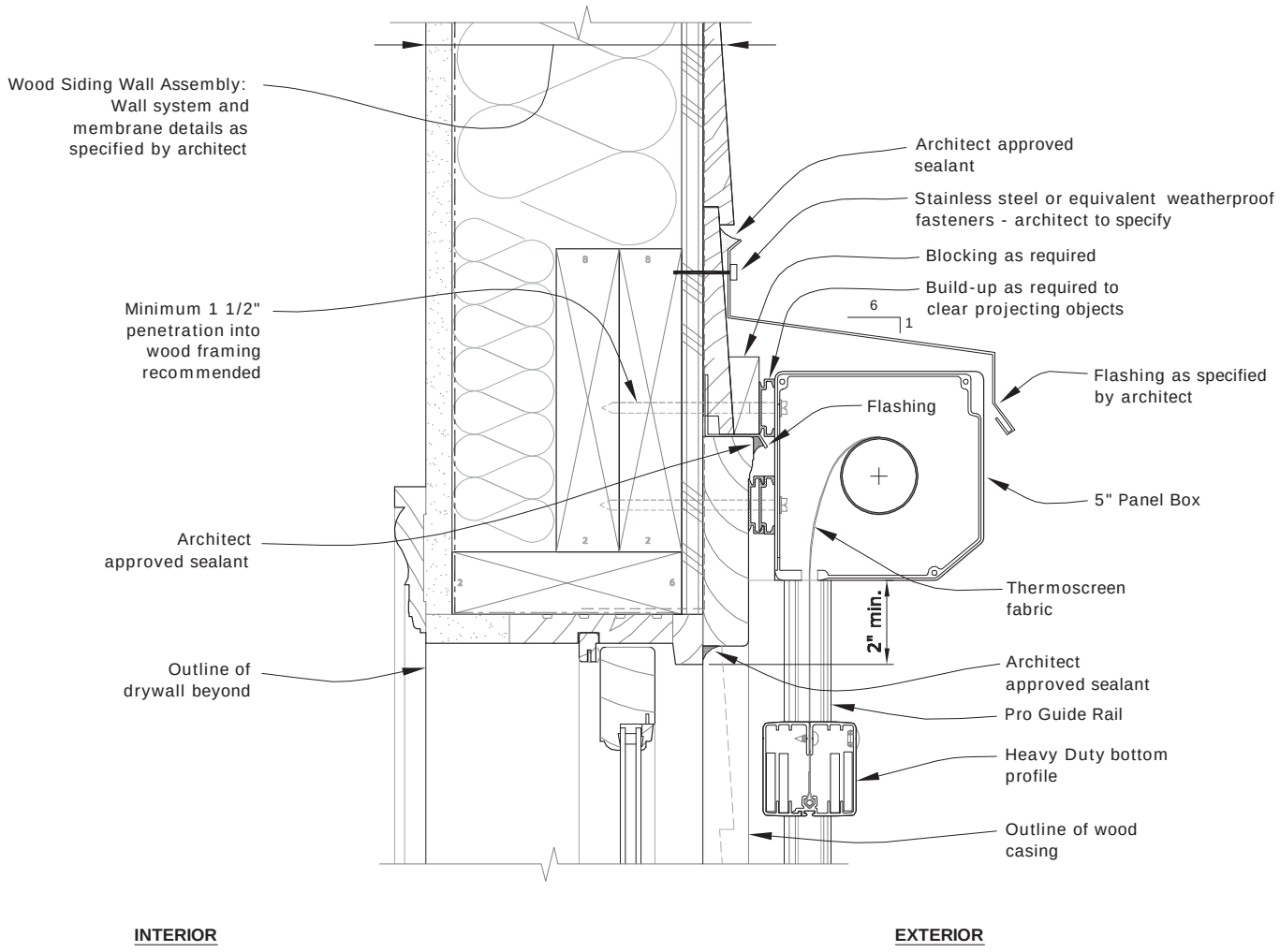
Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Technical Binder © 2020

Wood Siding Wall Application

Exterior Wall-Mount Retrofit System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail



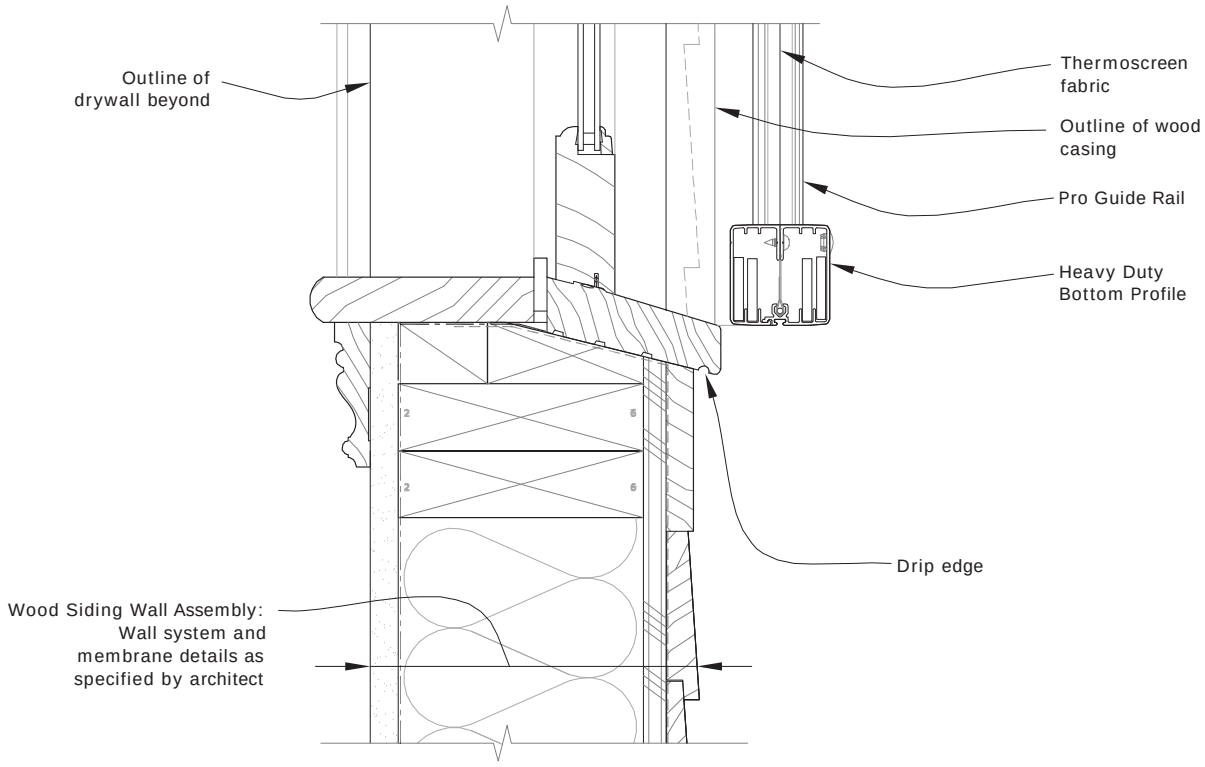
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Wood Siding Wall Application

Exterior Wall-Mount Retrofit System

Window Sill Detail



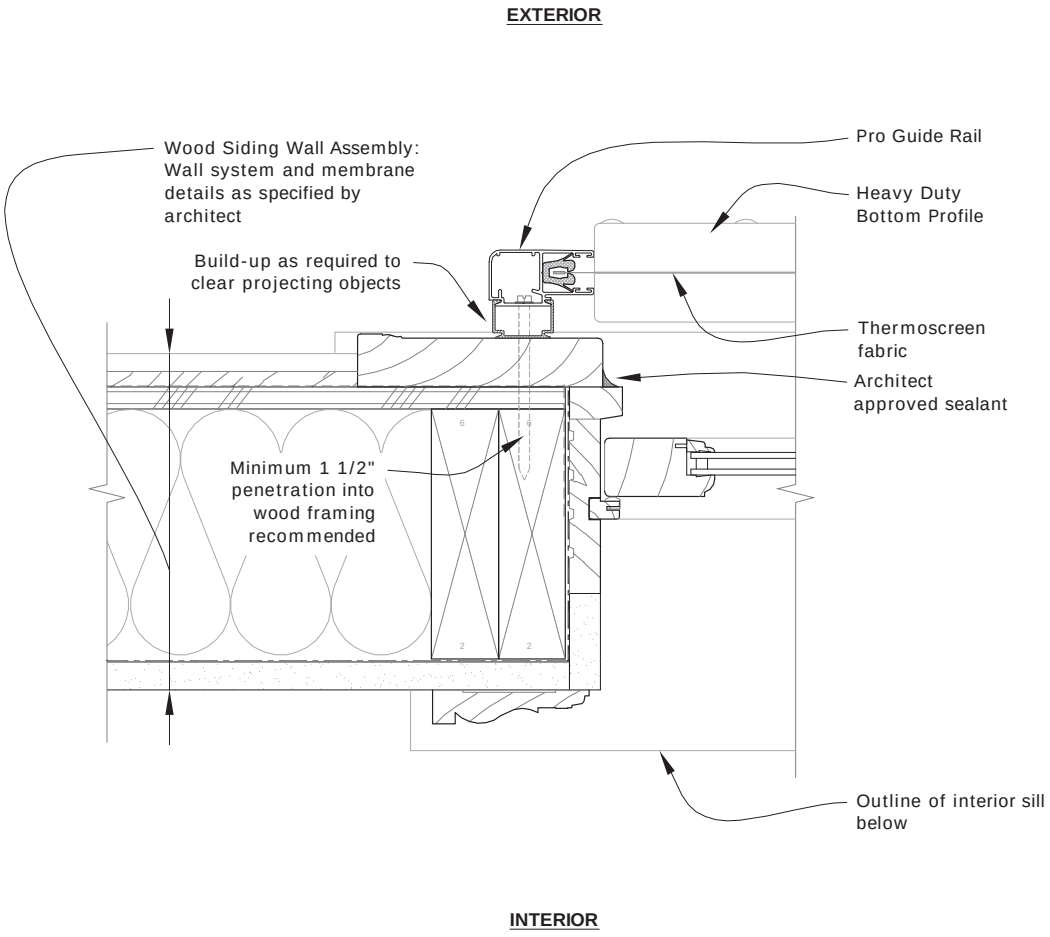
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Wood Siding Wall Application

Exterior Wall-Mount Retrofit System

Window Jamb Detail

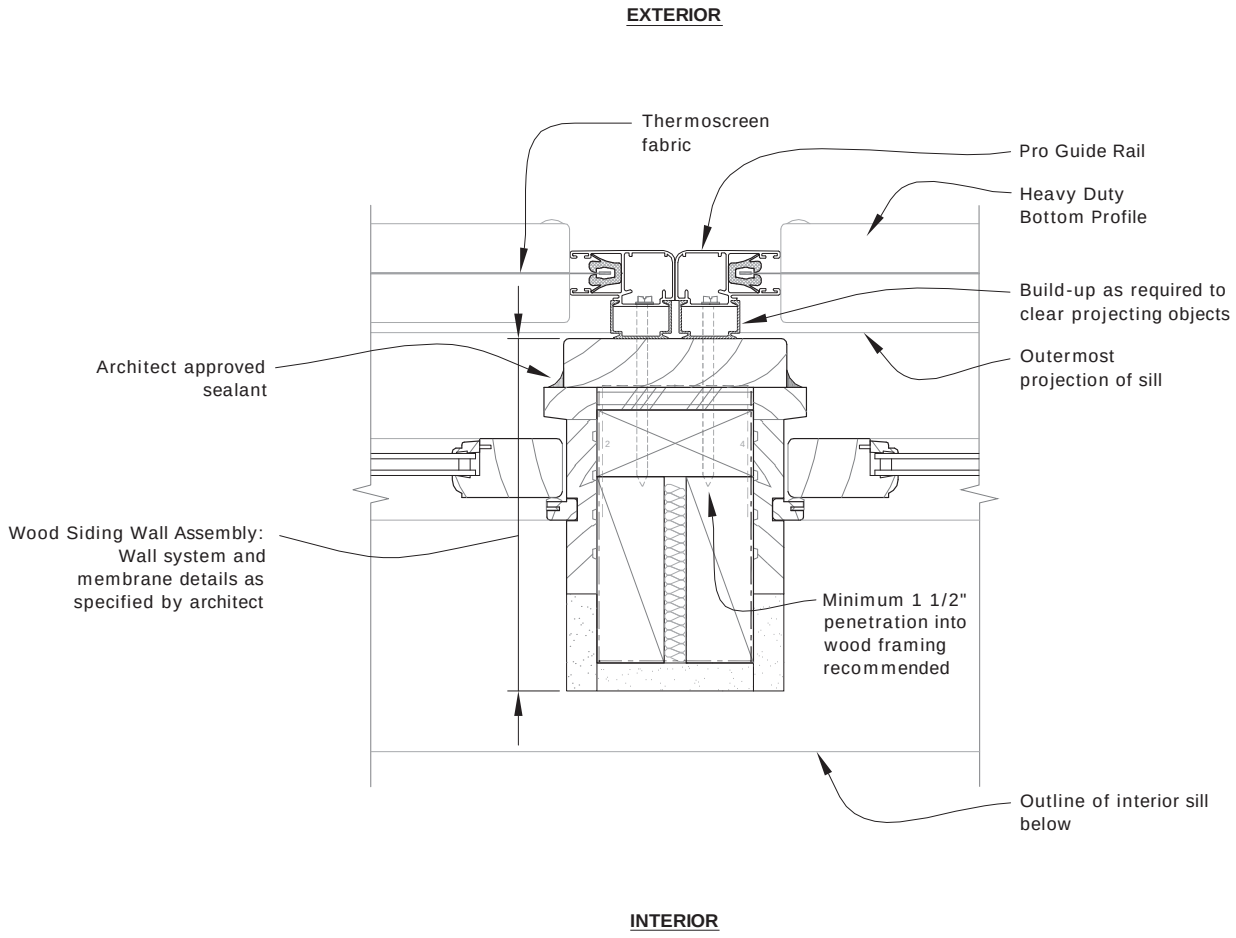


Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Wood Siding Wall Application

Exterior Wall-Mount Retrofit System
Window Jamb Detail with
Pro Guide Rails Back-to-back



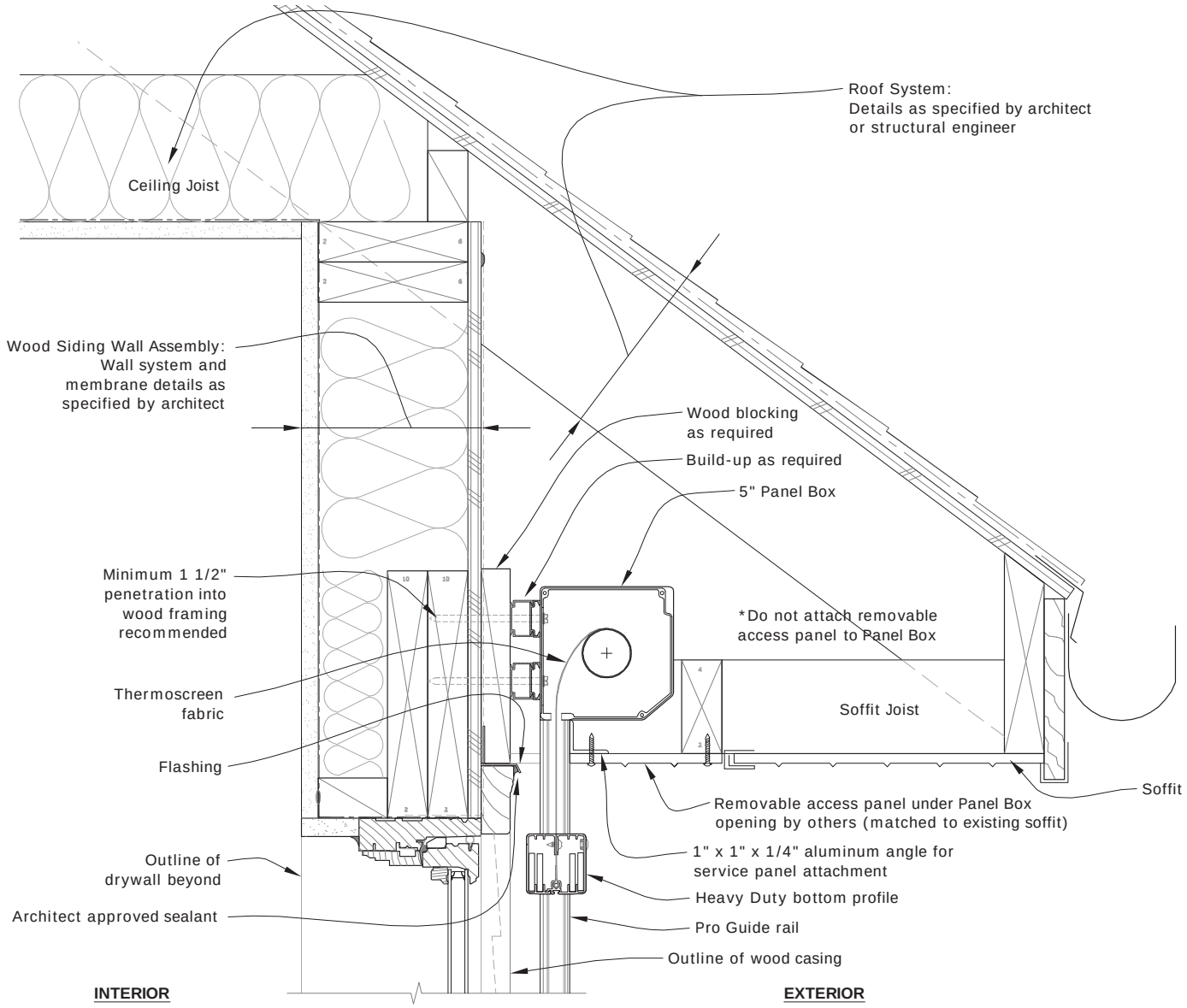
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Wood Siding Wall Application

Panel Box In-Soffit System

Soffit Detail



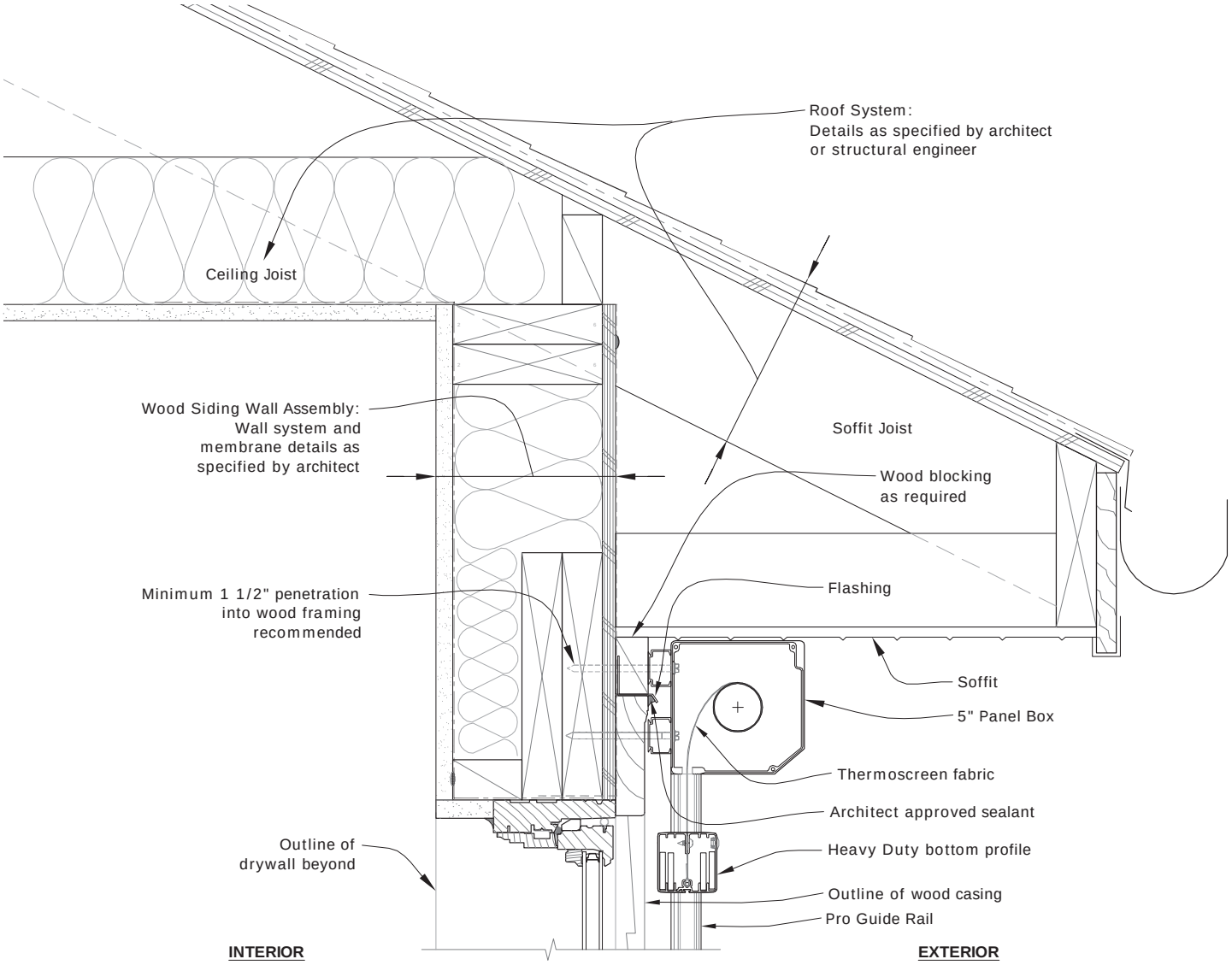
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Wood Siding Wall Application

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Soffit Detail



Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

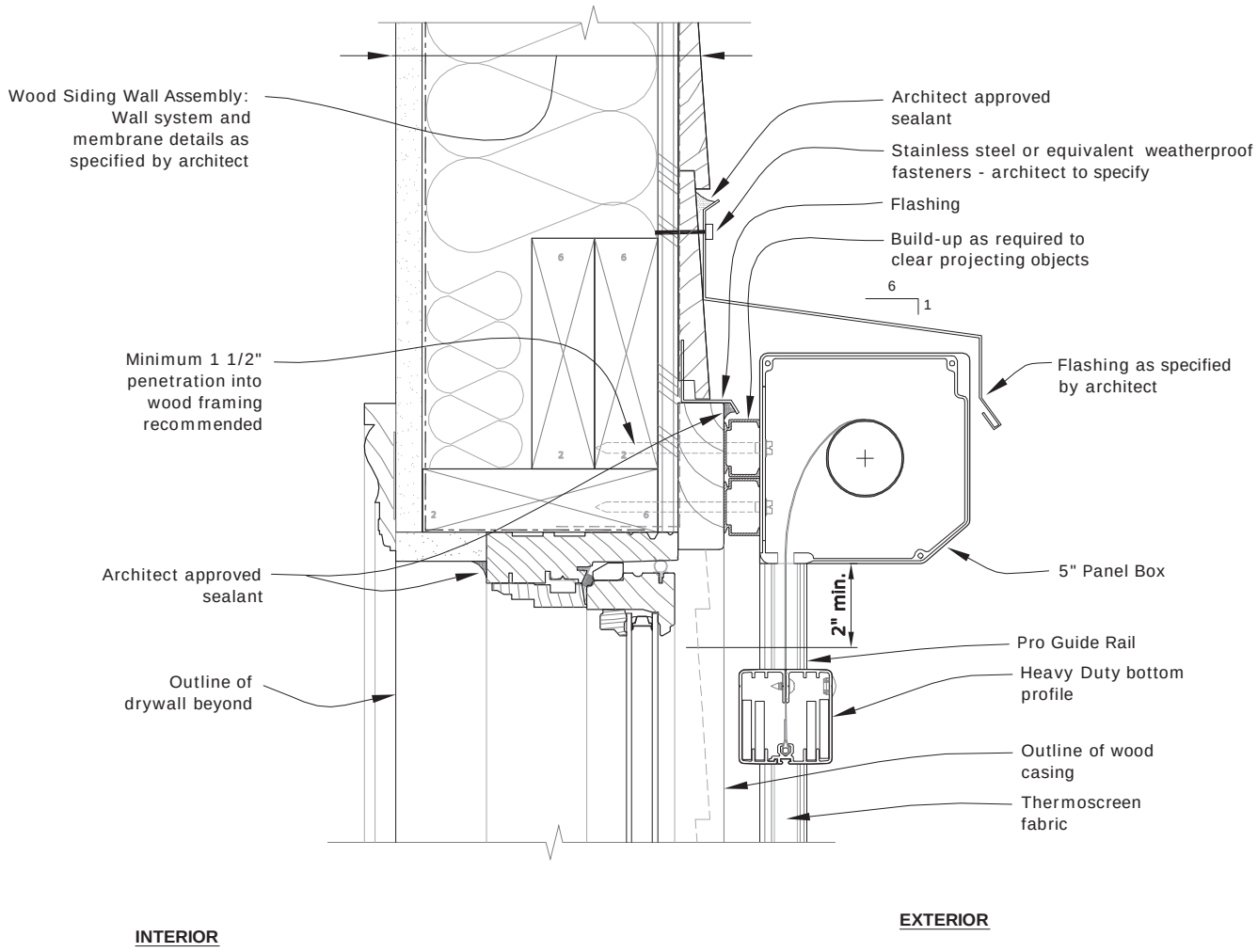
Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Technical Binder © 2020

Wood Siding Wall Application

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail



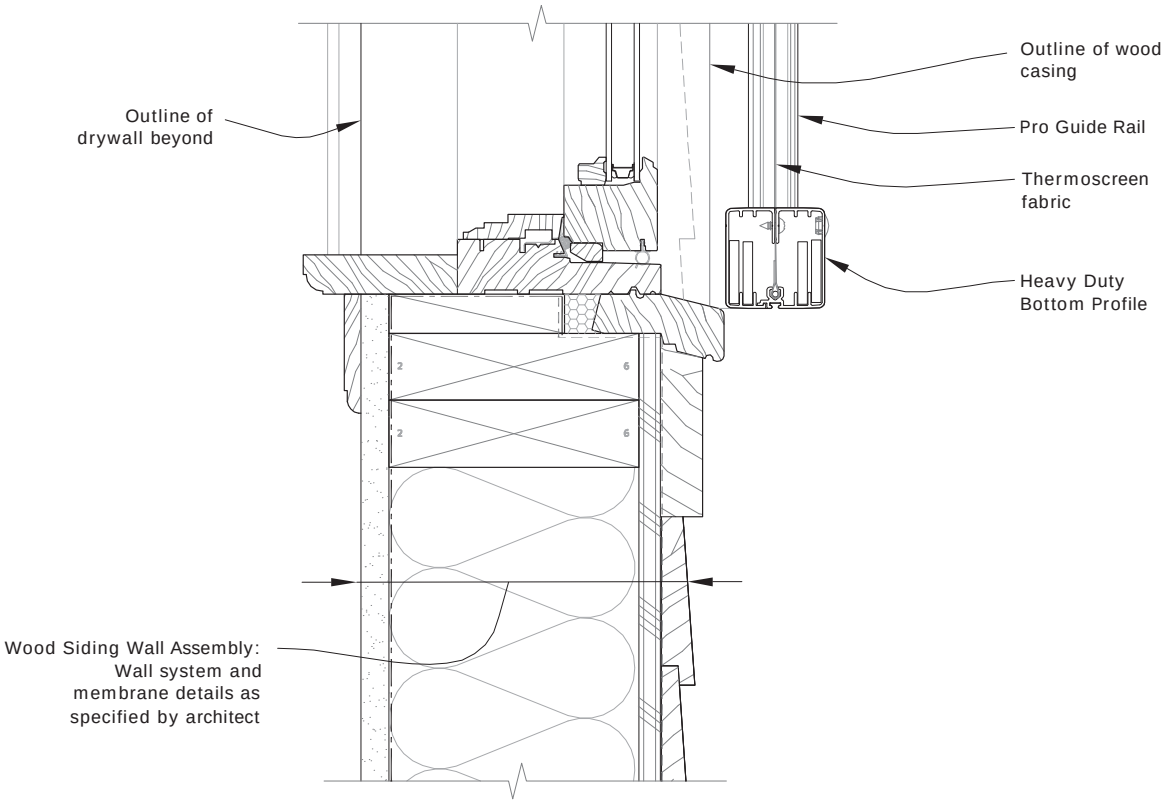
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Wood Siding Wall Application

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Window Sill Detail



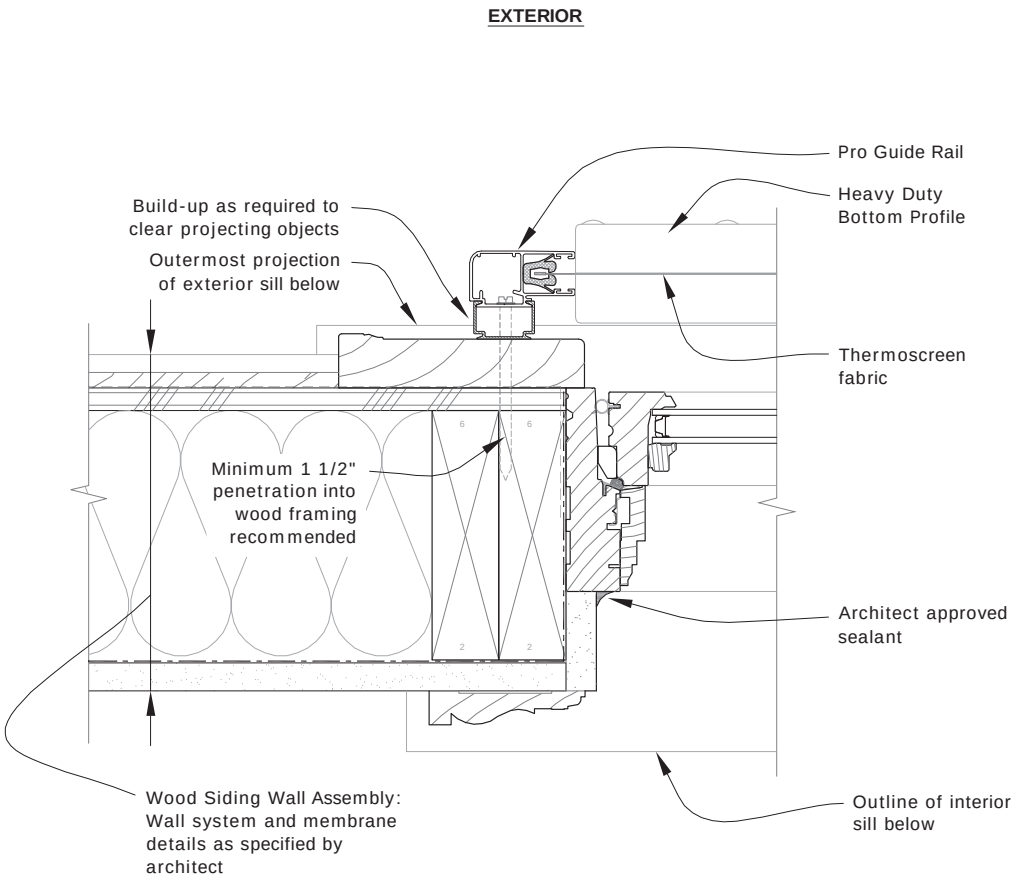
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Wood Siding Wall Application

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Window Jamb Detail



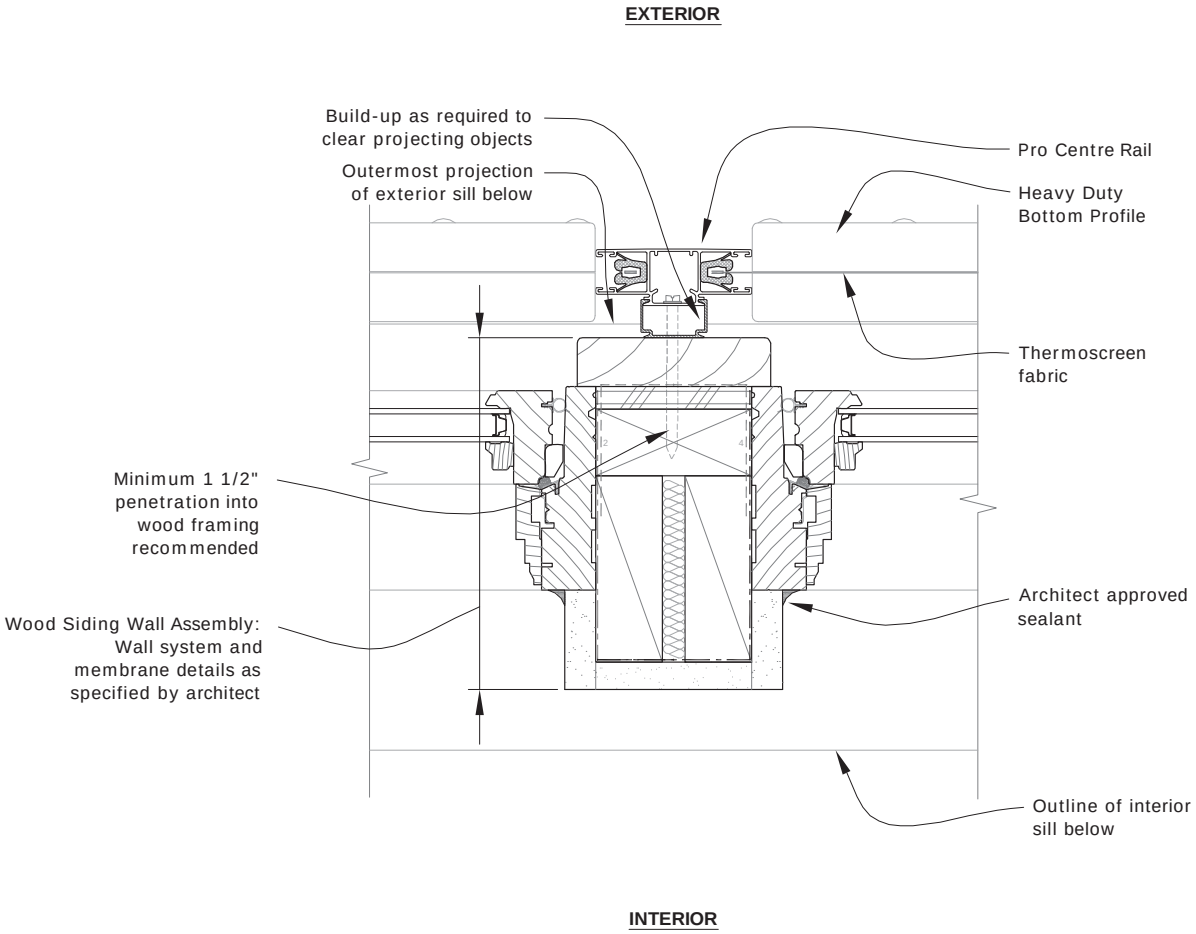
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Wood Siding Wall Application

Panel Box Below-Soffit System

Window Jamb with Pro Centre Rail



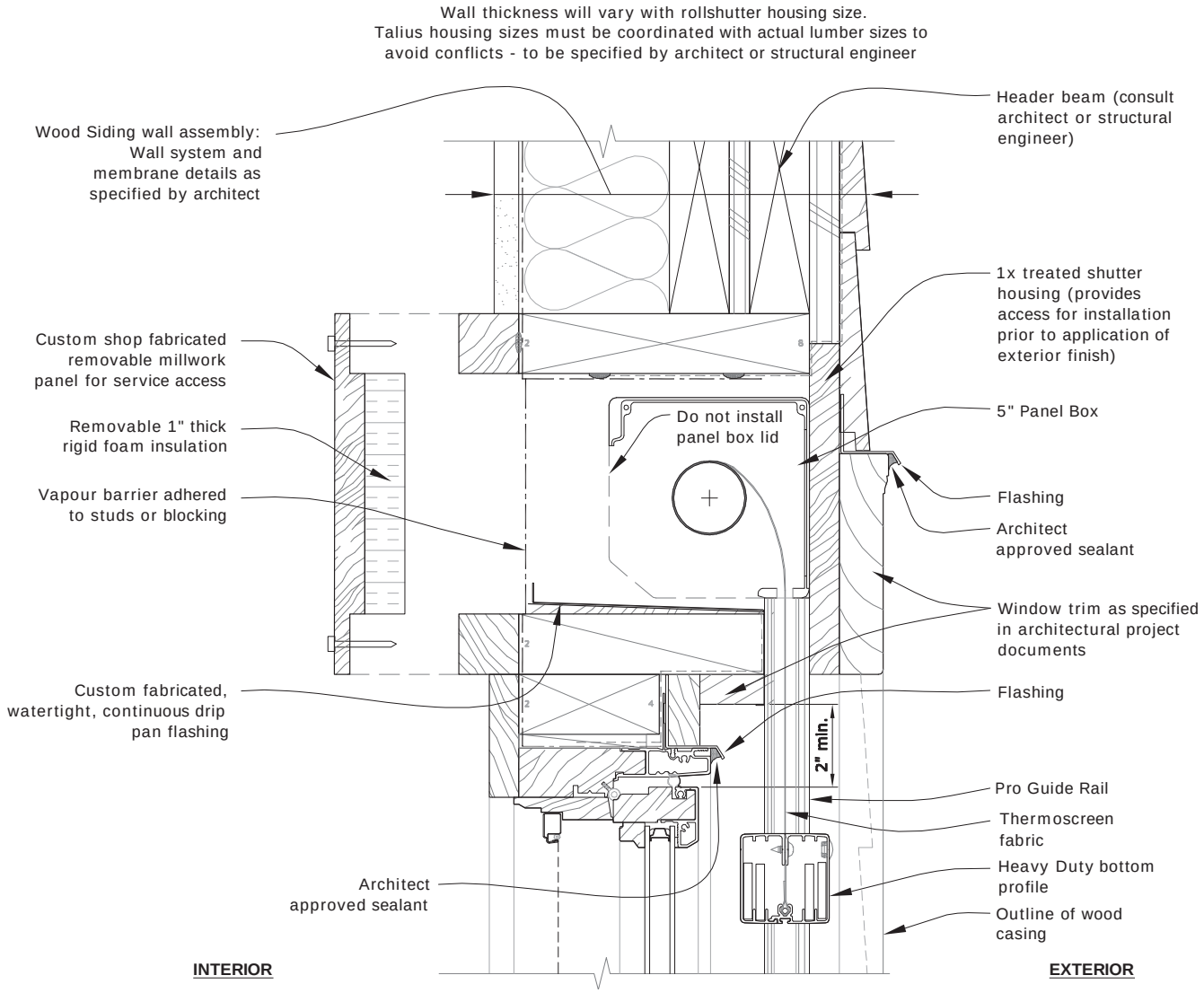
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Wood Siding Wall Application

Panel Box In-Wall System

Panel Box/Window Head Detail



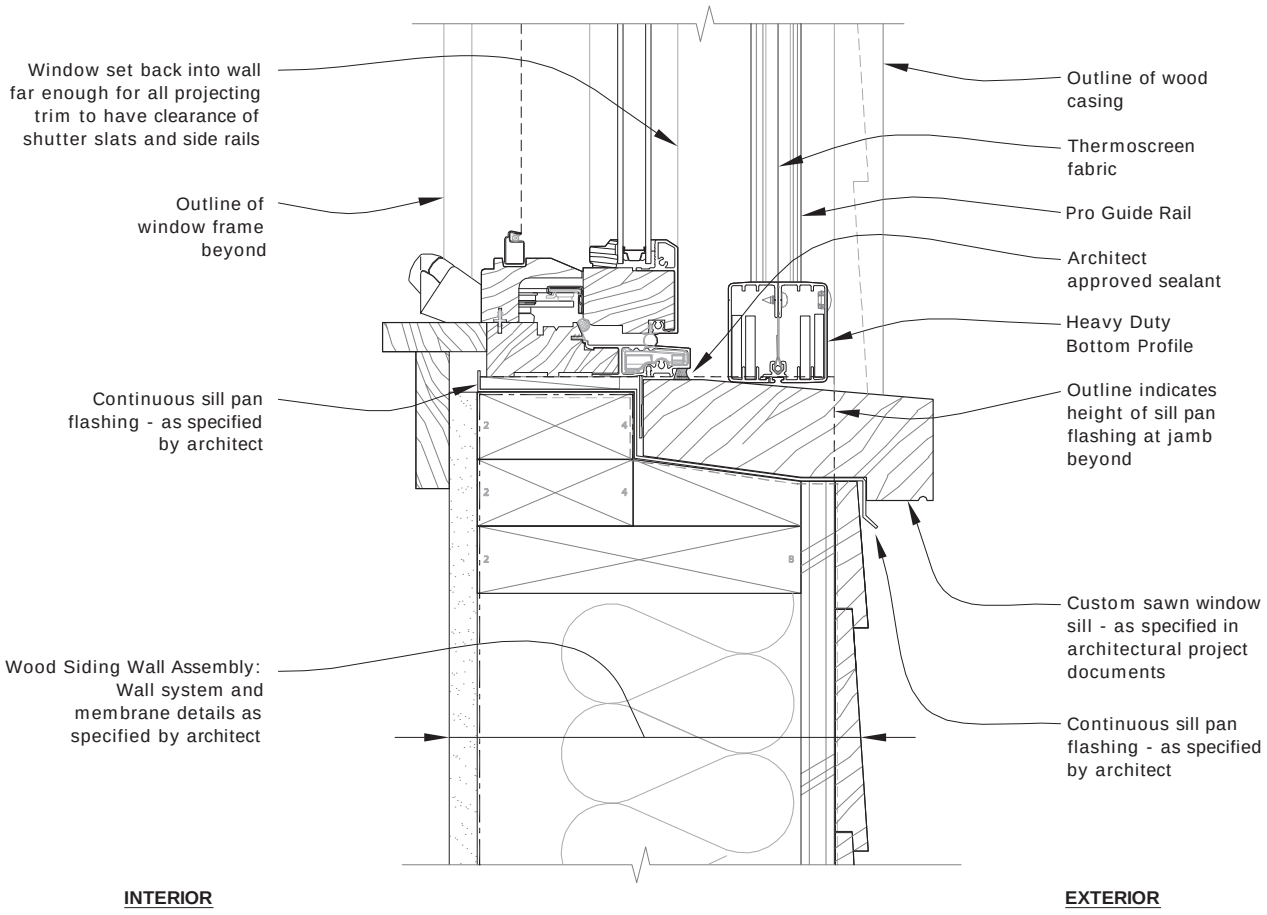
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Wood Siding Wall Application

Panel Box In-Wall System

Window Sill Detail



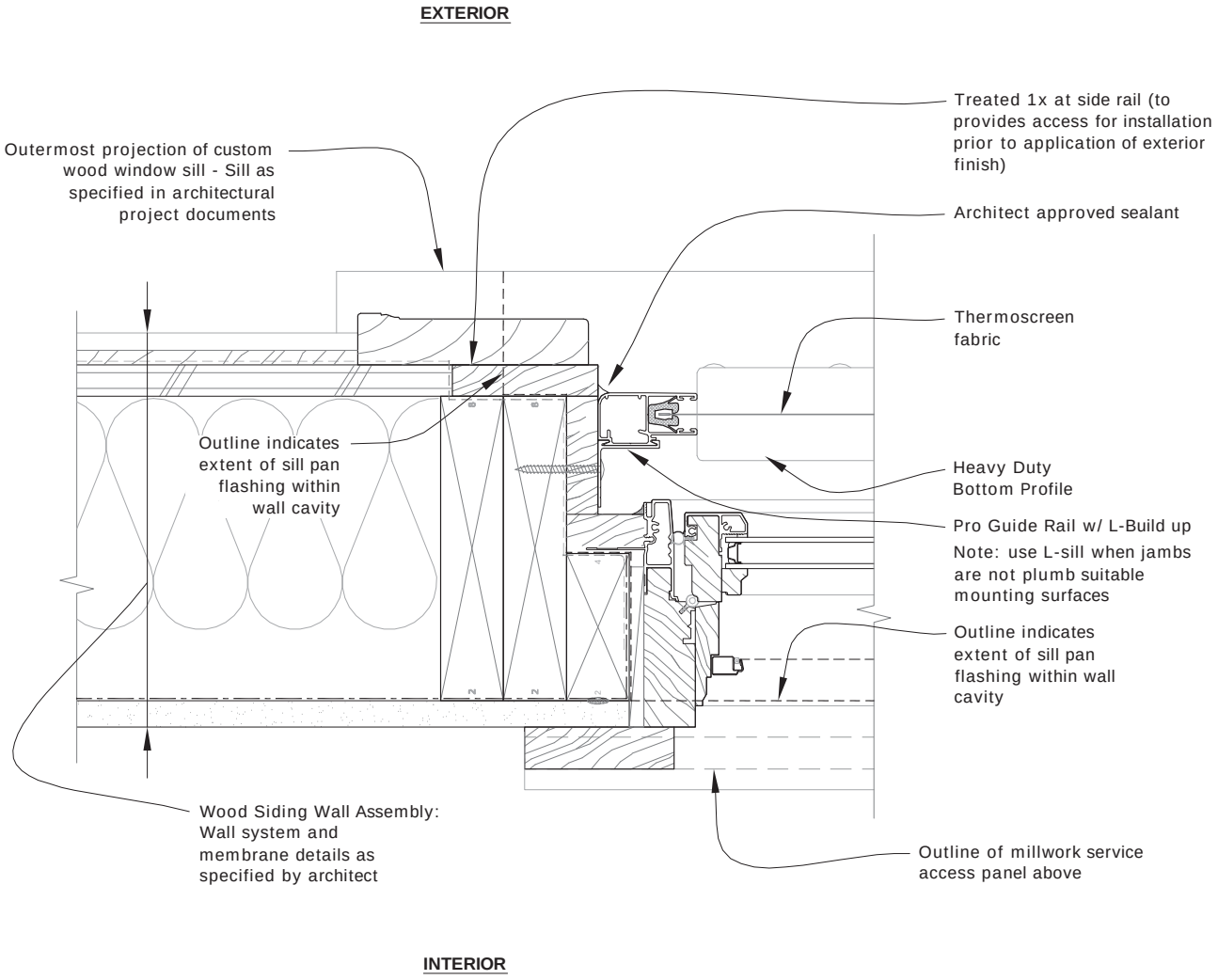
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Wood Siding Wall Application

Panel Box In-Wall System

Window Jamb Detail



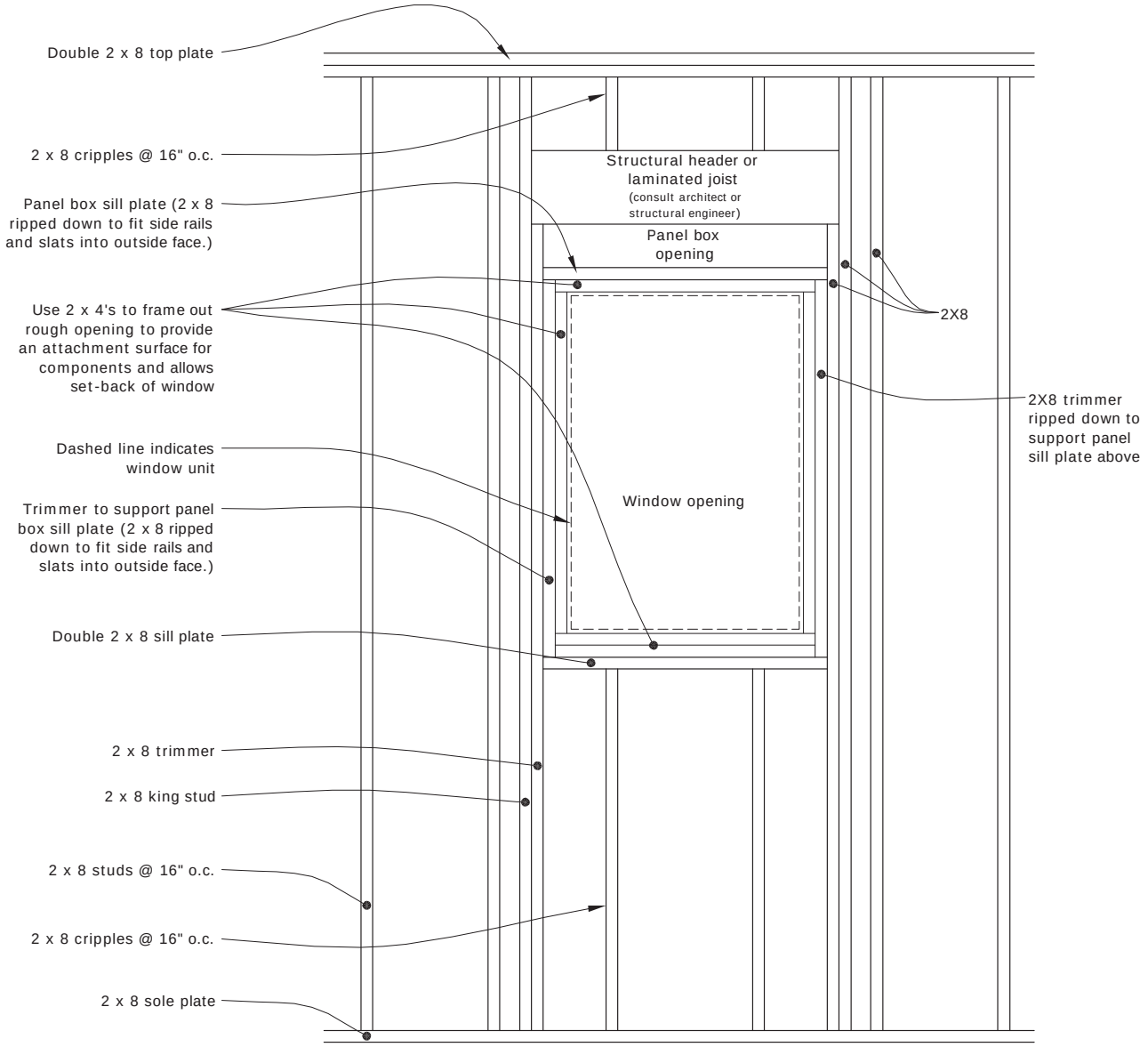
Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.

Wood Siding Wall Application

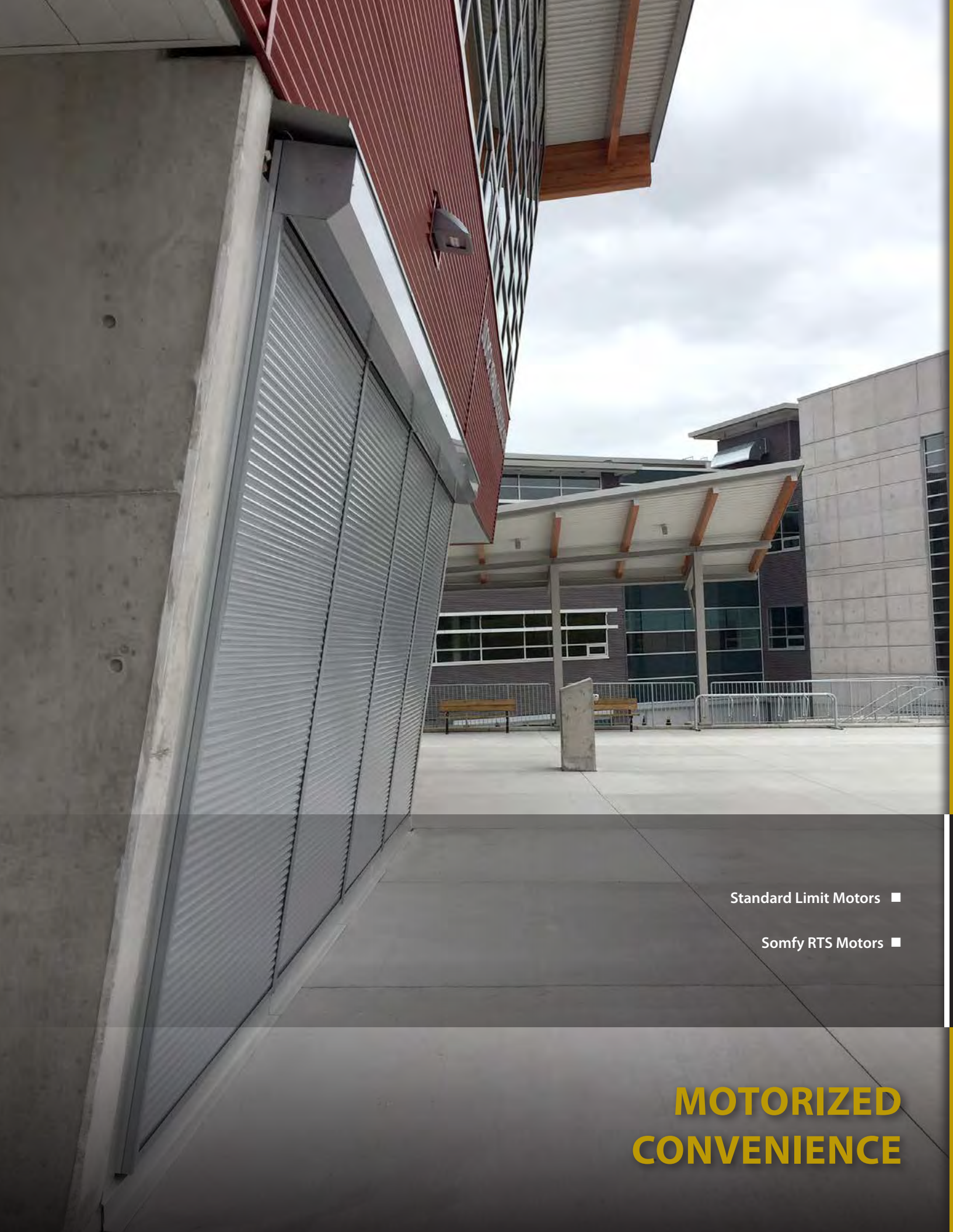
Panel Box In-Wall System

Framing Diagram



Note: It is the sole responsibility of the general contractor to supply all required sealants, flashings, and mounting hardware.

Disclaimer: Details provided by Talius are general recommendations. Consultation with an experienced architect, structural engineer, or contractor is necessary for proper execution of weatherproofing details, structural requirements and compliance with regional and local building codes. Talius places sole responsibility of these installation issues with the architect, structural engineer, general contractor and/or building owner.



WIRING DIAGRAMS

Standard Limit Motors ■

Somfy RTS Motors ■

MOTORIZED CONVENIENCE


TALIUS®

TALIUS®

Wiring Diagrams

Table of Contents

- **Standard Limit Motors**
  - SPDT Paddle Switch 1
  - DPDT Paddle Switch 2
  - Medium Security Key Switch 3
  - ORION High Security Key Switch 4
  - RC 200 RF Remote Control Receiver/Motor Controller 6
  - Safety Sensing Beams with RC 200 Receiver 8
  - Group Control R12 & R13 12
  - Group Control System - II (GCS-II) 13
  - Universal RTS Receiver 15
  - IGC 4N1 Motor Controller with Dry Contact Interface 17
  - Isolation Group Control 20
  - Smart Motor Control 22
  - Battery Back-Up System 29
- **RTS Motors**
  - Telis 1 & 4 Handheld Transmitters 35
  - DecoFlex 1 & 5 RTS Wall Switch 37
  - RTS Digital Key Pad 39
  - RTS Repeater 41
  - SOLIRIS RTS Sensor Environmental Control 42
  - EOLIS RTS Wind Sensor Environmental Control 44
  - Sunis Outdoor RTS Sun Sensor Environmental Control 46

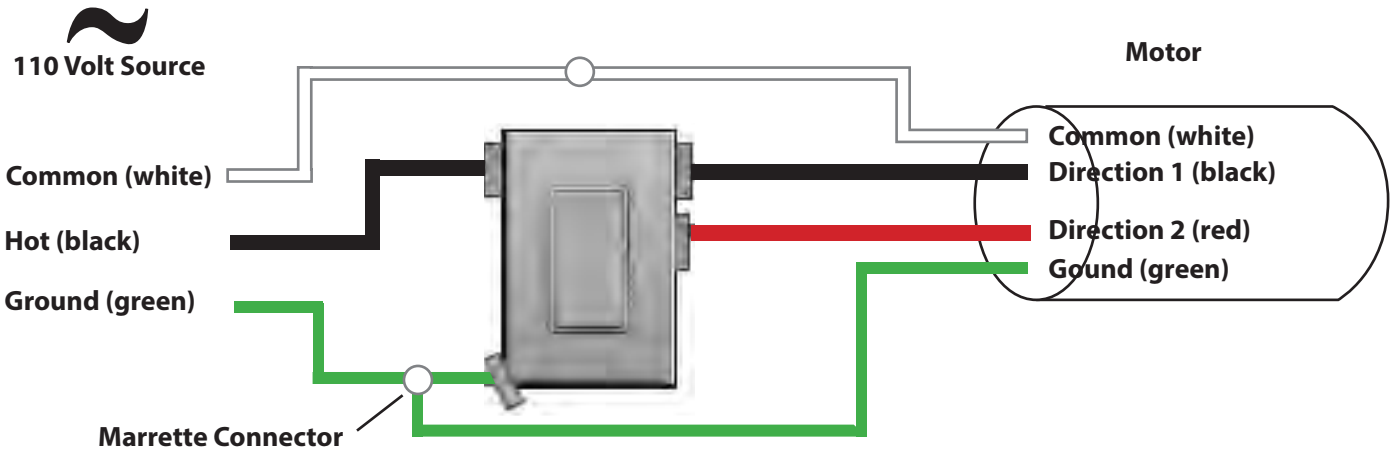
40 YEARS

Building solutions for the future

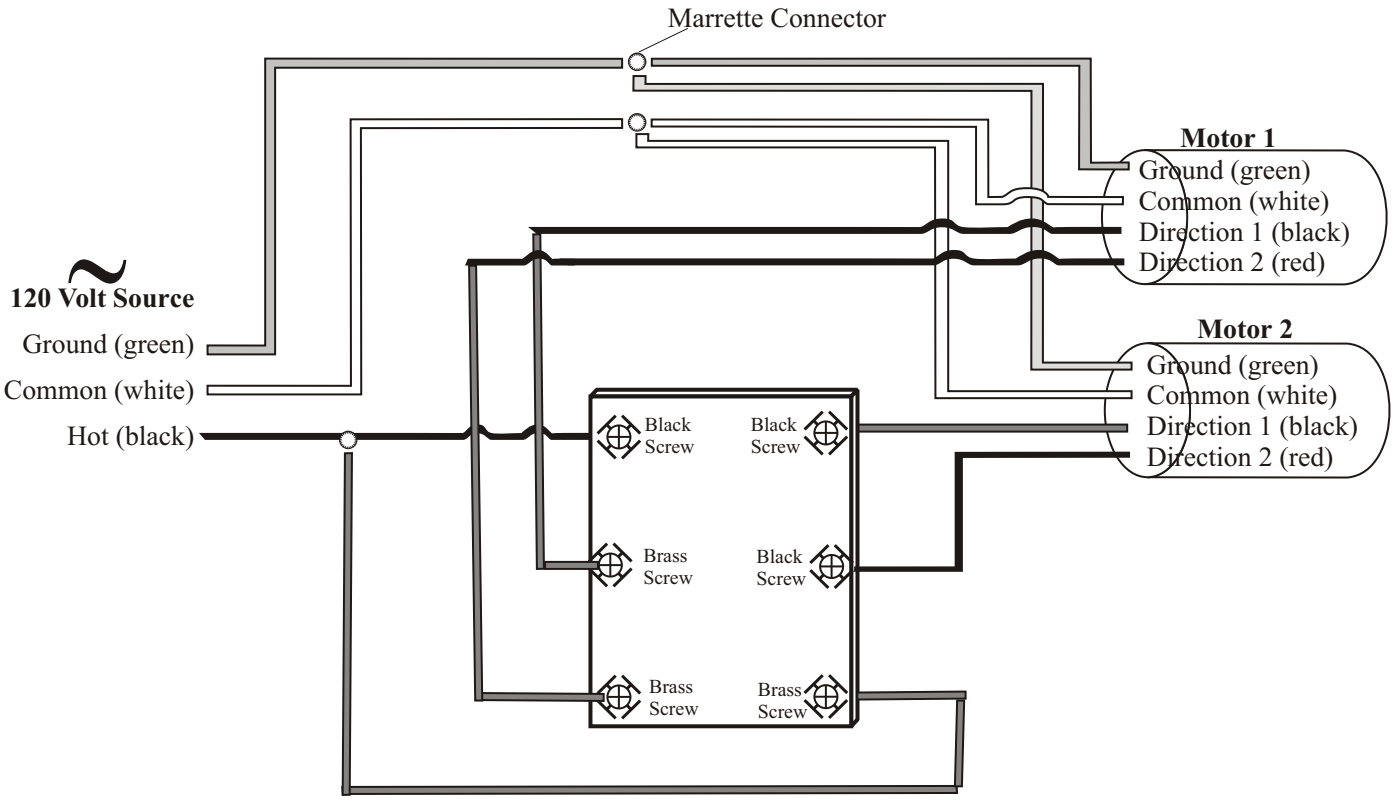
Technical Binder © 2020


TALIUS®

Single Switch - SPDT Paddle Switch



Single Switch - DPDT Paddle Switch

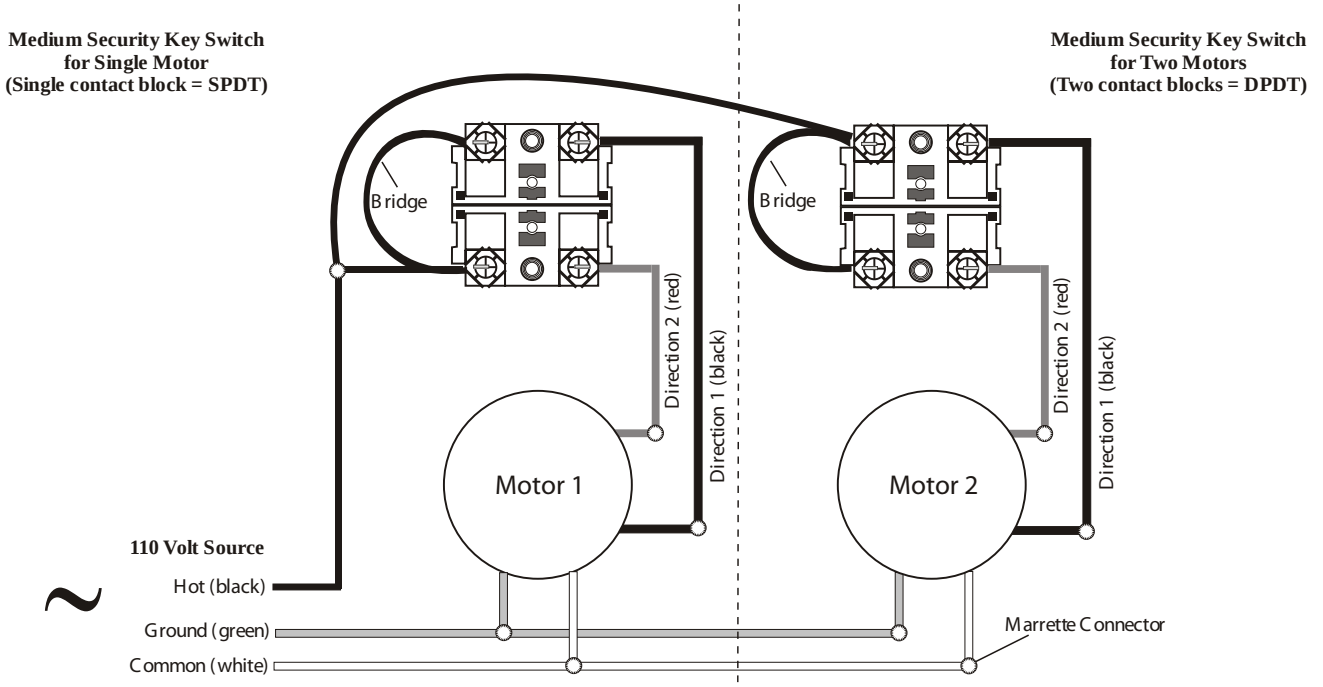


The motor wires are called "Direction 1" or "Direction 2" rather than "up" or "down". Depending on whether the motor is located on the right or left side of the rollshutter, its black wire will be either powering the "up" or "down" direction with the red wire always powering the opposite direction.

- If after completion of the wiring you discover that the rollshutter runds down when the switch is moved up, then simply do one of the following.
  - interchange the motor's black wire with the motor's red wire, or
  - loosen the two screws holding the switch in place and turn it around
- A DPDT switch can also be used to wire only one motor. Simply delete the second motor from the diagram
- Always use at least 14 guage solid copper wire. Some jurisdictions require 12 guage wire. All wiring must be performed by a certified electrician. Consult your local electrical code.

Technical Binder © 2020

Single Switch - Medium Security Key Switch



Never wire more than one motor to a single SPDT switch (or a single SPDT Contact Block) unless advised by the factory, and then only using special switches and/or relays supplied by Talius.

The motor wires are called "Direction 1" or "Direction 2" rather than "up" or "down". Depending on whether the motor is located on the right or left side of the rollshutter, its black wire will be either powering the "up" or "down" direction with the red wire always powering the opposite direction.

- If after completion of the wiring you discover that the rollshutter runs down when the switch is moved up, then simply interchange the motor's black wire with the motor's red wire
- Always use at least 14 guage solid copper wire for the line-voltage wires. Some jurisdictions require 12 guage wire. All wiring must be performed by a certified electrician. Consult your local electrical code.
- SPDT key switch requires a standard single-gang electrical box, minimum of 2 3/8" (61 mm) deep (not supplied). Extra deep electrical box required for DPDT key switch. A face place is provided with the switch - please indicate if you are using a flush-mount or surface-mount box.

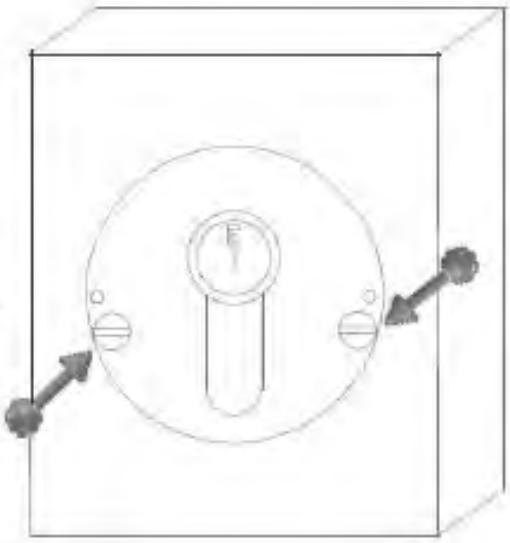
Single Switch - ORION High Security Key Switch



To remove the face place and the rubber gasket that lies underneath it, begin by taking out the screws.

Once the screws have been removed the face plate and the gasket can be taken off.



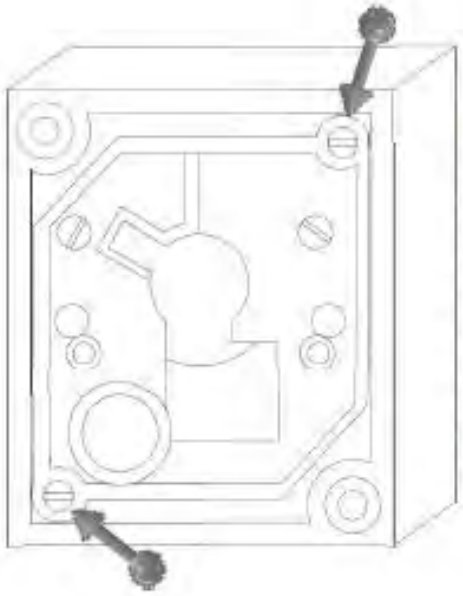


There are two more screws under the gasket. Those must also be unscrewed and taken out.

Next, insert the key and turn it about a quarter turn to the right.

Pull it and the whole front face of the box out leaving the inside of the box looking like the picture below.



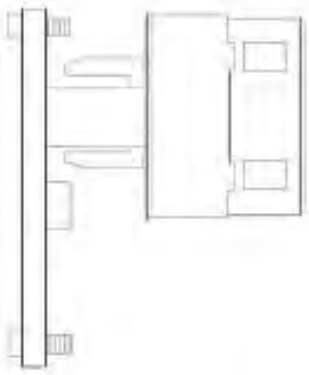


In the upper right hand corner and lower left hand corner, there are another two screws.

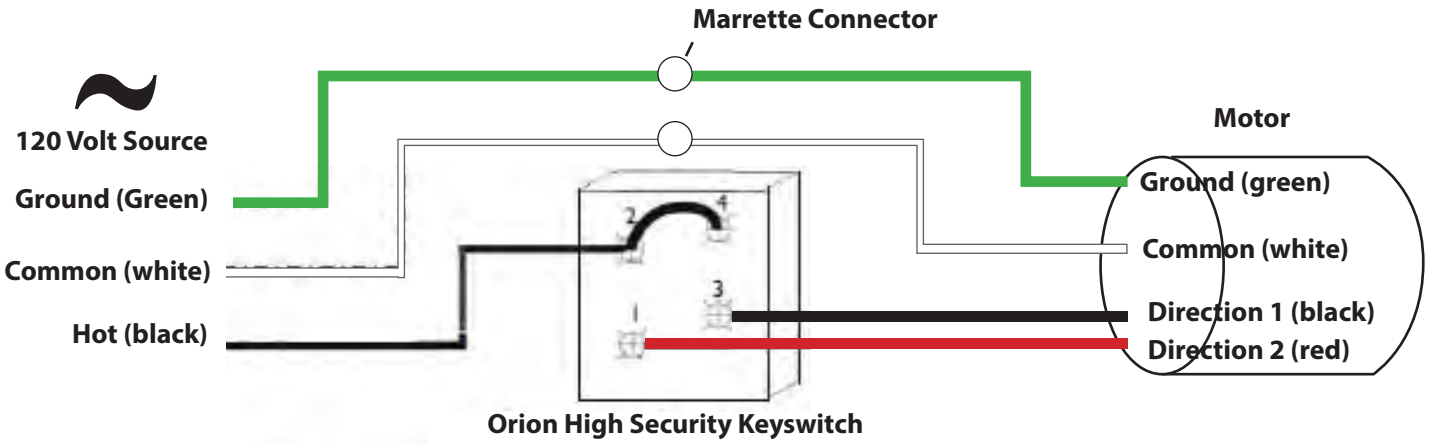
These must be loosened before the inside of the box can be removed and the necessary wiring can be completed.

Once the other screws are loose the whole contents of the box can be taken out and will look like the following.

The screws painted red must not be touched



Technical Binder © 2020



Never wire more than 1 motor to a SPDT keyswitch!

The motor wires are called "Direction 1" or "Direction 2" rather than "up" or "down". Depending on whether the motor is located on the right or left side of the rollshutter, its black wire will be either powering the "up" or "down" direction with the red wire always powering the opposite direction.

- If after completion of the wiring, you discover that the rollshutter runs down when the switch is moved to the intended up, then simply interchange the motor's black wire with the motor's red wire.
- Always use at least 14 gauge solid copper wire. Some jurisdictions require 12 gauge wire. All wiring must be performed by a certified electrician. Consult your local electrical code.

RC 200 RF Remote Control Receiver/Motor Controller

LINE	MODEL	SERIES	LIT DATE
(X) 200	RC200	S435	01-01-2001

NOTE: This equipment LH8TX-S435 and LH8RP-S435 has been tested and found to comply with limits for a class B digital device, according to part 15 of FCC rules.
These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference to radio communications.
However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is advised to try and correct the situation by taking one or more of the following measures:

D Reorientate the receiving device
A Increase the distance between the equipment and the receiver
S Connect the equipment to a socket which is on a different branch circuit than the receiver
S Consult your dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help

Description

The (X) 200 radio control system consists of one or more transmitters and one or more receivers which can be combined to meet the specific needs of a wide variety of systems.
The (X) 200 control has a highly reliable and **secure rolling code** system that uses an algorithm to recognize only specific variations of the original transmitted code. The receiver is able to memorize **24 different codes in its non volatile memory.** This allows a receiver to be activated by multiple transmitters.

Use

The (x) 200 radio control can be used with Type 3.5, Type 5 and Type 6 120VAC SIMU motors. One RC200 is required for each motor unless used with SIMU group control relays (RI2, RI3, and GI2). Each RC200 receiver can be controlled individually from 1 channel (1 button on a transmitter) when the code is programmed into the RC200 in sequencing mode (open-stop-close-stop..). using dip switch SW1(on/on). Groups of RC200 receivers can be controlled together by programming one button as an open for all receivers in a group using dip switch SW1 (on/off) and one button on the transmitter as close using dip switch SW1 (off/on).

Transmitters

TRAN202	Two channel transmitter	2 Buttons
TRAN204	Four channel transmitter	4 Buttons
TRAN212	Twelve channel transmitter	4 Buttons and A-B-C slide switch
TRANWS200	Four channel wall-switch transmitter	4 Buttons

Receivers

RC200	Motor control receiver in surface external box
RC210	Motor control receiver recessable in plastic 3 gang switch box (interior only)
RC201	12/24VDC 2 channel dry contact output receiver

Installation

The receiver bracket should be mounted to the wall with the included screws. The receiver can then be slid onto the bracket. If mounted in an exposed location, the receiver must be mounted with holes marked A and B (see fig. 9) facing down. Receivers should not be mounted within 5 feet of each other. Do not mount the receiver in a metal box, near metal, or near EMI sources. It is recommended that the range of the unit be tested before permanently wiring the receiver. If range is poor, often relocating the receiver by a few feet can drastically improve the reception. If the receiver must be installed in a metal box or located in a remote location, the antenna can be remotely located. Connect the shield of a coaxial cable to terminal 12 and the center conductor to terminal 13. Run the cable to a clear location near where the transmitter will be used and strip the shielding off the last 17cm (exact length of antenna supplied with unit)

Electrical connections

- **IMPORTANT!: For installation by a qualified electrician in accordance with local electrical codes.**
- **CAUTION: RISK OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK.** Disconnect power before installing.
- High voltage 120VAC wires must pass through the holes marked "A" (see fig. 9)
- Low voltage wires must pass through the holes marked "B" (see fig. 9) and must be routed separately from the high voltage wires.

Terminals

1-2	Ground (Motor Green)
3	Hot 120 VAC 60HZ
4	Neutral
5	Motor direction 1 (Motor Black)
6	Motor direction 2 (Motor Red)
7	Motor common (Motor White)
8-9	N.C. low voltage input for safety device. Jumper must be installed if safety device not used
10-11	N.O. low voltage input with sequencing function (open-stop-close-stop-open...) for single throw, single pole low voltage switch (Ref# SPBS.W)
12	Antenna ground
13	Antenna connection for 17cm wire supplied with receiver. The antenna can be remotely located using 50 Ohm coaxial cable as described above in "Installation"

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Receiver

- Reception frequency.....433.92MHz
- Local emission.....<2nW
- Antenna input impedance.....50 Ohms
- Sensitivity.....1uV
- Power supply.....120VAC 50-60Hz
- Operating temperature range.....-20 C...+60 C

Transmitter

- Carrier frequency.....433.92MHz
- Carrier frequency tolerance.....+75MHz
- Band width.....>25kHz
- Power supply (alkaline battery GP23A).....12V+10%
- Maximum power consumption.....25mA
- Operating temperature range.....-10 C...+55 C

Troubleshooting

Problem: No response from the receiver
Solutions if led PW is off - Check fuse
- Confirm that 120VAC is supplied to terminals 3 and 4

Soultions if led PW is on - Confirm that the receiver code has been memorized (see MEMORIZING TRANSMITTER CODES WITH THE RECEIVER on reverse side of this page)
- Make sure you have generated a code for that button on the transmitter (see SETTING CODES IN THE TRANSMITTERS on the reverse side of this page)

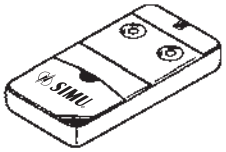
Problem: Receiver only switches in one direction
Solutions - Make sure the jumper is in terminals 8-9 if no safety device is used.
- If the jumper is in terminals 8-9 and the receiver still switches in just one direction, the transmitter code may have been memorized as either an up or down signal. Delete the transmitter's code from the receiver memory (see ERRASING RECEIVER MEMORY on the reverse side of this page). Then with dip switch 1 and 2 on, have the receiver memorize the transmitter's code again (see MEMORIZING TRANSMITTER CODES WITH THE RECEIVER on the reverse side of this page)
- Check limit settings on the motor.

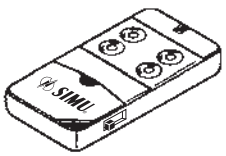
Problem: Motor stops/receiver turns off before the motor reaches the limit.
Solution - The timed run on the receiver is set too low. Increase the run time by following the instructions in the paragraph "Run time programming (SW1) on page 2.

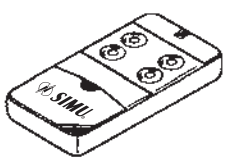
Problem: The receiver will not memorize a code from a button on the transmitter
Solutions - Make sure the transmitter has generated a code for that button (see SETTING CODES IN THE TRANSMITTER on the reverse side of this page)
- If the led LD is on continuosly, the receiver memory is full (has 24 codes memorized). Delete some of the codes (see ERASING RECEIVER MEMORY on the reverse side of this page)

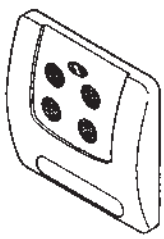
Problem: Range is poor
Solutions - Make sure the receiver is as far as possible from other receivers, metal objects, EMI sources (floresent lights, transformers, computers, etc...) Try the receiver in different locations if possible before hard wiring.
- If the receiver is mounted in a metal enclosure or in a remote location from where the transmitters will be used with metal or other dense material in the line of sight, the receiver's antenna can be remotely located nearer to the area the transmitters will be used in (see Installation on this page).

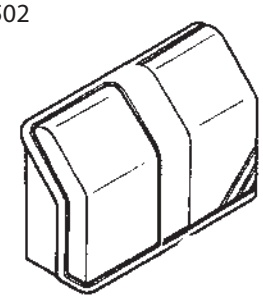
SIMU U.S Inc.,
6100 Broken Sound Parkway N.W., #14
Boca Raton, FL 33487
Phone: 561-995-0335 FAX: 561-995-7502


TRAN202


TRAN212


TRAN204


TRANWS200

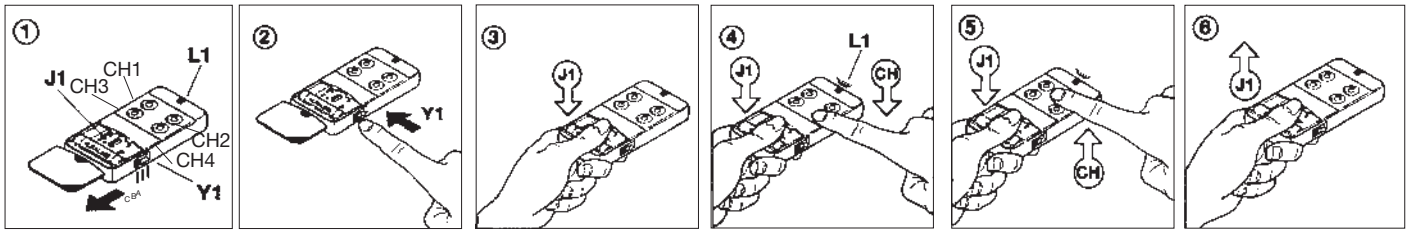

RC200

Technical Binder © 2020

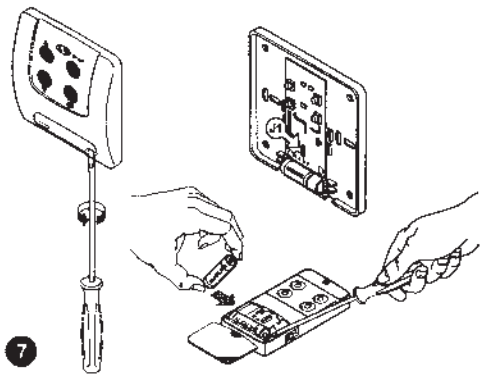
SIMU

RC 200 RF Remote Control
Receiver/Motor Controller (Continued)

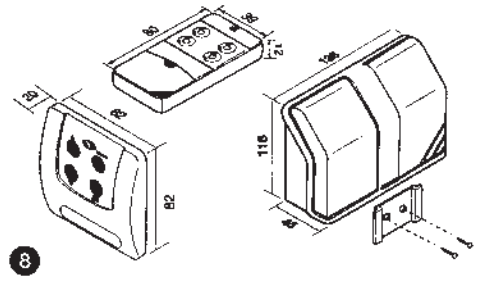
SETTING THE TRANSMITTER CODE



BATTERY REPLACEMENT



EXTERNAL DIMENSIONS



PROGRAMMING

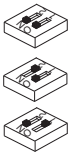
SETTING CODES IN THE TRANSMITTERS (Fig. 1-6)

1) Open the access door (Fig. 1)
2) (Only on 12 channel transmitter) Select block of channels with ABC slide switch Y1 (Fig.2)
   Y1 in position A = channels 1-4
   Y1 in position B = channels 5-8
   Y1 in position C = channels 9-12
3) Press button J1 (Fig3)
4) While holding down button J1, press one of the transmitter buttons CH and the light L1 will start flashing (Fig 4.)
5) Release the transmitter button CH and the light L1 will continue flashing (Fig5)
6) Release the button J1 and the light will go out (Fig 6) That transmitter button CH now has its code programmed.
7) Repeat steps 3-4-5-6 for each of the buttons CH on the transmitter.
8) If using a 12 channel transmitter (4 buttons CH and ABC slide switch Y1), repeat steps 2-3-4-5-6-7 with the slide switch Y1 in each position. (A-B-C)

Dipswitch SW1 functions (Fig. 9)

MEMORIZING TRANSMITTER CODES WITH THE RECEIVER

IMPORTANT: It is recommended for the receiver memory to be cleared before memorizing transmitter codes for the first time. Press buttons P1 and P2 simultaneously for 5 seconds until led LD flashes rapidly.



DIP1 ON / DIP2 ON
Memorized code control in sequencing function.
OPEN-STOP-CLOSE-STOP-OPEN.....

DIP1 ON / DIP2 OFF
Memorized code will give up command

DIP1 OFF / DIP2 ON
Memorized code will give down command

1) Using SW1 select the function to be associated with that button on the transmitter. (ON/ON) Is standard for individual control.
2) Press button P1 and the LED labeled LD will start to flash
3) While holding down button P1, bring the transmitter within 6 inches of the receiver and press the transmitter button CH you wish the receiver to memorize. The LED LD will flash faster
4) Release the transmitter button CH and the receiver button P1. The receiver has memorized the code for that button on the transmitter.
5) Repeat steps 1-2-3-4 for all other transmitter buttons you wish the receiver to memorize.
6) When finished programming the receiver move both dipswitches on SW1 to the off position.

* If the receiver will not memorize a code it could be due to:
- The memory is full (24 codes memorized) and led LD remains lit. If this is the case, a new code can be memorized only after one is erased or the whole memory is cleared. (See "ERASING RECEIVER MEMORY BELOW)
- The code is already in memory
- You have not generated a code for that transmitter button. (See "SETTING CODES IN TRANSMITTERS" ABOVE)

ERASING RECEIVER MEMORY

To erase a single transmitter button code from receiver memory
1) Press and hold button P2 and the led LD will flash slowly
2) Press the button of the receiver you wish to erase and hold for 3 seconds until led LD flashes faster. The code is erased.
3) Repeat steps 1 and 2 for each button on all receivers you want to erase from the receiver's memory.

To erase the entire memory of a receiver
1) press and hold buttons P1 and P2 for at least 5 seconds until led LD flashes rapidly. The whole memory is cleared.

Run time programming (SW1)



DIP1 OFF / DIP2 OFF
Run time programming

- move the door/shutter to the completely closed position;
- press and hold down the MEMO button for 4 seconds: release the button when the LED starts to flash;
- press the MEMO button once, within 10 s, to start the opening manoeuvre; when the door/shutter has stopped in the completely open position, wait for 2-3 seconds and then press the button again to memorise the run time; this completes the program function and the LED will switch off;

NOTE: during programming the photoelectric cells are ignored and the LED will flash rapidly indicating that the run time is being counted.

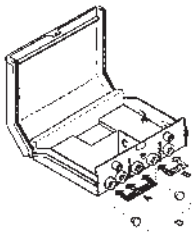
- The maximum programmable run time is **120 seconds**.

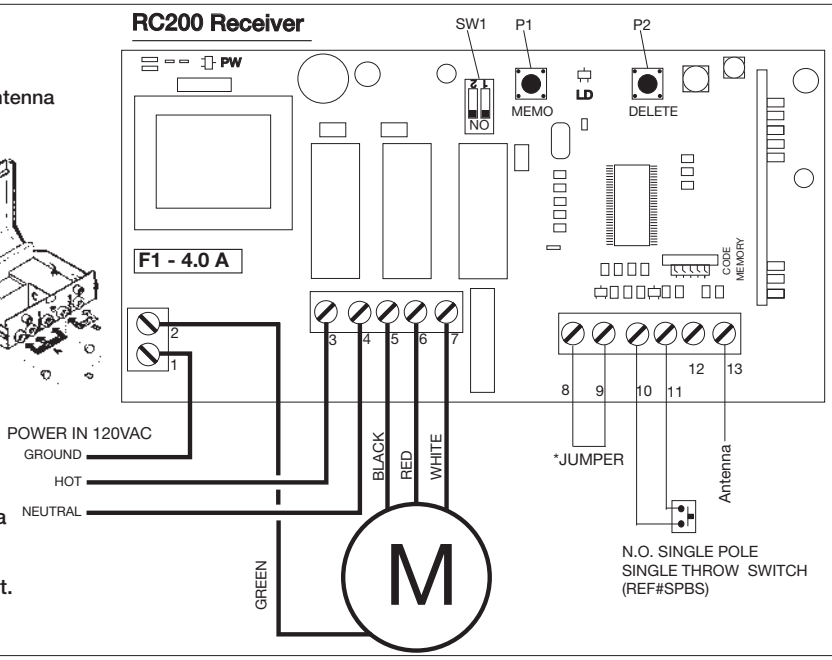
WIRING DIAGRAM (fig. 9)

A: Entry holes for 120VAC
B: Entry holes for low voltage wiring and antenna
D: Hole plugs
PW: Power light
SW : Function selection switch
P1: Memorize button
LD: Signal LED
P2: Delete button
1: Ground (Green)
2: Ground (Green)
3: Hot 120VAC
4: Neutral
5: Direction 1 (Black)
6: Direction 2 (Red)
7: Common (White)
*8&9: N. C. Reversing Sensor
10&11: Remote Override Switch (SPBS)
12: Coax Antenna Connection (not supplied)
13: Standard Antenna (supplied with unit)

* NOTE: If you are not using a safety device a jumper wire must be connected to terminals 8 & 9.

Do not cut antenna wire supplied with this unit.





Safety Sensing Beams with RC 200 Receiver

LINE	MODEL	SERIES	LIT DATE
(X) 200	RC200	S435	01-01-2001

NOTE: This equipment LH8TX-S435 and LH8RP-S435 has been tested and found to comply with limits for a class B digital device, according to part 15 of FCC rules.
These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference to radio communications.
However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is advised to try and correct the situation by taking one or more of the following measures:

D Reorientate the receiving device
A Increase the distance between the equipment and the receiver
S Connect the equipment to a socket which is on a different branch circuit than the receiver
S Consult your dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help

Description

The (X) 200 radio control system consists of one or more transmitters and one or more receivers which can be combined to meet the specific needs of a wide variety of systems.
The (X) 200 control has a highly reliable and **secure rolling code** system that uses an algorithm to recognize only specific variations of the original transmitted code. The receiver is able to memorize **24 different codes in its non volatile memory.** This allows a receiver to be activated by multiple transmitters.

Use

The (x) 200 radio control can be used with Type 3.5, Type 5 and Type 6 120VAC SIMU motors. One RC200 is required for each motor unless used with SIMU group control relays (RI2, RI3, and GI2). Each RC200 receiver can be controlled individually from 1 channel (1 button on a transmitter) when the code is programmed into the RC200 in sequencing mode (open-stop-close-stop..). using dip switch SW1(on/on). Groups of RC200 receivers can be controlled together by programming one button as an open for all receivers in a group using dip switch SW1 (on/off) and one button on the transmitter as close using dip switch SW1 (off/on).

Transmitters

TRAN202	Two channel transmitter	2 Buttons
TRAN204	Four channel transmitter	4 Buttons
TRAN212	Twelve channel transmitter	4 Buttons and A-B-C slide switch
TRANWS200	Four channel wall-switch transmitter	4 Buttons

Receivers

RC200	Motor control receiver in surface external box
RC210	Motor control receiver recessable in plastic 3 gang switch box (interior only)
RC201	12/24VDC 2 channel dry contact output receiver

Installation

The receiver bracket should be mounted to the wall with the included screws. The receiver can then be slid onto the bracket. If mounted in an exposed location, the receiver must be mounted with holes marked A and B (see fig. 9) facing down. Receivers should not be mounted within 5 feet of each other. Do not mount the receiver in a metal box, near metal, or near EMI sources. It is recommended that the range of the unit be tested before permanently wiring the receiver. If range is poor, often relocating the receiver by a few feet can drastically improve the reception. If the receiver must be installed in a metal box or located in a remote location, the antenna can be remotely located. Connect the shield of a coaxial cable to terminal 12 and the center conductor to terminal 13. Run the cable to a clear location near where the transmitter will be used and strip the shielding off the last 17cm (exact length of antenna supplied with unit)

Electrical connections

- **IMPORTANT: For installation by a qualified electrician in accordance with local electrical codes.**
- **CAUTION: RISK OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK.** Disconnect power before installing.
- High voltage 120VAC wires must pass through the holes marked "A" (see fig. 9)
- Low voltage wires must pass through the holes marked "B" (see fig. 9) and must be routed separately from the high voltage wires.

Terminals

1-2 Ground (Motor Green)
3 Hot 120 VAC 60HZ
4 Neutral
5 Motor direction 1 (Motor Black)
6 Motor direction 2 (Motor Red)
7 Motor common (Motor White)
8-9 N.C. low voltage input for safety device. Jumper must be installed if safety device not used
10-11 N.O. low voltage input with sequencing function (open-stop-close-stop-open...) for single throw, single pole low voltage switch (Ref# SPBS.W)
12 Antenna ground
13 Antenna connection for 17cm wire supplied with receiver. The antenna can be remotely located using 50 Ohm coaxial cable as described above in "Installation"

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Receiver

- Reception frequency.....433.92MHz
- Local emission.....<2nW
- Antenna input impedance.....50 Ohms
- Sensitivity.....1uV
- Power supply.....120VAC 50-60Hz
- Operating temperature range.....-20 C...+60 C

Transmitter

- Carrier frequency.....433.92MHz
- Carrier frequency tolerance.....+75MHz
- Band width.....>25kHz
- Power supply (alkaline battery GP23A).....12V+10%
- Maximum power consumption.....25mA
- Operating temperature range.....-10 C...+55 C

Troubleshooting

Problem: No response from the receiver
Solutions if led PW is off - Check fuse
- Confirm that 120VAC is supplied to terminals 3 and 4

Soultions if led PW is on - Confirm that the receiver code has been memorized (see MEMORIZING TRANSMITTER CODES WITH THE RECEIVER on reverse side of this page)
- Make sure you have generated a code for that button on the transmitter (see SETTING CODES IN THE TRANSMITTERS on the reverse side of this page)

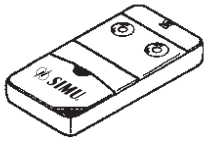
Problem: Receiver only switches in one direction
Solutions - Make sure the jumper is in terminals 8-9 if no safety device is used.
- If the jumper is in terminals 8-9 and the receiver still switches in just one direction, the transmitter code may have been memorized as either an up or down signal. Delete the transmitter's code from the receiver memory (see ERRASING RECEIVER MEMORY on the reverse side of this page). Then with dip switch 1 and 2 on, have the receiver memorize the transmitter's code again (see MEMORIZING TRANSMITTER CODES WITH THE RECEIVER on the reverse side of this page)
- Check limit settings on the motor.

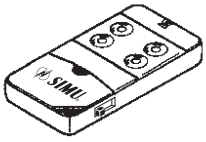
Problem: Motor stops/receiver turns off before the motor reaches the limit.
Solution - The timed run on the receiver is set too low. Increase the run time by following the instructions in the paragraph "Run time programming (SW1) on page 2.

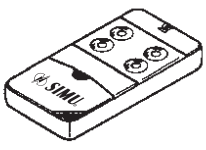
Problem: The receiver will not memorize a code from a button on the transmitter
Solutions - Make sure the transmitter has generated a code for that button (see SETTING CODES IN THE TRANSMITTER on the reverse side of this page)
- If the led LD is on continuosly, the receiver memory is full (has 24 codes memorized). Delete some of the codes (see ERASING RECEIVER MEMORY on the reverse side of this page)

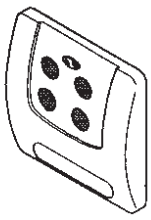
Problem: Range is poor
Solutions - Make sure the receiver is as far as possible from other receivers, metal objects, EMI sources (floresent lights, transformers, computers, etc...) Try the receiver in different locations if possible before hard wiring.
- If the receiver is mounted in a metal enclosure or in a remote location from where the transmitters will be used with metal or other dense material in the line of sight, the receiver's antenna can be remotely located nearer to the area the transmitters will be used in (see Installation on this page).

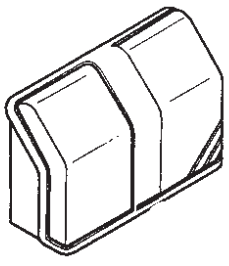
SIMU U.S Inc.,
6100 Broken Sound Parkway N.W., #14
Boca Raton, FL 33487
Phone: 561-995-0335 FAX: 561-995-7502


TRAN202


TRAN212


TRAN204


TRANWS200

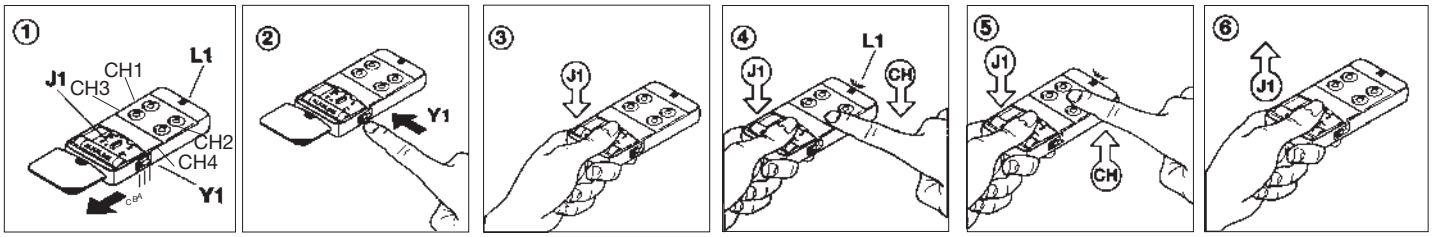

RC200

Technical Binder © 2020

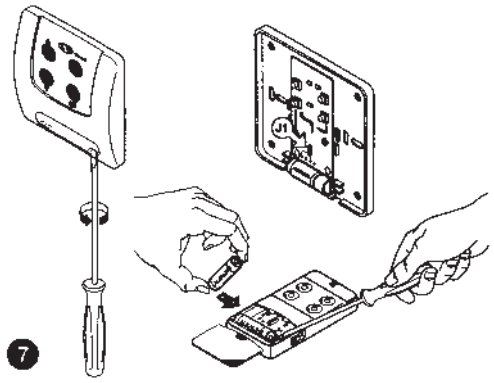
SIMU®

Safety Sensing Beams with RC 200 Receiver (Continued)

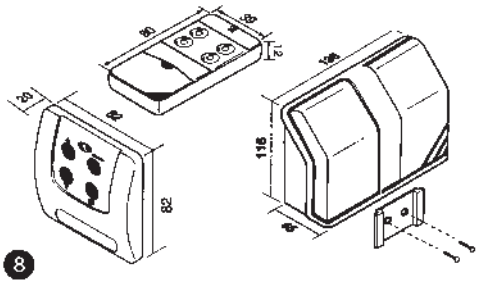
SETTING THE TRANSMITTER CODE



BATTERY REPLACEMENT



EXTERNAL DIMENSIONS



PROGRAMMING

SETTING CODES IN THE TRANSMITTERS (Fig. 1-6)

1) Open the access door (Fig. 1)
2) (Only on 12 channel transmitter) Select block of channels with ABC slide switch Y1 (Fig.2)
   Y1 in position A = channels 1-4
   Y1 in position B = channels 5-8
   Y1 in position C = channels 9-12
3) Press button J1 (Fig3)
4) While holding down button J1, press one of the transmitter buttons CH and the light L1 will start flashing (Fig 4.)
5) Release the transmitter button CH and the light L1 will continue flashing (Fig5)
6) Release the button J1 and the light will go out (Fig 6) That transmitter button CH now has its code programmed.
7) Repeat steps 3-4-5-6 for each of the buttons CH on the transmitter.
8) If using a 12 channel transmitter (4 buttons CH and ABC slide switch Y1), repeat steps 2-3-4-5-6-7 with the slide switch Y1 in each position. (A-B-C)

Dipswitch SW1 functions (Fig. 9)

MEMORIZING TRANSMITTER CODES WITH THE RECEIVER

IMPORTANT: It is recommended for the receiver memory to be cleared before memorizing transmitter codes for the first time. Press buttons P1 and P2 simultaneously for 5 seconds until led LD flashes rapidly.



DIP1 ON / DIP2 ON
Memorized code control in sequencing function.
OPEN-STOP-CLOSE-STOP-OPEN.....



DIP1 ON / DIP2 OFF
Memorized code will give up command



DIP1 OFF / DIP2 ON
Memorized code will give down command

1) Using SW1 select the function to be associated with that button on the transmitter. (ON/ON) Is standard for individual control.
2) Press button P1 and the LED labeled LD will start to flash
3) While holding down button P1, bring the transmitter within 6 inches of the receiver and press the transmitter button CH you wish the receiver to memorize. The LED LD will flash faster
4) Release the transmitter button CH and the receiver button P1. The receiver has memorized the code for that button on the transmitter.
5) Repeat steps 1-2-3-4 for all other transmitter buttons you wish the receiver to memorize.
6) When finished programming the receiver move both dipswitches on SW1 to the off position.

* If the receiver will not memorize a code it could be due to:
  - The memory is full (24 codes memorized) and led LD remains lit. If this is the case, a new code can be memorized only after one is erased or the whole memory is cleared. (See "ERASING RECEIVER MEMORY BELOW)
  - The code is already in memory
  - You have not generated a code for that transmitter button. (See "SETTING CODES IN TRANSMITTERS" ABOVE)

ERASING RECEIVER MEMORY

To erase a single transmitter button code from receiver memory
1) Press and hold button P2 and the led LD will flash slowly
2) Press the button of the receiver you wish to erase and hold for 3 seconds until led LD flashes faster. The code is erased.
3) Repeat steps 1 and 2 for each button on all receivers you want to erase from the receiver's memory.

To erase the entire memory of a receiver
1) press and hold buttons P1 and P2 for at least 5 seconds until led LD flashes rapidly. The whole memory is cleared.

Run time programming (SW1)



DIP1 OFF / DIP2 OFF
Run time programming

- move the door/shutter to the completely closed position;
- press and hold down the MEMO button for 4 seconds: release the button when the LED starts to flash;
- press the MEMO button once, within 10 s, to start the opening manoeuvre; when the door/shutter has stopped in the completely open position, wait for 2-3 seconds and then press the button again to memorise the run time; this completes the program function and the LED will switch off;

NOTE: during programming the photoelectric cells are ignored and the LED will flash rapidly indicating that the run time is being counted.

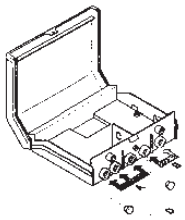
- The maximum programmable run time is **120 seconds**.

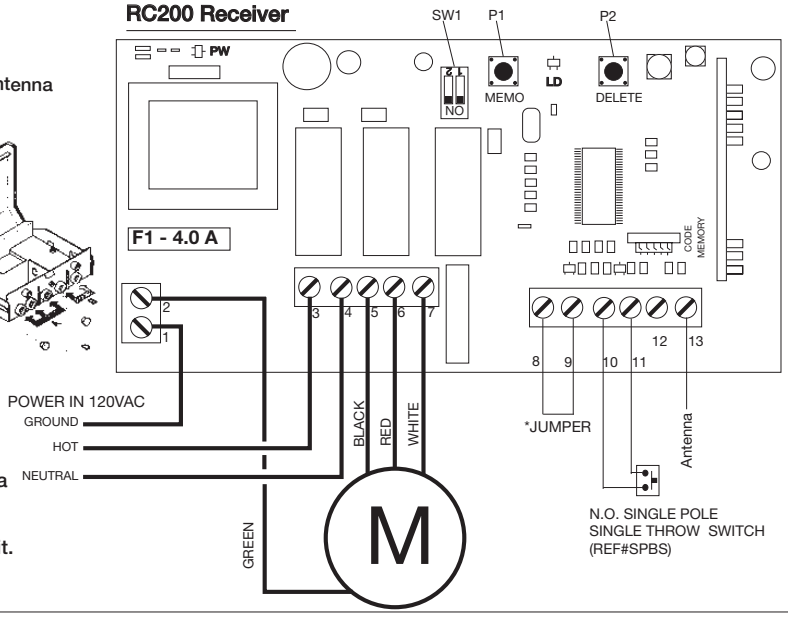
WIRING DIAGRAM (fig. 9)

A: Entry holes for 120VAC
B: Entry holes for low voltage wiring and antenna
D: Hole plugs
PW: Power light
SW : Function selection switch
P1: Memorize button
LD: Signal LED
P2: Delete button
1: Ground (Green)
2: Ground (Green)
3: Hot 120VAC
4: Neutral
5: Direction 1 (Black)
6: Direction 2 (Red)
7: Common (White)
*8&9: N. C. Reversing Sensor
10&11: Remote Override Switch (SPBS)
12: Coax Antenna Connection (not supplied)
13: Standard Antenna (supplied with unit)

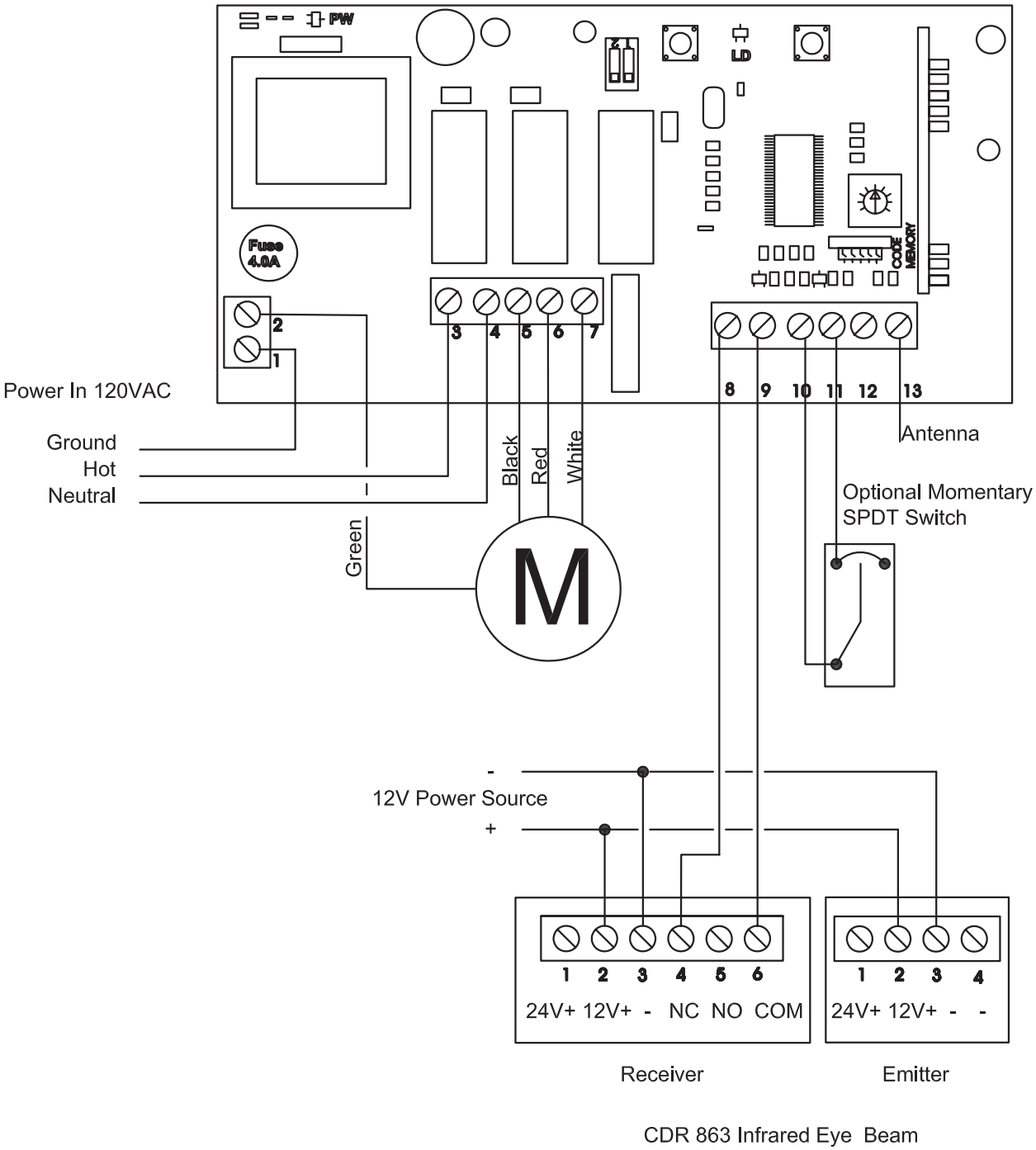
* NOTE: If you are not using a safety device a jumper wire must be connected to terminals 8 & 9.

Do not cut antenna wire supplied with this unit.





Safety Sensing Beams with RC 200 Receiver (Continued)

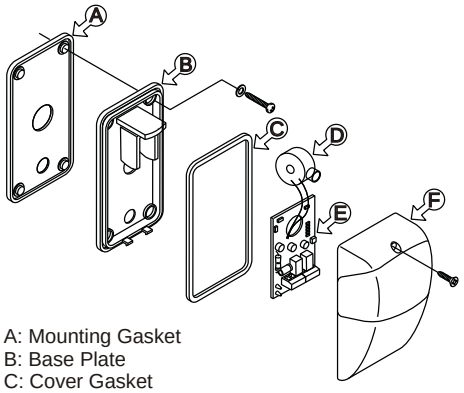


CDR 863 Infrared Eye Beam

Technical Binder © 2020

Safety Sensing Beams with RC 200 Receiver (Continued)

ASSEMBLY



A: Mounting Gasket
B: Base Plate
C: Cover Gasket
D: Adjustable Optic
E: Control Board
F: Cover with Optic Window

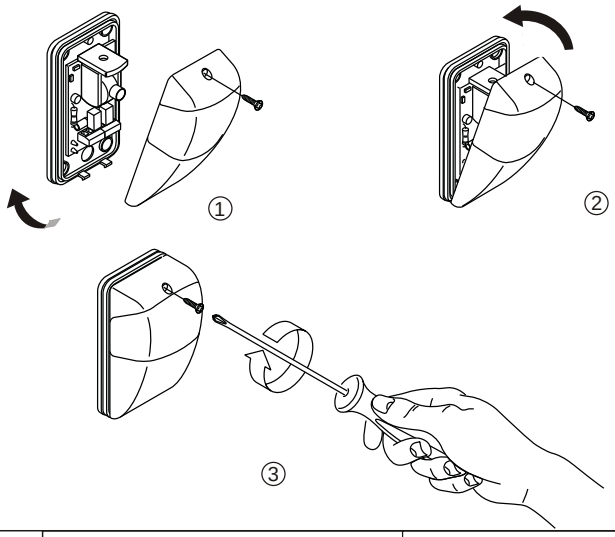


Fig. 1

DIMENSIONS

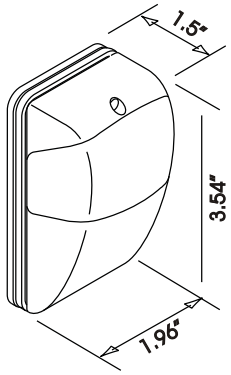


Fig. 2

CONNECTIONS

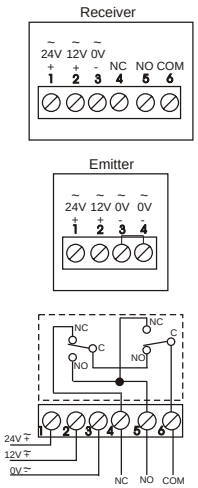


Fig. 3

TEST POINT

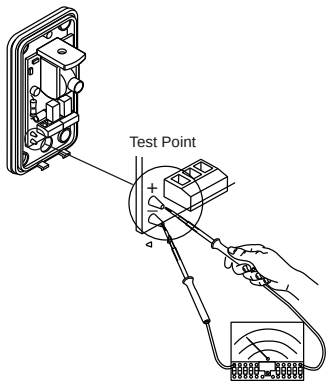


Fig. 4

ALIGNMENT

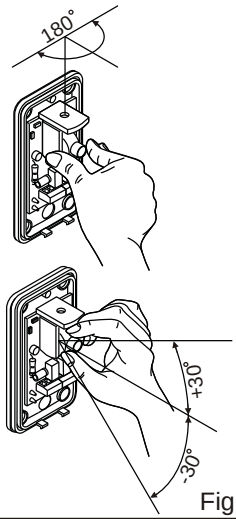


Fig. 5

Description
The CDR863 is an outdoor/indoor photoelectric beam and can be used with the SMC to control a tubular motor covering passage way up to 30' outdoors and 45' indoors.

Mounting (Fig. 1)
1) Using the template on the lid of the box, mark the position of the transmitter and receiver and install gasket (A) and the mounting plate (B) in the desired locations using the four #6 flat head wood screws. When mounting to other than wood surfaces use the appropriate anchors.
2) Run the wires through the hole in the gasket and mounting plate and into the unit.

Wiring and Calibration
WARNING: DO NOT APPLY POWER UNTIL ALL CONNECTIONS HAVE BEEN MADE!
1) Connect wires as shown on page one of this addendum.
2) Power the units. The red LED on the transmitter will light. The red LED on the receiver will light only if the optic eyes are not aligned
3) Align the eyes using a DC voltage meter on the test point (Fig. 4). The meter should read 0.9V or higher when aligned.
4) Seal the wire holes using the supplied rubber plugs. Install the cover and secure with supplied screws (Fig. 1 a,b,c)
5) Test the function. Note: If the eye causes the door to lower instead of raise, reverse the red and black motor leads.

Technical Specifications

Optical

Range: (outdoors)	up to 30 ft.
(indoors)	up to 45 ft.
Transmitter beam width:	6 degrees (typical)
Receiver field of view:	6 degrees (typical)
Adjustment Vertical:	+/- 30 degrees
Horizontal:	180 degrees

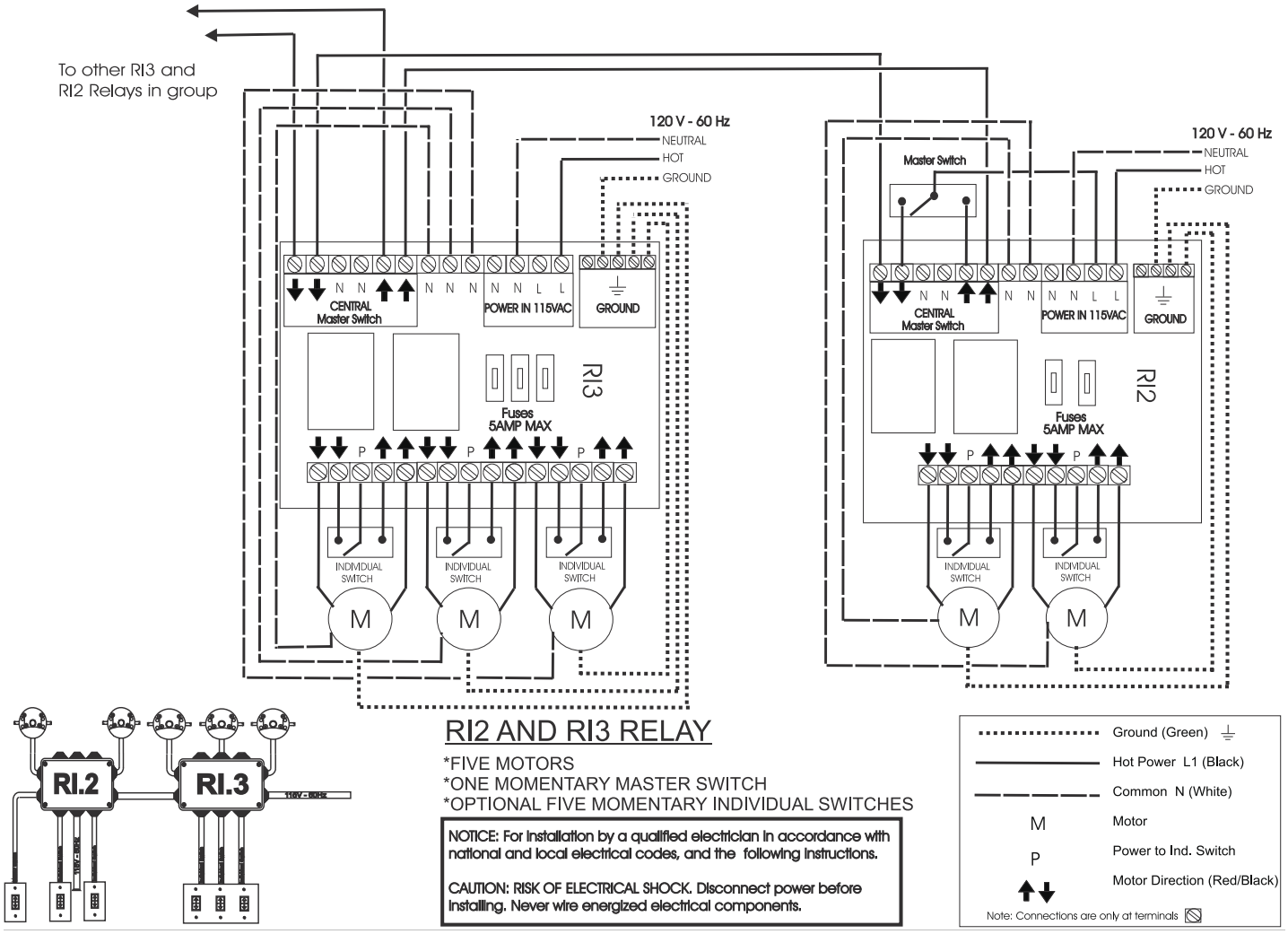
Electrical

Voltage:	12 or 24 VAC/VDC ± 10%
Current consumption @ 12V:	23mA (rest) 65mA (active)
Current consumption @ 24V:	29mA (rest) 68mA (active)
Relay:	Form C (Com, NO, NC) Relay drop out with loss of power Contacts rated 60VA @ 24VDC/VAC Max 30VDC/VDC
Infrared source:	Double Gallium Arsenide LEDs
Transmitter frequency:	4.7 kHz
IR wavelength:	950 nm

Environmental

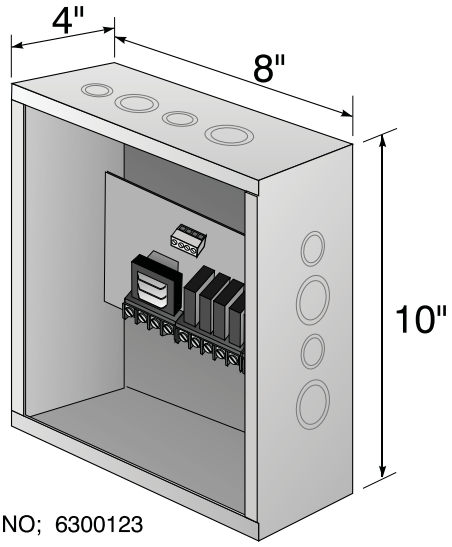
Operating temperature:	14 to 131 degrees F (-10 to +55 degrees C)

Group Control
R12 & R13



SOMFY

Group Control System - II



CAT. NO; 6300123

DESCRIPTION

The Group Control System - II (GCS-II) permits low voltage control of up to four Somfy operators with one or more switches, from one or more locations. Optional low voltage control can be accomplished using Somfy's Decorator Somfy-Matic or Radio Remote Control Kit. The GCS-II offers only group control, and does not have the capability of operating each motor individually. The Group Control System - II is UL and cUL approved.

LOW VOLTAGE CONNECTIONS

TELEPHONE CONNECTOR

SENSORS CONNECTION

12 VDC | WIND | SUN

LOW VOLTAGE SWITCH CONNECTION

UP | DOWN | COMMON

1. Using no larger than 18 gauge wire, connect a low voltage switch to the terminal block using UP, DOWN, and COMMON connectors.
2. If used, connect the sun or wind sensor to the appropriate terminal block as indicated. The blue wire goes to +12 VDC and the brown to the sensor input.
3. Using 6 conductor modular cable, connect from the GCS-II to a Comfort Control, Intellis or other control via the RJ11 modular connector

LINE VOLTAGE CONNECTIONS

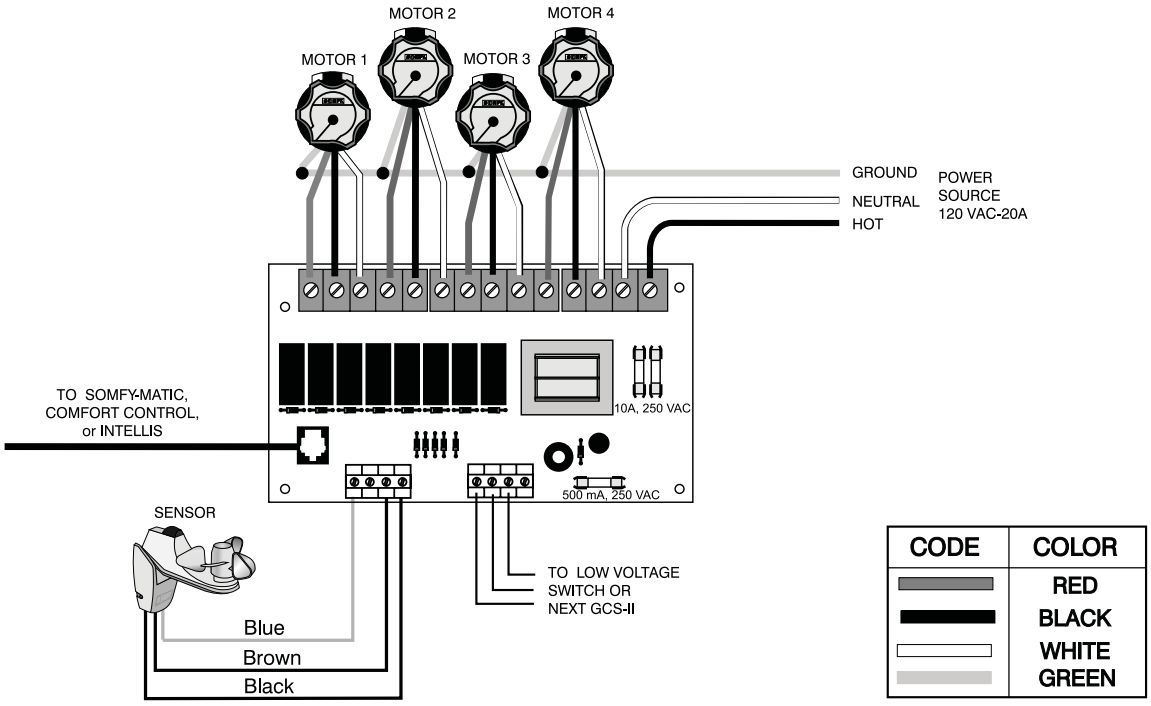
Connect Motor & Power Cables to the Terminal Block as illustrated.
Line Voltage installation MUST comply with local and NEC codes.

UP1	DOWN1	NEUT1	UP2	DOWN2	NEUT2	UP3	DOWN3	NEUT3	UP4	DOWN4	NEUT4	NEUT	HOT

POWER	MOTOR	TERMINAL BLOCK
BLACK		HOT
WHITE	WHITE	NEUT, NEUT1, NEUT2, NEUT3, or NEUT4
GREEN	GREEN	
	RED	UP1, UP2, UP3, or UP4
	BLACK	DOWN1, DOWN2, DOWN3, or DOWN4

CAUTION: Before proceeding with the line voltage wiring instructions, the up and down limits of each motor should be set using the Somfy tester cable (Cat. No. 6020086). Refer to the limit switch instructions packaged with each Somfy motor for more information.

Group Control System - II (Continued)



OPERATING PROCEDURES

FOR USE WITH SWITCH

1. Wire a momentary low voltage switch to the terminal block as explained on the previous page
2. Pressing UP or DOWN will activate the appropriate direction. If any of the motors do not move in the correct direction, turn off the circuit breakers and reverse the red and black wires at the corresponding motor.
3. The motors will operate for the duration the switch is on. With the switch in the center position, the motors will stop.

FOR USE WITH SOMFY-MATIC

1. Using appropriate length modular cable, connect from the modular connector on the GCS-II to the IGC/GCS connector on the Somfy-Matic (or Comfort Control).
2. Connect the sun and/or wind sensor to the appropriate terminal block. Connect the sensors at only one location (either Somfy-Matic or GCS-II), not both.
3. The Somfy-Matic will control all four motors as explained in the Somfy-Matic instructions.

SOMFY CANADA
6315 Shawson Drive, Unit #1
Mississauga, Ontario L5T1J2

SOMFY SYSTEMS, INC.
47 Commerce Drive
Cranbury, NJ 08512

SOMFY MEXICO S.A. De C.V.
Calle 3 No.47, Loc.E-5
Fracc Ind. Alce Blanco
Nau.,Edo. de Mex C.P. 53370,Mex

© SOMFY SYSTEMS, INC. 12/03

SOMFY SYSTEMS, INC. reserves the right to change, update or improve this document without prior notice.

Ref. # 2500765B

SOMFY

Universal RTS Receiver

DESCRIPTION



Part No.: 1810627

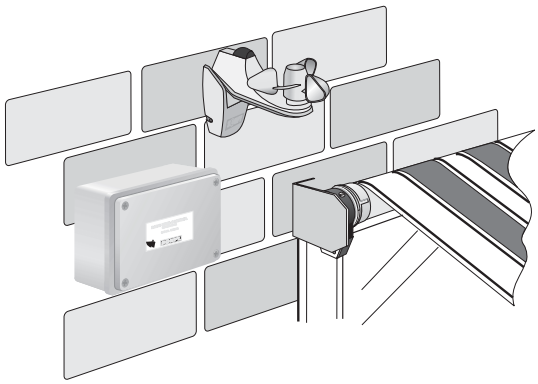
The SOMFY Universal Receiver provides RTS capability to Somfy's standard motors. It can be used stand-alone as a radio control, or with Somfy's RTS sensors for sun and wind control. Used with the Eolis Sensor RTS, wireless wind protection of a retractable awning is possible. If sun protection is also desired, simply use the Soliris Sensor RTS. Two user-defined intermediate positions can be programmed. This control is packaged in a weatherproof enclosure and includes watertight strain-relief fittings for wires entering the box.

INSTALLATION PROCEDURES

1. The Universal Receiver should be mounted as close to the motor as possible. If mounted outside, ensure that the connections are facing down to avoid rain seepage. Avoid mounting the control against any metallic surface, as this may affect radio reception.

2. Connect high voltage wires according to the wiring diagram on the next page. Make sure to use included watertight strain relief fittings to maintain the weatherproofing of the enclosure.

3. If used, the RTS sensor should be placed close to the awning or shading system to make sure the wind speed or sun intensity is measured at the product. Guard against installing the wind sensor too close to an obstruction such as a chimney, gutter or the window covering itself, which could block the wind and cause erroneous sensor readings. The sensor should also not be mounted in the shade or be obstructed by trees, to ensure accurate sunlight readings.



PROGRAMMING PROCEDURES

RECORDING THE INTERMEDIATE POSITION FROM THE TOP OF THE WINDOW TREATMENT
- Bring the window treatment to its upper limit using the Telis transmitter. Press the DOWN and MY buttons simultaneously until the awning begins to move, then release.
- Stop the window treatment at the intermediate position desired. Press the MY button for 2 seconds to memorize that position.

RECORDING THE INTERMEDIATE POSITION FROM THE BOTTOM OF THE WINDOW TREATMENT
- Bring the motorized treatment to its lower limit. Press the UP and MY buttons simultaneously until the awning begins to move, then release.
- Stop the window treatment at the position desired. Press the MY button for 2 seconds to memorize that position.

DELETING AN INTERMEDIATE POSITION
- Briefly press the MY button of the Telis transmitter to reach the desired intermediate position.
- Continue to press the MY button for 10 seconds until the programming LED on the Centralis Receiver stops blinking. That position is now deleted.

TO ADD A NEW TRANSMITTER or SENSOR TO THE MEMORY OF THE RECEIVER
- Press the programming button, for more than 2 seconds, on a transmitter that is already memorized by the Universal Receiver to wake up the receiver. The programming LED on the Receiver will blink, and the motor will jog. Press the programming button on the new transmitter or sensor to attach it to the Universal Receiver. The programming LED on the receiver will light and the motor will jog indicating the transmitter or sensor is memorized.

TO REMOVE A TRANSMITTER or SENSOR FROM THE MEMORY OF THE RECEIVER
- Press the programming button, for more than 2 seconds, on a transmitter that is already memorized by the Universal Receiver to wake up the receiver. The programming LED on the Receiver will blink, and the motor will jog. Press the programming button on the transmitter or sensor you want to remove from memory. the programming LED on the receiver will light and the motor will jog indicating that transmitter or sensor will no longer operate the Universal Receiver.

TO REMOVE ALL TRANSMITTERS or SENSORS FROM THE MEMORY OF THE RECEIVER
- Press and hold the programming button of the Unviersal Receiver for more than 7 seconds until the LED blinks and the motor jogs twice. This removes ALL memorized transmitters or sensors.

SOMFY CANADA
6315 Shawson Drive, Unit #1
Mississauga, Ontario L5T1J2

SOMFY SYSTEMS, INC.
47 Commerce Drive
Cranbury, NJ 08512

SOMFY SYSTEMS, INC. reserves the right to change, update or improve this document without prior notice.

REF. NO: 25006270

© SOMFY SYSTEMS, INC. 7/07

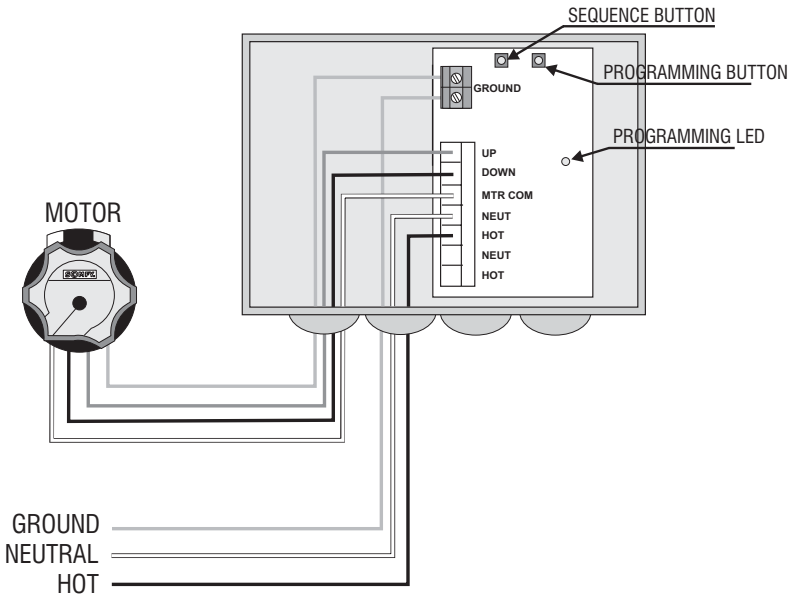
Universal RTS Receiver (Continued)

WIRING DIAGRAM

COLOR CODE

BLACK	
RED	
GREEN	
WHITE	

CAUTION:
Mount control with fittings facing downward!



OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

System Set Up

1. With power off, wire the Universal Receiver as indicated above. Turn all circuit breakers on (motors should not move).
2. The motor can be tested using the Sequence button located on the Universal Receiver board. Each press of the switch will sequence through the directions as follows;

DEPRESS 1 UP DIRECTION
DEPRESS 2 STOP
DEPRESS 3 DOWN DIRECTION
DEPRESS 4 STOP

3. Set the Universal Receiver into programming mode by pressing the programming button until the LED lights (about 2 seconds). The motor will jog.
4. Press the programming button on the Telis transmitter or RTS sensor to be memorized. The programming LED will blink and the motor will jog indicating the device has been memorized.
5. Operate the motor in the DOWN direction using the radio transmitter.
6. The motorized treatment should move down or out. If this is incorrect, turn off the circuit breakers and reverse the red and black wires of the motor. FAILURE TO CORRECT THIS ERROR WILL CAUSE DAMAGE TO AWNING BY EXTENDING IT DURING WINDY CONDITIONS.

Operating Procedures

REMOTE ONLY CONTROL

1. Pressing the UP button on the Telis transmitter will move the window treatment up or in. The DOWN button will move the treatment down or out.
2. To stop the motorized treatment at any time, press the MY button on the transmitter.
3. To reach one of the intermediate positions, the window treatment must first be stopped at the upper or lower limit. Pressing the MY button on the transmitter will move the window treatment to the dedicated position.

WIND ONLY OPERATION

4. If wind monitoring is desired, an Eolis Sensor RTS or Eolis Wirefree must first be memorized into the receiver. Press the programming button on the receiver until the LED blinks and the motor jogs. Press the programming button on the bottom of the sensor. The programming LED on the receiver will light and the motor will jog, indicating the sensor has been memorized.
5. Set the desired wind speed on the sensor as specified in the product's operating instructions.
6. When the monitored wind speed is greater than the setting, the UP direction will activate after 2 seconds. As long as the wind speed remains high, all other commands will be ignored.
7. When the wind speed drops below the set value, a manual command can be given with the radio transmitter after only one minute.

SUN and WIND OPERATION

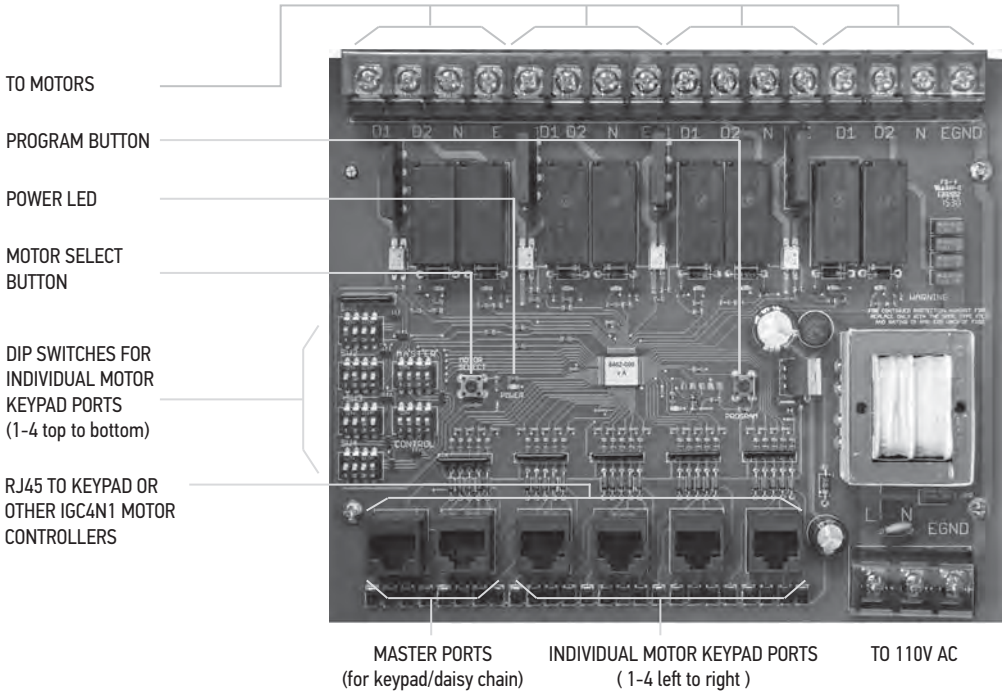
8. If sun and wind monitoring is desired, a Soliris Sensor RTS or combination Eolis Wirefree and Sunis must first be memorized into the receiver. Press the programming button on the receiver until the LED blinks and the motor jogs. Press the programming button on the sensor. The programming LED on the receiver will light and the motor will jog, indicating the sensor has been memorized.
9. Set the desired wind speed and sun intensity on the sensor as specified in the product's operating instructions.
10. When the monitored wind speed is greater than the setting, the UP direction will activate after 2 seconds. As long as the wind speed remains high, all other commands will be ignored.
11. When the measured sun intensity is greater than the set level, a DOWN command is given after a 2 minute delay, assuming no wind is present. If the upper intermediate position is set, the awning or shade will go to that position. Otherwise, it will go to the lower limit.
12. When the sun intensity falls below the set level, the awning will retract automatically after a 15 - 30 minute delay, assuming no wind present.

SOMFY®

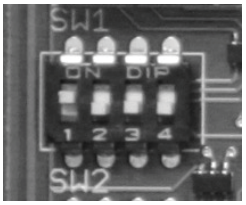
IGC 4N1 Motor Controller with Dry Contact Interface

IGC4N1 Motor Controller (4 motors)
Part No. 1811416

Connections and Indicators



MOTORS 1-4
FROM LEFT TO RIGHT
(UP = ON)

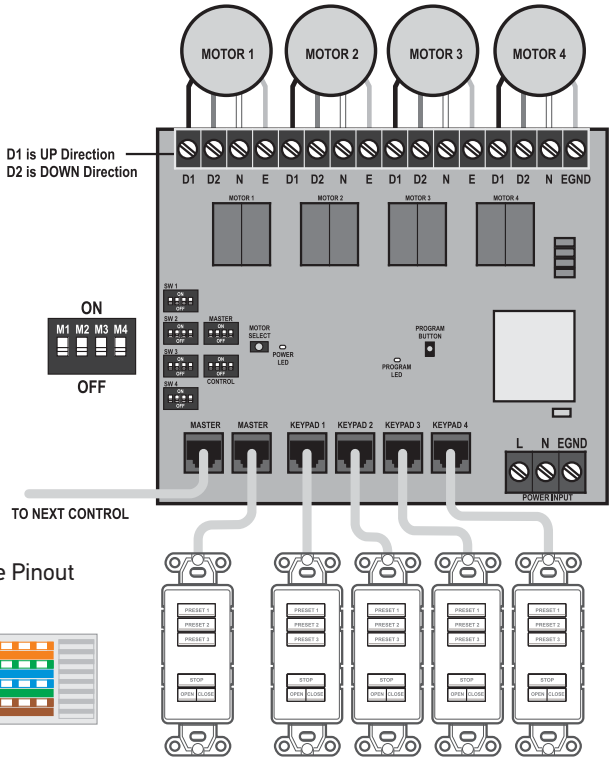


Initial Setup

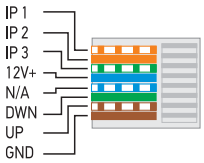
NOTE: Before installing the IGC 4n1, all motors must be operating properly with their limits set. Please note that maximum direction run time is 3 minutes.

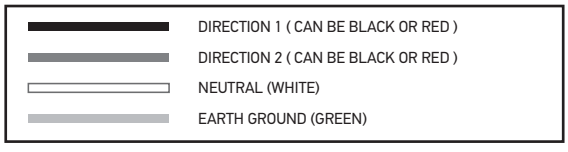
Wiring Instructions

1. Connect power and motors to the board (following wiring diagram at right). Only 1 motor per terminal.
2. When motors are properly wired and power is applied to the board, the POWER LED will illuminate solid green and the motors will move to their upper limit.
    a. NOTE: if motors move to the lower limit, the wires are reversed. Disconnect power from the board and reverse the wires from the motor(s) moving in the wrong direction.



CAT 5e Pinout





IGC 4N1 Motor Controller with Dry Contact Interface (Continued)

Set Keypad Group Control

NOTE: motors must be stopped before setting keypad groups.

1. Set the DIP switches to the corresponding keypad inputs by moving them up to the "ON" position.
   a. NOTE: There is a single dip switch that configures both Master Ports.
2. Once settings have been chosen, press and hold the MOTOR SELECT button until the POWER LED turns off, then release. The POWER LED will illuminate solid green.

Setting Default Motor Intermediate Positions

NOTE: motors must be stopped before setting intermediate positions.

1. Press and hold the PROGRAM button until the PROGRAM LED illuminates solid green, then release.
2. Connected motors will move first to the upper limit, then to the lower limit and back to the upper limit. Once programming is complete the PROGRAM LED will turn off. Default intermediate positions (25%, 50%, 75%) are now set.
3. Connect keypad(s) to inputs using appropriate Cat5e cable (not included).
4. Confirm operation by pressing each preset button on the keypad(s).
   a. NOTE: The STOP button on the keypad activates when the button is released. If the STOP button is pressed and released when the motor is stopped, the shade will move to intermediate position 2.
   b. NOTE: If power is lost or turned off, all shades will move to their upper limit when power is reapplied.

Setting Custom Intermediate Positions

1. Complete "Setting Default Motor Intermediate Positions" steps.
2. Using the keypad connected to the motor(s) you wish to control, using the UP and DOWN buttons, adjust the window covering to the desired new intermediate position.
3. Press and hold the preset button you wish to reprogram with the new intermediate position until the motor(s) jogs.
   a. NOTE: If a motor with custom intermediate position needs to be replaced, all motor(s) custom intermediate positions will be reset.

Daisy-Chaining Multiple Controllers

1. All controllers must have their limits fully set.
2. Configure the Master DIP switches to control desired motor(s).
3. Connect open Master Port to an empty Master Port on next IGC 4n1.

SOMFY SYSTEMS INC
SOMFY NORTH AMERICAN HEADQUARTERS
121 Herrod Blvd., Dayton, NJ 08810
P: (800) 22-SOMFY (76639)
NJ: (609) 395-1300
F: (609) 395-1776

FLORIDA
6100 Broken Sound Pkwy. N. W.
Suite 14, Boca Raton, FL 3487
P: (800) 22-SOMFY (76639)
F: (561) 995-7502

CALIFORNIA
15291 Barranca Parkway
Irvine, CA 92618-2201
P: (800) 22-SOMFY (76639)
F: (949) 727-3775

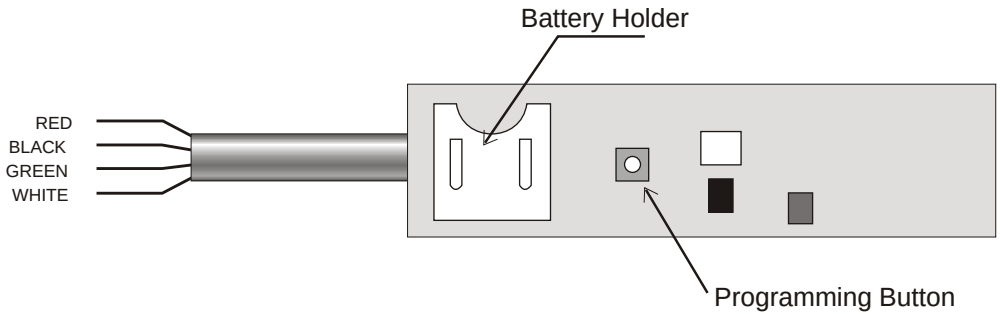
SOMFY ULC
SOMFY Canada Division
5178 Everest Drive Mississauga, Ontario L4W2R4
P: (800) 66-SOMFY (76639)
CN: (905) 564-6446
F: (905) 238-1491

Technical Binder © 2020

SOMFY

IGC 4N1 Motor Controller with Dry Contact Interface (Continued)

The RTS dry-contact Interface (Catalog 6300454) can be used to communicate between home automation or other third party systems and SOMFY's RTS Motors and Inteo line of controls.



NOTE: Please Consult RTS Motor Instructions for Specific Product Details.

1. Place the RTS Motor in Programming Mode as described in the individual product operating instructions.
2. Press the programming button on the RTS Interface to program it in the memory of the RTS Motor.
3. To activate an UP command, a momentary contact (relay) closure is required between the WHITE and GREEN wires.
4. To activate a DOWN command, a contact closure is required between the BLACK and GREEN wires.
5. To activate a STOP command or Intermediate Position, a contact closure is required between the RED and GREEN wires.

SOMFY CANADA
6315 Shawson Drive, Unit #1
Mississauga, Ontario L5T1J2

SOMFY SYSTEMS, INC.
47 Commerce Drive
Cranbury, NJ 08512

SOMFY MEXICO S.A. De C.V.
Calle 3 No.47, Loc.E-5
Fracc Ind. Alce Blanco
Nau.,Edo. de Mex C.P. 53370,Mex

SOMFY SYSTEMS, INC. reserves the right to change, update or improve this document without prior notice.

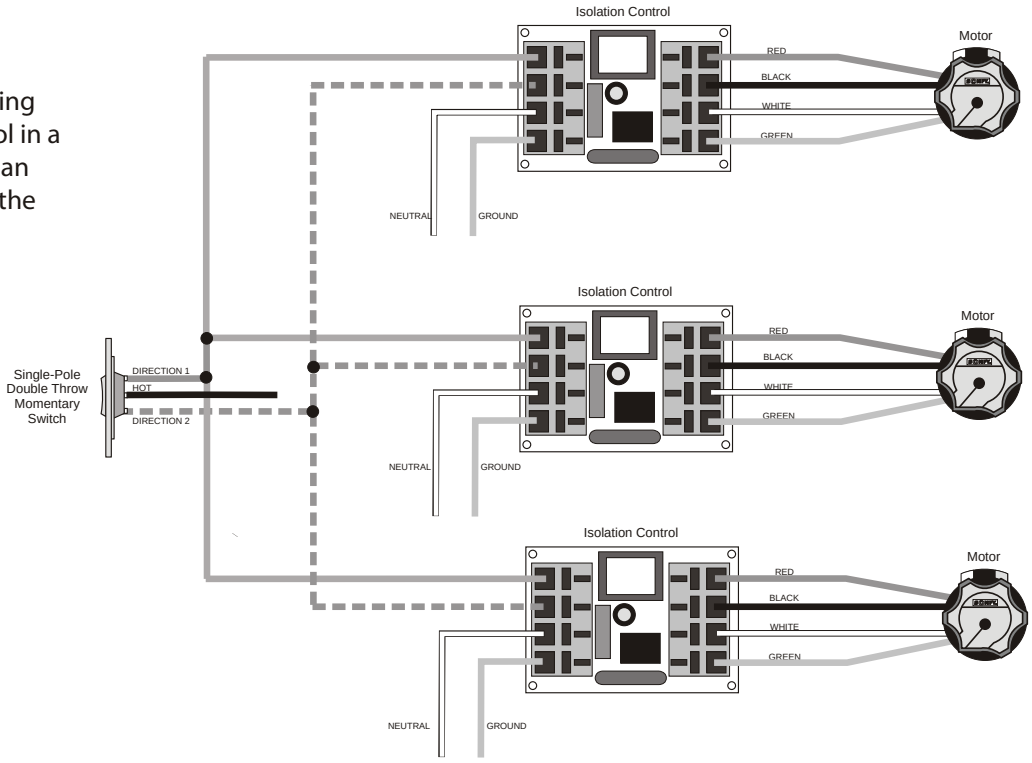
© SOMFY SYSTEMS, INC. 3/02

Isolation Group Control

DESCRIPTION

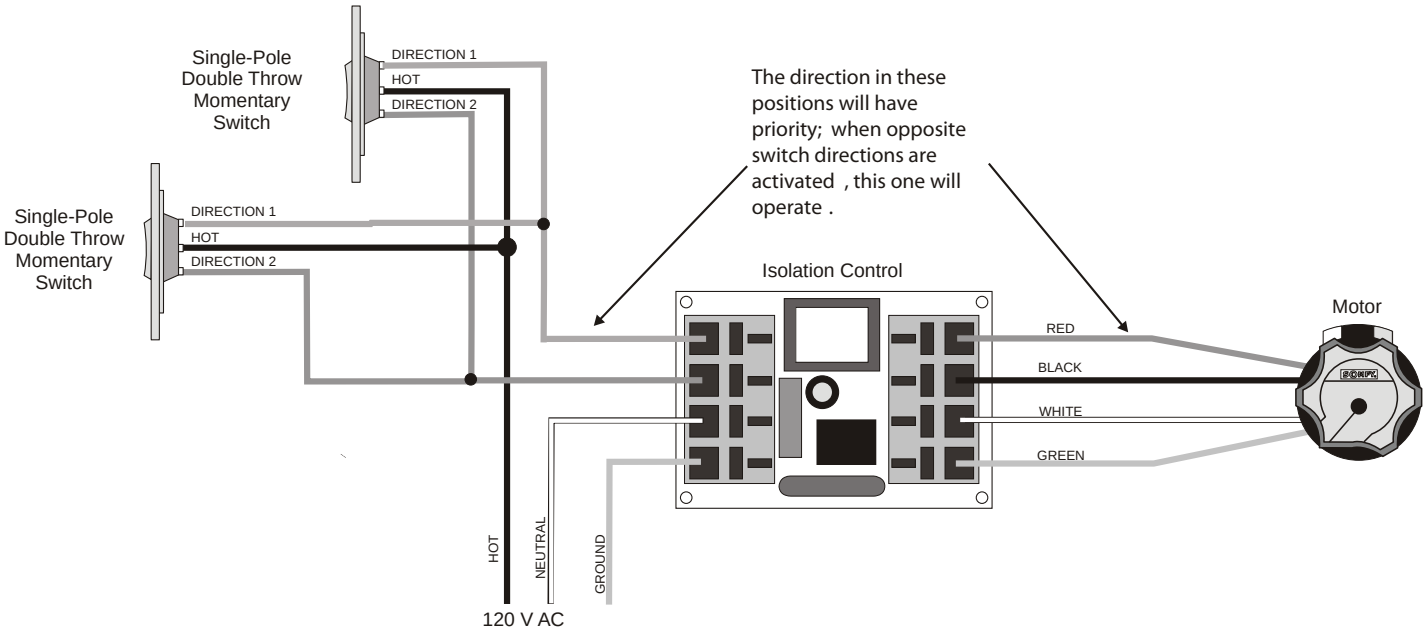
The Isolation Control (Part Number 6300105) should be used whenever a single switch is operating two or more motors. The control can be used on existing job sites where motors might be paralle l wired. Using one Isolation Control per motor will keep the directions separated and protect the motor from damage. The control should only be used with Momentar y Contact switches and 120V AC rated motors .

SOMFY DOES NOT recommend installing the isolation control in a metal box without an insulator between the control board and enclosure .

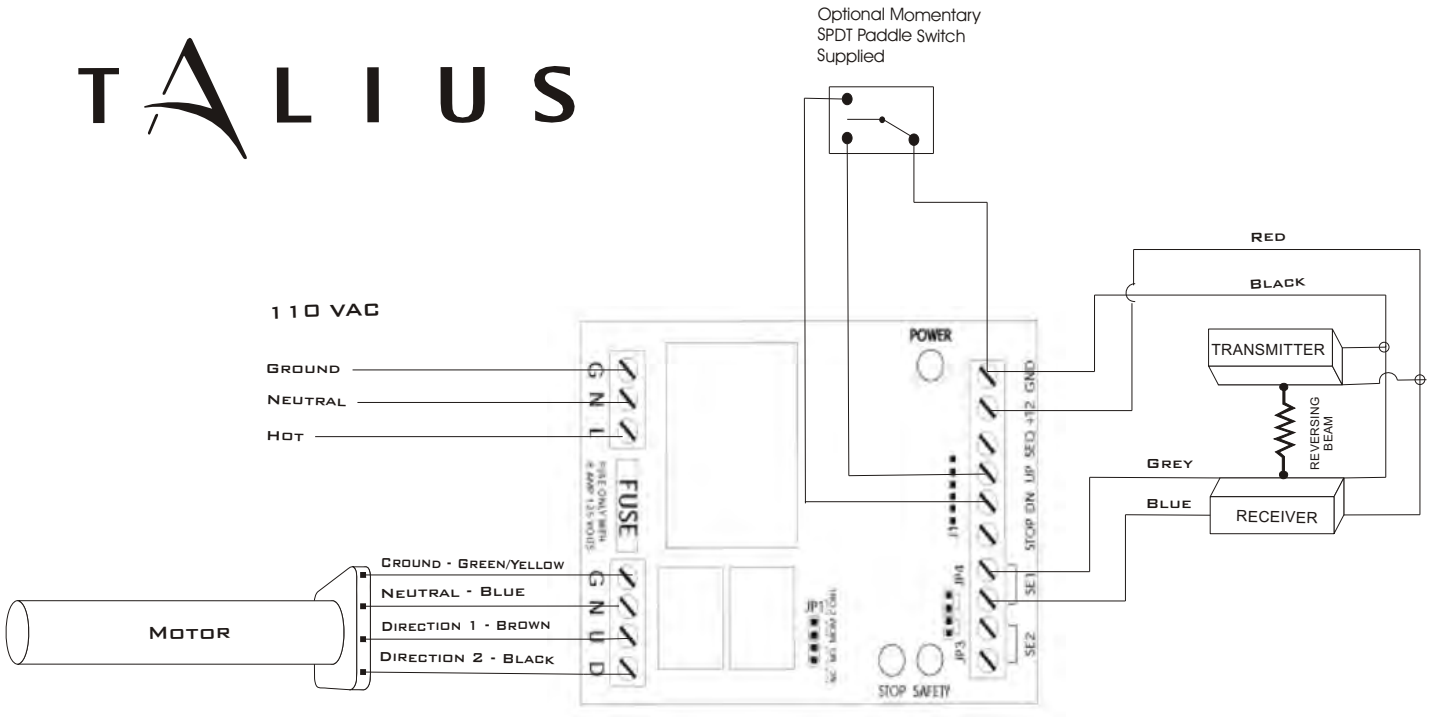


Technical Binder © 2020

The Isolation Control can also be used whenever a single motor is operated by two or more switches. The control will keep the switches isolated and prevent both UP and DOWN directions from being activated simultaneously, thus protecting the motor. The control should only be used with Momentary Contact switches and 120V AC rated motors.



Smart Motor Control

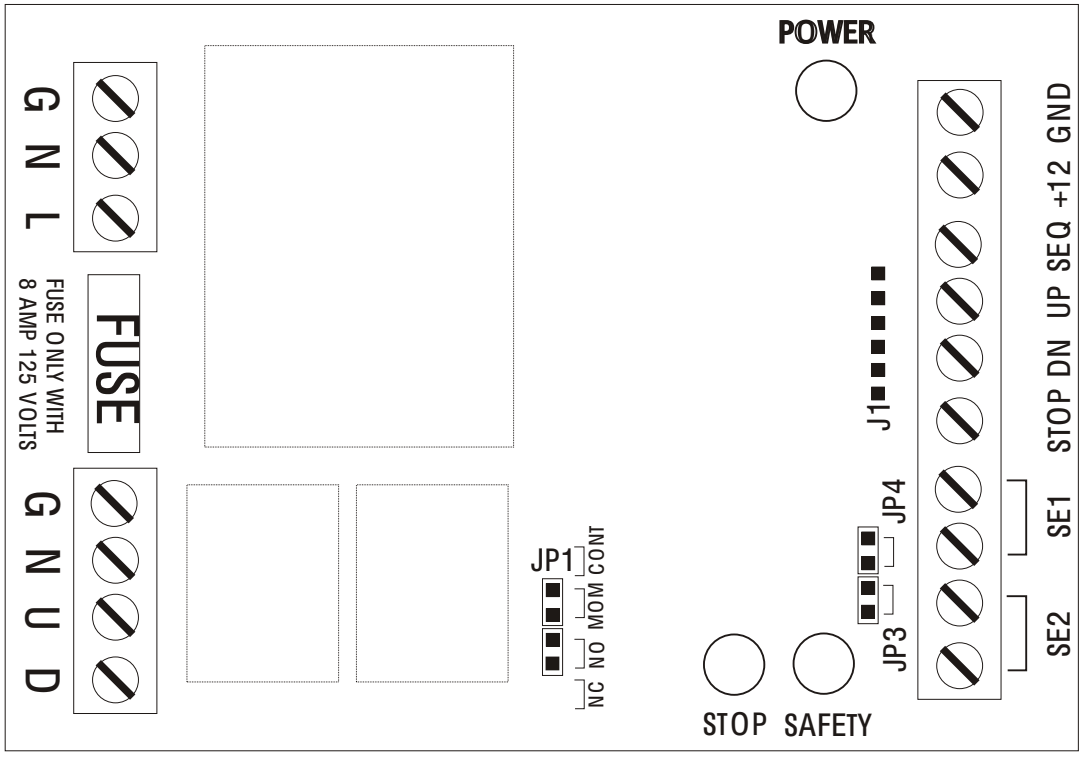


For the unit to operate as shown, the following jumper positions must remain as supplied from Talius:
Run Time Jumper JP1 (Top) - Jumper Off
Stop Select Jumper Jp1 (Bottom) - Jumper On
Reversing Detector Jumper JP3 - Jumper On
Reversing Detector Jumper Jp4 - Jumper Off

Technical Binder © 2020

SIMU U.S.INC
6100 BROKEN SOUND PKWY. N.W., #14
BOCA RATON, FL 33487
PHONE: 800-822-7468 A FAX: 561-995-7502

Smart Motor Control
(Continued)

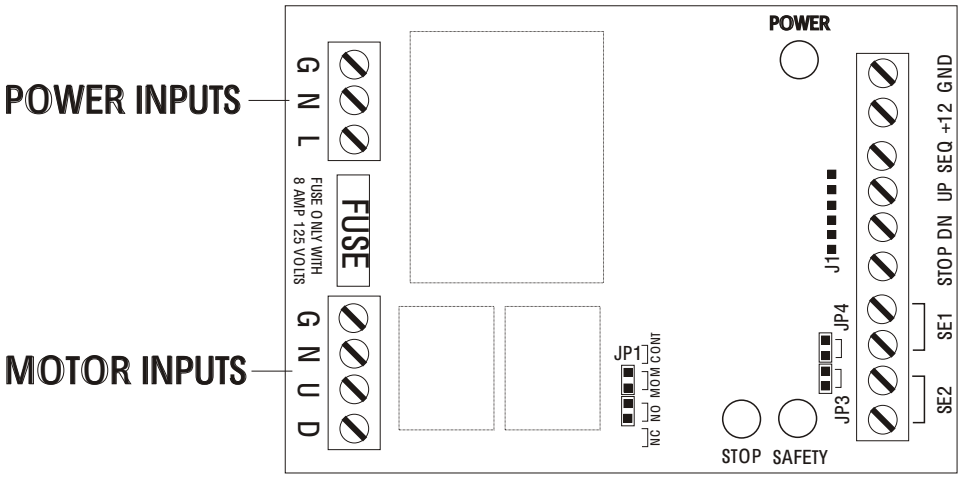


The iSmart Motor Control (SMC) is an ideal general purpose intelligent control system for commercial or industrial applications. The SMC allows control of a 120 VAC tube motor by most standard commercial controls and safety detectors.

FEATURES

- Mounts in standard 3 gang electrical box
- 250 mA 12 volt supply for accessories
- Diagnostic LEDs for quick, easy trouble shooting
- Supports normally open and close inputs from reversing detectors
- Supports 2 and 4 wire safety edges
- The stop button is selectable - normally open or normally close
- Control is selectable - timed run or continuous pressure
- Sequencing input supports single contact devices such as
  - Radio controls
  - Key switches
  - Card readers

Smart Motor Control
(Continued)



HIGH VOLTAGE CONNECTIONS

POWER INPUTS: G - GROUND
N - 120 VAC NEUTRAL
L - 120VAC HOT

MOTOR INPUTS: G - MOTOR GROUND (GREEN)
N - MOTOR NEUTRAL (WHITE)
U - MOTOR UP (BLACK*)
D - MOTOR DOWN (RED*)
*IF MOTOR RUNS IN WRONG DIRECTION, REVERSE THE RED AND BLACK MOTOR WIRES

JUMPERS

RUN TIME JUMPER JP1 (TOP)



JUMPER ON (MOM)

WITH THE JUMPER ON, THE RUN TIMER IS OFF AND THE SMC WILL DRIVE THE MOTOR ONLY AS LONG AS THE UP OR DOWN BUTTON IS PRESSED

NOTES:
1) THE REVERSING DETECTOR CONTROLS ARE DEACTIVATED IN THIS MODE.
2) THE SEQUENCING CONTROL IS DEACTIVATED IN THIS MODE.
3) THIS MODE CAN BE USED TO CLOSE THE DOOR IF THERE IS A MALFUNCTION IN THE REVERSING DETECTORS. THIS MUST ONLY BE DONE IF THE UP/DOWN SWITCH IS IN DIRECT VIEW OF THE DOOR. THE REVERSING DETECTORS MUST BE SERVICED AS SOON AS POSSIBLE AND THE DOOR RETURNED TO ITS NORMAL OPERATING MODE.



JUMPER OFF (CONT)

WITH THE JUMPER OFF, THE RUN TIMER IS ACTIVE AND THE SMC WILL DRIVE THE MOTOR FOR 1 MINUTE (OR TO THE MOTOR LIMIT) WHEN THE UP OR DOWN BUTTON IS PRESSED. PRESSING THE OTHER DIRECTION WHEN THE MOTOR IS RUNNING WILL CAUSE THE MOTOR TO STOP FOR 1/4 SECOND BEFORE REVERSING DIRECTIONS.
.

NOTES:
1) THE SMC MUST BE IN THIS MODE FOR THE SEQUENCING AND REVERSING DETECTORS TO BE ACTIVE.

Technical Binder © 2020

STOP SELECT JUMPER JP1 (BOTTOM)



JUMPER ON (N.O.)

WITH THE JUMPER ON, THE STOP BUTTON IS SELECTED NORMALLY OPEN (N.O.). A CLOSED STOP CONTACT WILL STOP THE MOTOR AND LIGHT THE YELLOW STOP LED.

NOTES:
1) THE JUMPER MUST BE IN THIS POSITION IF A STOP SWITCH IS NOT USED OR IF THE STOP BUTTON IS N.O.



JUMPER OFF (N.C.)

WITH THE JUMPER OFF, THE STOP BUTTON IS SELECTED NORMALLY CLOSE (N.C.). A OPEN STOP CONTACT WILL STOP THE MOTOR AND LIGHT THE YELLOW STOP LED

NOTES:
1) THE JUMPER MUST BE IN THIS POSITION IF A N.C. STOP SWITCH IS USED. LEAVING THE JUMPER ON WITHOUT A N.C. STOP BUTTON ATTACHED WILL CAUSE THE SMC TO NOT OPERATE.

REVERSING DETECTOR JUMPERS (JP3 JP4)



JUMPERS OFF (4 WIRE EDGE)

BOTH JUMPERS JP3 AND JP4 MUST BE OFF TO USE A 4 WIRE SENSING EDGE.

NOTES:
1) IF EITHER JUMPER IS OFF WITHOUT A 4 WIRE SENSING EDGE ATTACHED, THE RED SAFETY LED WILL LIGHT AND THE DOOR WILL BE LOCKED IN THE UP DIRECTION.



JUMPERS ON
(2 WIRE EDGE OR N.O. DETECTOR)

BOTH JUMPERS JP3 AND JP4 SHOULD BE ON IF A NORMALLY OPEN REVERSING SENSOR IS USED OR IF NO REVERSING SENSOR IS USED.

NOTES:
1) IT IS STRONGLY RECOMMENDED THAT A REVERSING SENSOR BE USED IF THE SMC RUN TIMER IS ON.

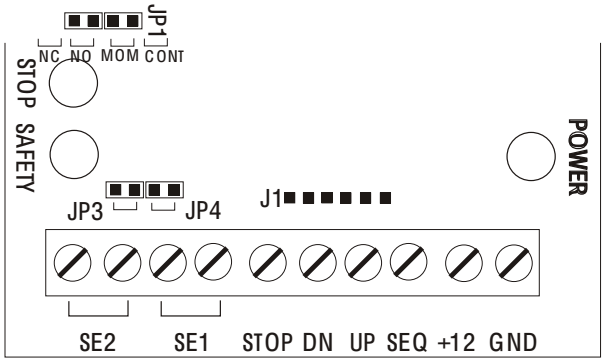


1 JUMPER ON, 1 JUMPER OFF
(N.C. DETECTOR)

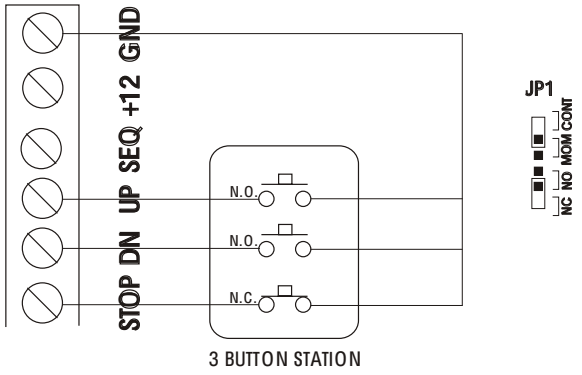
WITH JUMPER JP3 ON AND JP4 OFF A NORMALLY CLOSE REVERSING SENSOR CAN BE CONNECTED TO SE1.

NOTES:
1) WITH JP4 OFF A NORMALLY CLOSE CONTACT MUST BE CONNECTED TO SE1 OR THE SMC WILL LOCK THE DOOR OPEN.

LOW VOLTAGE SWITCHING CONNECTIONS



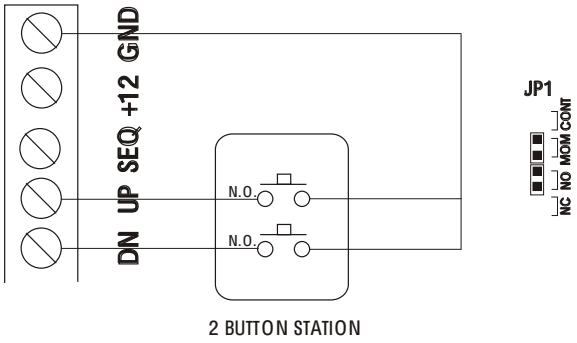
3 BUTTON STATION



3 BUTTON STATION

NOTES:
1) SHOULD BE USED WITH REVERSING SENSORS
2) SHOWN CONFIGURED FOR A N.C. STOP BUTTON

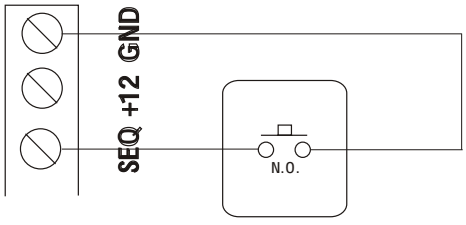
2 BUTTON STATION



2 BUTTON STATION

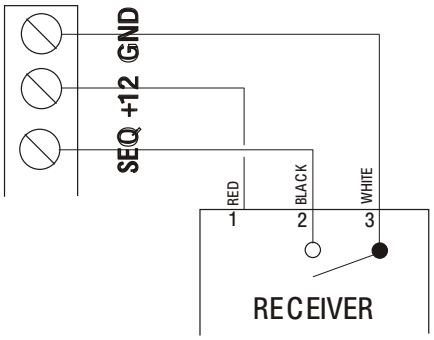
NOTES:
1) SHOWN REQUIRING CONSTANT PRESSURE ON THE SWITCH FOR THE MOTOR TO OPERATE.
2) SWITCH MUST BE IN VIEW OF THE DOOR

SEQUENCING CONTROL



NOTES:
1) CAN BE USED WITH ANY MOMENTARY, DRY CONTACT SUCH AS KEY SWITCHES, CARD READERS, RADIO CONTROLS, ETC..
2) TWO OR MORE SWITCHES CAN BE WIRED IN PARALLEL.
3) CONTROL WILL FOLLOW A SEQUENCE WITH EACH PULSE (UP, STOP, DOWN, STOP, UP, ...)

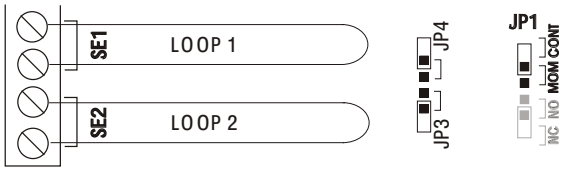
SINGLE CHANNEL RADIO



NOTES:
1) WIRING SHOWN IS STANDARD BUT MAY VARY WITH MANUFACTURER. CHECK INSTRUCTIONS WITH RADIO RECEIVER FOR DIFFERENCES BEFORE WIRING.

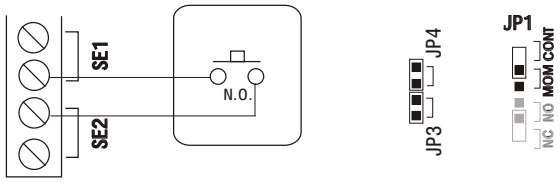
Technical Binder © 2020

4 WIRE SENSING EDGE



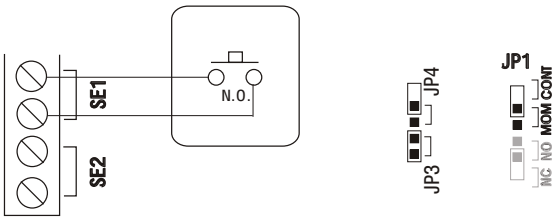
NOTES:
1) JUMPERS JP3 AND JP4 MUST BE OFF WHEN USING A 4 WIRE SENSING EDGE.
2) JP1 TOP JUMPER MUST BE OFF (CONT). THIS SETS THE SMC RUN TIMER ON.
3) JP1 LOWER JUMPER SETTING DEPENDS ON STOP BUTTON.
4) CHECK SENSING EDGE FUNCTION. IF THE MOTOR REVERSES UPON SENSING EDGE ACTIVATION WHEN THE DOOR IS GOING UP INSTEAD OF DOWN, REVERSE THE RED AND BLACK MOTOR LEADS.

N.O. SENSING EDGE (2 WIRE)



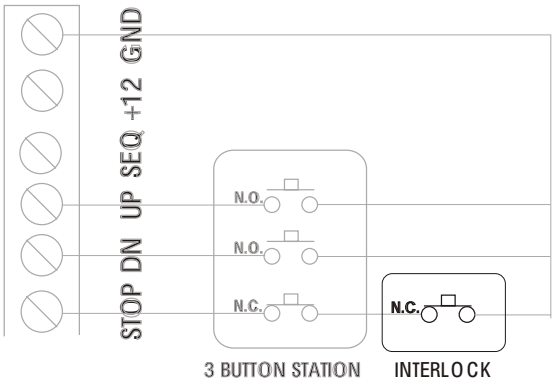
NOTES:
1) JUMPERS JP3 AND JP4 MUST BE ON WHEN USING A NORMALLY OPEN SENSING (2 WIRE) EDGE.
2) JP1 TOP JUMPER MUST BE OFF (CONT). THIS SETS THE SMC RUN TIMER ON.
3) JP1 LOWER JUMPER SETTING DEPENDS ON THE STOP BUTTON.
4) CHECK SENSING EDGE FUNCTION. IF THE MOTOR REVERSES UPON SENSING EDGE ACTIVATION WHEN THE DOOR IS GOING UP INSTEAD OF DOWN, REVERSE THE RED AND BLACK MOTOR LEADS.

N.C. REVERSING SENSOR



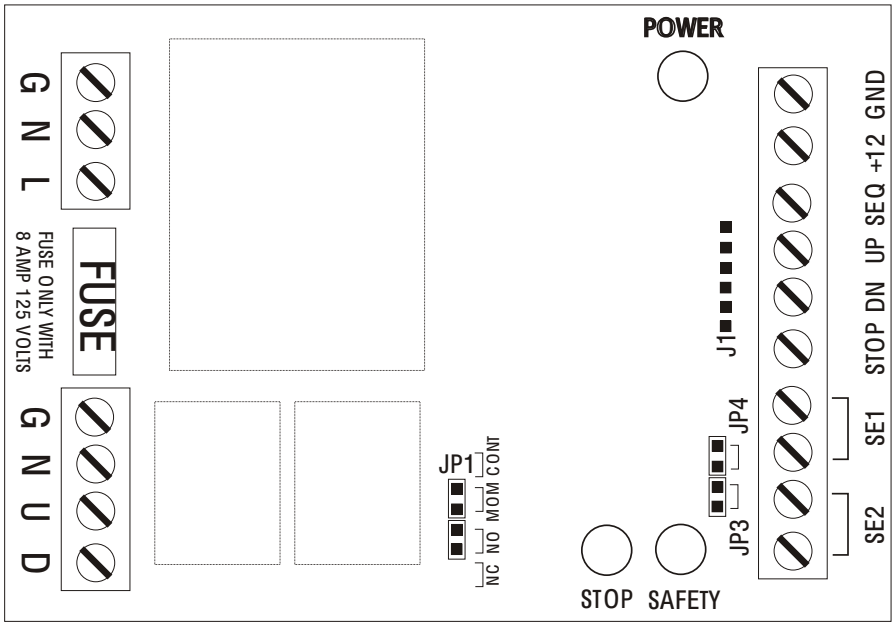
NOTES:
1) JUMPER JP3 MUST BE ON AND JP4 MUST BE OFF WHEN USING NORMALLY CLOSE REVERSING SENSOR.
2) JP1 TOP JUMPER MUST BE OFF (CONT). THIS SETS THE SMC RUN TIMER ON.
3) JP1 LOWER JUMPER SETTING DEPENDS ON STOP BUTTON.
4) CHECK SENSING EDGE FUNCTION. IF THE MOTOR REVERSES UPON SENSING EDGE ACTIVATION WHEN THE DOOR IS GOING UP INSTEAD OF DOWN, REVERSE THE RED AND BLACK MOTOR LEADS.

INTERLOCK (KEYED LOCK OUT)



NOTES:
1) A NORMALLY CLOSED INTERLOCK (KEYED LOCK OUT) CAN BE CONNECTED IN SERIES WITH THE N.C. STOP BUTTON.
2) SHOULD BE USED WITH REVERSING SENSORS
3) SHOWN CONFIGURED FOR A N.C. STOP BUTTON.

Smart Motor Control
(Continued)



To download this drawing in PDF or CAD format, please go to www.mytalius.com and search for the reference in the bottom right hand corner of this drawing

ELECTRICAL RATINGS

INPUT POWER: 120V AC 60Hz
MOTOR OUTPUT MAXIMUM: 8AMPS
FUSED: 8AMP 125V
LOW VOLTAGE SUPPLY FOR OFF BOARD CONTROLS: 12VDC @250mA

DIAGNOSTIC LEDíS

GREEN POWER LED ON - POWER AND FUSE CONNECTIONS ARE GOOD
YELLOW STOP LED ON - ACTIVE STOP SIGNAL (CONTROL IS LOCKED)
RED SAFETY LED ON - ACTIVE REVERSING DETECTOR SIGNAL. (CONTROL WILL LOCK DOOR IN OPEN DIRECTION)

TROUBLE SHOOTING

PROBLEM - NO RESPONSE FROM CONTROL

1) IF THE GREEN POWER LED IS NOT ON: CONFIRM THAT THERE IS 120VAC ON THE POWER INPUT AND THAT THE CONNECTIONS ARE CORRECT.
   CHECK THE FUSE.
2) IF THE GREEN POWER AND YELLOW STOP LEDS ARE ON: CHECK THAT THE STOP JUMPER IS CONFIGURED CORRECTLY.
   CHECK CONNECTIONS TO THE STOP BUTTON.
3) IF THE GREEN POWER LED IS ON AND THE YELLOW STOP AND RED SAFETY LEDíS ARE OFF: CHECK THE CONNECTIONS TO THE MOTOR.
   TEST THE MOTOR DIRECTLY WITH A TEST SWITCH.
   CHECK THE MOTOR LIMITS (TURN BOTH LIMITS PLUS 5 REVOLUTIONS).

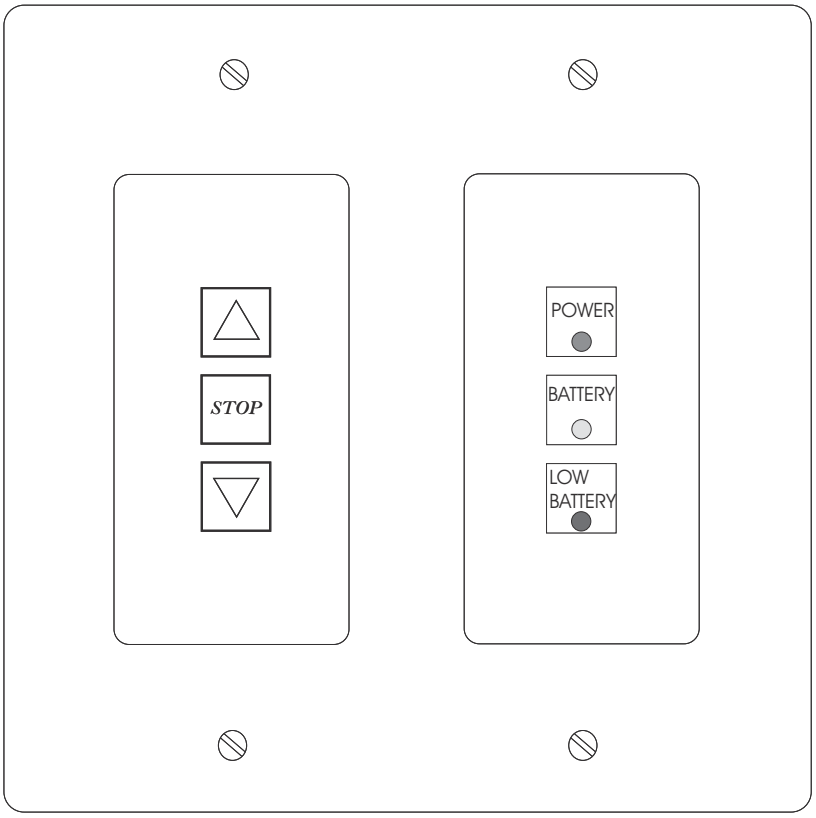
PROBLEM - MOTOR LOCKED IN ONE DIRECTION

1) IF THE RED SAFETY LED IS ON: CHECK THE CONNECTIONS TO THE REVERSING DETECTORS.
   CONFIRM THAT THE JUMPERS JP3 AND JP4 ARE CONFIGURED CORRECTLY.
2) IF THE RED SAFETY LED IS NOT ON: CHECK THE CONNECTIONS TO THE MOTOR.
   CHECK THE MOTOR LIMIT (TURN IT PLUS 5 REVOLUTIONS).

Technical Binder © 2020

SIMU®

Battery Back-Up System



FEATURES

*NEVER BE WITHOUT POWER! YOUR MOTORIZED SYSTEM WILL OPERATE FOR UP TO THREE DAYS DURING A POWER OUTAGE.

*THREE INDICATOR LIGHTS KEEP YOU INFORMED ON POWER CONDITIONS.

*YELLOW INDICATOR LIGHT ALLOWS THE CONTROL TO BE LOCATED IN A DARK ROOM IF POWER IS OUT.

*ALLOWS MULTIPLE SWITCHES TO BE CONNECTED TO THE INDIVIDUAL OPERATOR.

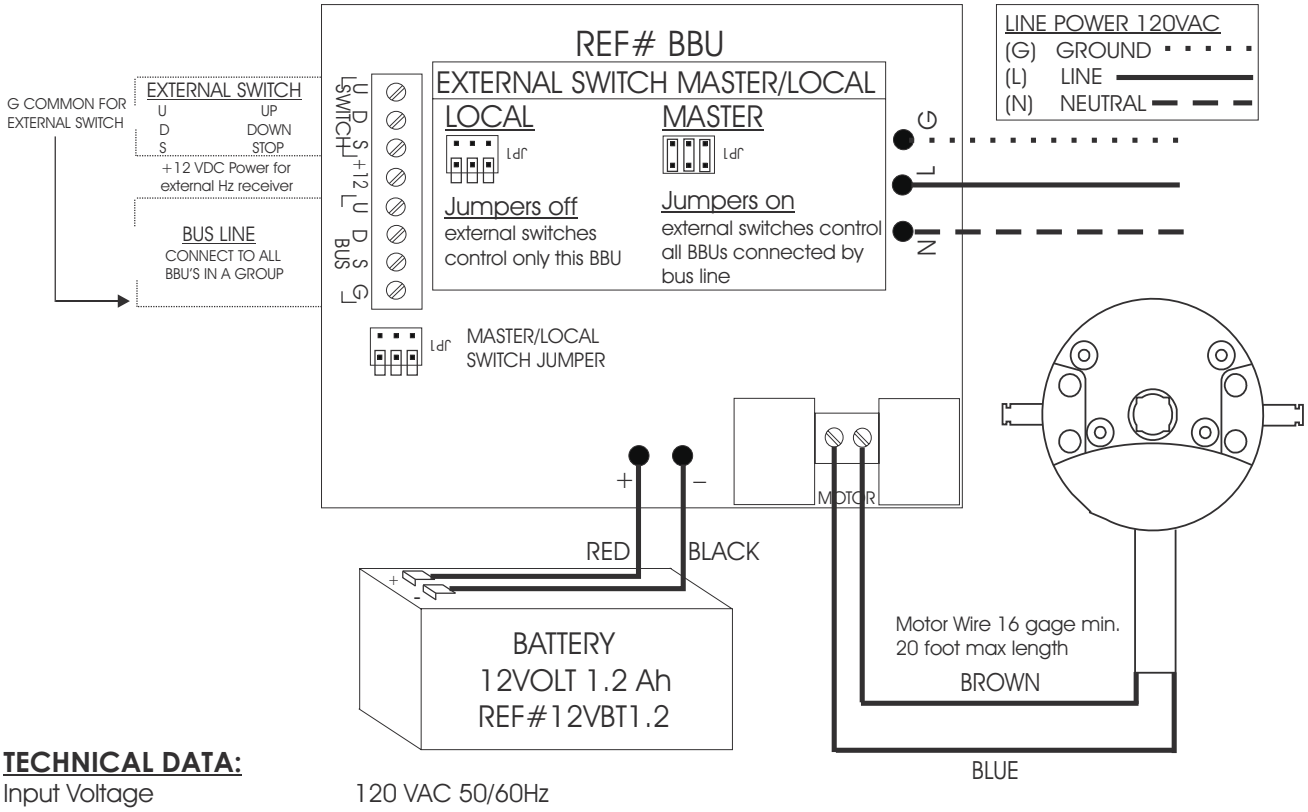
*SIMPLE, LOW VOLTAGE BUS LINE ALLOWS BBS CONTROLS TO BE CONNECTED TO STANDARD SWITCHES FOR GROUP CONTROL.

*BUILT IN CONNECTION FOR EXTERNAL SWITCHES ALLOWS OTHER DEVICES SUCH AS FIRE ALARMS, BURGLAR ALARMS, AND HOME AUTOMATION CONTROLS WITH N.O. DRY CONTACT OUTPUTS TO DIRECTLY INTERFACE.

*SELF RESETTING OVER CURRENT PROTECTION AND INTELLIGENT MICRO-PROCESSOR SELF TESTING, PROTECT AGAINST MISWIRING AND PROVIDE FAST EASY TROUBLE SHOOTING.

Battery Back-Up System

(Continued)



TECHNICAL DATA:

Input Voltage	120 VAC 50/60Hz
Input Current	50 mA
Motor Output Voltage	12 Volts Nominal
Motor Output Current	5 Amps Max. Polyfused
Battery Output	Voltage/Current Regulated Charging for 12 Volt 1.2 Ah Sealed Lead Acid Battery
Standby Battery Current	6.5 mA
Shut Down Battery Current	.9mA
Size	3.5" X 2.5" (Fits in deep 2 gang plastic box supplied)
External Switching	N.O., Momentary Dry Contacts Rated for 12 Volts
Bus Line	12 Volts DC

BBS PART LIST:

REF #	DESCRIPTION	QUANTITY
BBU	Battery Backup Control	1
BBU BOX	Plastic, Two Gang Deep Switch Box	1
DES2G.W	Two Gang, White Decora Cover Plate	1
12VBT1.2	12 Volt 1.2 Amp Hour Battery	1
JUMPER	Jumpers for master selection	3

INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS: ALL WIRING SHOULD BE DONE WITH POWER TURNED OFF
FOR INSTALLATION BY A QUALIFIED ELECTRICIAN IN ACCORDANCE WITH NATIONAL AND LOCAL ELECTRICAL CODES

1) Connect together the bus line of any BBU's that will be controlled as a group.
2) On any BBU(s) that will have a Master Switch connected to them, place the Master switch jumpers (JP1) on, and wire the group switch(es) to the external switch location on this/these BBU(s). A group may have more that one master.
3) Connect any local external switches desired to the external switch locations on the BBU(s) and remove the jumpers on JP1.
4) Connect the 12 Volt DC motor to the MOTOR terminal as shown. (If the motor runs backwards, reverse the brown and blue motor wires.)
5) Connect the battery to the BBU. Make sure the polarity is correct (Red Wire =+, Black Wire =-) **NOTE: IT IS IMPORTANT TO CONNECT THE BBU TO THE BATTERY AND CONFIRM THAT THE YELLOW LIGHT IS BLINKING BEFORE CONNECTING THE BBU TO LINE POWER IN.**
6) Connect the BBU to the line power.

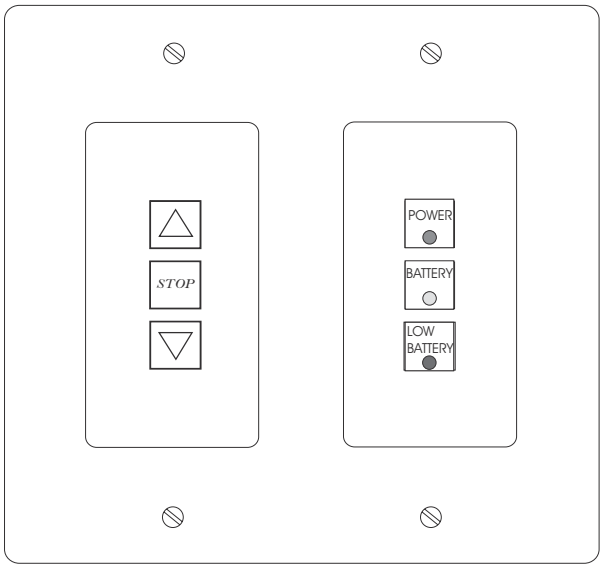
Technical Binder © 2020

SIMU®

Battery Back-Up System
(Continued)

INSTALLATION NOTES

*Multiple normally open, momentary switches can be connected in parallel on the external switch location of any BBU.
*All external switches connected to a given BBU are either master or local switches as selected by the jumpers (JP1). It is **not** possible to have external local and master switches connected on the same BBU.
*Multiple BBUs in a group can have their external switches selected as masters for the group
*External switches on a BBU are set as masters if all the jumpers (JP1) on that BBU are on.
*External switches on a BBU are set as local if all the jumpers (JP1) on that BBU are off.
*All jumpers (JP1) on a given BBU must be set the same, all on or all off.
*The switches on the face plate are always local switches.
*The cable from the BBU to the motor should be a maximum of 20 feet long and should be 16 gage or larger.
*The Bus Lines and External Switch Lines are 12 VDC control lines and should be kept away from EMI sources such as: power lines, transformers, fluorescent lights, ect...
*External switches can be any normally open, momentary, dry contact suitable for low voltage switching.



OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS:

1) When the unit is stopped, pressing the up △ or down ▽ will make the motor run in the selected direction for one minute unless another command is given or the motor stops at its limit.
2) When the motor is running, pressing the stop STOP or pressing and releasing the other direction will stop the motor.
3) If an external switch is connected to the unit and the jumpers (JP1) are off, the external switch will control only the unit it is connected to.
4) If an external switch is connected to the unit and the jumpers (JP1) are on, the external switch connected to that BBU will act as a master switch for all BBUs connected to its bus line.
5) If the green light POWER is on, the unit has line power to it and is producing a good charge voltage.
6) If the yellow light BATTERY is blinking, the line power is off or disconnected and the unit is running on battery power.
7) If the red light LOW BATTERY is blinking, the battery power is low and the motor should be run to the position it is desired to be left in until line power is on and the battery has recharged (about 24 hours).
8) If no lights are on, the unit has gone into sleep mode to keep the battery from critically discharging. If the power is on for over 24 hours and there still are no lights the battery must be replaced.
9) If the red light LOW BATTERY blinks and then the green and yellow POWER BATTERY blink together, the battery is connected backwards or is dead and must be replaced.

Battery Back-Up System
(Continued)

TESTING:

To test the battery, let the unit charge with a green light for 24 hours. Use the face plate switches to run the unit up and down several times. The green light should stay on (The red light may turn on or all lights may turn off for a second when the motor starts or stops. This is normal) If the red light stays on blinking or all lights stay off for more than 3 seconds (The green light does not come back on while the motor is running), the battery needs to be replaced. If the unit seems to be running slower than normal during this testing, the battery should be replaced. The battery should be replaced every 3 years

TROUBLE SHOOTING:

1) If the red light blinks and then the yellow and green light blink, check the battery for a loose connection and check that the battery is connected correctly regarding polarity (Red Wire to +, Black Wire to -). If the connections are OK, the battery must be replaced.
2) If the red or yellow lights are blinking and power is on, let the unit sit for 5 minutes. If the green light does not come on, confirm the line voltage power to the unit is on and is properly connected to the unit. If all the power connection are correct, try replacing the battery.
3) If the green light is on, but the unit buzzes and/or all lights go out when you try to run the unit, the battery is not connected or must be replaced.
4) If the green light is on and stays on when you try to run the unit, but the motor does nothing, check the motor connections to the BBU, the motor limit settings, and any cables going to the motor for cuts or breaks.
5) If no lights are on, but the battery is connected and power is connected and on, confirm the battery is connected with the correct polarity (Red wire to +, Black Wire to -). If the battery is connected correctly, replace the battery.
6) If the green light is on but pressing and holding the up or down switch causes a clicking and the green and yellow lights to alternate, there is a short on the motor terminal. Check the motor terminal for a short due to a loose wire. Check the cable leading to the motor for cuts or shorts caused by foreign objects such as nails. Test or replace the motor.
7) If the motor runs in the wrong direction from the face plate switch, reverse the motor blue and brown wires.
8) If the motor(s) run the wrong direction from an external switch (local or master), check the face plate switch as above in (5). If the motor runs in the correct direction from the face plat switch, then reverse the wires going to the U (up) and D (down) on the external switch terminal.
9) If an external master switch only activates the BBU it is connected to, make sure the jumpers on the master/local switch selector (JP1) are on, and check the connections at the bus terminal block.
10) If an external local switch activates other BBU's in the group, remove the jumpers on the master/local switch selector (JP1).

For further assistance call SIMU U.S. Inc.. At: 800-822-SIMU(7468)
Please be ready with a description of your installation and your problem.

Technical Binder © 2020

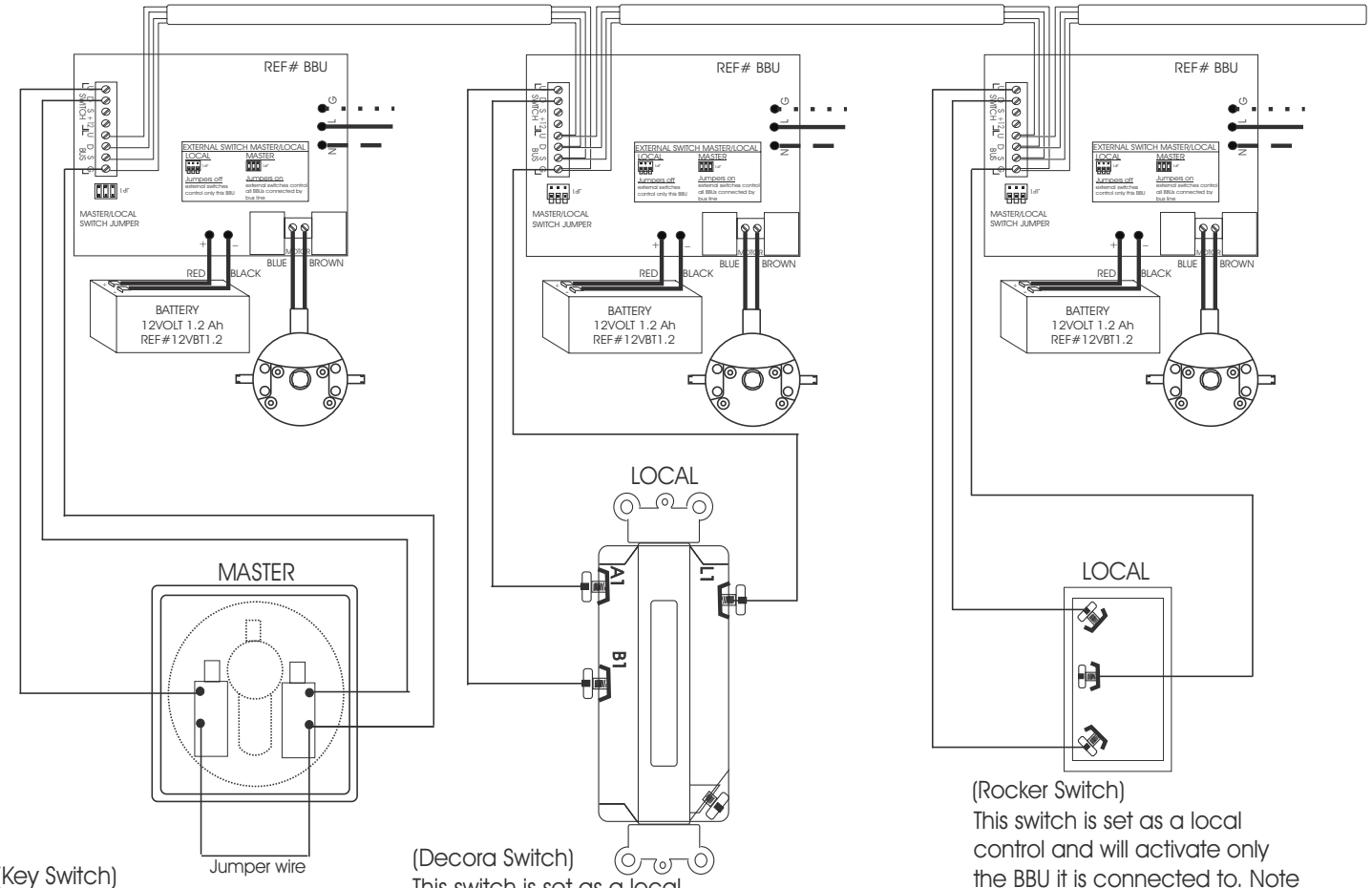
BBU GROUP WITH EXTERNAL SWITCHES

Wiring for BBU V04 and later.
For earlier versions please contact SIMU U.S. Inc.

ALL SWITCHES MUST BE MOMENTARY

4 WIRE BUS LINE 20 GAGE MIN.

TO OTHER BBUs IN GROUP ➔



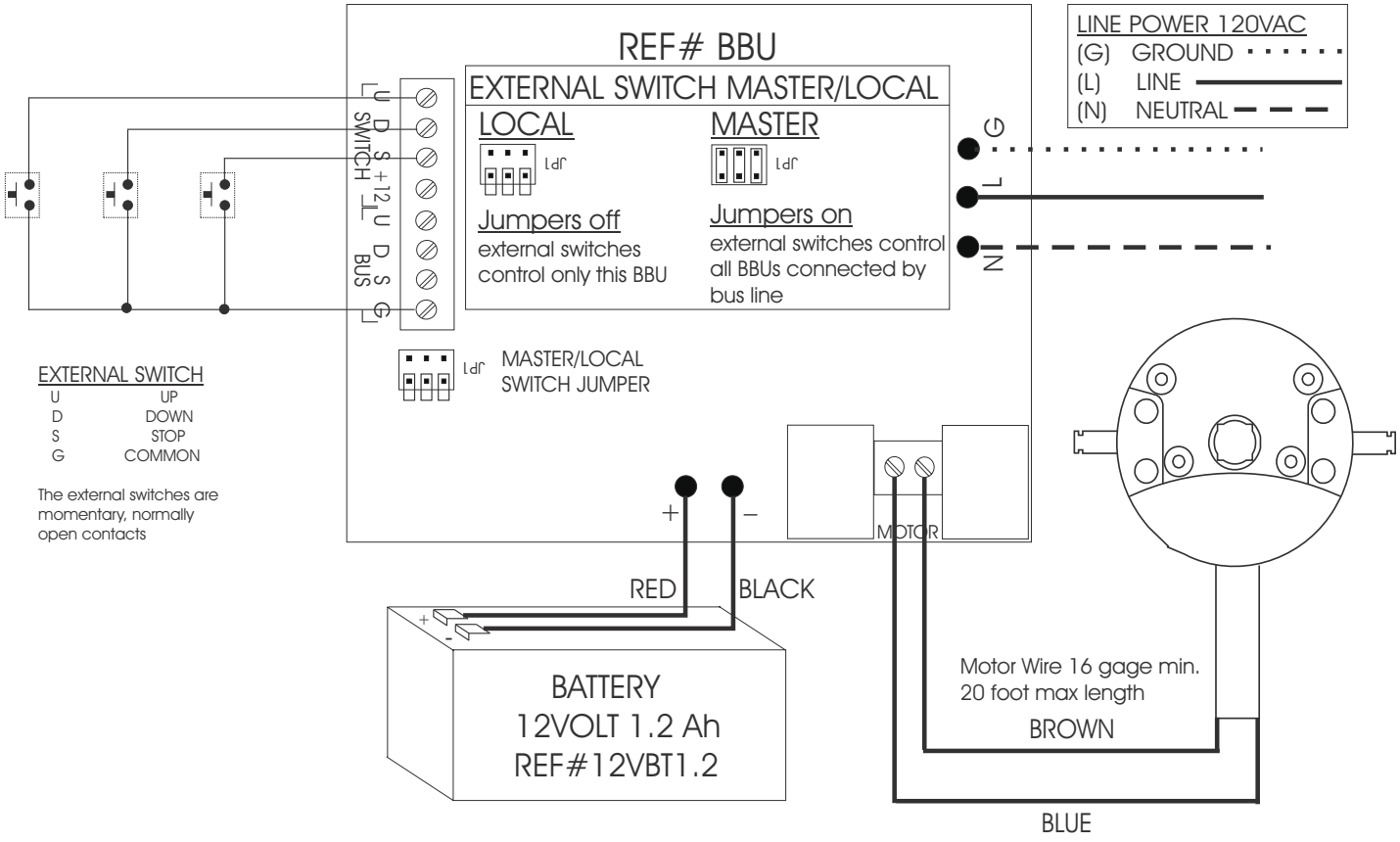
(Key Switch)
This switch is set as a master for the group. Note the jumpers (JP1) on the BBU it is connected to.

(Decora Switch)
This switch is set as a local control and will activate only the BBU it is connected to. Note the jumpers (JP1) are not connected

(Rocker Switch)
This switch is set as a local control and will activate only the BBU it is connected to. Note the jumpers (JP1) are not connected

Battery Back-Up System
(Continued)

B.B.S.
BATTERY BACKUP SYSTEM
CONNECTION TO EXTERNAL DRY CONTACTS



Technical Binder © 2020

INSTALLATION *guide*

SOMFY inteo *Telis 1 RTS / Telis 4 RTS*



The **Telis RTS** (single or four channel) is a hand-held transmitter compatible with all the RTS MOTORS, and externally mounted RTS receivers. Commands are transmitted by radio waves at 433.42 MHz.

1 Characteristics:

- Power: 3V lithium battery, CR 2430 type
- Operating temperature: +5°C/41°F to +40°C/104°F

IMPORTANT: If the installation is made up of several RTS motors, only one RTS motor must be powered at the same time for programming, all other motors must be turned off. This will avoid interferences during the initial programming of each motor.

2 Programming:

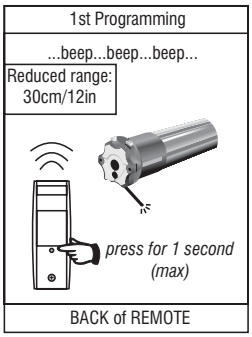
Before programming any transmitter make sure the RTS motor is in FACTORY MODE and the end limits have been set. Please refer to the "LT RTS MOTOR Programming and Limit Setting Instructions".

A. INITIAL INSTALLATION WITH AN LT RTS MOTOR

On the Telis RTS transmitter

Single Channel Transmitter (Telis 1)

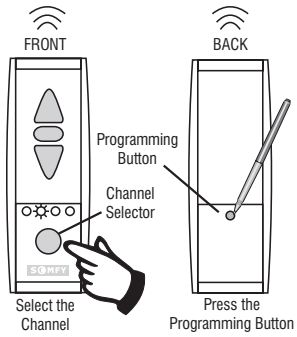
- Press the programming button (for one sec. max.) on the back of the transmitter while near the motor head (due to the reduced range). The motor will confirm, by emitting 8 short beeps (refer to diagram on the right). This transmitter is now programmed and ready to work with this motor. At this point the motor exits "FACTORY MODE" and begins "OPERATING MODE". The range now becomes up to 90 ft. from the motor head.
- Repeat the same procedure for each transmitter you wish to assign in the RTS receiver's memory.
- The motor must be put into PROGRAMMING MODE before each additional transmitter is added. Refer to "Adding Supplementary Transmitters/Channels".



Four Channel Transmitter (Telis 4)

- Select the channel you wish to memorize in the RTS' receiver by pressing the Channel Selector Button on the front of the transmitter.
  The corresponding LED will blink for 3 seconds
  (this channel will be active for 30 seconds, and then reverts back to channel 1 again)
- Press the programming button (for one sec. max.) of the transmitter while near the motor head. The motor will confirm, by emitting 8 short beeps (refer to diagram on the right). This channel is now memorized and ready to work with this motor. At this point, the motor exits "FACTORY MODE" and begins "OPERATING MODE".
- Repeat the same procedure for each channel you wish to assign in the RTS receiver's memory, **including the master channel (when the four LEDs are blinking).** This master channel can also be used as an additional channel for a total of 5 individual channels.
- The motor must be put into PROGRAMMING MODE before each additional transmitter/channel is added. Refer to "Adding Supplementary Transmitters/Channels".

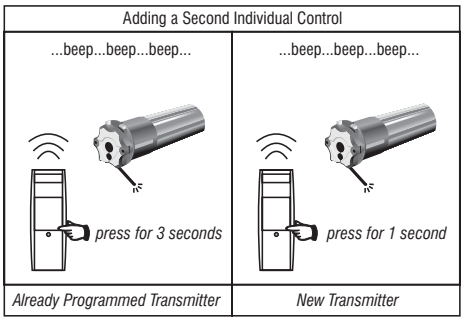
Memory capacity of a motor's receiver: 12 channels maximum.
If you try to enter a 13th, your instruction will be ignored, the receiver's LED goes out.



Adding Supplementary Transmitters / Channels

For adding a new transmitter/channel into the LT RTS' memory, follow the steps below:

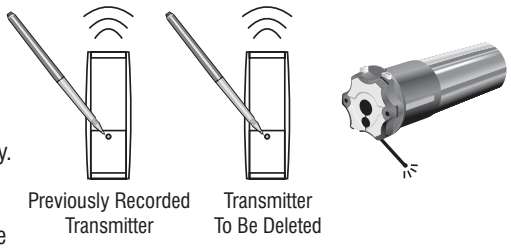
- Activate the LT RTS' memory by pushing (3 seconds) the programming button of the transmitter/channel already recorded in the motor's memory.
- When the motor emits 3 beeps, it enters "PROGRAMMING MODE" for a period of **2 min.** and is ready to record a new transmitter/channel.
- Select the transmitter/channel you wish to memorize in the RTS's motor.
- Press the programming button momentarily (1 second) of the transmitter/channel you wish to add.
- When the motor emits 8 beeps, the new transmitter/channel is now memorized, and the motor automatically exits "PROGRAMMING MODE".
- Repeat the above steps for each new transmitter/channel you want to add. (max. 12 per motor)



Telis 1 & 4 Handheld Transmitters (Continued)

Delete A Transmitter /Channel

- Activate the LT RTS' memory by pushing (for 3 seconds) the programming button of the transmitter/channel already recorded in the motor's memory.
- When the motor emits 3 beeps, it enters PROGRAMMING MODE and is ready to delete a transmitter/channel.
- Select the transmitter/channel you wish to delete from the RTS motor's memory.
- Press the programming button momentarily (1 second) of any transmitter/channel you wish to delete (refer to the diagram on the right).
- The LT RTS emits 8 short beeps, the transmitter/channel is now deleted and the motor automatically exits "PROGRAMMING MODE"..
- Repeat the above steps for each transmitter/channel you want to delete.



NOTE: If the transmitter/channel has not been previously memorized it will be added instead of deleted.

Resetting The LT RTS' Memory

1. With a new transmitter being recorded

- Perform a **double power cut** in the following sequence:
  1. Power-off - 1 sec. minimum
  2. Power-on - 5 to 15 sec.
  3. Power-off - 1 sec. minimum
  4. Power on
- The motor is now in "Programming Mode" and will emit a beep every 2 seconds.
- Press the programming button of any transmitter/channel and hold for more than 5 seconds, until the LT RTS emits 8 short beeps, and then immediately release the programming button The LT RTS' memory is now cleared with only the new transmitter/channel recorded.

2. Back to "Factory Mode"

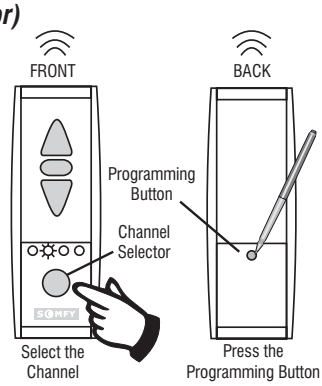
- Make a double power cut as described in step 1 (Resetting the LT RTS' memory).
- Press and **HOLD** the programming button of an already recorded transmitter/channel for a total of 7 seconds.
- After 1 second the LT RTS emits 8 short beeps, continue holding the programming button, for 6 more seconds, until it emits a long beep, and then immediately release the programming button.
- The LT RTS' memory is now cleared, and in "FACTORY MODE". The motor will emit a beep every 2 seconds, and respond to any RTS transmitter in a momentary fashion.

B. INITIAL INSTALLATION WITH AN ACCESSIBLE RTS RECEIVER (EXTERNAL to the motor)

On the RTS receiver

- To put the receiver in it's programming mode, press the PROGRAM button and hold, until the LED lights up, and then release. The PROGRAMMING Button is located on the PCB board inside the RTS receiver's enclosure.
- The RTS receiver is now ready to memorize any transmitter/channel for a period of 1 minute. After 1 minute or once the receiver is programmed, the LED goes off.


External RTS Receiver



On the Telis RTS transmitter

Single channel transmitter (Telis 1) :

Press the programming button on the back of the transmitter.

Four channel transmitter (Telis 4) :

- Select the channel you wish to memorize in the RTS receiver. Press the programming button on the back of the transmitter.

Add / Delete a Transmitter / Channel From the RTS Receiver's Memory

- Activate "PROGRAMMING MODE" by pressing the programming button located on the RTS receiver.
- The LED of the receiver lights up, which means the receiver is in PROGRAMMING MODE for 1 minute. Press the programming button (momentarily) of the transmitter you wish to add/delete. The receiver will confirm by flashing it's LED.
- It is also possible to Add/Delete a transmitter by pushing (for 3 sec.) the programming button on a transmitter/channel already recorded in the receiver's memory. This will activate "PROGRAMMING MODE". Now press the programming button (momentarily) on the back of the transmitter you wish to add/delete.

Erase the Memory of an RTS receiver

- Press the programming button on the RTS receiver for approximately 10 seconds until the LED flashes. The receiver's memory is now cleared and all transmitters/channels are deleted.

Battery Life

The transmitters are powered by a 3V battery (type 2430) which provides about 3 years operation assuming 4 operations per day. When the battery becomes discharged, the control LED no longer lights up when a command is sent, and the command is not carried out.

How to Replace the Battery

- Remove the screw on the back cover of the transmitter with a screwdriver.
- Slide the battery out of its house by pushing it with a screwdriver.
- Insert the new battery, maintaining its correct polarity.

NOTE: Do not throw the battery in the trash, but dispose of it properly.

Technical Binder © 2020

SOMFY®

DecoFlex 1 & 5 RTS Wall Switch

1 DESCRIPTION



1 CHANNEL
White: 1810897
Ivory: 1810898
Black: 1810899

5 CHANNEL
White: 1810813
Ivory: 1810814
Black: 1810830

The DecoFlex RTS Switch is a wireless radio transmitter compatible with all Somfy RTS Motors and externally mounted RTS receivers.

- **Commands are transmitted by radio waves at 433.42 MHz.**
- **Power: 3V lithium battery, CR 2450 type**
- **Operating temperature: +5°C/41°F to +40°C/104°F**
- **Range: Up to 65 Ft.**
- **Fits into standard Decora Wall Plates**

The Somfy DecoFlex WireFree™ RTS switch is a low voltage device which in many cases does not require an electrical box. It can be mounted adjacent to an existing Decora style light switch or as a stand-alone device using the (included) SOMFY low voltage mounting bracket (See installation section for details).

2 PROGRAMMING

A. ADDING A DECOFLEX WIREFREE™ RTS WALL SWITCH - INITIAL INSTALLATION

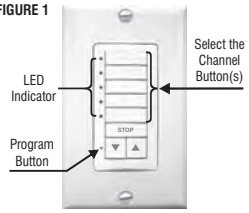
NOTE: During initial programming it is recommended to provide power only to the motor or RTS receiver being programmed.

1. Set the RTS Receiver or Motor into Programming Mode (Refer to the installation instructions of the relevant RTS receiver or motor for this procedure).
2. Select a Channel to be memorized by pressing the appropriate CHANNEL BUTTON. The adjacent LED will light to indicate the channel has been selected. (See figure 1)
3. Using a paperclip or similar device, briefly press the programming button (**1 second max**) located on the DecoFlex WireFree™ switch (See figure 1). The RTS receiver or motor will confirm the addition of the new DecoFlex switch in their respective manners.

B. ADDING ADDITIONAL CHANNELS OR DECOFLEX WIREFREE™ WALL SWITCHES

1. Using a paperclip or similar device, press and hold the program button (for 3 seconds) on the **previously addressed DecoFlex switch or channel in memory**. The RTS receiver or motor will confirm programming mode in their respective manners.
2. Select a NEW channel or DecoFlex switch to be memorized by pressing the appropriate CHANNEL BUTTON. The adjacent LED will illuminate to indicate the channel has been selected (See figure 1).
3. Using a paperclip or similar device, briefly press the programming button (**1 second max**) located on the DecoFlex switch (See figure 1). The RTS receiver or motor will confirm the addition of the new channel or DecoFlex switch in their respective manners.

FIGURE 1



C. DELETING SPECIFIC CHANNELS OR DECOFLEX WIREFREE™ WALL SWITCH FROM MEMORY

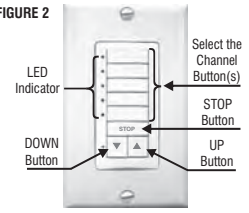
1. Using a paperclip or similar device, press and hold the program button (for 3 seconds) on a **previously addressed DecoFlex switch or channel in memory** (See figure 1). The RTS receiver or motor will confirm programming mode in their respective manners.
2. Select a Channel to be deleted by pressing the appropriate CHANNEL BUTTON. The adjacent LED will illuminate to indicate the channel has been selected (See figure 1).
   NOTE: Only one channel can be deleted per procedure. To remove/delete additional channels, proceed to **Step 3** then start at **Step 1** for each channel to be deleted.
3. Using a paperclip or similar device, briefly press the programming button (**1 second max**) located on the DecoFlex switch (See figure 1). The RTS receiver or motor will confirm the deletion of the selected channel or DecoFlex switch in their respective manners.

3 OPERATING THE DECOFLEX WIREFREE™ WALL SWITCH

1. Select the CHANNEL BUTTON(s) programmed to a specific window covering(s). The adjacent LEDs will illuminate to indicate the channel(s) selected (press CHANNEL BUTTON(s) in successive order to DESELECT,the adjacent LEDs will extinguish to indicate the deselected channels).
2. To raise the window covering(s), press the **UP** button. To lower the window covering(s), press the **DOWN** button.
3. To stop the window covering(s) at any time, simply press the **STOP** button (see figure 2).
4. If a "Preferred Position" has been programmed, the window covering(s) can be commanded to travel to a preprogrammed intermediate position.(Refer to the installation instructions of the relevant RTS receiver or motor for this procedure).

NOTE: If a command button (UP, DOWN, STOP,) is pressed without a channel button(s) selected, the DecoFlex™ will default to the channel button(s) previously selected. Selecting multiple CHANNEL BUTTONS for "group" activation will result in a sequential-output whereby each channel will activate in sequence from channel 1-5.

FIGURE 2



4 INSTALLATION

Included is a special SOMFY low voltage device mounting bracket which attaches to drywall and eliminates the need for an electrical box.

The bracket can be used in **two** mounting type configurations, they are as follows:

1. The bracket is specifically designed for mounting the DecoFlex WireFree™ RTS wall switch to an adjacent (pre-existing) Decora style light switch (see below). This unique mounting bracket allows the necessary spacing for 2 adjacent switches and a new "Double Gang" (2 Gang) wall plate to be installed (See photo 8) resulting in an aesthetically pleasing professional installation.

NOTE: When following configuration 1. The mounting bracket is not designed to be used in conjunction with "old-work" or retrofit electrical boxes. (Please check local codes to determine if an electrical box is required for your installation.) For increased radio performance, Somfy recommends the use of non-metallic electrical enclosures.

2. The bracket can also be used for individual or "stand-alone" (1 switch) mounting configurations.

Tools required for installation:
Screw drivers (Phillips and Bladed), Dry-wall saw, Wall stud sensor, Non-marring tape and pencil

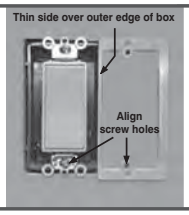
1. Locate an existing light switch and remove wall plate exposing electrical box.
Somfy recommends shutting off power to the exposed electrical box prior to installation.



2. Using a stud sensor, locate the stud nearest to exposed electrical box. Then mark (for reference) with removable tape or pencil.



3. Place the flat side of mounting bracket (included) against the wall and align the thin side over the outside edge of the existing electrical box (**opposite the stud side**). Center the bracket to align the mounting screw height with existing switch, then trace the inside shape of the bracket on wall using a pencil or thin marker.





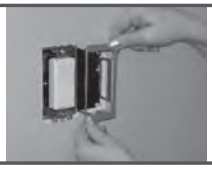
4. Using a dry-wall saw (or similar) begin to cut the dry-wall along the traced outline. Do not cut hole larger than outline as this may result in a loose fitting bracket. *For greater accuracy please refer to the recommended hole dimensions on reverse page.



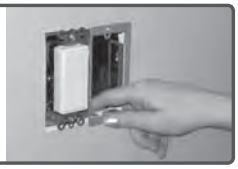
DecoFlex 1 & 5 RTS Wall Switch (Continued)

4 INSTALLATION CONT'D

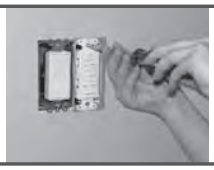
5. Insert bracket (as shown) into hole, keeping the thin side closest to the edge of the existing switch box.



6. Carefully bend bracket tabs 90 degrees behind the dry-wall to ensure a tight secure fit.



7. Position the DecoFlex RTS switch into mounting bracket aligning the screw holes. Secure switch to mounting bracket with screws (provided).



8. Attach a new (2 gang) or double gang Decora style wall plate over both switches to complete installation.



*** Hole dimensions for (Step 4) mounting bracket (1 5/8″ W x 3 7/16″ L)**

5 REPLACING THE BATTERY



The DecoFlex WireFree™ RTS switch is designed to provide years of maintenance free performance. Should the battery become discharged, the LED indicator lights will no longer function when the channel button is selected or an Up/Stop/Down command is activated. As a result, the radio signal will be reduced or not communicated to the RTS receiver or motor.
The battery can be easily replaced by exposing the SWITCH BASE ASSEMBLY board of the DecoFlex WireFree™ switch. Simply slide the battery out of its holder and replace with a new **3V Lithium battery (type 2450)** maintaining the correct polarity.
NOTE: Batteries should be disposed of properly according to local regulations.

6 ASSEMBLE 2, 3, & 4 CHANNEL SWITCHES

1. Begin with a standard (assembled) 1 or 5 channel button DecoFlex switch - Using a small flat blade screw driver, carefully separate the SWITCH BASE ASSEMBLY from the FACEPLATE (as shown in figure 1).
2. Add or remove CHANNEL BUTTONS (as required) from the SWITCH BASE ASSEMBLY (as shown in figure 2). Be certain the SWITCH BASE ASSEMBLY remains intact.
3. Attach new 2, 3, or 4 channel button face plate (as shown in figure 3 & 4).

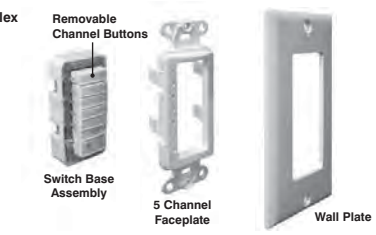


Figure 1.



Figure 2.



Figure 3.



Figure 4.



7 REPLACE STANDARD (BLANK) CHANNEL BUTTONS WITH PRINTED CHANNEL BUTTONS

1. Using a small flat blade screw driver, carefully separate the SWITCH BASE ASSEMBLY from the FACEPLATE (as shown in figure 1).
2. Replace standard (blank) or temporary labeled CHANNEL BUTTON(s) with new printed CHANNEL BUTTON(s).
3. Attach new CHANNEL BUTTON FACE PLATE (as shown in figure 3 & 4).



2 Channel Switch Assembly



3 Channel Switch Assembly



4 Channel Switch Assembly

FCC INFORMATION

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Results. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including that which may cause undesired operation.

NOTE: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for CLASS B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and , if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:
1. Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna 2. Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver
3. Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which receiver is connected 4. Consult the dealer or experienced radio/TV technician for help.

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

SOMFY SYSTEMS, INC.
North America Headquarters
47 Commerce Drive
Cranbury, NJ 08512
Phone: US: 1-800-22-SOMFY

FLORIDA
6100 Broken Sound Pkwy. N.W., Suite 14
Boca Raton, FL 33487
Phone: (877) 227-6639

CALIFORNIA
15291 Barranca Parkway
Irvine, CA 92618-2201
Phone: (877) 727-6639
Fax: (949) 727-3775

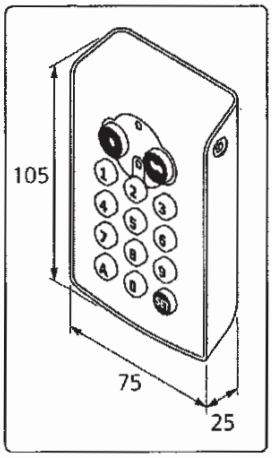
SOMFY ULC
SOMFY Canada Division
6315 Shawson Drive, Unit #1
Mississauga, Ontario L5T1J2
Phone: CN: 1-800-66-SOMFY

SOMFY SYSTEMS, INC. reserves the right to change, update or improve this document without prior notice.

SOMFY®

RTS Digital Key Pad

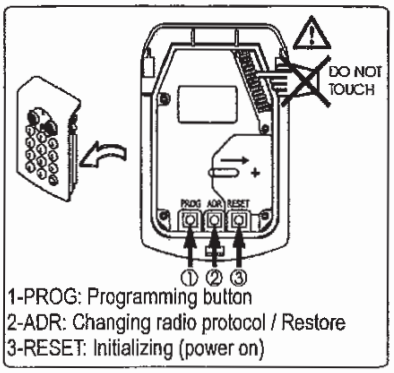
1 Technical Data



- Power supply: 3VDC lithium battery CR 2450
- Operational temperature: -5°/140° F (-20°/60° C)
- Enclosure: IP54 (outdoor rated)
- Frequency: 433.42 Mhz

WARNING: Do not allow children to play with the control system

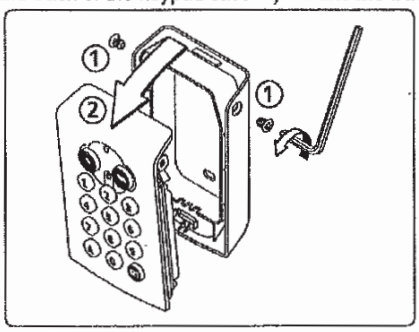
To insure proper operation, do not install on a metal surface.

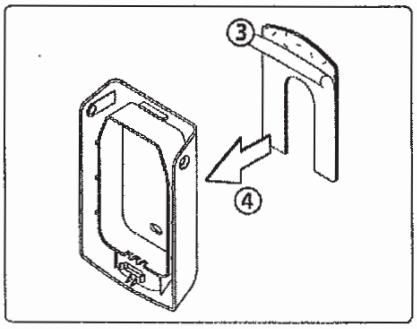


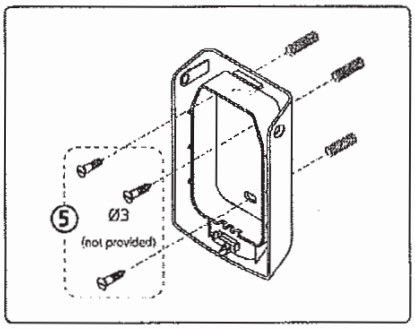
Product Description: The Hz Digital Keypad provides sequencing up/stop/down control of one or two Hz operators or Hz receivers. Control is limited to authorised users via user selected security codes of 4, 5 or 6 digits.
1 Master code (required): Valid to control both channel buttons and required for all programming operations.
4 Secondary codes (optional): 2 codes can be programmed for each channel button allowing partial access to be given to the property.
Backlighting: Pressing any button will activate back lighting in the event of low light conditions.

2 Installation/Mounting

1) Remove the two allen screws with the provided tool as shown. 2) Pull the top of the face away from the back. 3) Peel cover off foam. 4) Apply the foam to the back of the keypad case. **5) Mount the back of the case to a vertical wall in the orientation shown. Do not mount to a metal surface.**

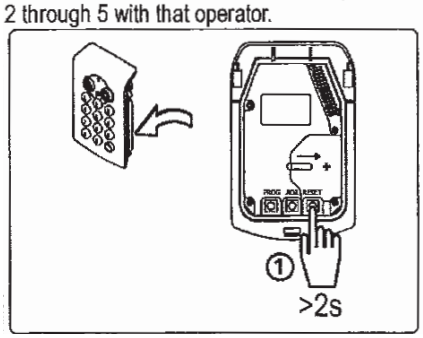


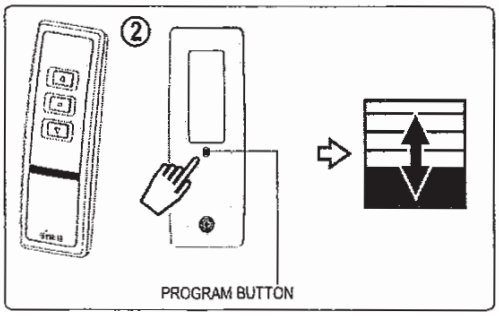


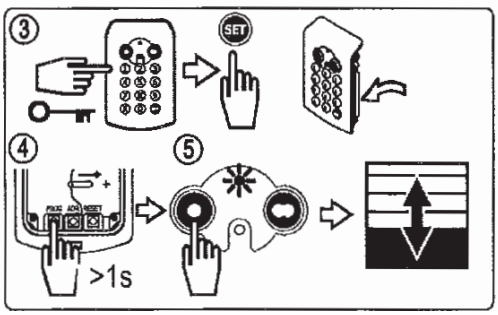


3 Programming

1) Initialize (power on) the Keypad by pressing the reset for over 2 seconds. This will only need to be done once on a given keypad. **2)** Press the programming button on a transmitter already programmed to the operator for 3+ seconds until the operator jogs. **3)** Input the master code (000000 until changed). Press **set** and release. **4)** Flip the keypad over and press the programming button for over 1 second. The top LED will start blinking **5)** Flip the keypad over and press the desired channel button (1 dot or 2) **while the top LED is still blinking.** The motor will jog. If a 2nd operator is to be programmed to button 2, repeat steps 2 through 5 with that operator.



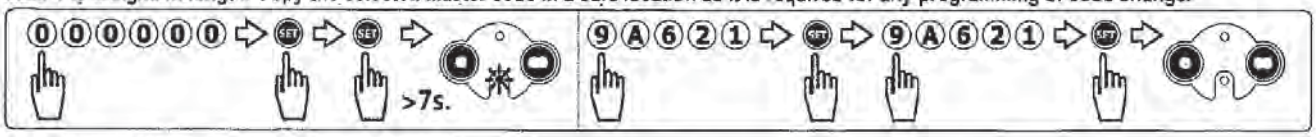




RTS Digital Keypad (Continued)

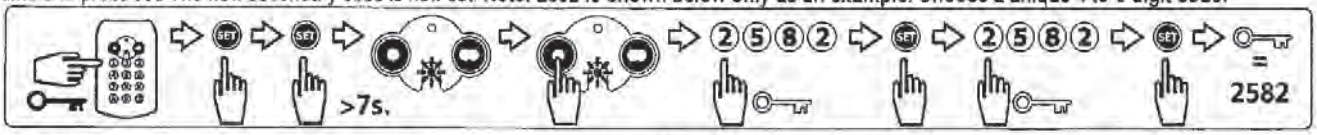
4 Changing the Master Code

To change the master code: Enter the current master code (the master code is 000000 until changed). Press set and release. Press set again and hold it for over 7 seconds The lower red LED will light and stay lit. Enter the desired new master code. Press set. Enter the new master code a 2nd time and press set. The master code has been changed. **Note: 9A621 is shown below as an example only. It is recommended you choose a different unique master code 4 to 6 digits in length. Copy the selected master code in a safe location as it is required for any programming or code change.**

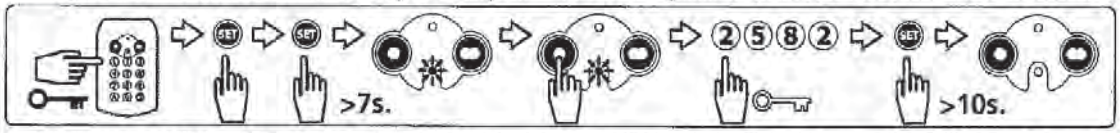


5 Secondary Codes

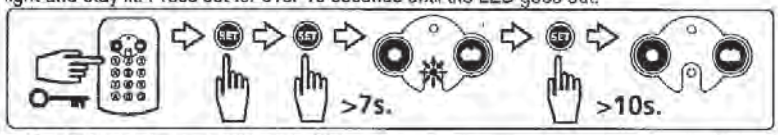
To add a secondary code: Enter the master code. Press set and release. Press set a 2nd time and hold it for over 7 seconds. The lower red LED will light and stay lit. Press the desired channel button (1 or 2 dots). Enter the desired secondary code 4 to 6 digits in length. Press set. Enter the same code a 2nd time and press set. The new secondary code is now set. **Note: 2582 is shown below only as an example. Choose a unique 4 to 6 digit code.**



To delete a secondary code: Enter the master code. Press set and release. Press set a 2nd time and hold it for over 7 seconds. The lower red LED will light and stay lit. Press the desired channel button (1 or 2 dots). Enter the secondary code to be deleted. Press set for over 10 seconds.



To delete all secondary codes: Enter the master code. Press set and release. Press set a 2nd time and hold it for over 7 seconds. The lower red LED will light and stay lit. Press set for over 10 seconds until the LED goes out.



6 Daily Use

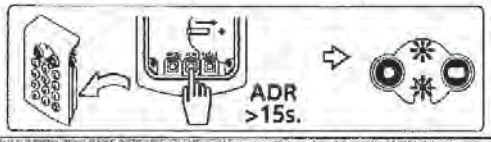
Pressing any button will activate the back lighting in the event of low light conditions. Enter the security code and press the transmit button. The top LED will blink while transmitting. The keypad will be active for 30 seconds after the code has been entered allowing the operator to be sequenced between up/stop/down/stop as desired by each press of the transmit button. **Note: the master code will grant control of both channel buttons (1 and 2 dots). The secondary codes will only grant control of the button they were programmed to.**

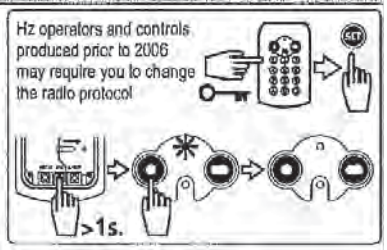


7 Trouble Shooting

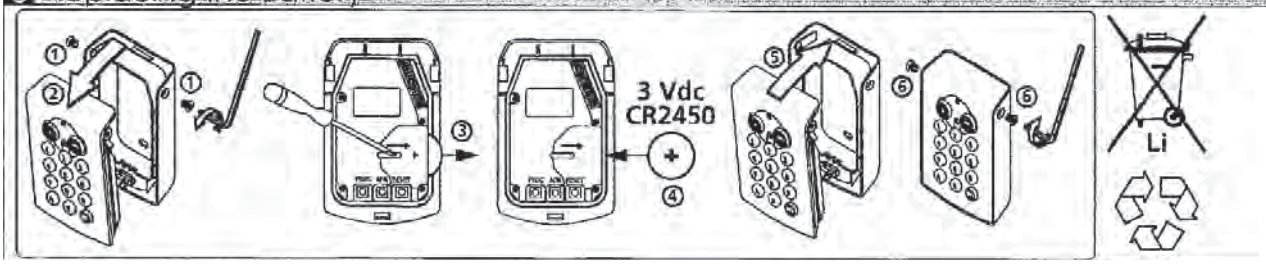
If an Hz operator or control was produced before 2006 and will not accept programming, you may need to switch the keypad to the old protocol by: Entering the master code. Press set. Press the address button. Press the channel button that will be programmed to the older unit. Again attempt programming as per step 3 above.
5 successive incorrect codes will lock the keypad for 5 min.
If an error is made in the middle of a programming step, stop and wait 30 seconds and the keypad will reset.

If the master code is lost, the code can be reset by pressing the address button for over 15 seconds until both red LED's start to blink. The master code will be reset to 000000 and the secondary codes will be





8 Replacing the Battery



Technical Binder © 2020

SOMFY®

RTS Repeater



Part Number: 1810791

The Somfy RTS Repeater can be used in installations to extend the range of the standard Radio Technology Somfy signal. It will receive the signal from a Telis or similar device and retransmit the signal to a RTS compatible motor or receiver.

Simply plug the receiver into any 120v AC outlet. It should be located at least halfway between the transmitting device (Telis) and receiving device (RTS Motor). The red LED will blink, indicating communication.

SOMFY CANADA
6315 Shawson Drive, Unit #1
Mississauga, Ontario L5T1J2

SOMFY SYSTEMS, INC.
47 Commerce Drive
Cranbury, NJ 08512

SOMFY MEXICO S.A. De C.V.
Termazcal 19-b, La Loma
Tlalnepantla
Edo. de Mex 54130
Mexico

SOMFY SYSTEMS, INC. reserves the right to change, update or improve this document without prior notice.

Ref. No.: 2500791

© SOMFY SYSTEMS, INC. 06/07

SOLIRIS RTS Sensor
Environmental Control

inteo *SOLIRIS RTS sensor 24V*

Installation Instructions



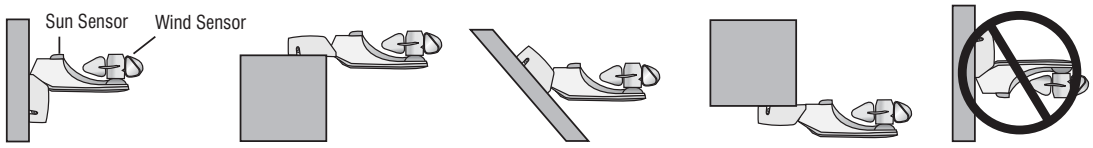
24V SOLIRIS RTS SENSOR KIT
CAT NO. 6301051
(includes transformer, not shown)

- The **SOLIRIS RTS sensor** is a radio sun & wind sensor for awnings.
- The wind and sun thresholds can be set directly on the **SOLIRIS RTS sensor.**
- The **SOLIRIS RTS sensor** is compatible with the **LT RTS CMO** and **ALTUS RTS** motors only.

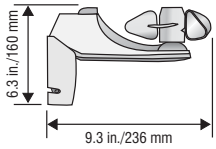
Power supply : 24V AC/DC
Rated Current : 25 mA at 24V DC
The **SOLIRIS RTS sensor** must be supplied by a class 2 transformer

Operating temperature : -4^{0}F to 122^{0}F/-20^{0}C to +50^{0}C

1 Installation



Dimensions



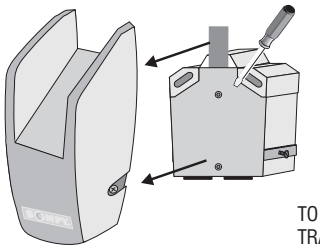
2 Wiring

WARNING: *For the **SOLIRIS RTS SENSOR** to function properly, the transmitter which is memorized into the motor's receiver, must be configured correctly. The DOWN button MUST correspond to DOWN on the end product. In the case of an awning, it will open or extend the awning. If the UP button extends the awning, the wind sensor will also extend the awning during windy conditions. THIS IS DANGEROUS! Damage and injury could occur. Do not proceed until proper operation of the transmitter is verified. Please refer to the installation instructions of the relevant motor to change the direction if necessary.*

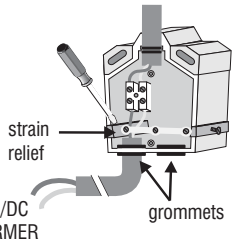


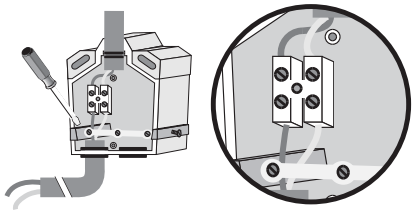
A. Power input to the sensor is not polarized, but turn off the power and fully discharge the transformer before making final connections.
B. The cable distance between the power supply and the sensor must not exceed 164 feet.

1. Remove Cover and unscrew plate over wiring compartment

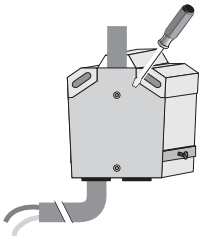


2. Loosen the strain relief plate and guide the power supply wires through the black grommet into terminal block.

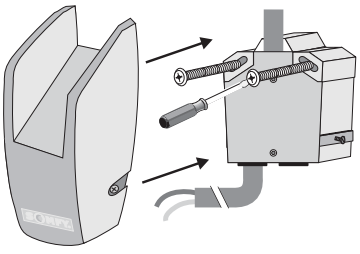




3. Connect the cable leads to the terminals
- Terminal block is removable for easier connections, and the input power is not polarized.



4. Replace wire compartment cover



5. Attach the sensor to the wall. Replace front cover and secure with screws provided

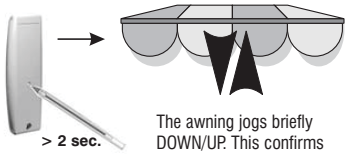
Technical Binder © 2020

3 Programming

- The motor must be in **programming mode** to record a **SOLIRIS RTS sensor.**
- One **SOLIRIS RTS sensor** can be memorized into several motors.
- It is not recommended to memorize more than 1 **SOLIRIS RTS sensor** into the motor's memory.

A. To Enter the "Programming mode"

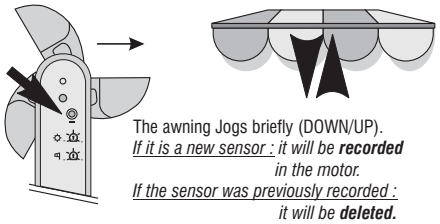
Activate the receiver's memory by pushing (for more than 2 seconds) the **programming button** of a transmitter already recorded in the motor's memory.



The awning jogs briefly DOWN/UP. This confirms the motor is in programming mode.

B. To Record or delete a sensor

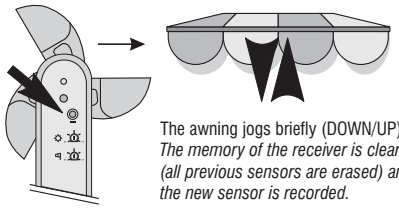
Press **briefly** on the programming button of the SOLIRIS RTS sensor



The awning Jogs briefly (DOWN/UP).
*If it is a new sensor : it will be **recorded** in the motor.*
*If the sensor was previously recorded : it will be **deleted.***

C. To delete all the sensors and record a new one

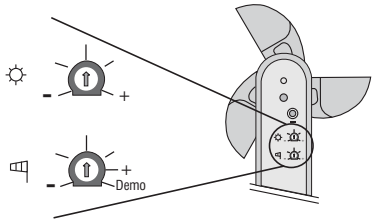
Press for **more than 7 sec.** on the "programming" button of the new SOLIRIS RTS sensor.



The awning jogs briefly (DOWN/UP).
The memory of the receiver is cleared (all previous sensors are erased) and the new sensor is recorded.

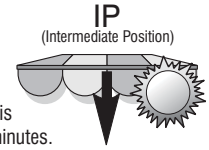
4 Operation

- The **SOLIRIS RTS sensor** controls and provides a measure of protection for a retractable awning according to the sun and wind conditions.
  The WIND and SUN thresholds can be adjusted by two potentiometers, one for wind speed and the other for daylight intensity.
- The adjustment range is between 6 - 31 miles per hour for the WIND and between 0 to 50 kilolux for the SUN
- By using the **TELIS SOLIRIS RTS transmitter,** it is possible to configure the functioning of the receiver (wind only or wind/sun). Please refer to the **TELIS SOLIRIS RTS** operating instructions. A short UP/DOWN movement of the awning indicates the modification of the sensor settings.



SUN Function

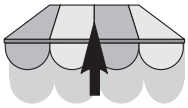
When the intensity of the daylight exceeds the threshold set by the SOLIRIS RTS sensor, a DOWN order is sent to the awning after 2 minutes.
The awning goes to the intermediate position IP, (see the motor installation instructions) or to its down end limit position if no intermediate position has been memorized.



When the daylight level falls below the threshold setting, a variable time delay from 15 to 30 minutes is activated (depending on the sun prescence duration).
This feature avoids frequent movements of the awning on cloudy days.

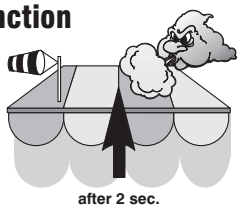


After this time delay, an UP order is given to the awning.
Any manual command given during this cycle will override the automatic operation. The SOLIRIS RTS sensor will not then function automatically until the daylight exceeds the threshold limit again.

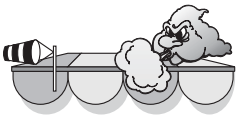


WIND Function

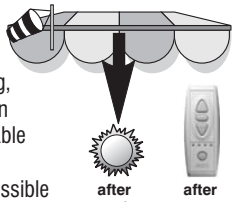
When the wind speed exceeds the threshold set by the SOLIRIS RTS sensor, an UP order is given to the awning after 2 seconds



As long as the measured wind speed is higher than the adjusted threshold, all commands are prevented from operating. (manual control or automatic control).

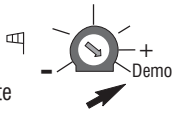


When the wind speed falls below the threshold setting, the SUN function remains inoperable for 12 minutes, although it is possible after 30 seconds, to give an order with the RTS Transmitter.



DEMO Mode

The mode is selected by turning the wind potentiometer clockwise to the limit.
In this mode all time delays are reduced to facilitate installation. The wind threshold is 6 mph.



The change of setting "In" or "Out" of the Demo Mode is confirmed with a brief Jog of the motor. This function can be used to confirm that the sensor is communicating with the motor's receiver.

NOTE: Do not leave RTS sensor in demo mode when installation is completed.

TIME DELAYS

This is the elapsed time required for the motor to respond automatically or manually (using the transmitter) to the change in sun or wind conditions.

	Normal mode	Demo mode
SUN appearing timing	2 min.	10 sec.
SUN disappearing timing	15 to 30 min.	15 sec.
WIND appearing timing	2 sec.	2 sec.
WIND disappearing timing*	12 min.	15 sec.

*** It is possible after 30 sec. to give a down order with the RTS transmitter**

EOLIS RTS Wind Sensor
Environmental Control

inteo *EOLIS RTS sensor 24V*

Installation Instructions



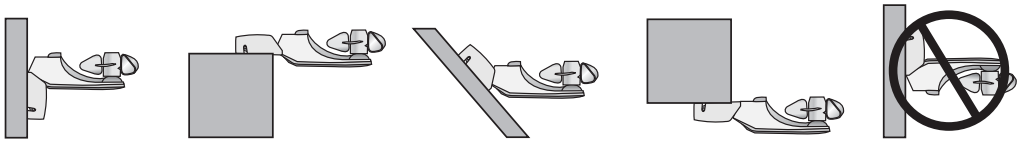
24V EOLIS RTS SENSOR KIT
CAT NO. 6301050
(Includes transformer, not shown)

- The **EOLIS RTS sensor** is a radio wind sensor for awnings
- The wind threshold can be set directly on the **EOLIS RTS sensor.**
- The **EOLIS RTS sensor** is compatible with the **LT RTS CMO** and **ALTUS RTS** motors only.

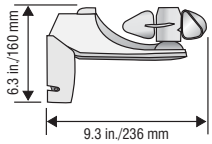
Power supply : 24V AC/DC
Rated Current : 25 mA at 24V DC
The **EOLIS RTS sensor** must be supplied by a class 2 transformer

Operating temperature : -4°F to +122°F/-20°C to +50°C

1 Installation



Dimensions



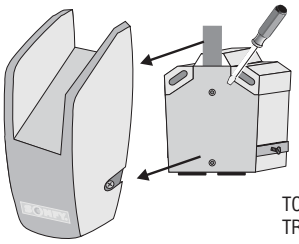
2 Wiring

WARNING: *For the **EOLIS RTS SENSOR** to function properly, the transmitter which is memorized into the motor's receiver, must be configured correctly. The DOWN button MUST correspond to DOWN on the end product. In the case of an awning, it will open or extend the awning. If the UP button extends the awning, the wind sensor will also extend the awning during windy conditions. THIS IS DANGEROUS! Damage and injury could occur. Do not proceed until proper operation of the transmitter is verified. Please refer to the installation instructions of the relevant motor to change the direction if necessary.*

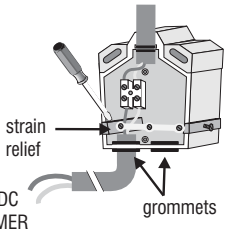


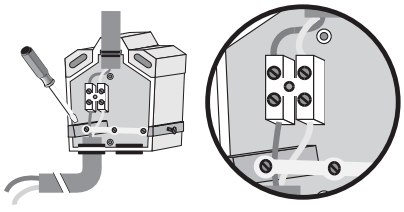
A. Power input to the sensor is not polarized, but turn off the power and fully discharge the transformer before making final connections.
B. The cable distance between the power supply and the sensor must not exceed 164 feet.

1. Remove Cover and unscrew plate over wiring compartment



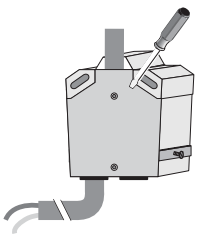
2. Loosen the strain relief plate and guide the power supply wires through the black grommet into terminal block



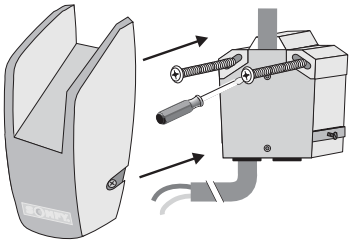


TO 24V AC/DC TRANSFORMER

3. Connect the cable leads to the terminals
- Terminal block is removable for easier connections and the input power is not polarized.



4. Replace wire compartment cover



5. Attach the sensor to the wall. Replace front cover and secure with screws provided

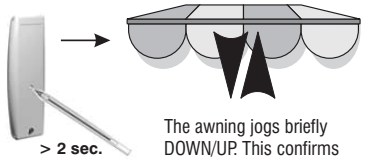
Technical Binder © 2020

3 Programming

- The motor must be in **programming mode** to record an **EOLIS RTS sensor.**
- Up to three **EOLIS RTS sensors** can be memorized in one motor. One **EOLIS RTS sensor** can be memorized into several motors.

A. To Enter the "programming mode"

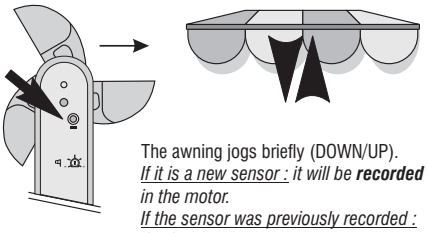
Activate the receiver's memory by pushing (for more than 2 seconds) the **programming button** on a transmitter already recorded in the motor's memory.



The awning jogs briefly DOWN/UP. This confirms the motor is in programming mode.

B. To Record or delete a sensor

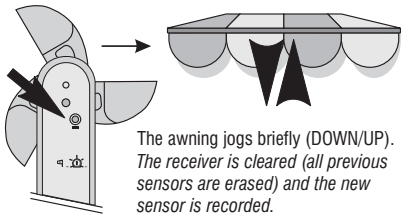
Press **briefly** on the "programming" button of the EOLIS RTS sensor



The awning jogs briefly (DOWN/UP).
*If it is a new sensor : it will be **recorded** in the motor.*
*If the sensor was previously recorded : it will be **deleted.***

C. To delete all the sensors and record a new one

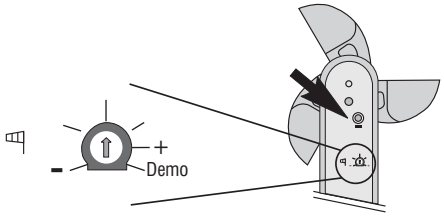
Press for **more than 7 sec.** on the "prog" button of the new EOLIS RTS sensor.



The awning jogs briefly (DOWN/UP).
The receiver is cleared (all previous sensors are erased) and the new sensor is recorded.

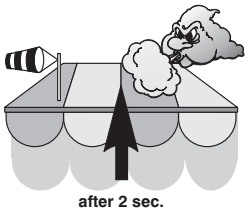
4 Operation

- The **EOLIS RTS sensor** is able to control and provide a measure of protection for retractable awnings according to wind conditions.
- The WIND threshold can be adjusted by a potentiometer to detect wind speed between 6 - 31 miles per hour.

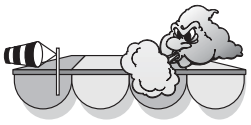


WIND Function

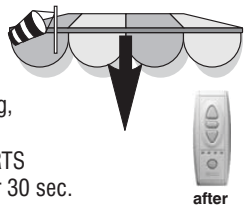
When the wind speed exceeds the threshold set by the EOLIS RTS sensor, an UP order is given to the awning after 2 seconds



As long as the measured wind speed is higher than the adjusted threshold, all commands are prevented from operating. (manual control or automatic control).

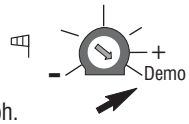


When the wind speed falls below the threshold setting, an order can be given with the RTS transmitter after 30 sec.



DEMO Mode

The mode is selected by turning the wind potentiometer clockwise to the limit.
In this mode all time delays are reduced to facilitate installation. The wind threshold is 6 mph.



The change of setting "In" or "Out" of the Demo Mode is confirmed with a brief Jog of the motor. This function can be used to confirm the sensor is communicating with the motor's receiver.

NOTE: Do not leave RTS sensor in demo mode when installation is completed.

TIME DELAYS

This is the elapsed time required for the motor to respond automatically or manually (using the transmitter) to the change in wind conditions.

	Normal mode	Demo mode
WIND appearing timing	2 sec.	2 sec.
WIND disappearing timing*	12 min.	15 sec.

*** It is possible after 30 sec. to give a down order with the RTS transmitter**

SOM_EC-EOLIS2

Sunis Outdoor RTS Sun Sensor Environmental Control



Failure to comply with these instructions annuls Somfy's responsibilities and guarantee. Somfy cannot be held responsible for any changes in norms and standards introduced after the publication of this guide. Hereby, SOMFY, declares that this product is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. A Declaration of Conformity is available at the web address www.somfy.com/CE. Useable in EU, CH

A. IMPORTANT REMARKS BEFORE INSTALLATION

- Expose the sensor to daylight for 20 minutes to initialize its autonomous operation (put the solar cells under the maximum available daylight intensity).
- To verify charging level of the sensor, press briefly the Mode button: if LED lights = ready for use.

B. PRODUCT DESCRIPTION

SUNIS sensor RTS is a wireless radio sun sensor. Integrated solar cell allows an autonomous working. It provides an automatic sun function on motorized outside solar protection.

- Compatible with outdoor Somfy RTS receivers and sensors

1. Prog. button
2. LED to indicate sun level and current mode
3. Mode button to change mode (demo/normal)
4. Potentiometer
5. Light Sensor (to catch sun intensity)
6. Solar cell (to charge the sensor)
7. Glass
8. Housing
9. Wall support

C. FEATURES

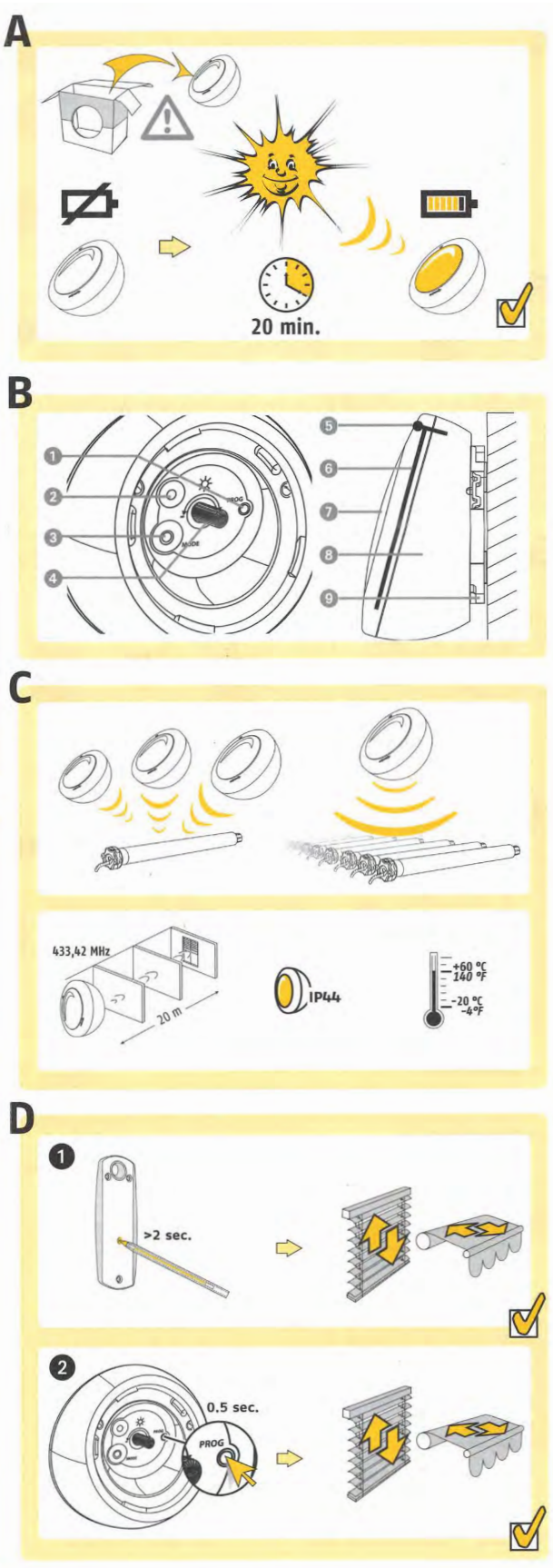
- Up to 3 sensors can be memorized in one motor, it could be combined with other RTS sensors (Eolis sensor RTS, Soliris Sensor RTS).
- One SUnis sensor RTS can be memorized in several motors.
- Supply: **solar** (thanks to solar cells).
- Autonomy: **24 hours without new daylight intensity**.

D. PROGRAMMING

- The sensor must be initialized before programming (refer to Diagram A on right)

1. **Enter the "Programming" mode**
   By pressing >2 sec. prog. button of **Remote control** until motor feedback
2. **Record a sensor**
   By pressing briefly prog. button of **sensor** -> motor feedback.

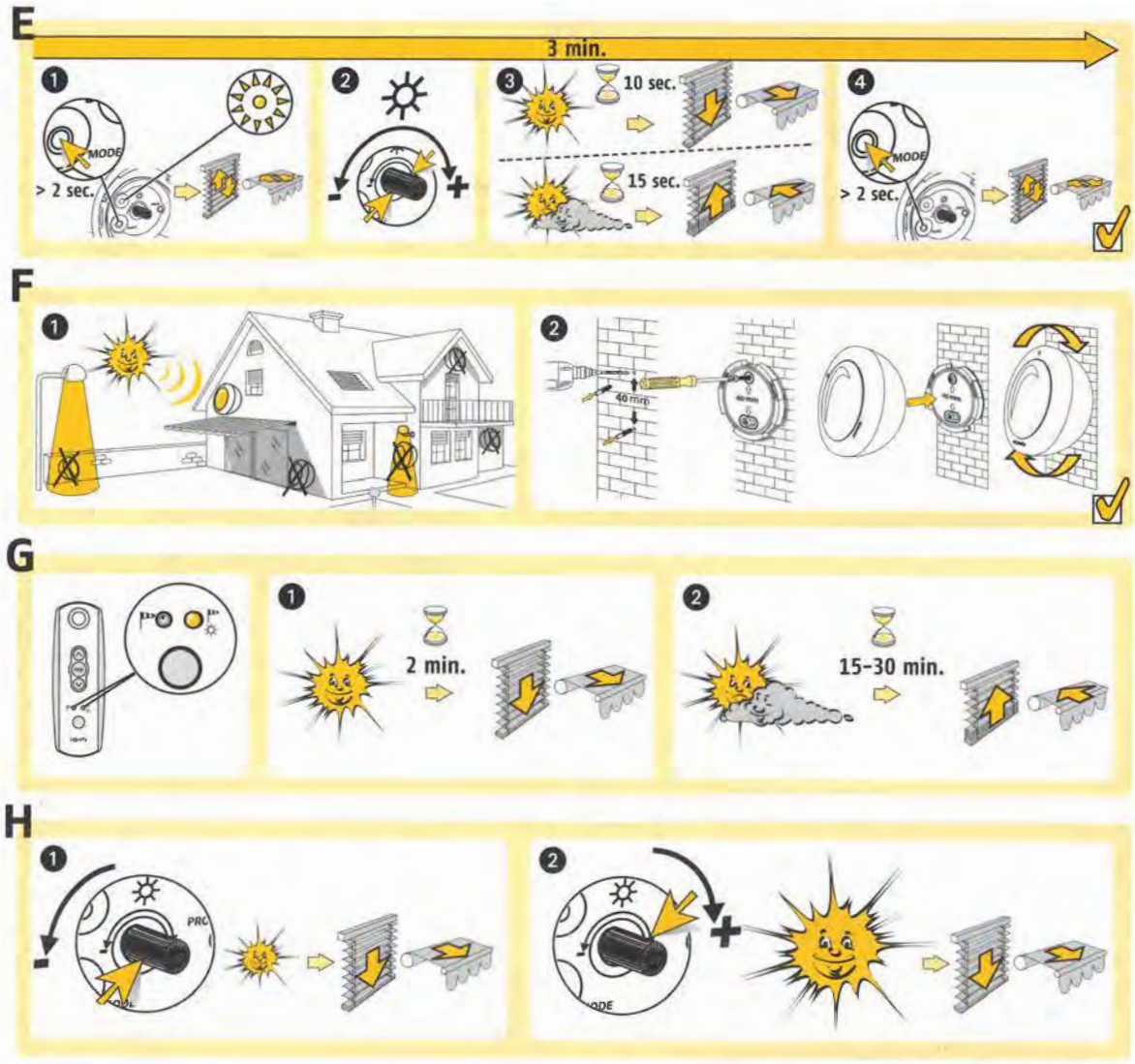
   Erase a sensor
   Repeat the steps 1 and 2 of Diagram D on right



** These instructions have been reset from the manufacturers instructions for legibility purposes. Talius assumes no responsibility for any discrepancies herein.*

Technical Binder © 2020

Sunis Outdoor RTS Sun Sensor *(Continued)*



E. SETTING INSTRUCTIONS

LED reaction in "Demo" mode or "USER" mode

THRESHOLD	USER MODE	DEMO MODE
Under sun level: Red LED	continuous light during 5 sec.	blinking light during 30 sec.
Over sun level: Green LED	continuous light during 5 sec.	blinking light during 30 sec.

1. **Enter the "Demo" mode**
   By pressing MODE button >2 sec. -> the light will start blinking for 30 sec + feedback motor.
2. **Adjust the sun threshold with the potentiometer**
   The blinking LED will be green once you have reached the current sun level. The level you set will be the one to set off the sun function.
3. **Verify the functioning:** Let the demo mode works (if no sun, use a lamp)
4. **Enter the "USER" mode**
   By pressing MODE button >2 sec. -> feedback motor.

⚠ "DEMO" mode will move back automatically after **3 min.** in "USER" mode.

F. MOUNTING INSTRUCTIONS

1. Make sure to install sensor vertically and in place where **solar cells** can catch **daylight** intensity.
2. Sensor delivered without screws, use the screw adapted to your wall support (Ø 4.5 mm).

G. SUN FUNCTIONING

Use a Telis with sun function to activate or deactivate the sun function (Telis Soliris RTS, Telis Composio RTS, Telis Modulis Soliris RTS).

Manual Mode = Sun function deactivated
Automatic Mode = Sun function activated

1. **Sun appearing**
   When the intensity of the daylight exceeds the threshold set by the Sunis sensor RTS, a DOWN order is sent to the blind after 2 mins. The blind goes to the my position (see the remote installation guide) or to its down end limit position if no my position has been memorized.
2. **Sun disappearing**
   When the daylight level falls below the threshold setting, a variable time delay from 15 - 30 minutes is activated (depending on the sun presence duration). After this time delay, an UP order is given to the blind.

H. READJUSTING

ADJUST THE SUN LEVEL WITH THE POTENTIOMETER ACCORDING TO YOUR WISHES	
1. Turn to the left (-)	2. Turn to the right (+)
LESS sun is needed to lower the blind	**MORE** sun is needed to lower the blind

TROUBLE SHOOTING	REASON	ACTION
• The solar protection does not react when sun appears/disappears	• Manual mode is active	• Switch the Telis to automatic mode
	• Incorrect sun threshold	• Set a new sun threshold
	• Cells are dirty or hidden by snow, dust pollution, leaves...	• Clean the solar cells and light sensor
	• Bad radio reception, sensor hidden by obstructions	• Change the location of Sunis sensor RTS
	• Wind protection active	• Wait wind disappears
• LED does not light	• Sensor is not charged enough	• Expose sensor 20 min. to the daylight

⚠ WARNING

- RTS wind protection (like Eolis sensor RTS) is recommended for all solar protection with fabric both horizontal and vertical.
- Somfy releases all responsabilities in case of destruction of material occurred during a weather event not detected by the sensor
- The sensor works thanks to solar cells. Take care light sensor and photocells are always clean and free from leaves, snow ... **(clean cells with dry tissue)**

** These instructions have been reset from the manufacturers instructions for legibility purposes. Talius assumes no responsibility for any discrepancies herein.*


TALIUS®

PEACE OF MIND



- Talius Standard Residential Warranty
- Talius Standard Commercial Warranty
- Talius Standard Institutional Warranty

WARRANTY DOCUMENTS


TALIUS®

TALIUS®

Warranty Documents

Table of Contents

- **Residential**
  - Rollshutters for Residential Applications 1
  - Habitat Screens™ for Residential Applications 4
- **Commercial**
  - Rollshutters for Commercial Applications 7
  - Habitat Screens™ for Commercial Applications 10
- **Institutional**
  - Rollshutters for Institutional Applications 13
  - Habitat Screens™ for Institutional Applications 16

40 YEARS
Building solutions for the future


TALIUS®

TALIUS®

Rollshutters for Residential Applications
Warranty & Maintenance Guide

Rollshutters for Residential Applications

TALIUS Limited Five (5) Year Warranty

Thank you for choosing Talius Rollshutters. To ensure your complete satisfaction with your Talius product, we warrant to the original purchaser that your product is free from defects in material and workmanship as of the date of the purchase and it will, under normal use and proper care, remain so for five (5) years after the date of purchase.

Talius' limited five (5) year warranty is issued to the original purchaser and is non-transferable. A proof of purchase (original invoice from a Talius Authorized Dealer) is required for all warranty claims.

To register your Talius Rollshutter, please go to www.talius.com.

This warranty is valid when:

- Talius products are installed by a TALIUS authorized dealer in accordance with Talius installation instructions.
- The warranty claim does not exceed the original cost of the Rollshutter. Talius is not liable for any consequential damages caused by improper specification or installation of the Talius Rollshutter.

What is Covered

1. Talius warrants your Rollshutter against defective materials for a period of five (5) years from the date of purchase. In the event that a claim is made in writing to Talius or an authorized Talius dealer on or before the expiration of the warranty period that your Rollshutter has defective materials, Talius will provide replacement parts free of charge. Talius reserves the right to request the item to be returned for testing. In the event that the item for which the claim is made proves not to be defective, the customer or the independent authorized Talius dealer who made the warranty claim will be responsible for shipping and handling costs.
2. This warranty applies only to the original purchaser of the Rollshutter who completes and registers the customer warranty information with Talius within sixty (60) days of purchase or installation, as the case may be.
3. This warranty is issued to the original purchaser of the Rollshutter only and is non-transferable.
4. This warranty is void in the following circumstances:
   - damage to a Rollshutter caused by an accident;
   - damage to a Rollshutter caused by an external force or cause, including but not limited to damage by abuse, misuse or negligence; or
   - where a Rollshutter is operated or maintained in a manner not in accordance with the Warranty and Maintenance Guide.
   - damage caused by "Acts of Nature" will be determined on a case-by-case basis.
5. There are no representations, warranties or conditions expressed on implied, statutory or otherwise, except those expressly set out in this warranty.

HEAD OFFICE/MANUFACTURING FACILITY
PO Box 3279, 5501 - 46 Ave SE
Salmon Arm, BC, Canada V1E 4S1
TEL 250.832.7777 ■ **Toll Free: 800.665.5550**
EMAIL info@talius.com

www.talius.com

General Care, Cleaning and Maintenance Guide

General Care

To ensure smooth operation of your Talius Rollshutter we recommend the following tips:

- Always be in viewing range of your Rollshutter during operation. This will ensure that obstructions are avoided and will mitigate the risk of person injury or damage to the Rollshutter caused by the force of the Rollshutter operating downward. Most motors do not have obstacle detection mechanisms and will be damaged if lowered onto an obstruction. Possible obstructions include, but are not limited to: hands, fingers, pets, outward opening windows, branches, tools, furniture or garden utensils.
- Do not operate your Rollshutter if it is covered in snow, ice, or debris. Brush off all obstructions prior to use to prevent these items from causing your Rollshutter to malfunction.
- Do not force your Rollshutter to operate. If it is stuck in the open or closed position, and is motorized, the motor may have overheated due to continuous operation. If your Rollshutter motor does not reset itself within ten to forty-five (10-45) minutes, contact your Talius Authorized Dealer for service.
- Do not allow children to operate your Rollshutter without supervision.
- When using a manual crank operator on a motorized unit, do not operate the curtain past its upper or lower limits. Over cranking in either direction may damage the motor's internal limit switches and would not be covered under then manufacturer's warranty.



Electrically operated Rollshutters operate on a regular 120 volt current, and it is strongly recommended that you shut off power to your Rollshutter via the circuit breaker on your buildings electrical panel prior to cleaning your Rollshutter with water.

General Cleaning

Over time, dirt and debris can collect on your Rollshutter and may adversely affect smooth operation. This can be corrected by periodically cleaning your Rollshutter in the following manner:

Front Side of Rollshutter

- Operate Rollshutter to the down, or closed, position.
- Use a garden hose to clean the panel box, guide rails and Rollshutter curtain. Do not use a pressure washer.

Back Side of Rollshutter

- Operate the Rollshutter to the up, or open, position, completely retracted into the panel box.
- Remove the screws that hold the panel box bottom in place.
- Remove the panel box lid carefully pulling it down to reveal the Rollshutter curtain rolled up inside the panel box.
- Clean the exposed side of the Rollshutter curtain in the panel box by wiping it clean with warm water. Gently lower the Rollshutter curtain into the down position, or closed position, to reveal more of the Rollshutter and a greater cleaning surface.
- Re-install the panel box bottom by fastening the screws.

General Maintenance

To avoid the risk of personal injury or damage to your Talius Rollshutter, Talius strongly recommends that you contact your Talius Authorized Dealer prior to preforming any maintenance on your Rollshutter. Talius Rollshutters are designed to be maintenance free. Under normal operation, it is not necessary to perform any adjustments or lubrication of the components.

Technical Binder © 2020

Common Troubleshooting

> Never operate a manual override motor with the crank rod handle if power is supplied to the motor

Your Rollshutter curtain is jammed in the panel box.

Cause: The bottom profile was accidentally pushed up into the panel box, the rollshutter was lowered onto an obstruction causing it to roll up loosely, OR there may have been a light frost on the curtain last time you rolled it up. The layer of frost can increase the curtain's roll-up diameter, which will cause the curtain to roll up too high, even though the motor preforms the same amount of rotations on its shaft.

Solution: Remove the panel box access bottom. Re-insert the bottom profile by guiding it into the guide rails. Meanwhile, you should slowly lower the curtain with the operator. Generally, this problem will not repeat itself.

The Rollshutter appears stuck in the "DOWN" position.

Cause: Your Rollshutter's curtain bottom profile may be frozen to the window sill.

Solution: A little push against the bottom profile may release it. On Rollshutter units with SAFE u-sill, snow and ice may accumulate in the sill when the curtain is in the up position causing the bottom profile to freeze to the sill when the curtain is closed. To minimize these occurrences, ensure that the weep holes in the u-sill are clear, and clean out any accumulations of snow from the u-sill before closing the curtain. If the rollshutter still does not move upwards, contact your Talius Authorized Dealer.

The electrical Rollshutter is not moving in any direction

Cause A: The breaker or fuse for the power supply of the Rollshutter has tripped off

Solution A: Check the components and wiring of the power circuit connected to the Rollshutter to determine what caused the breaker to trip. Once you are satisfied that there are no short circuits in the power supply, and that the power circuit is otherwise safe to re-energize, flip the breaker to the "ON" position, or replace the fuse. If plugged into an exterior plug, check if the GFI has been tripped and reset if necessary.

Cause B: There has been a failure, or interruption, to the power supply.

Solution B: A motorized Rollshutter will not operate without 120VAC power, unless equipped with a manual override motor. If so equipped attach the crank rod handle to the universal joint by inserting the shaped pin on the end of the universal joint into the slotted bell-cup connector on the end of the crank rod handle. While watching the direction of movement of the Rollshutter curtain, crank the handle clockwise to raise the curtain, or counter-clockwise to lower the Rollshutter curtain. If the curtain moves in the opposite direction of what you want, stop and begin cranking in the opposite direction. Continue to crank the curtain until you have reached the desired position. Be sure not to over-crank the curtain in the "UP" direction so that the bottom profile goes into the panel box or in the "DOWN" direction causing the Rollshutter to go slack. Over-cranking in either direction may damage the motor's internal limit switches and would not be covered under the manufacturer's warranty.

Your motor has overheated

Cause: This happens occasionally when the Rollshutter is operated continuously

Solution: Rollshutter motors are designed for short operational cycles. If operated continuously for more than a few minutes at a time the motor may overheat. Your motor is equipped with a thermal overload protection switch that shuts the motor off when overheated. It will reset itself automatically when the motor has cooled off. This may take from ten to forty-five (10-45) minutes, depending on the environment and the position of the rollshutter curtain. After the motor has reset itself it is operational again. Even repeated overheating does not harm the motor in anyway.

The motorized Rollshutter stops too soon or too late when it reaches its completely rolled-up or rolled-down position

Cause: This can be due to several causes.

Solution: Do not operate the Rollshutter any further. Contact your Talius Authorized Dealer.

If you have any additional questions regarding your Talius Rollshutter pertaining to matters not covered in this guide, please contact Talius at 1-800-665-5550
www.talius.com

40 YEARS Building solutions for the future

3

TALIUS®

Habitat Screens™ for Residential Applications
Warranty & Maintenance Guide

Habitat Screens™ for Residential Applications

TALIUS Limited Five (5) Year WARRANTY

Thank you for choosing Talius Habitat Screens™. To ensure your complete satisfaction with your Talius product, we warrant to the original purchaser that your product is free from defects in material and workmanship as of the date of the purchase and it will, under normal use and proper care, remain so for five (5) years after the date of purchase.

Talius' limited five (5) year warranty is issued to the original purchaser and is non-transferable. A proof of purchase (original invoice from a Talius Authorized Dealer) is required for all warranty claims.

To register your Talius Habitat Screen™, please go to www.talius.com.

This warranty is valid when:

- Talius products are installed by a TALIUS authorized dealer in accordance with Talius installation instructions.
- The warranty claim does not exceed the original cost of the Habitat Screen™. Talius is not liable for any consequential damages caused by improper specification or installation of the Talius Habitat Screen™.

What is Covered

1. Talius warrants your Habitat Screen™ against defective materials for a period of five (5) years from the date of purchase. In the event that a claim is made in writing to Talius or an authorized Talius dealer on or before the expiration of the warranty period that your Habitat Screen™ has defective materials, Talius will provide replacement parts free of charge. Talius reserves the right to request the item to be returned for testing. In the event that the item for which the claim is made proves not to be defective, the customer or the independent authorized Talius dealer who made the warranty claim will be responsible for shipping and handling costs.
2. This warranty applies only to the original purchaser of the Habitat Screen™ who completes and registers the customer warranty information with Talius within sixty (60) days of purchase or installation, as the case may be.
3. This warranty is issued to the original purchaser of the Habitat Screen™ only and is non-transferable.
4. This warranty is void in the following circumstances:
   - damage to a Habitat Screen™ caused by an accident;
   - damage to a Habitat Screen™ caused by an external force or cause, including but not limited to damage by abuse, misuse or negligence; or
   - where a Habitat Screen™ is operated or maintained in a manner not in accordance with the Warranty and Maintenance Guide.
   - damage caused by "Acts of Nature" will be determined on a case-by-case basis.
5. There are no representations, warranties or conditions expressed on implied, statutory or otherwise, except those expressly set out in this warranty.

HEAD OFFICE/MANUFACTURING FACILITY
PO Box 3279, 5501 - 46 Ave SE
Salmon Arm, BC, Canada V1E 4S1
TEL 250.832.7777 ■ **Toll Free: 800.665.5550**
EMAIL info@talius.com

www.talius.com

Technical Binder © 2020

Habitat Screens™ for Residential Applications
Warranty & Maintenance Guide (continued)

General Care, Cleaning and Maintenance Guide

General Care

To ensure smooth operation of your Talius Habitat Screen™ we recommend the following tips:

- Always be in viewing range of your Habitat Screen™ during operation. This will ensure that obstructions are avoided and will mitigate the risk of person injury or damage to the Habitat Screen™ caused by the force of the Habitat Screen™ operating downward. Most motors do not have obstacle detection mechanisms and will be damaged if lowered onto an obstruction. Possible obstructions include, but are not limited to: hands, fingers, pets, outward opening windows, branches, tools, furniture or garden utensils.
- Do not operate your Habitat Screen™ if it is covered in snow, ice, or debris. Brush off all obstructions prior to use to prevent these items from causing your Habitat Screen™ to malfunction.
- Do not force your Habitat Screen™ to operate. If it is stuck in the open or closed position, and is motorized, the motor may have overheated due to continuous operation. If your Habitat Screen™ motor does not reset itself within ten to forty-five (10-45) minutes, contact your Talius dealer for service.
- Do not allow children to operate your Habitat Screen™ without supervision.
- When using a manual crank operator on a motorized unit, do not operate the Habitat Screen™ past its upper or lower limits. Over cranking in either direction may damage the motor's internal limit switches and would not be covered under the manufacturer's warranty.



Electrically operated Habitat Screens™ operate on a regular 120 volt current, and it is strongly recommended that you shut off power to your Habitat Screen™ via the circuit breaker on your buildings electrical panel prior to cleaning your Habitat Screen™ with water.

General Cleaning

Over time, dirt and debris can collect on your Habitat Screen™ and may adversely affect smooth operation. This can be corrected by periodically cleaning your Habitat Screen™ in the following manner:

- Operate Habitat Screen™ to the down, or closed, position.
- Use a garden hose to clean the panel box, guide rails and Habitat Screen™ curtain. Do not use a pressure washer as it can cause the screen to be pulled out of the edge retention insert.
- If a cleaner is needed Talius recommends a gentle detergent and to test the detergent in a small section of screen before complete use to ensure no staining or residue.

General Maintenance

To avoid the risk of personal injury or damage to your Talius Habitat Screen™, Talius strongly recommends that you contact your Talius Authorized Dealer prior to preforming any maintenance on your Habitat ScreenTM. Talius Habitat Screens™ are designed to be maintenance free. Under normal operation, it is not necessary to perform any adjustments or lubrication of the components.

Common Troubleshooting

> Always ensure that all outward opening windows are closed and the guide rails and sill are free from obstruction. Failure to do so will result in damage to your Habitat Screen™.

Your Habitat Screen™ is stuck in the guide rails.

Cause: The zippers on the vertical edge of the Habitat Screen™ are sticking in the edge retention inserts within the guide rails because of an accumulation of dust within the insert. This dust can cause an obstruction, thus preventing smooth operation of your Habitat Screen™.

Solution: Retract your Habitat Screen™ to the up position and remove any dust and debris that has accumulated in the edge retention insets located inside the throat of the guide rails using compressed air. Do not clear dust, debris, or obstructions with a screw driver, knife or other object as they may damage the edge retention insert.

> Do not lubricate the retention system as it is not designed for this, nor should it ever need it. If your Habitat Screen™ is still sticking in the guide rails after removing dust and debris, please contact us or your Talius Authorized Dealer.

The electrical Habitat Screen™ is not moving in any direction

Cause A: The breaker or fuse for the power supply of the Habitat Screen™ has tripped off

Solution A: Check the components and wiring of the power circuit connected to the Habitat Screen™ to determine what caused the breaker to trip. Once you are satisfied that there are no short circuits in the power supply, and that the power circuit is otherwise safe to re-energize, flip the breaker to the "ON" position, or replace the fuse. If plugged into an exterior plug, check if the GFI has been tripped and reset if necessary.

Cause B: There has been a failure, or interruption, to the power supply.

Solution B: A motorized Habitat Screen™ will not operate without 120VAC power, you must wait until power can be supplied to the Habitat Screen™ to operate the unit.

Your motor has overheated

Cause: This happens occasionally when the Habitat Screen™ is operated continuously

Solution: Habitat Screen™ motors are designed for short operational cycles. If operated continuously for more than a few minutes at a time the motor may overheat. Your motor is equipped with a thermal overload protection switch that shuts the motor off when overheated. It will reset itself automatically when the motor has cooled off. This may take from ten to forty-five (10-45) minutes, depending on the environment and position of the Habitat Screen™. After the motor has reset itself it is operational again. Even repeated overheating does not harm the motor in anyway.

The motorized Habitat Screen™ stops too soon or too late when it reaches its completely rolled-up or rolled-down position

Cause: This can be due to several causes.

Solution: Do not operate the Habitat Screen™ any further. Contact your Talius Authorized Dealer.

If you have any additional questions regarding your Habitat Screen™ pertaining to matters not covered in this guide, please contact Talius at 1-800-665-5550
www.talius.com

40 YEARS Building solutions for the future

Technical Binder © 2020

TALIUS®

Rollshutters for Commercial Applications
Warranty & Maintenance Guide

Rollshutters for Commercial Applications

TALIUS Limited One (1) Year WARRANTY

Thank you for choosing Talius Rollshutters. To ensure your complete satisfaction with your Talius product, we warrant to the original purchaser that your product is free from defects in material and workmanship as of the date of the purchase and it will, under normal use and proper care, remain so for one (1) year after the date of purchase.

Talius' limited one (1) year warranty is issued to the original purchaser and is non-transferable. A proof of purchase (original invoice from a Talius Authorized Dealer) is required for all warranty claims.

To register your Talius Rollshutter, please go to www.talius.com.

This warranty is valid when:

- Talius products are installed by a TALIUS authorized dealer in accordance with Talius installation instructions.
- The warranty claim does not exceed the original cost of the Rollshutter. Talius is not liable for any consequential damages caused by improper specification or installation of the Talius Rollshutter.

What is Covered

1. Talius warrants your Rollshutter against defective materials for a period of one (1) year from the date of purchase. In the event that a claim is made in writing to Talius or an authorized Talius dealer on or before the expiration of the warranty period that your Rollshutter has defective materials, Talius will provide replacement parts free of charge. Talius reserves the right to request the item to be returned for testing. In the event that the item for which the claim is made proves not to be defective, the customer or the independent authorized Talius dealer who made the warranty claim will be responsible for shipping and handling costs.
2. This warranty applies only to the original purchaser of the Rollshutter who completes and registers the customer warranty information with Talius within sixty (60) days of purchase or installation, as the case may be.
3. This warranty is issued to the original purchaser of the Rollshutter only and is non-transferable.
4. This warranty is void in the following circumstances:
   - damage to a Rollshutter caused by an accident;
   - damage to a Rollshutter caused by an external force or cause, including but not limited to damage by abuse, misuse or negligence; or
   - where a Rollshutter is operated or maintained in a manner not in accordance with Warranty and Maintenance Guide.
   - damage caused by "Acts of Nature" will be determined on a case-by-case basis.
5. There are no representations, warranties or conditions expressed on implied, statutory or otherwise, except those expressly set out in this warranty.

HEAD OFFICE/MANUFACTURING FACILITY
PO Box 3279, 5501 - 46 Ave SE
Salmon Arm, BC, Canada V1E 4S1
TEL 250.832.7777 ■ **Toll Free: 800.665.5550**
EMAIL info@talius.com

www.talius.com

Rollshutters for Commercial Applications
Warranty & Maintenance Guide (continued)

General Care, Cleaning and Maintenance Guide

General Care

To ensure smooth operation of your Talius Rollshutter we recommend the following tips:

- Always be in viewing range of your Rollshutter during operation. This will ensure that obstructions are avoided and will mitigate the risk of person injury or damage to the Rollshutter caused by the force of the Rollshutter operating downward. Most motors do not have obstacle detection mechanisms and will be damaged if lowered onto an obstruction. Possible obstructions include, but are not limited to: hands, fingers, pets, outward opening windows, branches, tools, furniture or garden utensils.
- Do not operate your Rollshutter if it is covered in snow, ice, or debris. Brush off all obstructions prior to use to prevent these items from causing your Rollshutter to malfunction.
- Do not force your Rollshutter to operate. If it is stuck in the open or closed position, and is motorized, the motor may have overheated due to continuous operation. If your Rollshutter motor does not reset itself within ten to forty-five (10-45) minutes, contact your Talius Authorized Dealer for service.
- Do not allow children to operate your Rollshutter without supervision.
- When using a manual crank operator on a motorized unit, do not operate the curtain past its upper and lower limits. Over cranking in either direction may damage the motor's internal limit switches and would not be covered under the manufacturer's warranty.



Electrically operated Rollshutters operate on a regular 120 volt current, and it is strongly recommended that you shut off power to your Rollshutter via the circuit breaker on your buildings electrical panel prior to cleaning your Rollshutter with water.

General Cleaning

Over time, dirt and debris can collect on your Rollshutter and may adversely affect smooth operation. This can be corrected by periodically cleaning your Rollshutter in the following manner:

Front Side of Rollshutter

- Operate Rollshutter to the down, or closed, position.
- Use a garden hose to clean the panel box, guide rails and Rollshutter curtain. Do not use a pressure washer.

Back Side of Rollshutter

- Operate the Rollshutter to the up, or open, position, completely retracted into the panel box.
- Remove the screws that hold the panel box bottom in place.
- Remove the panel box lid carefully pulling it down to reveal the Rollshutter curtain rolled up inside the panel box.
- Clean the exposed side of the Rollshutter curtain in the panel box by wiping it clean with warm water. Gently lower the Rollshutter curtain into the down position, or closed position, to reveal more of the Rollshutter and a greater cleaning surface.
- Re-install the panel box bottom by fastening the screws.

General Maintenance

To avoid the risk of personal injury or damage to your Talius Rollshutter, Talius strongly recommends that you contact your Talius Authorized Dealer prior to preforming any maintenance on your Rollshutter. Talius Rollshutters are designed to be maintenance free. Under normal operation, it is not necessary to perform any adjustments or lubrication of the components.

Technical Binder © 2020

Common Troubleshooting

> Never operate a manual override motor with the crank rod handle if power is supplied to the motor

Your Rollshutter curtain is jammed in the panel box.

Cause: The bottom profile was accidentally pushed up into the panel box, the rollshutter was lowered onto an obstruction causing it to roll up loosely, OR there may have been a light frost on the curtain last time you rolled it up. The layer of frost can increase the curtain's roll-up diameter, which will cause the curtain to roll up too high, even though the motor preforms the same amount of rotations on its shaft.
Solution: Remove the panel box access bottom. Re-insert the bottom profile by guiding it into the guide rails. Meanwhile, you should slowly lower the curtain with the operator. Generally, this problem will not repeat itself.

The Rollshutter appears stuck in the "DOWN" position.

Cause: Your Rollshutter's curtain bottom profile may be frozen to the window sill.
Solution: A little push against the bottom profile may release it. On Rollshutter units with SAFE u-sill, snow and ice may accumulate in the sill when the curtain is in the up position causing the bottom profile to freeze to the sill when the curtain is closed. To minimize these occurrences, ensure that the weep holes in the u-sill are clear, and clean out any accumulations of snow from the u-sill before closing the curtain. If the rollshutter still does not move upwards, contact your Talius Authorized Dealer.

The electrical Rollshutter is not moving in any direction

Cause A: The breaker or fuse for the power supply of the Rollshutter has tripped off
Solution A: Check the components and wiring of the power circuit connected to the Rollshutter to determine what caused the breaker to trip. Once you are satisfied that there are no short circuits in the power supply, and that the power circuit is otherwise safe to re-energize, flip the breaker to the "ON" position, or replace the fuse. If plugged into an exterior plug, check if the GFI has been tripped and reset if necessary.

Cause B: There has been a failure, or interruption, to the power supply.
Solution B: A motorized Rollshutter will not operate without 120VAC power, unless equipped with a manual override motor. If so equipped attach the crank rod handle to the universal joint by inserting the shaped pin on the end of the universal joint into the slotted bell-cup connector on the end of the crank rod handle. While watching the direction of movement of the Rollshutter curtain, crank the handle clockwise to raise the curtain, or counter-clockwise to lower the Rollshutter curtain. If the curtain moves in the opposite direction of what you want, stop and begin cranking in the opposite direction. Continue to crank the curtain until you have reached the desired position. Be sure not to over-crank the curtain in the "UP" direction so that the bottom profile goes into the panel box or in the "DOWN" direction causing the Rollshutter to go slack. Over-cranking in either direction may damage the motor's internal limit switches and would not be covered under the manufacturer's warranty.

Your motor has overheated

Cause: This happens occasionally when the Rollshutter is operated continuously
Solution: Rollshutter motors are designed for short operational cycles. If operated continuously for more than a few minutes at a time the motor may overheat. Your motor is equipped with a thermal overload protection switch that shuts the motor off when overheated. It will reset itself automatically when the motor has cooled off. This may take ten to forty-five (10-45) minutes, depending on the environment and the position of the rollshutter curtain. After the motor has reset itself it is operational again. Even repeated overheating does not harm the motor in anyway.

The motorized Rollshutter stops too soon or too late when it reaches its completely rolled-up or rolled-down position

Cause: This can be due to several causes.
Solution: Do not operate the Rollshutter any further. Contact your Talius Authorized Dealer.

If you have any additional questions regarding your Talius Rollshutter pertaining to matters not covered in this guide, please contact Talius at 1-800-665-5550
www.talius.com

40 YEARS Building solutions for the future

3

Habitat Screens™ for Commercial Applications

TALIUS Limited One (1) Year WARRANTY

Thank you for choosing Talius Habitat Screens™. To ensure your complete satisfaction with your Talius product, we warrant to the original purchaser that your product is free from defects in material and workmanship as of the date of the purchase and it will, under normal use and proper care, remain so for one (1) year after the date of purchase.

Talius' limited one (1) year warranty is issued to the original purchaser and is non-transferable. A proof of purchase (original invoice from a Talius Authorized Dealer) is required for all warranty claims.

To register your Talius Habitat Screen™, please go to www.talius.com.

This warranty is valid when:

- Talius products are installed by a TALIUS authorized dealer in accordance with Talius installation instructions.
- The warranty claim does not exceed the original cost of the Habitat Screen™. Talius is not liable for any consequential damages caused by improper specification or installation of the Talius Habitat Screen™.

What is Covered:

1. Talius warrants your Habitat Screen™ against defective materials for a period of one (1) year from the date of purchase. In the event that a claim is made in writing to Talius or an authorized Talius dealer on or before the expiration of the warranty period that your Habitat Screen™ has defective materials, Talius will provide replacement parts free of charge. Talius reserves the right to request the item to be returned for testing. In the event that the item for which the claim is made proves not to be defective, the customer or the independent authorized Talius dealer who made the warranty claim will be responsible for shipping and handling costs.
2. This warranty applies only to the original purchaser of the Habitat Screen™ and is non-transferable. The original purchaser must complete and register the customer warranty information with Talius within sixty (60) days of purchase or installation, as the case may be.
3. This warranty is void in the following circumstances:
   - damage to a Habitat Screen™ caused by an accident;
   - damage to a Habitat Screen™ caused by an external force or cause, including but not limited to damage by abuse, misuse or negligence; or
   - where a Habitat Screen™ is operated or maintained in a manner not in accordance with the Warranty and Maintenance Guide.
   - damage caused by "Acts of Nature" will be determined on a case-by-case basis.
5. There are no representations, warranties or conditions expressed on implied, statutory or otherwise, except those expressly set out in this warranty.

HEAD OFFICE/MANUFACTURING FACILITY
PO Box 3279, 5501 - 46 Ave SE
Salmon Arm, BC, Canada V1E 4S1
TEL 250.832.7777 ■ **Toll Free: 800.665.5550**
EMAIL info@talius.com

www.talius.com

Technical Binder © 2020

Habitat Screens™ for Commercial Applications
Warranty & Maintenance Guide (continued)

General Care, Cleaning and Maintenance Guide

General Care

To ensure smooth operation of your Talius Habitat Screen™ we recommend the following tips:

- Always be in viewing range of your Habitat Screen™ during operation. This will ensure that obstructions are avoided and will mitigate the risk of person injury or damage to the Habitat Screen™ caused by the force of the Habitat Screen™ operating downward. Most motors do not have obstacle detection mechanisms and will be damaged if lowered onto an obstruction. Possible obstructions include, but are not limited to: hands, fingers, pets, outward opening windows, branches, tools, furniture or garden utensils.
- Do not operate your Habitat Screen™ if it is covered in snow, ice, or debris. Brush off all obstructions prior to use to prevent these items from causing your Habitat Screen™ to malfunction.
- Do not force your Habitat Screen™ to operate. If it is stuck in the open or closed position, and is motorized, the motor may have overheated due to continuous operation. If your Habitat Screen™ motor does not reset itself within ten to forty-five (10-45) minutes, contact your Talius dealer for service.
- Do not allow children to operate your Habitat Screen™ without supervision.
- When using a manual crank operator on a motorized unit, do not operate the Habitat Screen™ past its upper and lower limits. Over cranking in either direction may damage the motor's internal limit switches and would not be covered under the manufacturer's warranty.



Electrically operated Habitat Screens™ operate on a regular 120 volt current, and it is strongly recommended that you shut off power to your Habitat Screen™ via the circuit breaker on your buildings electrical panel prior to cleaning your Habitat Screen™ with water.

General Cleaning

Over time, dirt and debris can collect on your Habitat Screen™ and may adversely affect smooth operation. This can be corrected by periodically cleaning your Habitat Screen™ in the following manner:

- Operate Habitat Screen™ to the down, or closed, position.
- Use a garden hose to clean the panel box, guide rails and Habitat Screen™ curtain. Do not use a pressure washer as it can cause the screen to be pulled out of the edge retention insert.
- If a cleaner is needed Talius recommends a gentle detergent and to test the detergent in a small section of screen before complete use to ensure no staining or residue.

General Maintenance

To avoid the risk of personal injury or damage to your Talius Habitat Screen™, Talius strongly recommends that you contact your Talius Authorized Dealer prior to preforming any maintenance on your Habitat Screen™. Talius Habitat Screens™ are designed to be maintenance free. Under normal operation, it is not necessary to perform any adjustments or lubrication of the components.

Common Troubleshooting

> Always ensure that all outward opening windows are closed and the guide rails and sill are free from obstruction. Failure to do so will result in damage to your Habitat Screen™.

Your Habitat Screen™ is stuck in the guide rails.

Cause: The zippers on the vertical edge of the Habitat Screen™ are sticking in the edge retention inserts within the guide rails because of an accumulation of dust within the insert. This dust can cause an obstruction, thus preventing smooth operation of your Habitat Screen™.

Solution: Retract your Habitat Screen™ to the up position and remove any dust and debris that has accumulated in the edge retention insets located inside the throat of the guide rails using compressed air. Do not clear dust, debris, or obstructions with a screw driver, knife or other object as they may damage the edge retention insert.

> Do not lubricate the retention system as it is not designed for this, nor should it ever need it. If your Habitat Screen™ is still sticking in the guide rails after removing dust and debris, please contact us or your Talius Authorized Dealer.

The electrical Habitat Screen™ is not moving in any direction

Cause A: The breaker or fuse for the power supply of the Habitat Screen™ has tripped off

Solution A: Check the components and wiring of the power circuit connected to the Habitat Screen™ to determine what caused the breaker to trip. Once you are satisfied that there are no short circuits in the power supply, and that the power circuit is otherwise safe to re-energize, flip the breaker to the "ON" position, or replace the fuse. If plugged into an exterior plug, check if the GFI has been tripped and reset if necessary.

Cause B: There has been a failure, or interruption, to the power supply.

Solution B: A motorized Habitat Screen™ will not operate without 120VAC power, you must wait until power can be supplied to the Habitat Screen™ to operate the unit.

Your motor has overheated

Cause: This happens occasionally when the Habitat Screen™ is operated continuously

Solution: Habitat Screen™ motors are designed for short operational cycles. If operated continuously for more than a few minutes at a time the motor may overheat. Your motor is equipped with a thermal overload protection switch that shuts the motor off when overheated. It will reset itself automatically when the motor has cooled off. This may take from ten to forty-five (10-45) minutes, depending on the environment and position of the Habitat Screen™. After the motor has reset itself it is operational again. Even repeated overheating does not harm the motor in anyway.

The motorized Habitat Screen™ stops too soon or too late when it reaches its completely rolled-up or rolled-down position

Cause: This can be due to several causes.

Solution: Do not operate the Habitat Screen™ any further. Contact your Talius Authorized Dealer.

If you have any additional questions regarding your Habitat Screen™ pertaining to matters not covered in this guide, please contact Talius at 1-800-665-5550
www.talius.com

40 YEARS Building solutions for the future

3

Technical Binder © 2020

TALIUS®

Rollshutters for Institutional Applications
Warranty & Maintenance Guide

Rollshutters for Institutional Applications

TALIUS Limited One (1) Year WARRANTY

Thank you for choosing Talius Rollshutters. To ensure your complete satisfaction with your Talius product, we warrant to the original purchaser that your product is free from defects in material and workmanship as of the date of the purchase and it will, under normal use and proper care, remain so for one (1) year after the date of purchase.

Talius' limited one (1) year warranty is issued to the original purchaser and is non-transferable. A proof of purchase (original invoice from a Talius Authorized Dealer) is required for all warranty claims.

To register your Talius Rollshutter, please go to www.talius.com.

This warranty is valid when:

- Talius products are installed by a TALIUS authorized dealer in accordance with Talius installation instructions.
- The warranty claim does not exceed the original cost of the Rollshutter. Talius is not liable for any consequential damages caused by improper specification or installation of the Talius Rollshutter.

What is Covered:

1. Talius warrants your Rollshutter against defective materials for a period of one (1) year from the date of purchase. In the event that a claim is made in writing to Talius or an authorized Talius dealer on or before the expiration of the warranty period that your Rollshutter has defective materials, Talius will provide replacement parts free of charge. Talius reserves the right to request the item to be returned for testing. In the event that the item for which the claim is made proves not to be defective, the Customer or the independent authorized Talius dealer who made the warranty claim will be responsible for shipping and handling costs.
2. This warranty applies only to the original purchaser of the Rollshutter who completes and registers the customer warranty information with Talius within sixty (60) days of purchase or installation, as the case may be.
3. This warranty is issued to the original purchaser of the Rollshutter only and is non-transferable.
4. This warranty is void in the following circumstances:
   - damage to a Rollshutter caused by an accident;
   - damage to a Rollshutter caused by an external force or cause, including but not limited to damage by abuse, misuse or negligence; or
   - where a Rollshutter is operated or maintained in a manner not in accordance with Warranty and Maintenance Guide.
   - damage caused by "Acts of Nature" will be determined on a case-by-case basis.
5. There are no representations, warranties or conditions expressed on implied, statutory or otherwise, except those expressly set out in this warranty.

HEAD OFFICE/MANUFACTURING FACILITY
PO Box 3279, 5501 - 46 Ave SE
Salmon Arm, BC, Canada V1E 4S1
TEL 250.832.7777 ■ **Toll Free: 800.665.5550**
EMAIL info@talius.com

www.talius.com

General Care, Cleaning and Maintenance Guide

General Care

To ensure smooth operation of your Talius Rollshutter we recommend the following tips:

- Always be in viewing range of your Rollshutter during operation. This will ensure that obstructions are avoided and will mitigate the risk of person injury or damage to the Rollshutter caused by the force of the Rollshutter operating downward. Most motors do not have obstacle detection mechanisms and will be damaged if lowered onto an obstruction. Possible obstructions include, but are not limited to: hands, fingers, pets, outward opening windows, branches, tools, furniture or garden utensils.
- Do not operate your Rollshutter if it is covered in snow, ice, or debris. Brush off all obstructions prior to use to prevent these items from causing your Rollshutter to malfunction.
- Do not force your Rollshutter to operate. If it is stuck in the open or closed position, and is motorized, the motor may have overheated due to continuous operation. If your Rollshutter motor does not reset itself within ten to forty-five (10-45) minutes, contact your Talius Authorized Dealer for service.
- Do not allow children to operate your Rollshutter without supervision.
- When using a manual crank operator on a motorized unit, do not operate the curtain past its upper and lower limits. Over cranking in either direction may damage the motor's internal limit switches and would not be covered under the manufacturer's warranty.



Electrically operated Rollshutters operate on a regular 120 volt current, and it is strongly recommended that you shut off power to your Rollshutter via the circuit breaker on your buildings electrical panel prior to cleaning your Rollshutter with water.

General Cleaning

Over time, dirt and debris can collect on your Rollshutter and may adversely affect smooth operation. This can be corrected by periodically cleaning your Rollshutter in the following manner:

Front Side of Rollshutter

- Operate Rollshutter to the down, or closed, position.
- Use a garden hose to clean the panel box, guide rails and Rollshutter curtain. Do not use a pressure washer.

Back Side of Rollshutter

- Operate the Rollshutter to the up, or open, position, completely retracted into the panel box.
- Remove the screws that hold the panel box bottom in place.
- Remove the panel box lid carefully pulling it down to reveal the Rollshutter curtain rolled up inside the panel box.
- Clean the exposed side of the Rollshutter curtain in the panel box by wiping it clean with warm water. Gently lower the Rollshutter curtain into the down position, or closed position, to reveal more of the Rollshutter and a greater cleaning surface.
- Re-install the panel box bottom by fastening the screws.

General Maintenance

To avoid the risk of personal injury or damage to your Talius Rollshutter, Talius strongly recommends that you contact your Talius Authorized Dealer prior to preforming any maintenance on your Rollshutter. Talius Rollshutters are designed to be maintenance free. Under normal operation, it is not necessary to perform any adjustments or lubrication of the components.

Technical Binder © 2020

Common Troubleshooting



Never operate a manual override motor with the crank rod handle if power is supplied to the motor

Your Rollshutter curtain is jammed in the panel box.

Cause: The bottom profile was accidentally pushed up into the panel box, the rollshutter was lowered onto an obstruction causing it to roll up loosely, OR there may have been a light frost on the curtain last time you rolled it up. The layer of frost can increase the curtain's roll-up diameter, which will cause the curtain to roll up too high, even though the motor preforms the same amount of rotations on its shaft.

Solution: Remove the panel box access bottom. Re-insert the bottom profile by guiding it into the guide rails. Meanwhile, you should slowly lower the curtain with the operator. Generally, this problem will not repeat itself.

The Rollshutter appears stuck in the "DOWN" position.

Cause: Your Rollshutter's curtain bottom profile may be frozen to the window sill.

Solution: A little push against the bottom profile may release it. On Rollshutter units with SAFE u-sill, snow and ice may accumulate in the sill when the curtain is in the up position causing the bottom profile to freeze to the sill when the curtain is closed. To minimize these occurrences, ensure that the weep holes in the u-sill are clear, and clean out any accumulations of snow from the u-sill before closing the curtain. If the rollshutter still does not move upwards, contact your Talius Authorized Dealer.

The electrical Rollshutter is not moving in any direction

Cause A: The breaker or fuse for the power supply of the Rollshutter has tripped off

Solution A: Check the components and wiring of the power circuit connected to the Rollshutter to determine what caused the breaker to trip. Once you are satisfied that there are no short circuits in the power supply, and that the power circuit is otherwise safe to re-energize, flip the breaker to the "ON" position, or replace the fuse. If plugged into an exterior plug, check if the GFI has been tripped and reset if necessary.

Cause B: There has been a failure, or interruption, to the power supply.

Solution B: A motorized Rollshutter will not operate without 120VAC power, unless equipped with a manual override motor. If so equipped attach the crank rod handle to the universal joint by inserting the shaped pin on the end of the universal joint into the slotted bell-cup connector on the end of the crank rod handle. While watching the direction of movement of the Rollshutter curtain, crank the handle clockwise to raise the curtain, or counter-clockwise to lower the Rollshutter curtain. If the curtain moves in the opposite direction of what you want, stop and begin cranking in the opposite direction. Continue to crank the curtain until you have reached the desired position. Be sure not to over-crank the curtain in the "UP" direction so that the bottom profile goes into the panel box or in the "DOWN" direction causing the Rollshutter to go slack. Over-cranking in either direction may damage the motor's internal limit switches and would not be covered under the manufacturer's warranty.

Your motor has overheated

Cause: This happens occasionally when the Rollshutter is operated continuously

Solution: Rollshutter motors are designed for short operational cycles. If operated continuously for more than a few minutes at a time the motor may overheat. Your motor is equipped with a thermal overload protection switch that shuts the motor off when overheated. It will reset itself automatically when the motor has cooled off. This may take from ten to forty-five (10-45) minutes, depending on the environment and the position of the rollshutter curtain. After the motor has reset itself it is operational again. Even repeated overheating does not harm the motor in anyway.

The motorized Rollshutter stops too soon or too late when it reaches its completely rolled-up or rolled-down position

Cause: This can be due to several causes.

Solution: Do not operate the Rollshutter any further. Contact your Talius Authorized Dealer.

If you have any additional questions regarding your Talius Rollshutter pertaining to matters not covered in this guide, please contact Talius at 1-800-665-5550
www.talius.com



Habitat Screens™ for Institutional Applications

TALIUS Limited One (1) Year WARRANTY

Thank you for choosing Talius Habitat Screens™. To ensure your complete satisfaction with your Talius product, we warrant to the original purchaser that your product is free from defects in material and workmanship as of the date of the purchase and it will, under normal use and proper care, remain so for one (1) year after the date of purchase.

Talius' limited one (1) year warranty is issued to the original purchaser and is non-transferable. A proof of purchase (original invoice from a Talius Authorized Dealer) is required for all warranty claims.

To register your Talius Habitat Screen™, please go to www.talius.com.

This warranty is valid when:

- Talius products are installed by a TALIUS authorized dealer in accordance with Talius installation instructions.
- The warranty claim does not exceed the original cost of the Habitat Screen™. Talius is not liable for any consequential damages caused by improper specification or installation of the Talius Habitat Screen™.

What is Covered

1. Talius warrants your Habitat Screen™ against defective materials for a period of one (1) year from the date of purchase. In the event that a claim is made in writing to Talius or an authorized Talius dealer on or before the expiration of the warranty period that your Habitat Screen™ has defective materials, Talius will provide replacement parts free of charge. Talius reserves the right to request the item to be returned for testing. In the event that the item for which the claim is made proves not to be defective, the customer or the independent authorized Talius dealer who made the warranty claim will be responsible for shipping and handling costs.
2. This warranty applies only to the original purchaser of the Habitat Screen™ who completes and registers the customer warranty information with Talius within sixty (60) days of purchase or installation, as the case may be.
3. This warranty is issued to the original purchaser of the Habitat Screen™ only and is non-transferable.
4. This warranty is void in the following circumstances:
   - damage to a Habitat Screen™ caused by an accident;
   - damage to a Habitat Screen™ caused by an external force or cause, including but not limited to damage by abuse, misuse or negligence; or
   - where a Habitat Screen™ is operated or maintained in a manner not in accordance with the Warranty and Maintenance Guide.
   - damage caused by "Acts of Nature" will be determined on a case-by-case basis.
5. There are no representations, warranties or conditions expressed on implied, statutory or otherwise, except those expressly set out in this warranty.

HEAD OFFICE/MANUFACTURING FACILITY
PO Box 3279, 5501 - 46 Ave SE
Salmon Arm, BC, Canada V1E 4S1
TEL 250.832.7777 ■ **Toll Free: 800.665.5550**
EMAIL info@talius.com

www.talius.com

Technical Binder © 2020

Habitat Screens™ for Institutional Applications
Warranty & Maintenance Guide (continued)

General Care, Cleaning and Maintenance Guide

General Care

To ensure smooth operation of your Talius Habitat Screen™ we recommend the following tips:

- Always be in viewing range of your Habitat Screen™ during operation. This will ensure that obstructions are avoided and will mitigate the risk of person injury or damage to the Habitat Screen™ caused by the force of the Habitat Screen™ operating downward. Most motors do not have obstacle detection mechanisms and will be damaged if lowered onto an obstruction. Possible obstructions include, but are not limited to: hands, fingers, pets, outward opening windows, branches, tools, furniture or garden utensils.
- Do not operate your Habitat Screen™ if it is covered in snow, ice, or debris. Brush off all obstructions prior to use to prevent these items from causing your Habitat Screen™ to malfunction.
- Do not force your Habitat Screen™ to operate. If it is stuck in the open or closed position, and is motorized, the motor may have overheated due to continuous operation. If your Habitat Screen™ motor does not reset itself within ten to forty-five (10-45) minutes, contact your Talius dealer for service.
- Do not allow children to operate your Habitat Screen™ without supervision.
- When using a manual crank operator on a motorized unit, do not operate the Habitat Screen™ past its upper and lower limits. Over cranking in either direction may damage the motor's internal limit switches and would not be covered under the manufacturer's warranty.



Electrically operated Habitat Screens™ operate on a regular 120 volt current, and it is strongly recommended that you shut off power to your Habitat Screen™ via the circuit breaker on your buildings electrical panel prior to cleaning your Habitat Screen™ with water.

General Cleaning

Over time, dirt and debris can collect on your Habitat Screen™ and may adversely affect smooth operation. This can be corrected by periodically cleaning your Habitat Screen™ in the following manner:

- Operate Habitat Screen™ to the down, or closed, position.
- Use a garden hose to clean the panel box, guide rails and Habitat Screen™ curtain. Do not use a pressure washer as it can cause the screen to be pulled out of the edge retention insert.
- If a cleaner is needed Talius recommends a gentle detergent and to test the detergent in a small section of screen before complete use to ensure no staining or residue.

General Maintenance

To avoid the risk of personal injury or damage to your Talius Habitat Screen™, Talius strongly recommends that you contact your Talius Authorized Dealer prior to preforming any maintenance on your Habitat Screen™. Talius Habitat Screens™ are designed to be maintenance free. Under normal operation, it is not necessary to perform any adjustments or lubrication of the components.

Common Troubleshooting

> Always ensure that all outward opening windows are closed and the guide rails and sill are free from obstruction. Failure to do so will result in damage to your Habitat Screen™.

Your Habitat Screen™ is stuck in the guide rails.

Cause: The zippers on the vertical edge of the Habitat Screen™ are sticking in the edge retention inserts within the guide rails because of an accumulation of dust within the insert. This dust can cause an obstruction, thus preventing smooth operation of your Habitat Screen™.

Solution: Retract your Habitat Screen™ to the up position and remove any dust and debris that has accumulated in the edge retention insets located inside the throat of the guide rails using compressed air. Do not clear dust, debris, or obstructions with a screw driver, knife or other object as they may damage the edge retention insert.

> Do not lubricate the retention system as it is not designed for this, nor should it ever need it. If your Habitat Screen™ is still sticking in the guide rails after removing dust and debris, please contact us or your Talius Authorized Dealer.

The electrical Habitat Screen™ is not moving in any direction

Cause A: The breaker or fuse for the power supply of the Habitat Screen™ has tripped off

Solution A: Check the components and wiring of the power circuit connected to the Habitat Screen™ to determine what caused the breaker to trip. Once you are satisfied that there are no short circuits in the power supply, and that the power circuit is otherwise safe to re-energize, flip the breaker to the "ON" position, or replace the fuse. If plugged into an exterior plug, check if the GFI has been tripped and reset if necessary.

Cause B: There has been a failure, or interruption, to the power supply.

Solution B: A motorized Habitat Screen™ will not operate without 120VAC power, you must wait until power can be supplied to the Habitat Screen™ to operate the unit.

Your motor has overheated

Cause: This happens occasionally when the Habitat Screen™ is operated continuously

Solution: Habitat Screen™ motors are designed for short operational cycles. If operated continuously for more than a few minutes at a time the motor may overheat. Your motor is equipped with a thermal overload protection switch that shuts the motor off when overheated. It will reset itself automatically when the motor has cooled off. This may take from ten to forty-five (10-45) minutes, depending on the environment and position of the Habitat Screen™. After the motor has reset itself it is operational again. Even repeated overheating does not harm the motor in anyway.

The motorized Habitat Screen™ stops too soon or too late when it reaches its completely rolled-up or rolled-down position

Cause: This can be due to several causes.

Solution: Do not operate the Habitat Screen™ any further. Contact your Talius Authorized Dealer.

If you have any additional questions regarding your Habitat Screen™ pertaining to matters not covered in this guide, please contact Talius at 1-800-665-5550
www.talius.com

40 YEARS Building solutions for the future

3

Technical Binder © 2020

TALIUS®

HEAD OFFICE/MANUFACTURING FACILITY

PO Box 3279, 5501 - 46 Ave SE
Salmon Arm, BC, Canada V1E 4S1
TEL 250.832.7777 ■ **FAX** 250.832.8577
TOLL FREE 800.665.5550

EMAIL info@talius.com

VANCOUVER BRANCH OFFICE

#4, 200 Golden Drive
Coquitlam, BC, Canada V3K 6M8
TEL 604.468.7655 ■ **FAX** 604.468.7656
EMAIL taliusvancouver@talius.com

www.talius.com